

CHART 6

MIGRATIONS OF THE PEOPLES OF THE BOOK OF MORMON

NAME OF PEOPLE	ORIGINAL NATIONALITY	APPROXIMATE DATE OF CULTURE	APPROXIMATE DURATION OF CULTURE
JAREDITES	Descendants of Noah	2700-585 B. C.	2000 yrs.
PEOPLE OF LEHI	Descendants of Joseph	600-580 B. C.	20 yrs.
MULEKITES (People of Mulek or Zarahemla)	Descendants of King Zedekiah and Jews	585-235 B. C.	350 yrs.
	People of Zarahemla	235 B. C. - 385 A. D.	600 yrs.
NEPHITES	Descendants of Lehi, Ishmael and Zoram.	580 B. C. - 385 A. D.	1000 yrs.
LAMANITES (Include Ishmaelites and Nephite Dissenters)	Descendants of Lehi, Ishmael and Zoram.	580 B. C. - 1500 A. D. (Still prevalent as Indians 1500-2000 A.D.)	2000 yrs. (2500 yrs. if calculated until 2000 A. D.)
AMMONITES (People of Ammon) (Anti-Nephi-Lehis) (Converted Lamanites)	Lamanites	92 B. C. on (Last mentioned 63 B. C.)	Perhaps 400 yrs. or more
PEOPLE OF ZENIFF* (People of Noah)* (People of Limhi)* *Three kings over the same tribe	Nephites	200 - 122 B. C.	180 yrs.
PEOPLE OF ALMA	Nephites	148 - 122 B. C.	26 yrs.
PRIESTS OF KING NOAH (Amulites) (People of Amulon)	Nephites	145 - 80 B. C.	75 yrs.
AMALEKITES	Nephites	200 B. C.—	150 yrs.
AMLICITES	Nephites	87 B. C.—	1 yr. (in Zarahemla then fled)
ZORAMITES	Nephites	74 B. C.—	100 yrs. ?
AMALICKIAHITES	Nephites	73 B.C.—	100 yrs. ?
PEOPLE OF MORIANTUM	Nephites	68 - 67 B.C.—	1 yr.
KINGMEN	Nephites	67 - 62 B. C.	5 yrs.
GADIANTON ROBBERS	Nephites and Lamanites	55 B. C. - 385 A. D.	300 yrs.
MISC. DISSENTERS	Nephites	During all periods	
MIGRANTS TO LAND NORTHWARD	Nephites and Lamanites	55 B. C.—	1500 yrs.

CHART 6

MIGRATIONS OF THE PEOPLES OF THE BOOK OF MORMON

CAUSE OF MIGRATION	PLACE OF DEPARTURE	COURSE OF MIGRATION	DESTINATION
Confusion of tongues	Mesopotamia (?) (probably near Sumeria)	Down northward to the valley of Nimrod cross land and water, then across the ocean.	The Western Hemisphere
Iniquity of Jews in Jerusalem	Jerusalem	So. E. along Red Sea, E. to ocean, across ocean	The Western Hemisphere
Destruction of Jerusalem	Jerusalem	May have crossed ocean in a Phoenician ship—Westward?	The Western Hemisphere
Followers of Nephi forced to flee from people of Lehi because of jealousy of Laman and Lemuel.	"Land of First Inheritance" or	Northward and eastward; settled land of Nephi. Later pushed north to Zarahemla, then Bountiful, then Desolation	Continually pushed northward by the southern tribes
Revolt of Laman and his group against the rule of Nephi, their younger brother.	Near place of arrival on the Land of Promise	Probably spread south, also east, and finally conquered Nephites and took the land northward.	Spread over the Western Hemisphere
They were Lamanites and were converted to the Nephite faith.	Land of Nephi	Traveled north from Nephi to Zarahemla, then N.E. to Jershon	Jershon
Wished to reclaim land of first inheritance (Nephi)	Zarahemla	Southward and upward	Valley of Shilon in Land of Nephi
Later fled Lamanite rule.	Land of Nephi	Northward and down	Zarahemla
A righteous group fled from King Noah.	Valley of Shilom, Nephi	To Mormon, then to Helam, 26 yrs. later to	Zarahemla
A wicked group banished by the people of Limhi.	Valley of Shilom, Nephi	Northward to a new valley which they called Amulon — joined Lamanites.	Amulon in Land of Nephi
Probably dissenters from whom Mosiah I and his people fled.		Probably remained in Nephi, joined Lamanites	
Dissenters from Nephites	Zarahemla	Remnant fled and joined Lamanites	Land of Nephi
Dissenters from Nephites	Antionum	Remnant fled and joined Lamanites	Land of Nephi
Dissenters from Nephites	Zarahemla	Remnant fled and joined Lamanites	Land of Nephi
Disputed over land with People of Lehi.	Moriantum	Northward to Bountiful	Returned to Moriantum
Disputed over type of government	Zarahemla	Re-action within country	Zarahemla
Vanity, selfishness, and other vices.	Various locations	Secret groups throughout the country	Where there was to be found plunder
Minority dissenting groups	Various locations	Secret groups throughout the country	Found new land or joined Lamanites
Need or desire for new land	Bountiful	Northward by sea, Northward by land	Land of Desolation and Land Northward

THE
BOOK OF MORMON
GUIDE BOOK



This book is recommended
to all who are interested in
the general welfare of the
“AMERICAS”



ISRAEL :

For a small moment have I forsaken thee, but with great mercies will I gather thee - - - - -

And it shall come to pass that I shall establish my people, O House of Israel - - - - -

---from the four quarters of the earth, all the remnants of the seed of Jacob, [shall I gather] - - - - -

[For I shall]---assemble---the outcasts of Israel and gather together the dispersed of Judah from the four corners of the earth; - - - - -

[Yea,]---they shall be gathered in from their long dispersion,---from the four parts of the earth; - - - - -

For I command all men, both in the east and in the west, and in the north and in the south, - - - - -

2N 22-44 v. 7
3N 20-440 v. 21
2N 21-85 v. 12
2N 10-71 v. 8
2N 6-410 v. 24
2N 29-101 v. 11

The **BOOK of MORMON** *GUIDE BOOK*

An Internal Reconstruction of the
Archaeology, History, and Religious
Teachings of the Ancient Peoples of
the *Book of Mormon*.

This comprehensive and analytical
study of the contents of the *Book of
Mormon* was especially arranged for
the use of missionaries, teachers, and
students, and for the convenience of
research investigators.

by

VERLA BIRRELL

Assistant Professor of Art, 1937-1948, Brigham
Young University, Provo, Utah Assistant
Professor of Art in Home Economics, 1948-, Uni-
versity of Utah, Salt Lake City, Utah.

PUBLISHED AND COPYRIGHTED BY
VERLA BIRRELL
SALT LAKE CITY, UTAH
1948

ALL RIGHTS RESERVED
Exception granted a reviewer for the use of short selections
(of the author's words) for newspaper
or magazine comments

*Acknowledgement is gratefully made to
the Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-
day Saints for permission to quote
from and for the use of verses and
text material from the Book of Mormon*

FIRST EDITION

Distributors

BIRRELL BOOK COMPANY
P. O. Box 952
SALT LAKE CITY, UTAH

BOOKCRAFT CO.
1186 SOUTH MAIN
SALT LAKE CITY, UTAH

DESERET BOOK CO.
44 EAST SOUTH TEMPLE
SALT LAKE CITY, UTAH

KROCH'S BOOKSTORES, INC.
206 NORTH MICHIGAN AVE.
CHICAGO, ILLINOIS

MALCOLM MACNEIL & CO.
27 - 7TH STREET
SAN FRANCISCO. '

PRINTED IN THE UNITED STATES OF AMERICA
STEVENS & WALLIS, INC.
SALT LAKE CITY, UTAH
1948

THIS BOOK IS
DEDICATED
(April, 1947)

TO MY GRANDFATHER, GEORGE NAYLOR,
AND
TO THE OTHER NOBLE PIONEERS WHO,
ONE HUNDRED YEARS AGO, LEFT THE
UNITED STATES OF AMERICA AND WITH
HANDCARTS AND COVERED WAGONS
CROSSED THE GREAT PLAINS — TO FIND
RELIGIOUS FREEDOM IN THE GREAT
SALT LAKE VALLEY (OF UTAH)

TABLE OF CONTENTS

CHAPTER	TITLE	PAGE
	Table of Maps and Charts.....	xi
	Itemized Table of Contents.....	xiii
	Preface—Introduction and Short Synopsis of the <i>Book of Mormon</i>	xxvii
	Key to Reference Symbols	2
Chapter I	Prophecies—To the People of the Americas.....	3
Chapter II	The Ancient Records—Source of the <i>Book of Mormon</i>	29
Chapter III	Topography of the Lands of the <i>Book of Mormon</i> (<i>See Appendix</i>)	59
Chapter IV	Major Migrations, and Major Tribes of the <i>Book of Mormon</i>	67
Chapter V	Minor Migrations, and Minor Tribes of the <i>Book of Mormon</i>	107
Chapter VI	Government, Judicial, and Political Customs of the Ancient People of the <i>Book of Mormon</i>	137
Chapter VII	Military Customs of the Ancient People.....	173
Chapter VIII	Social Customs and Various Other Customs of the Ancient People of the <i>Book of Mormon</i>	197
Chapter IX	The Language, Writing, and Scientific Achievement of these Ancient Americans.....	221
Chapter X	Types of Early Human, Animal, and Plant Life found in the Western Hemisphere, according to the <i>Book of Mormon</i>	239
Chapter XI	Archaeology—Ancient Clothing, Artifacts, Architecture, and Mythology	253
Chapter XII	Religious Traditions of the Ancient People.....	285
Chapter XIII	Religious Doctrines of the Ancient People.....	311
Chapter XIV	Religious Practices of the Ancient People.....	335
Chapter XV	Religious Leaders—Their Sermons, Prophecies, Revelations, and Miracles	373
Chapter XVI	Traditions of a “Devil,” of a “Hell,” and of Evil Practices among the Early Inhabitants.....	433
Chapter XVII	The House of Israel—Tradition and Prophecy—as Recorded in the <i>Book of Mormon</i>	471

CHAPTER	TITLE	PAGE
Conclusion		513
Appendix A	Joseph Smith and the Origin of the <i>Book of Mormon</i>	517
Appendix B	Statements by the Author	523
Appendix C	The Geography of the <i>Book of Mormon</i> — A Complete Record	527
Appendix D	A Correlation Survey	561
Index		571

TABLE OF MAPS AND CHARTS

MAPS

Map I	Suggested Routes of the Jaredites and the Mulekites.....	60
Map II	Suggested Routes of Lehi's Party	62
Map III	Suggested Comparative Location of the <i>Book of Mormon</i> Lands	64
Map IV	Suggested Alternate Map for the Land of Nephi	64
Map V	Suggested Generalized Map for the Land of Zarahemla.....	64
Map VI	Possible Locations of "The Narrow Neck of Land".....	564

*CHARTS

Chart 1	Plates and Records of the <i>Book of Mormon</i>	30
Chart 2	Jaredite Writings	32
Chart 3	Israelite and Nephite Writings	41
Chart 4	Plates of Nephi	46
Chart 5	Part I—Nephite Historians	52
Chart 5	Part II— <i>Book of Mormon</i> Books and their Writers.....	53
Chart 6	Migrations of the Peoples of the <i>Book of Mormon</i>	72
Chart 7	Personnel of the Jaredite Migration	75
Chart 8	Personnel of the Migrating Party of Lehi	84
Chart 9	Nephite Migrations	88
Chart 10	Jaredite Kings	140
Chart 11	Types of Nephite Government	143
Chart 12	Rulers of the Nephite People	146
Chart 13	Lamanite Rulers	153
Chart 14	Nephite Military Leaders	175
Chart 15	Outstanding Women of the <i>Book of Mormon</i>	200
Chart 16	Vocabulary — A few Ancient Words in the <i>Book of Mormon</i>	227
Chart 17	Animals and Plants mentioned in the <i>Book of Mormon</i>	252
Chart 18	Various Titles given God in the <i>Book of Mormon</i>	292
Chart 19	Outstanding Characters of the <i>Book of Mormon</i>	374
Chart 20	The Disciples and Witnesses of Christ on the Western Hemisphere	384
Chart 21	Outstanding Prophets of the <i>Book of Mormon</i>	388
Chart 22	Titles given Satan in the <i>Book of Mormon</i>	435
Chart 23	Outstanding Leaders of Iniquity in the <i>Book of Mormon</i>	436
Chart 24	Religious Teachings of Isaiah in the <i>Book of Mormon</i>	485
Chart 25	The Olive Tree Parable — A Story of Israel.....	487
Chart 26	Ancient Leaders — Common to the Bible and to the <i>Book of Mormon</i>	511
Chart 27	Place Names in Ecuador and Peru similar to <i>Book of Mormon</i> Names	567
Chart 28	A South American Correlation for the Lands of the <i>Book of Mormon</i>	569

*(NOTE 1: All dates used in these charts were taken from footnotes in the *Book of Mormon*. Modern scholars have a tendency to change the A.D. dates and set them forward by one year. The author has not followed this plan, but the reader may do so and change the charts accordingly. [The change was made due to a suggested correction in the computation of time from the birth of Christ.] NOTE 2: The author has assigned numerical titles to certain ancient personages in the *Book of Mormon* to distinguish them from others carrying the same name. This has been done to simplify the discussion and not to suggest that they actually carried such titles.)

TABLE OF CONTENTS

Complete and Itemized

CHAPTER	SUBJECT	PAGE
	TABLE OF CONTENTS	ix
	TABLE OF MAPS AND CHARTS	xi
	PREFACE AND SHORT SYNOPSIS OF THE <i>BOOK OF MORMON</i>	xxvii
	KEY TO REFERENCE SYMBOLS	2
Chapter I	PROPHECIES — To the People of the Americas.....	3
	I Words from the Prophets of Old to the People of Today	4
	I Voices from the Dust	4
	II The purpose and Use of the Ancient Writings	5
	II The Promised Land (The Americas)	8
	I The King of Heaven shall be the only King	8
	II The Land is choice above all other Lands	9
	III The “Promised Land” is protected by the Lord	10
	IV History Repeats Itself, America!.....	12
	1. Uphold Liberty!	12
	2. Be Prepared!	13
	3. Guard Democracy!	13
	4. Uphold Morality!	14
	5. Beware of Traitors!	14
	6. Beware of Secret Organizations!..	14
	7. War-time Ethics	15
	III The Great Prophecy of Nephi I	16
	IV Identifying the “Last Days”	25
	I The Last Days are HERE	25
	II Words to the Tribes of Israel	26
	III Words to the Gentiles	27
Chapter II	THE ANCIENT RECORDS — Source of the <i>Book of Mormon</i>	33
	I The Historic Records	33
	I Records of the Jaredites	33
	1. Writings of the Brother of Jared	33
	2. The Plates of Ether	34
	3. The Stone Record of Coriantumr	36
	II The Brass Plates	37
	1. Source	37
	2. Content	42
	3. Compared to Bible	44

CHAPTER	SUBJECT	PAGE
	III The Record of Lehi	44
	IV The Plates of Nephi	44
	1. The Small and Large Plates	
	V Record of the People of Zarahemla (Mulekites)	47
	VI Record of Zeniff	47
	VII Record of Alma	48
	VIII Records of the "Land Northward"	48
	IX Plates of Mormon	48
	X Plates of Moroni	50
	II The Ancient Historians	51
	I The Transmission of the Records.....	51
	(The Historians listed)	52
	III Preservation of the Records	57
	I Precautions Used	57
	1. The Plates were of Metal.....	57
	2. The Records were hidden in the Ground	57
	II Records Threatened with Destruction....	58
	1. Unbelievers sought to destroy the Records	58
	2. The Lamanites sought to destroy the Records	58
Chapter III	TOPOGRAPHY — A Study of the <i>Book of Mormon</i> Lands (with Maps)	59
	(Note: The descriptive material for this chapter is to be found in Appendix C.)	
Chapter IV	MAJOR MIGRATIONS and Major Tribes of the <i>Book</i> <i>of Mormon</i>	67
	I The Jaredites	69
	I Jaredite Genealogy	69
	II Migration from Nimrod to Promised Land	70
	III Few Incidents of Jaredite History.....	76
	IV Last Days of the Jaredites	77
	V Later Peoples Discover Jaredite Culture	80
	II The People of Lehi	81
	I Genealogy of the People of Lehi.....	81
	II Migration of Lehi from Jerusalem to the Promised Land	83
	III Separation of Nephites vs. Lamanites....	87
	IV The Nephites Separate	91
	III The Mulekites — People of Zarahemla.....	92
	I Genealogy of the Mulekites	92
	II Migration from Jerusalem to the Prom- ised Land	92

CHAPTER	SUBJECT	PAGE
	IV The Nephites	94
	I Origin — and First Migration.....	94
	II Separation — and Second Migration....	94
	III Northern Migrations (See Appendix C, Part IV)	95
	IV Character of the Nephites	96
	V Prophecies of the Nephite Destruction....	99
	VI Destruction of the Nephites	100
	V The Lamanites	101
	I Origin	101
	II Migrations	101
	III Lamanite Traditions	101
	IV Character of the Lamanites	102
	V Righteousness among the Lamanites.....	104
	VI Special Prophecies to the Lamanites in the "Last Days"	106
Chapter V	MINOR MIGRATIONS and Minor Tribes of the <i>Book of Mormon</i>	107
	I The People of Ammon (Converted Lamanites) 108	
	I Ammon Preached to the Lamanites.....	108
	II The Oath of Peace	112
	III The Lord Protected Them	112
	IV Migrate to Zarahemla	113
	V The Miracle of the Sons of Ammon.....	113
	VI Other Lamanite Conversions	114
	II The People of Zeniff-Noah-Limhi (Nephites)....	115
	I The People of Zeniff-Noah-Limhi	115
	II The People of Alma	118
	III The People of Amulon (Priests of Noah) 119	
	III Nephite Dissenters	122
	I People of Ammonihah	122
	II The Amalekites	123
	III The Zoramites	124
	IV The Amlicites	125
	V The People of Morianton	126
	VI The Amalickiahites	127
	VII The Kingmen	130
	VIII Gadianton Robbers and Secret Organi- zations	131
	1. Among the Jaredites	131
	2. Among the Nephites	131
	3. Revival of the Robbers	133
	IX Other Nephite Dissenters	135
Chapter VI	GOVERNMENTAL, JUDICIAL, AND POLITICAL CUSTOMS of the Ancient People	137
	I Government of the Ancient People	138

CHAPTER	SUBJECT	PAGE
	I Government of the Jaredites	138
	II Government of the Nephites	142
	1. Rule of Patriarchs	142
	2. Rule of Kings	144
	3. Rule of Judges	148
	4. Break-down of the Central Government into Tribes	150
	5. The Rule of United Order.....	151
	6. Period of Unrest and Disintegration	152
	7. End of the Nephite Culture.....	152
	III Lamanite Government	153
	II Nephite Laws	154
	I Nephite Laws of the Land	154
	II Mosaic Laws	155
	III Judicial Customs of the Nephites	158
	I Judges	158
	II Lawyers	159
	IV Political Customs and Trickery	160
	I An Episode of Jaredite Political Trickery	160
	II Nephite Political Trickery	161
	III Political Contentions between the Nephites and the Lamanites — A Summary of Their Complete History.....	163
	V Ancient Forms of Government Correlated with Present-day Forms	167
	I Democracy	167
	II Socialism	169
	III Secret Organizations (Communism, Fascism, Nazism, etc.). Examples of the disintegrating influence of such organizations	170
Chapter VII	MILITARY CUSTOMS of the Ancient People.....	173
	I Military Customs of the Nephites	174
	I Organization of the Army	174
	II God Sustains His People in War.....	176
	III Preparedness for War	178
	IV Use of Strategy in Warfare	180
	1. Spies	180
	2. Poison	181
	3. Strategy	181
	V Casualties of Warfare	186
	VI Surrender and Treaty	188
	VII Prisoners	189
	VIII Ceremonies of Triumph and Defeat.....	192
	II Details of an Encounter Between the Nephites and the Lamanites	193

CHAPTER	SUBJECT	PAGE
Chapter VIII	SOCIAL CUSTOMS AND VARIOUS OTHER CUSTOMS of the Ancient People	197
	I Social Characteristics and Customs	198
	I Classes of People in Ancient Society.....	198
	1. Educated, rich, poor, etc.....	198
	2. Racial Prejudice	199
	II Place of Women in Ancient Society.....	200
	III Marital and Sex Customs	201
	IV Burial Customs	205
	II Domestic, Agricultural, Hunting, and Industrial Customs	207
	I Domestic Customs	207
	1. Making fire.	
	2. Hunting.	
	II Agricultural Customs	208
	III Industrial Customs	209
	III. Public Affairs and Customs of Communication	211
	I Communication of Information from One Generation to Another	211
	II Public and Private Meetings, Councils, etc.	212
	III Individual Communication — Method of Salutation, etc.	215
	IV Customs of Exchange of Goods and Services.....	216
	I Trade	216
	II Transportation	216
	III Markets	217
	IV Money and Wages	217
	V Loans and Borrowing	218
	VI "Banking" — Hidden Treasures.....	219
	VII Taxes	219
	VIII Tithes	219
	IX Tribute	220
Chapter IX	THE LANGUAGE, WRITING, KNOWLEDGE, AND SCIENCE of the Ancient Americans	221
	I Language	222
	I Language of the Jaredites	222
	II Language of the Nephites and Mulekites	223
	III Language of the Lamanites	225
	IV The Gift of Tongues	225
	II Vocabulary	226
	I Jaredite Words in the <i>Book of Mormon</i>	226
	II Nephite Words in the <i>Book of Mormon</i>	226
	III Writing	229
	I Various Types of Writing and Records	229

CHAPTER	SUBJECT	PAGE
	IV Wisdom and Knowledge	232
	I The Source of All Knowledge is God....	232
	II Worldly Wisdom vs. True Knowledge....	232
	III "Boasting" is a form of Wickedness.....	233
	IV True Knowledge is "Hard" on the Wicked	234
	V Some Scientific Material Presented in the <i>Book of Mormon</i>	235
	I The Calendar	235
	II Astronomy and Physics	236
	III Geology and Physics	237
	IV Medicine	238
Chapter X	TYPES OF HUMAN, ANIMAL, AND PLANT LIFE found in the "Promised Land." (The Anthropology, Zoology, and Botany found in the Western Hemisphere.)	239
	I The Source of Man — (as preserved in Religious Tradition)	240
	I The Creation	240
	II The Flood	241
	III The "Fall" of the Great Tower.....	241
	IV The Exodus	241
	V The Fall of Jerusalem	242
	1. Fall of Jerusalem	242
	2. Migration to the Western Hemisphere	243
	II Physical Characteristics of the Ancient People and Distribution of the Population.....	244
	I Racial Anatomy	244
	II Racial Colors	245
	III Population Distribution	246
	III Animals and Plants mentioned in the <i>Book of Mormon</i>	248
	I Animals Mentioned	248
	1. Animals at time of the Jaredites	248
	2. Animals at time of the Nephites	248
	II Foods and Plants Mentioned	249
Chapter XI	ARCHAEOLOGY	253
	I Clothing, Tools, and other Artifacts used by the Ancient People	254
	I Clothing and Jewelry	254
	II Furniture and Miscellaneous Articles....	255
	III Metals and Money	256
	IV Weapons and Armor	259
	V Tools	262
	VI Instruments	263

CHAPTER	SUBJECT	PAGE
	II Ancient Construction Work	266
	I Architecture	266
	II City Structure, Repair, and Destruction	272
	III Roads and Road Building	274
	IV Ships and Ship Building	274
	III Archaeology and Mythology	277
	I Advice to Archaeologists	277
	II Promised Land not Known to the Old World	278
	III Few Old World Artifacts Brought to the New World	278
	IV Ancient Archaeological Investigation	278
	V The "Younger Brother" Myth	278
	VI Nephite Cultural Peaks	279
	VII Historical Records Kept	280
	VIII Evidence of Long Memory	280
	IX Periods of Religious Persecution	280
	X Time Count	281
	XI Culture Heroes	281
	XII Tradition of a God	282
	XIII Mythology	284
Chapter XII	RELIGIOUS TRADITION	285
	I Symbolism of their God	286
	I The Cross	286
	II The Dove	286
	III The Tree of Life	287
	IV The Rod of Iron, and the Fountain of Living Waters	287
	V The Foot-stool, and the Throne	287
	VI The Searching Eye	288
	VII The Rock	288
	VIII The Right Hand of God	289
	IX The Brazen Serpent	289
	II The God of the Ancient People	290
	I God Leads His People into Fertile Lands	290
	II The Names (titles) given to God.....	291
	III The Personality of God	294
	IV Heaven	297
	III The Advent of Jesus Christ	298
	I Prophecies of the Coming of Christ.....	298
	II The Birth of Christ	300
	III The Crucifixion of Christ — and His Appearance on the Western Hemisphere	302

CHAPTER	SUBJECT	PAGE
	IV The Holy Ghost	308
	I Identity	308
	II Christ's Mission and the Holy Ghost....	308
	III The Holy Ghost given the Worthy.....	309
	IV The Holy Ghost will give Power to the Gentiles	310
Chapter XIII	RELIGIOUS DOCTRINES	311
	I The "Word" of God and His Commandments....	312
	I The "Word" of God	312
	II The Gospel and the Commandments of God	315
	II The Plan for Salvation	318
	I The Period of Probation	318
	II The Period of "Waiting"	325
	III The Resurrection	326
	IV The Restoration	329
	V The Redemption	330
	VI The Judgment	331
Chapter XIV	RELIGIOUS PRACTICES	335
	I Faith	336
	I Advice to the World on "Faith"	336
	II Faith is a pre-requisite to a belief in Christ	336
	III Examples of Faith among the Nephites	338
	IV The Use of "Signs" to strengthen Faith	340
	II Religious Organization — "The Church".....	344
	I His Church is called in His Name.....	344
	II The Nephites call Their Church after Christ	346
	III The Nephite "Church" Organization....	347
	IV "Members" of Christ's Church desig- nated	347
	V "Members" of Christ's Church recorded	348
	VI "Members" of Christ's Church will be Acknowledged by God	349
	III Religious Rituals	350
	I Abolution	350
	II Baptism	351
	III Blessing	356
	IV Circumcision	357
	V Confession	357
	VI Consecration	358
	VII Fasting	358
	VIII Mourning	359

CHAPTER	SUBJECT	PAGE
	IX Ordination	360
	X Prayer	360
	XI Repentance	361
	XII Sacrament	366
	XIII Sacrifice	367
	XIV Symbolic Rituals	369
	IV Religious Persecution	370
	I Religious Persecution among the Ne- phites	370
	II Religious Persecution among the Lam- anites	371
Chapter XV	RELIGIOUS LEADERS — Their Sermons, Prophecies, Revelations, and Miracles	373
	I Messengers of God's Word	376
	I Direct contact with God (or with Jesus Christ)	376
	II Indirect contact with God through the medium of Dreams, Visions, or Revela- tions	378
	III Angels	381
	IV Christ's Disciples on the Western Hemi- sphere	383
	V Seers	388
	VI Prophets	388
	VII Priests, Elders, and Teachers	393
	II Outstanding Characters of the <i>Book of Mormon</i>	396
	I Eight Outstanding Nephite Leaders.....	396
	III Great "Miracles" are performed on (or by) Out- standing Characters	400
	I Miracles are Manifestations of Faith— Examples	400
	1. The Lighted Stones of the Jared- ites	401
	2. The Miracle of the Sacred Com- pass	402
	3. Alma and Amulek in Prison.....	402
	4. Alma II and Zeezrom	403
	5. Ammon and the Flocks of the King	404
	6. Aaron and the King of the Lam- anites	404
	7. The 2000 Striplings of Ammon....	405
	8. Nephi and Lehi in Prison	406
	9. Samuel the Lamanite	408
	10. Nephi III	408
	11. Miracles of Jesus Christ	409
	12. The Three Nephites	410
	13. Miscellaneous Miracles	411

CHAPTER	SUBJECT	PAGE
IV	Visions, Prophecies, and Sermons of some Outstanding Teachers	412
	I Prophecies of Ether	412
	II Prophecies of Lehi	413
	III Vision of Lehi and Nephi	415
	IV Prophecies of Nephi I	417
	V King Benjamin's Prophecy and Sermon	418
	VI Prophecies of Abinadi	422
	VII Visions and Prophecies of Alma II.....	423
	VIII Prophecies of Nephi II	426
	IX Prophecies of Samuel, the Lamanite.....	430
Chapter XVI	TRADITIONS OF THE DEVIL AND OF "HELL"	433
	I The Devil and his Forces of Evil	434
	I The Devil and his Messengers	434
	II Idols and False Gods	438
	III False Churches and Wicked Organizations	440
	II Iniquity and Evil among Men	445
	I A Warning against Iniquity	445
	II Prosperity invites Iniquity	447
	III Success invites Iniquity	449
	IV Dogmatism invites Iniquity	451
	III The Punishment for Iniquity	452
	I "Hell" — Punishment for Iniquity.....	452
	II Earthly Punishment for Iniquity.....	453
	IV Examples of Wickedness and Contention among the Nephites	460
	I Contention is Iniquity	460
	II Contention in Jerusalem	460
	III Contention on the Western Hemisphere	460
	IV Skeptics and Dissenters	461
	V Fall of Nephites because of Iniquity.....	469
Chapter XVII	THE HOUSE OF ISRAEL — Tradition and Prophecy — According to the <i>Book of Mormon</i>	471
	I The House of Israel and the Jews	472
	I A "Branch" of Israel in Jerusalem.....	472
	II A "Branch" of Israel on the Western Hemisphere	474
	III Other "Branches" of Israel in the World	480
	IV The Gentiles may become members of the House of Israel	481
	II Prophecies of Isaiah	483
	I The Ancient Brass Plates contained Prophecies of Isaiah	483
	II Nephite Teachers quote Isaiah	483
	III A Few Prophecies of Isaiah	484

CHAPTER	SUBJECT	PAGE
III	The House of Israel compared to an Olive Tree, A Parable	486
IV	The <i>Bible</i> , the <i>Book of Mormon</i> , and Other Records of Israel	497
I	The <i>Bible</i>	497
II	Correlations between the <i>Bible</i> and the <i>Book of Mormon</i>	498
III	The <i>Book of Mormon</i>	500
IV	Other Records and Witnesses	509
V	All Records shall become One	510
THE CONCLUSION		513

THE APPENDIX

Appendix A	THE ORIGIN OF THE <i>BOOK OF MORMON</i>	517
I	The Origin of the <i>Book of Mormon</i>	517
I	A Brief History of Joseph Smith, Jr., and His Translation of the <i>Book of</i> <i>Mormon</i>	517
II	The Witnesses of the <i>Book of Mormon</i>	520
Appendix B	STATEMENTS BY THE AUTHOR	523
I	A Statement concerning the Origin of the <i>Book of Mormon Guide Book</i>	523
II	A Statement concerning the American Indian	525
Appendix C	THE GEOGRAPHY OF THE <i>BOOK OF MORMON</i> LANDS	527
(NOTE: See Chapter III for maps and discussion. The following quotations appear in sequence as found in the BOOK OF MORMON.)		
I	Outstanding Landmarks and Identifying Char- acteristics of the <i>Book of Mormon Lands</i>	528
I	The Narrow Strip of Wilderness.....	528
II	The River Sidon	528
III	The Wilderness of Hermounts	529
IV	The Narrow Neck of Land	530
V	The Hill Shim	531
VI	The Hill Cumorah	531

CHAPTER	SUBJECT	PAGE
VII	The Large Land Divisions of the <i>Book of Mormon</i>	531
	1. The Land of First Inheritance....	531
	2. The Land of Nephi	531
	3. The Land of Zarahemla	532
	4. The Land of Bountiful	532
	5. The Land of Desolation	533
	6. The Land of Moron	533
	7. The Land Northward	533
	8. The Land of Mulek and Lehi....	534
VIII	The Oceans or Seas	534
II	Migrations from the "Old World"	535
	I Jaredite Migration	535
	II Migrations of Lehi and Mulek	536
III	Migrations on the Promised Land.....	538
	I Migrations between Zarahemla and Nephi	538
	II Various Movements in Zarahemla and to the North	543
	1. Agitation of Nehor and Korihor	544
	2. Civil Strife	544
	3. Alma Travels and Preaches.....	545
	4. Lamanite Invasions	546
	5. Map Changes 71 B. C.	547
	6. Civil War	548
	7. Robber Invasions	548
	III Lamanite Invasions into Zarahemla (c. 71 B. C. - 25 B. C.)	549
	1. Into Eastern Zarahemla	549
	2. Into Southwestern Zarahemla	550
	3. Into Central Zarahemla	551
IV	The Land Northward	552
	I During the time of the Nephites and the Lamanites	555
	II During the time of the Jaredites.....	553
V	The Destruction of the Land at the time of the Great Cataclysm (The Crucifixion of Christ)	558
Appendix D	A CORRELATION SURVEY	561
	<i>(A statement by the author concerning the topography of the BOOK OF MORMON lands as compared to existing lands of the Western Hemisphere.)</i>	
THE INDEX	571

Preface

PART I

*INTRODUCTION

The *Book of Mormon* is an amazing book. Every verse is charged with valuable information. The total scope of the *Book* cannot be judged by one reading, but is gradually unfolded by continuous study. The surprising observation of those who have given the *Book of Mormon* serious consideration is that a large amount of new material may be discovered with each additional reading.

The reader may approach the study of the *Book of Mormon* from one of many angles: there is the story proper which recounts the history of certain ancient peoples on the Western Hemisphere; there is an account of intrigue and deceit that runs through the *Book* and which adds interest and color to the narrative; there is a large collection of scientific data, concerning architecture, archaeology, geography, etc., which is to be found incidentally included along with the history of the ancient peoples; and finally, there is a wealth of religious teaching, the content of which constitutes the most important single contribution of the *Book of Mormon*.

The *Book of Mormon* was translated in 1829 from a set of ancient plates which preserved (according to the ancient historians) the sacred history of Israel and which more especially preserved the history and the religious teachings of that branch of Israel who had originally settled upon the Western Hemisphere about 600 years before Christ. Because the ancient writers were concerned that their descendants might have this record with its message of the Great Atonement of Christ, many of their sermons were directed to these descendants as well as to the people of their own time. They taught that through faith, repentance, baptism, and the reception of the Holy Ghost, all mankind might be saved and might, therefore, find the one and only "way to eternal life." (This great message — the mission of the *Book of Mormon* — should be remembered at all times.) In their own words, the ancient teachers spoke "from the dust" to their descendants:

"For we labor diligently to write, to persuade, our children, and also our brethren, to believe in Christ, and to be reconciled to God;

"Wherefore these things shall go from generation to generation as long as the earth shall stand; and they shall go according to the will and the pleasure of God; and the nations who shall possess them shall be judged of them according to the words which are written."—(2N 25-91, verses 22 and 23)

The reader will soon discover that the *Book of Mormon* contains a great store of information which is unique and which is sufficiently challenging as to attract the attention and to enlist the consideration of the serious research student. A plan is suggested here to those who might desire a thorough understanding of the *Book*. The plan suggested is that after reading the *Book of Mormon* through, the best way to approach a comprehensive study of it is to concentrate upon one of its many phases. When the student is satisfied with the results of the study of that phase, another subject might be approached, etc. The "Book of Mormon Guide Book" has been written to help promote and to greatly simplify such a study. The author suggests that the *Book of Mormon* be used as a complement to the study of this volume; and that in case any controversial question arises, the *Book of Mormon* be consulted and its viewpoint be accepted as conclusive.*

*Note: The reader should keep in mind that this book is not an "official" document of the Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints, but is a "study" by the author of special phases of the *Book of Mormon*.

PART II

A BRIEF SYNOPSIS OF THE BOOK OF MORMON

Quotations from the *Book of Mormon* which appear in this volume will be better appreciated if a synopsis of that *Book* be read first. Such a brief preview follows:

The *Book of Mormon* tells of three migrations from the Old World to the Western Hemisphere. One occurred after the destruction of the "Tower" and the "Confusion of Tongues" (between 3500 B.C. and 2500 B.C. — perhaps at 2700 B.C.?) The people of this migration were called "Jaredites" by the later peoples who replaced them. The Jaredite culture was entirely destroyed by civil war, and the last remaining survivor, King Coriantumr, lived to see a new group of migrants arrive in his land. These new people who had left Jerusalem about 585 B.C., were known as the Mulekites since Mulek, son of King Zedekiah (Mulek may have been a child?), was a member of the party. During a period of some two hundred years, these people migrated southward upon the Western Hemisphere and established themselves in a land which they called Zarahemla after the name of the man who had led them. These people then became known as "the people of Zarahemla." (There is the chance that only a part of the people of Mulek, the "Mulekites," made this southern excursion.) Not long after establishing themselves in their new location, they were surprised by the arrival from the south of another people. The newcomers tribe called themselves "Nephites." Since it was discovered that the Nephites had also migrated from Jerusalem, there was much rejoicing between the two peoples. The Nephites told the people of Zarahemla of their migration to the "Promised Land" (the Western Hemisphere) under the guidance of Lehi. A small party of them had left Jerusalem about 600 B.C., having been warned of the Lord to depart. These people, then called the people of Lehi, arrived upon the shores of their Promised Land and were in the process of spreading northward when they were "discovered" by the Mulekites (the people of Zarahemla). After the meeting of the Mulekites and the Nephites, the two peoples united forces and were thereafter known as the "Nephites."

Most of the content of the *Book of Mormon* is concentrated upon the history of these Nephite peoples. It tells of the dissensions among the people from the time Lehi left Jerusalem (these dissensions started before the party of Lehi left the Holy Land) until their annihilation, 385 A.D. After Lehi's death, because he had given his "first blessing" to Nephi, his fourth son, the older

brothers of Nephi rebelled and forced Nephi and his followers to leave for other territory.

Eventually there evolved many tribes from these two factions of Lehi's party. The ancient historians adopted the tribal name of "Nephites" to all the followers of Nephi (and their descendants). To the descendants of the oldest brothers (Laman and Lemuel), the historians adopted the name "Lamanites." During the course of most of the history of these peoples in the *Book of Mormon*, the Nephites led righteous lives, while the Lamanites led lives of wickedness. The account carries, however, many examples which show that the Nephites often fell into iniquity and that the Lamanites enjoyed certain periods of righteousness.

The Nephites, who called upon their God for sustenance, were generally victorious in encounters with the Lamanites; but since they were not the aggressors, they were gradually pushed northward by their enemies. The Lamanites were angered and were jealous of the "power" of the Nephites' "God" and took every opportunity to force the Nephites to deny their God. In addition to pressure from without, the Nephites were constantly beset by internal contention and civil war. Many traitors arose, much bloodshed was caused, but the righteous voice of the people generally conquered.

The most miraculous event which occurred among the ancient peoples of the *Book of Mormon* was the Advent of Jesus Christ. His appearance on the Western Hemisphere, just following his Crucifixion and Ascension near Jerusalem, was preceded by a terrific cataclysm. It was during this occurrence that the lands of the Americas were subjected to such severe disturbances (earthquakes, volcanic eruptions, tidal waves, etc.) as to change the "face of the land."

For many years after this catastrophe and after the appearance of Christ on the Western Hemisphere, the peoples of the *Book of Mormon* cultures lived together in peace. Dissension and iniquity re-occurred, however, and the Nephites, who had all fallen now into transgression, were annihilated by their enemies. After the final destruction of the Nephites, only the idolatrous Lamanites were left to inhabit the land. The *Book of Mormon** concludes with a statement concerning these Lamanites: "---the whole face of this land is one continual round of murder and bloodshed, and no one knoweth the end of the war."

*(Note: For a discussion of the discovery of the ancient records by Joseph Smith and his translation of them into the *Book of Mormon*, see Appendix A; for a statement from the author concerning the origin of the "Book of Mormon Guide Book," see Appendix B; for a discussion of the geography of the lands of the *Book of Mormon*, see Appendix C; and for a correlation of the *Book of Mormon* lands and the lands of the Western Hemisphere, see Appendix D.)



*KEY TO REFERENCE SYMBOLS

(All references are from the Book of Mormon.)

Nephi	-	-	-	N
Jacob	-	-	-	J
Enos	-	-	-	Es
Jarom	-	-	-	Jm
Omni	-	-	-	O
Mormon	-	-	-	Mn
Mosiah	-	-	-	Mo
Alma	-	-	-	A
Helaman	-	-	-	H
Ether	-	-	-	E
Moroni	-	-	-	M
Words of Mormon				WoMn

1N 10-16 The reference number 1N 10-16 is interpreted: 1 Nephi, Chapter 10, page 16. (Each verse is quoted with the original verse number.)

c. (Cera^c)—This symbol means approximately or about. It refers to dates. (Most of the dates in this volume are taken from those suggested in the footnotes of the *Book of Mormon*. Modern scholars have suggested that the A.D. dates be set forward by one year to adjust the birthdate of Christ. If the reader chooses, he may make this suggested change.)

--- Omission of content. (Omission at the end of verses is seldom so marked.)

[] Brackets surround insertions which contain the words of the author.

E The reader should especially note references from Ether. Some of these references are quotations from ancient Jaredite history, and others are the words of the chronicler of that history, Moroni.

Note: "The Promised Land" is identified by the author as being on the Western Hemisphere. "The Land of Promise" and the "Western Hemisphere" are used interchangeably throughout this volume.

*The page numbers appearing with the reference symbols in this volume are from the 1920-1948 edition of the Book of Mormon. When using other editions, disregard the page numbers.



CHAPTER I

PROPHECIES

*TO THE PEOPLE OF THE "AMERICAS"

Prophecies which have been given to the House of Israel have not only influenced the destiny of the descendants of Israel, but have exerted a powerful directive force on all the peoples of the Western World who have embraced Christianity. Throughout the years, these prophecies have indirectly contributed to causes which have affected the mode of living and the pattern of thinking of a large part of the world's population.

This chapter presents a selection from the *Book of Mormon* of these prophecies which are especially concerned with the welfare of the inhabitants who live on "The Promised Land." The ancient peoples of the *Book of Mormon*, who identified themselves with the House of Israel, called the land to which they had been led by the power of the Lord, "The Promised Land" (or "The Land of Promise"). Since it is implied in the *Book* that the land referred to was located somewhere upon the Western Hemisphere, "The Promised Land," therefore, identifies itself with the "Americas."

The prophecies in this chapter cover events occurring over many thousands of years. Some were given by the ancient prophets to guide the conduct of the people during their own time; others foretold events relating to the Spanish Conquest; still others explain the difficult conditions of the present day; and finally, many of the prophecies are yet to be fulfilled. There is to be found among the words of these ancient teachers much sound logic which logic has the ageless quality of being practical today.

Any information vital to America should be of particular concern to Americans. (This statement is inclusive of all who live in the "Americas.") Therefore, these prophecies from the *Book of Mormon* should interest all who are "citizens" of the Western Hemisphere.

*For key to reference symbols, see page 2.

PART I

WORDS FROM THE PROPHETS OF OLD TO THE PEOPLE OF TODAY

I. VOICES FROM THE DUST

13. And now, ---all those who are of the house of Israel, and all ye ends of the earth, I speak unto you as the voice of one crying from the dust:

2N 33-107

35. Behold, I speak unto you as if ye were present, and yet ye are not. But behold, Jesus Christ hath shown you unto me,---

Mn 8-474

34. Behold, the Lord hath shown unto me great and marvelous things concerning that which must shortly come, at that day when these things shall come forth among you.

Mn 8-474

17. Therefore, when ye shall receive this record ye may know that the work of the Father has commenced upon all the face of the land.

E 4-486

14. And you that will not partake of the goodness of God, --- behold, I bid you an everlasting farewell, for these words shall condemn you at the last day.

15. For what I seal on earth, shall be brought against you at the judgment bar;

2N 33-107

27. And I exhort you to remember these things; for the time speedily cometh that ye shall know that I lie not, for ye shall see me at the bar of God; and the Lord God will say unto you: Did I not declare my words unto you, which were written by this man, like as one crying from the dead, yea, even as one speaking out of the dust?

28. I declare these things unto the fulfilling of the prophecies.

29. And God shall show unto you, that that which I have written is true.

M 10-521

30. Behold, I speak unto you as though I spake from the dead; for I know that ye shall hear my words.

Mn 9-477

23. Yea, behold I say unto you, that those saints who have gone before me, who have possessed this land, shall cry, yea, even from the dust will they cry unto the Lord; and as the Lord liveth he will remember the covenant which he hath made with them.

Mn 8-478

20. And they shall cry from the dust; yea, even repentance unto their brethren, even after many generations have gone by them.

2N 3-57

16. ---and their voice shall be as one that hath a familiar spirit ---even as it were out of the ground; and their speech shall whisper out of the dust.

2N 26-93

II. THE PURPOSE AND USE OF THE ANCIENT WRITINGS

18. And I, Nephi, have written these things unto my people, that perhaps I might persuade them that they would remember the Lord their Redeemer.

19. Wherefore, I speak unto all the house of Israel, if it so be that they should obtain these things.

1N 19-42

17. Therefore I write unto you, Gentiles, and also unto you, house of Israel, when the work shall commence, that ye shall be about to prepare to return to the land of your inheritance;

18. Yea, behold, I write unto all the ends of the earth; yea, unto you, twelve tribes of Israel,

Mn 3-465

13. And now behold, this was the desire which I desired---that the Lord God would preserve a record of my people, the Nephites; even if it so be the power of his holy arm, that it might be brought forth at some future day---

18. And the Lord said unto me: Thy fathers have also required of me this thing; and it shall be done unto them according to their faith; for their faith was like unto thine.

Es 1-126

12. And it may suffice if I only say they [the records] are preserved for a wise purpose, which purpose is known unto God; for he doth counsel in wisdom over all his works,

17. For he will fulfil all his promises which he shall make unto you, for he has fulfilled his promises which he has made unto our fathers.

18. For he promised unto them that he would reserve these things for a wise purpose in him that he might show forth his power unto future generations.

A 37-289

22. And it is by faith that my fathers have obtained the promise that these things should come unto their brethren through the Gentiles;

E 12-501

3. Now in this thing we do rejoice; and we labor diligently to engraven these words upon plates, hoping that our beloved brethren

and our children will receive them with thankful hearts, and look upon them that they may learn with joy and not with sorrow, neither with contempt, concerning their first parents. J 4-113

2. But whatsoever things we write upon anything save it be upon plates must perish and vanish away;

4. For, for this intent have we written these things, that they [our descendants] may know that we knew of Christ, and we had a hope of his glory many hundred years before his coming; and not only we ourselves had a hope of his glory, but also all the holy prophets which were before us. J 4-113

21. And also that ye may believe the gospel of Jesus Christ, which ye shall have among you; and also that the Jews, the covenant people of the Lord, shall have other witness besides him whom they saw and heard, that Jesus, whom they slew, was the very Christ and the very God.

22. And I would that I could persuade all ye ends of the earth to repent and prepare to stand before the judgment-seat of Christ. Mn 3-465

21. And he that shall breathe out wrath and strifes against the work of the Lord, and against the covenant people of the Lord who are the house of Israel, and shall say: We will destroy the work of the Lord, and the Lord will not remember his covenant which he hath made unto the house of Israel—the same is in danger to be hewn down and cast into the fire;

22. For the eternal purposes of the Lord shall roll on, until all his promises shall be fulfilled. Mn 8-478

12. --- [but] whoso receiveth this record, and shall not condemn it because of the imperfections which are in it, the same shall know of greater things than these. Behold, I am Moroni; and were it possible, I would make all things known unto you.

17. And if there be faults they be the faults of a man. But behold, we know no fault; nevertheless God knoweth all things; Mn 8-478

31. Condemn me not because of mine imperfection, neither my father, because of his imperfection, neither them who have written before him; but rather give thanks unto God that he hath made manifest unto you our imperfections, that ye may learn to be more wise than we have been. Mn 9-477

6. ---And now, if I do err, even did they err of old; not that I would excuse myself because of other men, but because of the weakness which is in me, according to the flesh, I would excuse myself. 1N 19-41

36. And [now] behold, these things which we have desired concerning our brethren, yea, even their restoration to the knowl-

edge of Christ, are according to the prayers of all the saints who have dwelt in the land.

37. And may the Lord Jesus Christ grant that their prayers may be answered according to their faith; and may God the Father remember the covenant which he hath made with the house of Israel; and may he bless them forever, through faith on the name of Jesus Christ. Amen.

Mn 9-478

PART II

THE PROMISED LAND

(The Americas)

(23. And it came to pass that after we had sailed for the space of many days we did arrive at the promised land; and we went forth upon the land, and did pitch our tents; and we did call it the promised land.

1N 19-40)

I. THE KING OF HEAVEN SHALL BE THE ONLY KING

14. For he that raiseth up a king against me shall perish, for I, the Lord, the king of heaven, will be their king, and I will be a light unto them forever, that hear my words.

2N 10-72

10. For behold, this is a land which is choice above all other lands; wherefore he that doth possess it shall serve God or shall be swept off; for it is the everlasting decree of God. And it is not until the fulness of iniquity among the children of the land, that they are swept off.

E 2-481

8. And he [the Lord] had sworn in his wrath that whoso should possess this land of promise, from that time henceforth and forever, should serve him the true and only god, or they should be swept off when the fulness of his wrath should come upon them.

E 2-481

20. And he hath said that: Inasmuch as ye shall keep my commandments ye shall prosper in the land; but inasmuch as ye will not keep my commandments ye shall be cut off from my presence.

2N 1-51

20. ---and he commanded that whoso should possess the land should possess it unto the Lord, or they should be destroyed.

E 9-494

2. ---he [Ether] truly told them all things, from the beginning of man; and that after the waters had receded from off the face of this land it became a choice land above all other lands, a chosen land of the Lord; wherefore the Lord would have that all men should serve him who dwell upon the face thereof;

E 13-508

14. And now, when I, Nephi, had heard these words, I remembered the words of the Lord which he spake unto me in the

wilderness, saying that: Inasmuch as thy seed shall keep my commandments, they shall prosper in the land of promise. 1N 4-8

10. But behold, this land, said God, shall be a land of thine inheritance, and the Gentiles [also] shall be blessed upon the land.

11. And this land shall be a land of liberty unto the Gentiles, and there shall be no kings upon the land,---

12. And I will fortify this land against all other nations.

13. And he that fighteth against Zion shall perish, saith God.

2N 10-72

11. And this cometh unto you, O ye Gentiles, that ye may know the decrees of God—that ye may repent, and not continue in your iniquities until the fulness come, that ye may not bring down the fulness of the wrath of God upon you as the inhabitants of the land have hitherto done.

12. Behold, this is a choice land, and whatsoever nation shall possess it shall be free from bondage, and from captivity, and from all other nations under heaven, if they will but serve the God of the land, who is Jesus Christ,---

E 2-481

II. THE LAND IS CHOICE ABOVE ALL OTHER LANDS

20. And thus the Lord did pour out his blessings upon this land, which was choice above all other lands;---

E 9-494

4. Wherefore, I, Lehi, prophesy according to the workings of the Spirit which is in me, that there shall none come into this land save they shall be brought by the hand of the Lord.

7. Wherefore, this land is consecrated unto---[them]whom he shall bring. And if it so be that they shall serve him according to the commandments which he hath given, it shall be a land of liberty unto them; wherefore, they shall never be brought down into captivity; if so, it shall be because of iniquity; for if iniquity shall abound cursed shall be the land for their sakes, but unto the righteous it shall be blessed forever.

8. [Lehi speaking about his people] And behold, it is wisdom that this land should be kept as yet from the knowledge of other nations; for behold, many nations would overrun the land, that there would be no place for an inheritance.

9. Wherefore, I, Lehi, have obtained a promise, that inasmuch as those whom the Lord God shall bring out of the land of Jerusalem shall keep his commandments, they shall prosper upon the face of this land; and they shall be kept from all other nations, that

they may possess this land unto themselves. And if it so be that they shall keep his commandments they shall be blessed upon the face of this land, and there shall be none to molest them, nor to take away the land of their inheritance; and they shall dwell safely forever.

10. But behold, when the time cometh that they shall dwindle in unbelief, after they have received so great blessings from the hand of the Lord---behold, I say, if the day shall come that they will reject the Holy One of Israel, the true Messiah, their Redeemer and their God, behold, the judgments of him that is just shall rest upon them.

11. Yea, he will bring other nations unto them, and he will give unto them power, and he will take away from them [the descendants of Lehi] the lands of their possessions, and he will cause them to be scattered and smitten. 2N 1-50

10. And it came to pass that the prophets of the Lord did threaten the people of Nephi, according to the word of God, that if they did not keep the commandments, but should fall into transgression, they should be destroyed from off the face of the land. Jm 1-128

16. And he said: Thus saith the Lord God---Cursed shall be the land, yea, this land, unto every nation, kindred, tongue, and people, unto destruction, which do wickedly, when they are fully ripe; and as I have said so shall it be; for this is the cursing and the blessing of God upon the land, for the Lord cannot look upon sin with the least degree of allowance. A 45-308

III. THE "PROMISED LAND" IS PROTECTED BY THE LORD

1. *THE LORD PROTECTS HIS PEOPLE.* (*His people are the house of Israel, and those who become "adopted" into the house of Israel. See Chapter XVII, Part I, Section IV.*) 14. And every nation which shall war against thee, O house of Israel, shall be turned one against another, and they shall fall into the pit which they digged to ensnare the people of the Lord. 1N 22-47

3. And all the nations that fight against Zion, and that distress her, shall be as a dream of a night vision;---yea, even so shall the multitude of all the nations be that fight against Mount Zion. 2N 27-95

15. Behold, they shall surely gather together against thee, not by me; whosoever shall gather together against thee shall fall for thy sake.

17. No weapon that is formed against thee shall prosper [atom bomb (?)]; and every tongue that shall rise against thee in judg-

ment thou shalt condemn. This is the heritage of the servants of the Lord, and their righteousness is of me, saith the Lord.

8N 22-445

16. Wherefore, he that fighteth against Zion, both Jew and Gentile, both bond and free, both male and female, shall perish; for they are they who are the whore of all the earth; for they who are not for me are against me, saith our God.

2N 10-72

2. THE NEPHITES REMEMBERED THEIR LORD. 1. Behold, now it came to pass that the people of Nephi were exceedingly rejoiced, because the Lord had again delivered them out of the hands of their enemies; therefore they gave thanks unto the Lord their God; yea, and they did fast much and pray much, and they did worship God with exceeding great joy.

A 45-807

3. But now, ye behold that the Lord is with us [Nephites]; and ye behold that he has delivered you [the enemy] into our hands. And now I would that ye should understand that this is done unto us because of our religion and our faith in Christ. And now ye see that ye cannot destroy this our faith.

4. Now ye see that this is the true faith of God; yea, ye see that God will support, and keep, and preserve us, so long as we are faithful unto him, and unto our faith, and our religion; and never will the Lord suffer that we shall be destroyed except we should fall into transgression and deny our faith.

A 44-305

3. AMERICA, REMEMBER THE LORD IN TIMES OF VICTORY. (*Note the warnings of the ancient people to those who forget their Lord.*) 11. See that ye are not lifted up unto pride; yea, see that ye do not boast in your own wisdom, nor of your much strength.

A 39-293

13. And because of this their great wickedness, and their boastings in their own strength, they were left in their own strength; therefore they did not prosper, but were afflicted and smitten, and driven before the Lamanites, until they had lost possession of almost all their lands.

A 4-367

1. And thus we can behold how false, and also the unsteadiness of the hearts of the children of men; yea, we can see that the Lord in his great infinite goodness doth bless and prosper those who put their trust in him.

2. Yea, and we may see at the very time when he doth prosper his people, yea, in the increase of their fields, their flocks and their herds, and in gold, and in silver, and in all manner of precious things of every kind and art; sparing their lives, and delivering them out of the hands of their enemies; softening the hearts of their

enemies that they should not declare wars against them; yea, and in fine, doing all things for the welfare and happiness of his people; yea, then is the time that they do harden their hearts, and do forget the Lord their God, and do trample under their feet the Holy One—yea, and this because of their ease, and their exceedingly great prosperity.

3. And thus we see that except the Lord doth chasten his people with many afflictions, yea, except he doth visit them with death and with terror, and with famine and with all manner of pestilence, they will not remember him.

4. O how foolish, and how vain, and how evil, and devilish, and how quick to do iniquity, and how slow to do good, are the children of men; yea, how quick to hearken unto the words of the evil one, and to set their hearts upon the vain things of the world!

H 12-388

IV. HISTORY REPEATS ITSELF, AMERICA!

1. *UPHOLD LIBERTY!* 17. ---he [Moroni I] named all the land which was south of the land Desolation, yea, and in fine, all the land, both on the north and on the south—A chosen land, and the land of liberty.

36. And it came to pass also, that he caused the title of liberty to be hoisted upon every tower which was in all the land, which was possessed by the Nephites; and thus Moroni planted the standard of liberty among the Nephites.

12. And it came to pass that he rent his coat, and he took a piece thereof, and wrote upon it—In memory of our God, our religion, and freedom, and our peace, our wives, and our children—and he fastened it upon the end of a pole.

A 46-310

4. And he did raise the standard of liberty in whatsoever place he did enter,---

5. And it came to pass that thousands did flock unto his standard, and did take up their swords in the defense of their freedom, that they might not come into bondage.

A 62-354

20. Behold, whosoever will maintain this title upon the land, let them come forth in the strength of the Lord, and enter into a covenant that they will maintain their rights, and their religion, that the Lord God may bless them.

21. And it came to pass that when Moroni [I] had proclaimed these words, behold, the people came running together with their armor girded about their loins, rending their garments in token, or as a covenant, that they would not forsake the Lord their God;

22. Now this was the covenant which they made, and they cast their garments at the feet of Moroni, saying: We covenant with our God, that we shall be destroyed, even as our brethren in the land northward, if we shall fall into transgression; yea, he may cast us at the feet of our enemies, even as we have cast our garments at thy feet to be trodden under foot, if we shall fall into transgression.

23. Moroni said unto them: Behold, we are a remnant of the seed of Jacob; yea, we are a remnant of the seed of Joseph, whose coat was rent by his brethren into many pieces; yea, and now behold, let us remember to keep the commandments of God, or our garments shall be rent by our brethren, and we be cast into prison, or be sold, or be slain.

24. Yea, let us preserve our liberty as a remnant of Joseph; yea, let us remember the words of Jacob, before his death, for behold, he saw that a part of the remnant of the coat of Joseph was preserved and had not decayed. And he said—Even as this remnant of garment of my son hath been preserved, so shall a remnant of the seed of my son be preserved by the hand of God, and be taken unto himself, while the remainder of the seed of Joseph shall perish, even as the remnant of his garment.

27. And now who knoweth but what the remnant of the seed of Joseph, which shall perish as his garment, are those who have dissented from us? Yea, and even it shall be ourselves if we do not stand fast in the faith of Christ.

A 46-811

2. **BE PREPARED!** 11. Behold, could ye suppose that ye could sit upon your thrones, and because of the exceeding goodness of God ye could do nothing and He would deliver you? Behold, if ye have supposed this ye have supposed in vain.

A 60-349

3. **GUARD DEMOCRACY!** (*Let not evil men with fine promises get into power.*) 17. For behold, how much iniquity doth one wicked king [or dictator, or president] cause to be committed, yea, and what great destruction!

21. And behold, now I say unto you, ye cannot dethrone an iniquitous king save it be through much contention, and the shedding of much blood.

22. For behold, he has his friends in iniquity, and he keepeth his guards about him; and he teareth up the laws of those who have reigned in righteousness before him; and he trampleth under his feet the commandments of God;

23. And he enacteth laws, and sendeth them forth among his people, yea, laws after the manner of his own wickedness; and whosoever doth not obey his laws he causeth to be destroyed; and whosoever doth rebel against him he will send his armies against

them to war, and if he can he will destroy them; and thus an unrighteous king doth pervert the ways of all righteousness.

Mo 29-192

9. Yea, and we also see the great wickedness one very wicked man can cause to take place among the children of men.

10. Yea, we see that Amalickiah, because he was a man of cunning device and a man of many flattering words, that he led away the hearts of many people to do wickedly; yea, and to seek to destroy the church of God, and to destroy the foundation of liberty---

A 46-810

4. **UPHOLD MORALITY, AMERICA!** (*The Nephite culture was invaded and overthrown because of iniquity. See Chapter IV, Part IV, Section VI.*)

27. And if the time comes that the voice of the people doth choose iniquity, then is the time that the judgments of God will come upon you; yea, then is the time he will visit you with great destruction even as he has hitherto visited this land.

Mo 29-193

5. **BEWARE OF TRAITORS, AMERICA!** (*The Nephites had little patience with traitors.*)

8. And it came to pass [Paanchi, the traitor] --- was taken, and was tried according to the voice of the people, and condemned unto death; for he had raised up in rebellion and sought to destroy the liberty of the people.

H 1-360

13. ---It is better that one man should perish than that a nation should dwindle and perish in unbelief.

1N 4-7

6. **BEWARE OF SECRET, AND ANTI-PATRIOTIC ORGANIZATIONS, AMERICA!** (*During the days of the ancient Nephites, there were societies which sought to overthrow the "standards of liberty"—even as there are similar organizations today! Profit, America, by the experience of the ancient people, whose land was nearly destroyed because of such societies. See Chapter V, Part III, Section VIII. See Chapter VI, Part IV, Section III. See Chapter XVI, Part I, Section III.*)

22. For behold, the Lord saw that his people began to work in darkness, yea, work secret murders and abominations; therefore the Lord said, if they did not repent they should be destroyed from off the face of the earth.

28. For behold, there is a curse upon this land, that destruction shall come upon all those workers of darkness, according to the powers of God, when they are fully ripe; therefore I desire that this people might not be destroyed.

A 37-290

25. I will bring forth out of darkness unto light all their secret works and their abominations; and except they repent I will destroy them from off the face of the earth; and I will bring to light all

their secrets and abominations, unto every nation that shall hereafter possess the land.

31. Yea, and cursed be the land forever and ever unto those workers of darkness and secret combinations, even unto destruction, except they repent before they are fully ripe. A 87-290

22. And whatsoever nation shall uphold such secret combinations, to get power and gain, until they shall spread over the nation, behold, they shall be destroyed; for the Lord will not suffer that the blood of his saints, which shall be shed by them, shall always cry unto him from the ground for vengeance upon them and yet he avenge them not.

23. Wherefore, O ye Gentiles, it is wisdom in God that these things should be shown unto you, that thereby ye may repent of your sins, and suffer not that these murderous combinations shall get above you,---and the work, yea, even the work of destruction come upon you, yea, even the sword of the justice of the Eternal God shall fall upon you, to your overthrow and destruction if ye shall suffer these things to be.

24. Wherefore, the Lord commandeth you, when you shall see these things come among you that ye shall awake to a sense of your awful situation, because of this secret combination which shall be among you;

25. For it cometh to pass that whoso buildeth it up seeketh to overthrow the freedom of all lands, nations, and countries; and it bringeth to pass the destruction of all people, for it is built up by the devil, who is the father of all lies; E 8-492

(These above statements apply to our civilization today. It seems odd that they should have been written in 420 A.D. and directed to us. Even in 1829 when Joseph Smith translated the records, our situation of the present day could not have been known!)

7. "INTERNATIONAL" ETHICS IN WARFARE. (*Not offensive, but defensive tactics were practiced by the ancient Nephites.*)

46. And they were doing that which they felt was the duty which they owed to their God; for the Lord had said unto them, and also unto their fathers, that: Inasmuch as ye are not guilty of the first offense, neither the second, ye shall not suffer yourselves to be slain by the hands of your enemies.

47. And again, the Lord has said that: Ye shall defend your families even unto bloodshed. Therefore for this cause were the Nephites contending with the Lamanites, to defend themselves, and their families, and their lands, their country, and their rights, and their religion. A 48-304

PART III

THE GREAT PROPHECY OF NEPHI I

(A preview of the history of the Western Hemisphere)

The prophecy of Nephi I is given here with the author's interpretations as to time and place. Where reference is made to another land other than the "Promised Land" (the Americas), such passages are marked. (For other prophecies, see Chapter XV, Part IV, and Chapter XVII.) The interpretations suggested by the author are given in the headings.

WARS OF THE ANCIENT PEOPLE ON THE WESTERN HEMISPHERE (600 B.C.—34 A.D.)

1. And it came to pass that the angel said unto me: Look, and behold thy seed, and also the seed of thy brethren. And I looked and beheld the land of promise; and I beheld multitudes of people, yea, even as it were in number as many as the sand of the sea.

2. And it came to pass that I beheld multitudes gathered together to battle, one against the other; and I beheld wars, and rumors of wars, and great slaughters with the sword among my people.

3. And it came to pass that I beheld many generations pass away, after the manner of wars and contentions in the land; and I beheld many cities, yea, even that I did not number them.

1N 12-20

THE GREAT CATACLYSM—AND THE COMING OF CHRIST TO THE "AMERICAS" (c. 34. A.D.)

4. And it came to pass that I saw a mist of darkness on the face of the land of promise; and I saw lightnings, and I heard thunders, and earthquakes, and all manner of tumultuous noises; and I saw the earth and the rocks, that they rent; and I saw mountains tumbling into pieces; and I saw the plains of the earth, that they were broken up; and I saw many cities that they were sunk; and I saw many that they were burned with fire; and I saw many that did tumble to the earth, because of the quaking thereof.

5. And it came to pass after I saw these things, I saw the vapor of darkness, that it passed from off the face of the earth; and behold, I saw multitudes who had fallen because of the great and terrible judgments of the Lord.

6. And I saw the heavens open, and the Lamb of God descending out of heaven; and he came down and showed himself unto them.

7. And I also saw and bear record that the Holy Ghost fell upon twelve others; and they were ordained of God, and chosen.

8. And the angel spake unto me saying: Behold the twelve disciples of the Lamb, who are chosen to minister unto thy seed.

9. And he said unto me: Thou rememberest the twelve apostles of the Lamb? Behold they are they who shall judge the twelve tribes of Israel; wherefore, the twelve ministers of thy seed shall be judged by them; for ye are of the house of Israel.

10. And these twelve ministers whom thou beholdest shall judge thy seed. And, behold, they are righteous forever; for because of their faith in the Lamb of God their garments are made white in his blood.

1N 12-20

NEPHITE HISTORY AFTER THE COMING OF CHRIST (34 A.D.—234 A.D.)

11. And the angel said unto me: Look! And I looked, and beheld three generations pass away in righteousness; and their garments were white even like unto the Lamb of God. And the angel said unto me: These are made white in the blood of the Lamb, because of their faith in him.

12. And I, Nephi, also saw many of the fourth generation who passed away in righteousness.

1N 12-21

THE NEPHITE CULTURE IS ANNIHILATED BY THE LAMANITES (385 A.D.)

13. And it came to pass that I saw the multitudes of the earth gathered together.

19. And while the angel spake these words, I beheld and saw that the seed of my brethren did contend against my seed, according to the word of the angel; and because of the pride of my seed, and the temptations of the devil, I beheld that the seed of my brethren did overpower the people of my seed.

20. And it came to pass that I beheld, and saw the people of the seed of my brethren that they had overcome my seed; and they went forth in multitudes upon the face of the land.

1N 12-21

THE LAMANITES WAR AMONG THEMSELVES

(c. 385—1500 A.D.)

21. And I saw them gathered together in multitudes; and I saw wars and rumors of wars among them; and in wars and rumors of wars I saw many generations pass away.

22. And the angel said unto me: Behold these shall dwindle in unbelief.

23. And it came to pass that I beheld, after they had dwindled in unbelief they became a dark, and loathsome, and a filthy people, full of idleness and all manner of abominations. 1N 12-21

EVENTS WHICH TOOK PLACE IN THE "OLD WORLD"

(c. 385—1500 A.D.)

1. And it came to pass that the angel spake unto me, saying: Look! And I looked and beheld many nations and kingdoms.

2. And the angel said unto me: What beholdest thou? And I said: I behold many nations and kingdoms.

3. And he said unto me: These are the nations and kingdoms of the Gentiles.

4. And it came to pass that I saw among the nations of the Gentiles the foundation of a great church.

5. And the angel said unto me: Behold the foundation of a church which is most abominable above all other churches, which slayeth the saints of God, yea, and tortureth them and bindeth them down, and yoketh them with a yoke of iron, and bringeth them down into captivity.

6. And it came to pass that I beheld this great and abominable church; and I saw the devil that he was the foundation of it.

7. And I also saw gold, and silver, and silks, and scarlets, and fine-twined linen, and all manner of precious clothing; and I saw many harlots.

8. And the angel spake unto me, saying: Behold the gold, and the silver, and the silks, and the scarlets, and the fine-twined linen, and the precious clothing, and the harlots, are the desires of this great and abominable church.

9. And also for the praise of the world do they destroy the saints of God, and bring them down into captivity. 1N 13-22

COLUMBUS

(c. 1492 A.D.)

10. And it came to pass that I looked and beheld many waters; and they divided the Gentiles from the seed of my brethren.

11. And it came to pass that the angel said unto me: Behold the wrath of God is upon the seed of thy brethren.

12. And I looked and beheld a man among the Gentiles, who was separated from the seed of my brethren by the many waters; and I beheld the Spirit of God, and it came down and wrought upon the man; and he went forth upon the many waters, even unto the seed of my brethren, who were in the promised land. 1N 13-22

THE SPANISH CONQUEST—THE LANDING OF THE PILGRIMS, AND OTHER MIGRATIONS FROM THE OLD WORLD TO THE NEW WORLD (c. 1500—1650 A.D.)

13. And it came to pass that I beheld the Spirit of God, that it wrought upon other Gentiles; and they went forth out of captivity, upon the many waters.

14. And it came to pass that I beheld many multitudes of the Gentiles upon the land of promise; and I beheld the wrath of God, that it was upon the seed of my brethren; and they were scattered before the Gentiles and were smitten.

15. And I beheld the Spirit of the Lord, that it was upon the Gentiles, and they did prosper and obtain the land for their inheritance; and I beheld that they were white, and exceeding fair and beautiful, like unto my people before they were slain.

16. And it came to pass that I, Nephi, beheld that the Gentiles who had gone forth out of captivity did humble themselves before the Lord; and the power of the Lord was with them. 1N 13-22

THE WARS OF INDEPENDENCE (BETWEEN THE OLD WORLD AND THE NEW WORLD) (c. 1775 A.D. and later)

17. And I beheld that their mother Gentiles were gathered together upon the waters, and upon the land also, to battle against them.

18. And I beheld that the power of God was with them, and also that the wrath of God was upon all those that were gathered together against them [the people on the promised land] to battle.

19. And I, Nephi, beheld that the Gentiles that had gone out of captivity were delivered by the power of God out of the hands of all other nations. 1N 13-22

THE SPANIARDS AND OTHER MIGRANTS TO THE NEW WORLD BRING THE BIBLE (c. 1500—1830 A.D.)

20. And it came to pass that I, Nephi, beheld that they did prosper in the land; and I beheld a book, and it was carried forth among them.

21. And the angel said unto me: Knowest thou the meaning of the book?

22. And I said unto him: I know not.

23. And he said: Behold it proceedeth out of the mouth of a Jew. And I, Nephi, beheld it; and he said unto me: The book that thou beholdest is a record of the Jews, which contains the covenants of the Lord, which he hath made unto the house of Israel; and it also containeth many of the prophecies of the holy prophets; and it is a record like unto the engravings which are upon the plates of brass [which the Nephites possessed], save there are not so many; nevertheless, they contain the covenants of the Lord, which he hath made unto the house of Israel; wherefore, they are of great worth unto the Gentiles.

24. And the angel of the Lord said unto me: Thou hast beheld that the book proceeded forth from the mouth of a Jew; and when it proceeded forth from the mouth of a Jew it contained the plainness of the gospel of the Lord, of whom the twelve apostles bear record; and they bear record according to the truth which is in the Lamb of God.

25. Wherefore, these things go forth from the Jews in purity unto the Gentiles, according to the truth which is in God.

26. And after they go forth by the hand of the twelve apostles of the Lamb, from the Jews unto the Gentiles, thou seest the foundation of a great and abominable church, which is most abominable above all other churches; for behold, they have taken away from the gospel of the Lamb many parts which are plain and most precious; and also many covenants of the Lord have they taken away.

27. And all this have they done that they might pervert the right ways of the Lord, that they might blind the eyes and harden the hearts of the children of men.

28. Wherefore, thou seest that after the book hath gone forth through the hands of the great abominable church, that there are many plain and precious things taken away from the book, which is the book of the Lamb of God.

29. And after these plain and precious things were taken away it goeth forth unto all the nations of the Gentiles; and after it goeth forth unto all the nations of the Gentiles, yea, even across the many waters which thou hast seen with the Gentiles which have gone forth out of captivity, thou seest—because of the many plain and

precious things which have been taken out of the book, ---an exceeding great many do stumble, yea, insomuch that Satan hath great power over them.

1N 13-28

THE UNITED STATES—AND OTHER COUNTRIES OF THE WESTERN HEMISPHERE (c. 1945 A.D.)

30. Nevertheless, thou beholdest that the Gentiles who have gone forth out of captivity, and have been lifted up by the power of God above all other nations, upon the face of the land which is choice above all other lands, which is the land that the Lord God hath covenanted with thy father that his seed should have for the land of their inheritance; wherefore, thou seest that the Lord God will not suffer that the Gentiles will utterly destroy the mixture of thy seed, which are among thy brethren.

31. Neither will he suffer that the Gentiles shall destroy the seed of thy brethren.

1N 13-24

THE BOOK OF MORMON

(The writings of the ancient people, 600 B. C.—420 A. D., together with the more ancient writings which they possessed, were translated into "The Book of Mormon" published in 1830 A.D.)

35. For, behold, saith the Lamb: I will manifest myself unto thy seed, that they shall write many things which I shall minister unto them, which shall be plain and precious; and after thy seed shall be destroyed, and dwindle in unbelief, and also the seed of thy brethren, behold these things shall be hid up, to come forth unto the Gentiles, by the gift and power of the Lamb.

34. ---I will be merciful unto the Gentiles in that day, insomuch that I will bring forth unto them, in mine own power, much of my gospel, which shall be plain and precious saith the Lamb.

37. And blessed are they who shall seek to bring forth my Zion at that day, for they shall have the gift and the power of the Holy Ghost; and if they endure unto the end they shall be lifted up at the last day, and shall be saved in the everlasting kingdom of the Lamb; and whoso shall publish peace, yea, tidings of great joy, how beautiful upon the mountains shall they be.

1N 13-24

THE BIBLE, THE BOOK OF MORMON, AND OTHER BOOKS (1830 A.D. and later)

38. And it came to pass that I beheld the remnant of the seed of my brethren, and also the book of the Lamb of God, which had proceeded forth from the mouth of the Jew, that it came forth from the Gentiles unto the remnant of the seed of my brethren.

39. And after it had come forth unto them I beheld other books, which came forth by the power of the Lamb, from the Gentiles unto them, unto the convincing of the Gentiles and the remnant of the seed of my brethren, and also the Jews who were scattered upon all the face of the earth, that the records of the prophets and of the twelve apostles of the Lamb are true.

40. And the angel spake unto me saying: These last records, which thou hast seen among the Gentiles, shall establish the truth of the first, which are of the twelve apostles of the Lamb, and shall make known the plain and precious things which have been taken away from them; and shall make known to all kindreds, tongues, and people, that the Lamb of God is the Son of the Eternal Father, and the Savior of the world; and that all men must come unto him, or they cannot be saved.

41. And they must come according to the words which shall be established by the mouth of the Lamb; and the words of the Lamb shall be made known in the records of thy seed, as well as in the records of the twelve apostles of the Lamb; wherefore they both shall be established in one; for there is one God and one Shepherd over all the earth.

42. And the time cometh that he shall manifest himself unto all nations, both unto the Jews and also unto the Gentiles, then he shall manifest himself unto the Gentiles and also unto the Jews, and the last shall be first, and the first shall be last. 1N 13-24

CONCERNING THE RELIGIONS, THE WARS, AND THE FATE OF THE WORLD IN THE "LAST DAYS" (c. 1830 A.D. and later)

1. And it shall come to pass, that if the Gentiles shall hearken unto the Lamb of God in that day that he shall manifest himself unto them in word, and also in power, in very deed, unto the taking away of their stumbling blocks—

2. And [if they] harden not their hearts against the Lamb of God, they shall be numbered among the seed of thy father; yea, they shall be numbered among the house of Israel; and they shall be a blessed people upon the promised land forever; they shall be no more brought down into captivity; and the house of Israel shall no more be confounded.

3. And that great pit, which hath been digged for them by that great and abominable church, which was founded by the devil and his children, that he might lead away the souls of men down to hell—yea, that great pit which hath been digged for the destruction of men shall be filled by those who digged it, unto their utter destruction, saith the Lamb of God; not the destruction of the soul, save it be the casting of it into the hell which hath no end.

5. And it came to pass that the angel spake unto me, Nephi, saying: Thou hast beheld that if the Gentiles repent it shall be well with them; and thou also knowest concerning the covenants of the Lord unto the house of Israel; and thou also hast heard that whoso repenteth not must perish.

6. Therefore, wo be unto the Gentiles if it so be that they harden their hearts against the Lamb of God.

7. For the time cometh, saith the Lamb of God, that I will work a great and a marvelous work among the children of men; a work which shall be everlasting, either on the one hand or on the other—either to the convincing of them unto peace and life eternal, or unto the deliverance of them to the hardness of their hearts and the blindness of their minds unto their being brought down into captivity, and also into destruction, both temporally and spiritually, according to the captivity of the devil, of which I have spoken.

8. And it came to pass that when the angel had spoken these words, he said unto me: Remember thou the covenants of the Father unto the house of Israel? I said unto him, Yea.

10. And he said unto me: Behold there are save two churches only; the one is the church of the Lamb of God, and the other is the church of the devil; wherefore, whoso belongeth not to the church of the Lamb of God belongeth to that great church, which is the mother of abominations; and she is the whore of all the earth.

11. And it came to pass that I looked and beheld the whore of all the earth, and she sat upon many waters; and she had dominion over all the earth, among all nations, kindreds, tongues, and people.

12. And it came to pass that I beheld the church of the Lamb of God, and its numbers were few, because of the wickedness and abominations of the whore who sat upon many waters; nevertheless, I beheld that the church of the Lamb, who were the saints of God, were also upon all the face of the earth; and their dominions upon the face of the earth were small, because of the wickedness of the great whore whom I saw.

13. And it came to pass that I beheld that the great mother of abominations did gather together multitudes upon the face of all the earth, among all the nations of the Gentiles, to fight against the Lamb of God.

14. And it came to pass that I, Nephi, beheld the power of the Lamb of God, that it descended upon the saints of the church of the Lamb, and upon the covenant people of the Lord, who were

scattered upon all the face of the earth; and they were armed with righteousness and with the power of God in great glory.

15. And it came to pass that I beheld that the wrath of God was poured out upon the great and abominable church, insomuch that there were wars and rumors of wars among all the nations and kindreds of the earth.

17. And when the day cometh that the wrath of God is poured out upon the mother of harlots, which is the great and abominable church of all the earth, whose foundation is the devil, then at that day, the work of the Father shall commence, in preparing the way for the fulfilling of his covenants, which he hath made to his people who are of the house of Israel.

1N 14-25

THE PROPHECIES OF JOHN IN THE NEW TESTAMENT (c. 1—50 A.D.)

18. And it came to pass that the angel spake unto me, saying: Look!

19. And I looked and beheld a man, and he was dressed in a white robe.

20. And the angel said unto me: Behold one of the twelve apostles of the Lamb.

21. Behold, he shall see and write the remainder of these things; yea, and also many things which have been.

22. And he shall also write concerning the end of the world.

27. And I, Nephi, heard and bear record, that the name of the apostle of the Lamb was John, according to the word of the angel.

23. Wherefore, the things which he shall write are just and true; and behold they are written in the book which thou beheld proceeding out of the mouth of the Jew;—

24. And behold, the things which this apostle of the Lamb shall write are many things which thou hast seen; and behold, the remainder shalt thou see.

28. And behold, I, Nephi, am forbidden that I should write the remainder of the things which I saw and heard; wherefore the things which I have written sufficeth me; and I have written but a small part of the things which I saw.

26. And also others who have been, to them hath he shown all things, and they have written them; and they are sealed up to come forth in their purity, according to the truth which is in the Lamb, in the own due time of the Lord, unto the house of Israel.

30. And now I make an end of speaking concerning the things which I saw while I was carried away in the spirit; and if all the things which I saw are not written, the things which I have written are true. And thus it is. Amen.

1N 14-27

PART IV

IDENTIFYING THE "LAST DAYS"

Certain characteristics were given
by the ancient Nephite prophets
to distinguish the "Last Days."
(See Part III, of this Chapter.)

I. THE LAST DAYS ARE HERE!

1. And verily I say unto you, I give unto you a sign, that ye may know the time when these things shall be about to take place—that I shall gather in, from their long dispersion, my people, O house of Israel, and shall establish again among them my Zion;

2. And behold, this is the thing which I will give unto you for a sign---

3. Verily, verily, I say unto you, when these things shall be made known unto them [the Gentiles] of the Father, and shall come forth of the Father, from them unto you [the descendants of Lehi—also known as Lamanites—to be found among the American Indians at the present day];

3N 21-442

26. ---then shall the work of the Father commence at that day, even when this gospel shall be preached among the remnant of this people. Verily I say unto you, at that day shall the work of the Father commence among all the dispersed of my people, yea, even the tribes which have been lost, which the Father hath led away out of Jerusalem.

3N 21-444

23. And they [the Gentiles] shall assist my people, the remnant of Jacob [the Lamanites], and also as many of the house of Israel as shall come, that they may build a city, which shall be called the New Jerusalem.

24. And then shall they assist my people that they may be gathered in, who are scattered upon all the face of the land, in unto the New Jerusalem.

25. And then shall the power of heaven come down among them; and I also will be in the midst.

27. Yea, the work shall commence among all the dispersed of my people, with the Father, to prepare the way whereby they may come unto me, that they may call on the Father in my name.

28. Yea, and then shall the work commence, with the Father, among all nations, in preparing the way whereby his people may be gathered home to the land of their inheritance.

29. And they shall go out from all nations; and they shall not go out in haste, nor go by flight, for I will go before them, saith the Father, and I will be their rearward. 8N 21-444

1. And now behold, I say unto you that when the Lord shall see fit, in his wisdom, that these sayings shall come unto the Gentiles according to his word, then ye may know that the covenant which the Father hath made with the children of Israel, concerning their restoration to the lands of their inheritance, is already beginning to be fulfilled.

2. And ye may know that the words of the Lord, which have been spoken by the holy prophets, shall all be fulfilled; and ye need not say that the Lord delays his coming unto the children of Israel.

3. And ye need not imagine in your hearts that the words which have been spoken are vain, for behold, the Lord will remember his covenant which he hath made unto his people of the house of Israel.

4. And when ye shall see these sayings coming forth among you, then ye need not any longer spurn at the doings of the Lord, for the sword of his justice is in his right hand; and behold, at that day, if ye shall spurn at his doings he will cause that it shall soon overtake you. 8N 29-454

7. And when these things come to pass that thy seed [the Lamanites] shall begin to know these things—it shall be a sign unto them, that they may know that the work of the Father hath already commenced unto the people who are the house of Israel. 8N 21-442

II. WORDS TO THE JEWS, TO THE LAMANITES, AND TO THE OTHER TRIBES OF ISRAEL (See Chapters XV and XVII)

1. *WORDS TO THE JEWS and OTHER TRIBES OF ISRAEL.*

12. Now these things are written unto the remnant of the house of Jacob and they are written after this manner,---and they are to be hid up unto the Lord that they may come forth in his own due time. Mn 5-468

14. And behold, they shall go unto the unbelieving of the Jews; and for this intent shall they go—that they may be persuaded that Jesus is the Christ, the Son of the living God; that the Father may bring about, through his most Beloved, his great and eternal purpose, in restoring the Jews, or all the house of Israel, to the land of

their inheritance, which the Lord their God hath given them unto the fulfilling of his covenant;

Mn 5-468

15. Behold, when ye shall rend that veil of unbelief which doth cause you to remain in your awful state of wickedness, and hardness of heart, and blindness of mind, then shall the great and marvelous things which have been hid up from the foundation of the world from you—yea, when ye shall call upon the Father in my name, with a broken heart and a contrite spirit, then shall ye know that the Father hath remembered the covenant which he made unto your fathers, O house of Israel.

16. And then shall my revelations which I have caused to be written by my servant John be unfolded in the eyes of all the people. Remember, when ye see these things, ye shall know that the time is at hand that they shall be made manifest in very deed.

17. *Therefore, when ye shall receive this record ye may know that the work of the Father has commenced upon all the face of the land.*

E 4-486

2. **WORDS TO THE LAMANITES.** 1. And now, behold, I would speak somewhat unto the remnant of this people [the Lamanites] who are spared, if it so be that God may give unto them my words, that they may know of the things of their fathers;

2. Know ye that ye are of the house of Israel.

3. Know ye that ye must come unto repentance, or ye cannot be saved.

8. Therefore repent, and be baptized in the name of Jesus, and lay hold upon the gospel of Christ, which shall be set before you, not only in this record [the Book of Mormon] but also in the record [the Bible] which shall come unto the Gentiles from the Jews, which record shall come from the Gentiles unto you.

9. For behold, this is written for the intent that ye may believe that; and if ye believe that ye will believe this also; and if ye believe this ye will know concerning your fathers, and also the marvelous works which were wrought by the power of God among them.

Mn 7-471

III. WORDS TO THE GENTILES

(The threat is given that if the Gentiles reject the gospel and fall into transgression, the people of Jacob [the Lamanites and others of Israel] will subdue them.)

1. Hearken, O ye Gentiles, and

hear the words of Jesus Christ, the Son of the living God, which he hath commanded me that I should speak concerning you, 3N 80-455

35. ---behold, Jesus Christ hath shown you unto me, and I know your doing.

36. And I know that ye [Gentiles] do walk in the pride of your hearts; and there are none save a few only who do not lift themselves up in the pride of their hearts, unto the wearing of very fine apparel, unto envying, and strifes, and malice, and persecutions, and all manner of iniquities; and your churches, yea, even every one, have become polluted because of the pride of your hearts.

38. ---why have ye polluted the holy church of God? Why are ye ashamed to take upon you the name of Christ?

37. For behold, ye do love money, and your substance, and your fine apparel, and the adorning of your churches, more than ye love the poor and the needy, the sick and the afflicted. Mn 8-474

22. Yea, and I say unto you that if it were not for the prayers of the righteous, who are now in the land, that ye would even now be visited with utter destruction;

23. ---if ye will cast out the righteous from among you [therefore], then will not the Lord stay his hand; but in his fierce anger he will come out against you; then ye shall be smitten by famine, and by pestilence, and by the sword; and the time is soon at hand except ye repent. A 10-220

10. And thus commandeth the Father that I should say unto you: At the day when the Gentiles shall sin against my gospel, and shall be lifted up in the pride of their hearts above all nations, and above all the people of the whole earth, and shall be filled with all manner of lyings, and of deceits, and of mischiefs, and all manner of hypocrisy, and murders, and priestcrafts, and whoredoms, and of secret abominations; and if they shall do all those things, and shall reject the fulness of my gospel, behold, saith the Father, I will bring the fulness of my gospel from among them. [Is he speaking of the Western Hemisphere or of the world?]

15. ---if they [the Gentiles] will not turn unto me, and hearken unto my voice,---I will suffer my people, O house of Israel, that they shall go through among them, and shall tread them down, and they shall be as salt that hath lost its savor which is thenceforth good for nothing but to be cast out, and to be trodden under foot of my people, O house of Israel. 3N 16-431

24. Therefore, repent ye, [O ye Gentiles] and humble yourselves before him, lest he shall come out in justice against you—lest a remnant of the seed of Jacob shall go forth among you as a lion, and tear you in pieces, and there is none to deliver. Mn 5-469



CHAPTER II

THE ANCIENT RECORDS

*SOURCE OF THE BOOK OF MORMON

Though the *Book of Mormon* is primarily a religious document, it also presents the historical background of several outstanding ancient cultures of the Western Hemisphere. The records, sacred and historic, from which the *Book of Mormon* was translated were a product of these ancient cultures and were written by the ancient Jaredite and Nephite peoples. It is well to consider the source of the ancient records, as well as the manner in which they were maintained, transferred, and preserved. This chapter presents an analysis, classification, and tabulation of data pertaining to this subject. Given in this chapter, also, are charts which trace the methods by which these ancient writers compiled, abridged, and translated their own and other records. A list of these ancient historians, arranged according to sequence, is also included in the following pages.

Scattered throughout the *Book of Mormon* are references to the ancient records and to the ancient writers. Since it is difficult when reading the *Book* to secure a clear, concise concept of this subject, the author has compiled and presents here material relevant to a better understanding of these ancient writings. A close study of this presentation should inspire many conscientious and enthusiastic students to enlist in further research in the field of language (phonetics, dialectal correlations, hieroglyphics, etc.), considering in their study the ancient peoples of the Western Hemisphere as well as their now existing descendants. Such studies should do much to vitalize the concept of the *Book of Mormon*, and to promote a better general understanding and appreciation of that *Book*. (See Chapter IX, Part I and Part II, "Language" and "Vocabulary," and Part III, "Writing.")

*For key to reference symbols, see page 2.

CHART 1

*HISTORIC PLATES AND RECORDS MENTIONED IN THE BOOK OF MORMON

NAME OF RECORD	CONTENT OF RECORD	APPROXIMATE DATE COVERED
Writing of the brother of Jared	"The Lord—showed unto the brother of Jared all the inhabitants of the earth, which had been and also all that would be." "There never were greater things made manifest than those—." (Written and sealed up by the brother of Jared.)	(Between 3500-2500 B.C. probably about 2700 B.C.?)
24 Gold Plates of Ether	Record of the Jaredites, who came to the Western Hemisphere just after the destruction of the "Tower" and the "Confusion of Tongues." The record includes data from the time of the Creation.	(?) to 585 B.C.
Engraved Stone	Record of Jaredites, especially of one Coriantumr, his genealogy, and his people.	(620 to 585 B.C.?)
The Brass Plates (of Laban)	A record of the Jews "from the beginning" down to the commencement of the reign of King Zedekiah. (Brought from Jerusalem to the Western Hemisphere by Lehi and his people.)	(?) to 600 B.C.
Record of Lehi	Visions, prophecies, and the genealogy of Lehi, (apparently written in Jerusalem and on the Western Hemisphere. This record was abridged by Lehi's son, Nephi, and included in the Plates of Nephi.)	(600?) to 589 B.C.
Plates of Nephi (Large)	Record of Nephite "reigns of the Kings," wars, civil and political strife.	589 B.C. to 385 A.D.
Plates of Nephi (Small)	(Also called Book of Nephi.) A record of the sacred and religious history of the Nephites.	589 B.C. to 385 A.D.
Record of Zarahemla	Record of the People of Zarahemla from the time King Zedekiah was carried captive to Babylon, until their meeting with the Nephites. Genealogy of Zarahemla given to Mosiah I. (Possibly recorded on the large Plates of Nephi—not translated by Joseph Smith nor included in the Book of Mormon.)	585 B.C. to 200 A.D.

NAME OF RECORD	CONTENT OF RECORD	APPROXIMATE DATE COVERED
Record of Zeniff	Record of three generations of Nephites from Zarahemla (during the reigns of Zeniff, Noah, and Limhi) while they sojourned in the Land of Nephi. (Records brought back to Zarahemla by People of Limhi and included in the Large Plates of Nephi[?])	200 to 122 B.C.
Record of Alma	Record of Alma, former priest of King Noah, who fled from Nephi with a righteous group of Nephites, and eventually returned to Zarahemla. (Included in Large Plates of Nephi.)	148 to 122 B.C.
Records of "The Land Northward"	History of the Nephites and the Lamanites who left Zarahemla and Bountiful and traveled to the far north. Records kept in many types of books. (Not translated by Joseph Smith nor included in Book of Mormon.)	55 B.C. to 385 A.D.
Plates of Mormon	(Mormon made entries on the Plates of Nephi before making his own plates.) 1. Words of Mormon (introduction to No. 2, following) 2. Abridged history of the Nephites taken from the Large Plates of Nephi. (Note: Abridgement is in two sets from Nephi I to King Benjamin [c. 130 B.C.] and from King Benjamin to Ammaron. The last set was deposited with the small plates of Nephi [which contained many words of Nephi I and recorded religious history from Jacob to King Benjamin], and with the plates of of Mormon.) 3. Plates of Mormon (size of small plates of Nephi)— a record of the final years of the Nephites. (These plates were finished by Mormon's son, Moroni.)	334 to 385 A.D. 600 B.C. to 320 A.D. 334 to 385 A.D. 385 to 400 A.D.
Plates of Moroni	1. Moroni II finished record of his father, Mormon, (see Plates of Mormon No. 3, above). 2. Record of the Jaredites, known as the Book of Ether (abridged from the 24 Gold Plates of Ether by Moroni II). A copy of the sealed writings of the brother of Jared, was included on these plates by Moroni, and sealed up by him (see first entry on this chart.) 3. Plates of Moroni, known as the "Book of Moroni." Rites of baptism, the sacrament, etc., explained.	(?) to 585 B.C. 400 to 421 A.D.

¹For additional information, see Charts 2, 3, 4 and 5.

PART I

THE HISTORIC RECORDS

I. THE RECORDS OF THE JAREDITES

(The Jaredites were the earliest people on the "Promised Land" as recorded by the Book of Mormon. They were recorded as appearing on the Western Hemisphere soon after the destruction of the "Great Tower," and the "Confusion of Tongues.") 1. And now I, Moroni, proceed to give an account of those ancient inhabitants who were destroyed by the hand of the Lord upon the face of this north country. E 1-478

1. *WRITINGS OF THE BROTHER OF JARED.* (*A sealed record—part of the 24 Gold Plates of Ether. See Chart 2.*)

11. And the Lord said unto him [the brother of Jared]: Believest thou the words which I shall speak?

12. And he answered: Yea, Lord, I know that thou speakest the truth, for thou art a God of truth---

25. And when the Lord had said these words, he showed unto the brother of Jared all the inhabitants of the earth which had been, and also all that would be; and he withheld them not from his sight, even unto the ends of the earth.

26. For he [the Lord] had said unto him in times before, that if he would believe in him that he could show unto him all things---therefore the Lord could not withhold anything from him, for he knew that the Lord could show him all things.

27. And the Lord said unto him: Write these things and seal them up; and I will show them in mine own due time unto the children of men. E 3-483

1. And the Lord commanded the brother of Jared to go down out of the mount from the presence of the Lord, and write the things which he had seen; and they were forbidden to come unto the children of men until after that he should be lifted up upon the cross; E 4-485

21. And it came to pass that the Lord said unto the brother of Jared: Behold, thou shalt not suffer these things which ye have seen and heard to go forth unto the world, until the time cometh that I shall glorify my name in the flesh; E 3-484

CHART 2

JAREDATE RECORDS

ORIGINAL WRITINGS	1ST SECONDARY WRITING	2ND SECONDARY WRITING	3RD SECONDARY WRITING	ENGLISH TRANSLATION
1. Revelations of brother of Jared (about 2700 B.C.) (scaled) (In an unknown language — probably cuniform characters on metal [or clay] plates?)	Copied on 24 Gold Plates of Ether	Ether's plates telling of revelation of brother of Mosiah II into the language of Nephites (scaled) Unsealed at time of Christ at his command.	Mosiah's translation scaled up by Moroni II. *Scaled portion of the Gold Plates of Ether copied by Moroni II on his "Book of Ether" plates and resealed.	Remained sealed and not translated.
2. A record of pre-Tower people of Babylon, from the time of Creation. 3. Historical record of the brother of Jared. (About 2700 B.C.) 4. The records of the Jaredites (from 2700 to 580 B.C. approx.) 5. The prophecies and historical record of Ether (about 600 to 585 B.C.)	Copied on 24 Gold Plates of Ether	Translated and recorded by Mosiah II (about 91 B.C.) from the gold plates into the language of the Nephites.	*24 Gold Plates of Ether abridged by Moroni to form Book of Ether (about 420 A.D.)	Book of Ether translated by Joseph Smith (about 1829 A.D.)
6. The Stone inscription of Coriantumr (about 620-585 B.C.)	Translated by Mosiah I into language of the Nephites (c. 200 B.C.)	Briefly summarized by Mormon (c. 350 A.D.) from the writings of Amaleki.		Mormon's Summarization translated by Joseph Smith (c. 1829 A.D.)

*There is the possibility that Moroni II copied the sealed portion, and abridged the unsealed portion of the 24 Gold Plates of Ether, from the translation of Mosiah II. The Book of Mormon states, however, that the work of Moroni was taken from the original Gold Plates of Ether.

22. ---ye shall write them and shall seal them up, that no one can interpret them; for ye shall write them in a language that they cannot be read.

23. *And behold, these two stones will I give unto thee, and ye shall seal them up also with the things which ye shall write.*

24. For behold, the language which ye shall write I have confounded; wherefore I will cause in my own due time that these stones shall magnify to the eyes of men these things which ye shall write. E 3-484

4. Behold, I [Moroni] have written upon these plates the very things which the brother of Jared saw; and there never were greater things made manifest than those which were made manifest unto the brother of Jared. E 4-485

2. And I take mine account from the twenty and four plates which were found by the people of Limhi, which is called the "Book of Ether." E 1-478

5. Wherefore the Lord hath commanded me to write them; and I have written them. And he commanded me that I should seal them up; and he also hath commanded that I should seal up the interpretation thereof; wherefore I have sealed up the interpreters, according to the commandment of the Lord.

6. For the Lord said unto me: They shall not go forth unto the Gentiles until the day that they shall repent of their iniquity, and become clean before the Lord.

7. And in that day that they shall exercise faith in me, saith the Lord, even as the brother of Jared did, that they may become sanctified in me, then will I manifest unto them the things which the brother of Jared saw, even to the unfolding unto them all my revelations, saith Jesus Christ,---

8. And he that will contend against the word of the Lord, let him be accursed; and he that shall deny these things, let him be accursed; for unto them will I show no greater things, saith Jesus Christ; for I am he who speaketh. E 4-485

2. *THE 24 GOLD PLATES OF ETHER.* (These plates were found by the people of Limhi, were translated by Mosiah II, and were abridged by Moroni II. See "Jaredite Migrations," Chapter IV. See Chart 2.) 33. And the Lord spake unto Ether, and said unto him: Go forth. And he went forth, and beheld that the words of the Lord had all been fulfilled; and he finished his record; (and the hundredth part I have not written) and he hid them in a manner that the people of Limhi did find them. E 15-509

(1. *How the people of Limhi found the 24 Gold Plates of Ether.*)

7. And the king [Limhi] said unto him [Ammon]: Being grieved for the afflictions of my people, I caused that forty and three of my people should take a journey into the wilderness, that thereby they might find the land of Zarahemla, that we might appeal unto our brethren to deliver us out of bondage.

8. And they were lost in the wilderness for the space of many days, yet they were diligent, and found not the land of Zarahemla but returned to this land, having traveled in a land among many waters, having discovered a land which was covered with bones of men, and of beasts, and was also covered with ruins of buildings of every kind, having discovered a land which had been peopled with a people who were as numerous as the hosts of Israel.

9. And for a testimony that the things that they had said are true they have brought twenty-four plates which are filled with engravings, and they are of pure gold.

Mo 8-150

27. And they brought a record with them, even a record of the people whose bones they had found; and it was engraven on plates of ore.

Mo 21-176

9. ---they have brought twenty-four plates which are filled with engravings, and they are of pure gold.

Mo 8-150

10. And behold, also, they have brought breastplates, which are large, and they are of brass and of copper, and are perfectly sound.

11. And again, they have brought swords, the hilts thereof have perished, and the blades thereof were cankered with rust;

12. And I say unto thee---: Knowest thou of any one that can translate? ---perhaps, they [the records] will give us a knowledge of this very people who have been destroyed; and I am desirous to know the cause of their destruction.

13. Now Ammon said unto him: I can assuredly tell thee, O king, of a man that can translate the records; for he has wherewith that he can look, and translate all records that are of ancient date; and it is a gift from God. And the *things are called interpreters*, and no man can look in them except he be commanded, lest he should look for that he ought not and he should perish. And whosoever is commanded to look in them, the same is called seer. [How did Mosiah II get the interpreters, since they have not been mentioned before as being in the possession of the Nephites. Did he receive them from the Mulekites, who in turn received them from Coriantumr? Then again, they may have been found with the stone of Coriantumr?]

19. And now, when Ammon had made an end of speaking these words the king rejoiced exceedingly, and gave thanks to God saying: Doubtless a great mystery is contained within these plates, and these

interpreters were doubtless prepared for the purpose of unfolding all such mysteries to the children of men. Mo 8-150

11. ---[Mosiah II] translated and caused to be written the records which were on the plates of gold which had been found by the people of Limhi, which were delivered to him by the hand of Limhi;

12. And this he did because of the great anxiety of his people; for they were desirous beyond measure to know concerning those people who had been destroyed.

13. *And now he translated them by the means of those two stones which were fastened into the two rims of a bow.*

14. *Now these things were prepared from the beginning, and were handed down from generation to generation, for the purpose of interpreting languages;*

15. And they have been kept and preserved by the hand of the Lord, that he should discover to every creature who should possess the land the iniquities and abominations of his people; Mo 28-190

21. [Alma to his son, Helaman] And now, I will speak unto you concerning those twenty-four plates, that ye keep them, that the mysteries and the works of darkness,---or the secret works of those people who have been destroyed, may be made manifest unto this people;

23. And the Lord [had] said: I will prepare unto my servant Gazelem, *a stone, which shall shine forth in darkness unto light*, that I may discover unto my people who serve me, that I discover unto them the works of their brethren, yea, their secret works---

26. And now, my son, we see that they did not repent; therefore they have been destroyed, and thus far the word of God has been fulfilled; yea, their secret abominations have been brought out of darkness and made known unto us. A 37-290

30. For behold, they [the Jaredites] murdered all the prophets of the Lord who came among them to declare unto them concerning their iniquities; and the blood of those whom they murdered did cry unto the Lord their God for vengeance upon those who were their murderers; and thus the judgments of God did come upon these workers of darkness and secret combinations. A 37-290

1. Now I, Moroni,---made an end of abridging the account of the people of Jared. M 1-510

3. A STONE RECORD OF CORIANTUMR. (*A tablet or stele?*)

20. And it came to pass in the days of Mosiah [I], there was a large stone brought unto him with engravings on it; and he did interpret the engravings by the gift and power of God.

21. And they gave an account of one Coriantumr, and the slain of his people. And Coriantumr was discovered by the people of Zarahemla; and he dwelt with them for the space of nine moons.

22. It also spake a few words concerning his fathers. And his first parents came out from the tower, at the time the Lord confounded the language of the people; and the severity of the Lord fell upon them according to his judgments, which are just; and their bones lay scattered in the land northward. O 1-181

II. THE BRASS PLATES

(The Brass Plates contain the ancient scriptures of the Hebrews and their predecessors. They were brought to the Western Hemisphere by Lehi. Their content closely parallels the Bible. See Chart 3.)

3. For behold, Laban [in Jerusalem] hath the record of the Jews and also a genealogy of thy forefathers, and they are engraven upon plates of brass. [Lehi speaks to his sons.] 1N 8-5

1. *THE SOURCE OF THE BRASS PLATES.* *(The Brass Plates were held in Jerusalem in the treasury of Laban. They were secured from Laban by the sons of Lehi.)* 4. Wherefore, the Lord hath commanded me that thou and thy brothers should go unto the house of Laban, and seek the records, and bring them down hither into the wilderness. 1N 8-5

19. And behold, it is wisdom in God that we should obtain these records, that we may preserve unto our children the language of our fathers;

20. And also that we may preserve unto them the words which have been spoken by the mouth of all the holy prophets, which have been delivered unto them by the Spirit and power of God, since the world began, even down unto this present time. 1N 8-6

9. And I, Nephi, and my brethren took our journey in the wilderness, with our tents, to go to the land of Jerusalem.

10. And it came to pass that when we had come up to the land of Jerusalem, I and my brethren did consult one with another.

11. And we cast lots—who of us should go in unto the house of Laban. And it came to pass that the lot fell upon Laman; and Laman went in unto the house of Laban, and he talked with him as he sat in his house.

12. And he desired of Laban the records which were engraven upon the plates of brass, which contained the genealogy of my father.

13. And behold, it came to pass that Laban was angry, and thrust him out from his presence; and he would not that he should have the records. Wherefore, he said unto him: Behold thou art a robber, and I will slay thee.

14. But Laman fled out of his presence, and told the things which Laban had done, unto us. And we began to be exceedingly sorrowful, and my brethren were about to return unto my father in the wilderness.

15. But behold I said unto them that: As the Lord liveth, and as we live, we will not go down unto our father in the wilderness until we have accomplished the thing which the Lord hath commanded us.

16. Wherefore, let us be faithful in keeping the commandments of the Lord; therefore let us go down to the land of our father's inheritance, for behold he left gold and silver, and all manner of riches.

23. And after we had gathered these things together, we went up again unto the house of Laban.

24. And it came to pass that we went in unto Laban, and desired him that he would give unto us the records which were engraven upon the plates of brass, for which we would give unto him our gold, and our silver, and all our precious things.

25. And it came to pass that when Laban saw our property, and that it was exceeding great, he did lust after it, insomuch that he thrust us out, and sent his servants to slay us, that he might obtain our property.

26. And it came to pass that we did flee before the servants of Laban, and we were obliged to leave behind our property, and it fell into the hands of Laban.

27. And it came to pass that we fled into the wilderness, and the servants of Laban did not overtake us, and we hid ourselves in the cavity of a rock.

1N 3-5

1. And it came to pass that I spake unto my brethren, saying: Let us go up again unto Jerusalem---

5. And it was by night; and I caused that they should hide themselves without the walls. And after they had hid themselves, I, Nephi, crept into the city and went forth towards the house of Laban.

6. And I was led by the Spirit, not knowing beforehand the things which I should do.

7. Nevertheless I went forth, and as I came near unto the house of Laban I beheld a man, and he had fallen to the earth before me, for he was drunken with wine.

8. And when I came to him I found that it was Laban.

9. And I beheld his sword, and I drew it forth from the sheath thereof; and the hilt thereof was of pure gold, and the workmanship thereof was exceeding fine, and I saw that the blade thereof was of the most precious steel. [Could he see these things in the night? Did he have a lantern?]

10. And it came to pass that I was constrained by the Spirit that I should kill Laban; but I said in my heart: Never at any time have I shed the blood of man. And I shrunk and would that I might not slay him.

11. And the Spirit said unto me again: Behold the Lord hath delivered him into thy hands. Yea, and I also knew that he had sought to take away mine own life; yea, and he would not hearken unto the commandments of the Lord; and he also had taken away our property.

12. And it came to pass that the Spirit said unto me again: Slay him for the Lord hath delivered him into thy hands;

13. Behold the Lord slayeth the wicked to bring forth his righteous purposes. It is better that one man should perish than that a nation should dwindle and perish in unbelief.

14. And now, when I, Nephi, had heard these words, I remembered the words of the Lord which he spake unto me in the wilderness, saying that: Inasmuch as thy seed shall keep my commandments, they shall prosper in the land of promise.

15. Yea, and I also thought that they could not keep the commandments of the Lord according to the law of Moses, save they should have the law.

16. And I also knew that the law was engraven upon the plates of brass.

17. And again, I knew that the Lord had delivered Laban into my hands for this cause—that I might obtain the records according to his commandments.

18. Therefore I did obey the voice of the Spirit, and took Laban by the hair of the head, and I smote off his head with his own sword.

19. And after I had smitten off his head with his own sword, I took the garments of Laban and put them upon mine own body; yea, even every whit; and I did gird on his armor about my loins.

20. And after I had done this, I went forth unto the treasury of Laban. And as I went forth towards the treasury of Laban, behold, I saw the servant of Laban who had the keys of the treasury. And I commanded him in the voice of Laban, that he should go with me into the treasury.

21. And he supposed me to be his master, Laban, for he beheld the garments and also the sword girded about my loins.

22. And he spake unto me concerning the elders of the Jews, he knowing that his master, Laban, had been out by night among them.

24. And I spake unto him that I should carry the engravings, which were upon the plates of brass, to my elder brethren, who were without the walls.

25. And I also bade him that he should follow me.

26. And he, supposing that I spake of the brethren of the church, and that I was truly that Laban whom I had slain, wherefore he did follow me.

28. And it came to pass that when Laman saw me he was exceedingly frightened, and also Lemuel and Sam. And they fled from before my presence; for they supposed it was Laban, and that he had slain me and had sought to take away their lives also.

29. And it came to pass that I called after them, and they did hear me; wherefore they did cease to flee from my presence.

30. And it came to pass that when the servant of Laban beheld my brethren he began to tremble, and was about to flee from before me and return to the city of Jerusalem.

31. And now I, Nephi, being a man large in stature, and also having received much strength of the Lord, therefore I did seize upon the servant of Laban, and held him, that he should not flee.

33. And I spake unto him, even with an oath, that he should be a free man like unto us if he would go down in the wilderness with us.

35. And it came to pass that Zoram did take courage at the words which I spake. Now Zoram was the name of the servant; and he promised that he would go down into the wilderness unto my father.

36. Now we were desirous that he should tarry with us for this cause, that the Jews might not know concerning our flight into the wilderness, lest they should pursue us and destroy us.

37. And it came to pass that we took the plates of brass and the servant of Laban, and departed into the wilderness, and journeyed unto the tent of our father.

1N 4-7

CHART 3

ISRAELITE AND NEPHITE RECORDS

ORIGINAL WRITINGS	ORIGINAL AND SECONDARY WRITINGS	SECONDARY WRITING	ENGLISH TRANSLATION
The Brass Plates of Laban	Probably original and copied records of the ancient prophets, and a history of the Jews from the beginning to about 600 B.C.	Referred to and quoted from, on the Small and Large Plates of Nephi.	Quotations translated by Joseph Smith from Plates of Nephi (1829)
The Small Plates of Nephi	Sacred record of Nephites from Lehi through Amaleki (about 600 to 130 B.C.)		Translated by Joseph Smith direct from plates (about 1829 A.D.)
	Sacred record of Nephites, from King Benjamin thru Ammaron (about 130 B.C. to 320 A.D.?)		Not translated
The Large Plates of Nephi	Historic record of Nephites, Lehi through Amaleki. (about 600 B.C. to 130 A.D.)	Abridged by Mormon (between 320 A.D. and 385 A.D.)	Translated by Joseph Smith from Mormon's abridgment. (borrowed by Martin Harris and lost — not re-translated) (about 1828)
	Historic record of Nephites, King Benjamin through Ammaron (about 130 B.C. to 320 A.D.)	Abridged by Mormon (between 320 A.D. and 385 A.D.)	Translated by Joseph Smith from Mormon's abridgment. (about 1829)
	Mormon recorded directly on plates (c. 334-385)		Not translated.
Record of People of Zarahemla (Mulek)	Copied on or included with Plates of Nephi (Probably on large plates[?]) (about 585-200 A.D.)		Not translated.
Record of Zeniff and Record of Alma	Copied on or included with Large Plates of Nephi (?) (200-122 B.C.)	Probably abridged by Mormon with the Large Plates of Nephi	Translated by Joseph Smith from Mormon's abridgment. (about 1829)
Plates of Mormon	Same size as Small Plates of Nephi and placed with same (about 334-400 A.D.)		Translated directly from plates of Mormon by Joseph Smith (1829)
Plates of Moroni	(about 400-421 A.D.)		Translated directly from plates of Moroni by Joseph Smith (1829)

2. THE CONTENT OF THE BRASS PLATES. (*The content apparently closely parallels that of the Bible.*) 3. And these plates of brass, which contain these engravings, which have the records of the holy scriptures upon them, which have the genealogy of our forefathers, even from the beginning~

A 37-288

10. And after they had given thanks unto the God of Israel, my father, Lehi, took the records which were engraven upon the plates of brass, and he did search them from the beginning.

11. And he beheld that they did contain the five books of Moses, which gave an account of the creation of the world, and also of Adam and Eve, who were our first parents;

12. And also a record of the Jews from the beginning, even down to the commencement of the reign of Zedekiah; king of Judah;

13. And also the prophecies of the holy prophets, from the beginning, even down to the commencement of the reign of Zedekiah; and also many prophecies which have been spoken by the mouth of Jeremiah.

14. And it came to pass that my father, Lehi, also found upon the plates of brass a genealogy of his fathers; wherefore he knew that he was a descendant of Joseph; yea, even that Joseph who was the son of Jacob, who was sold into Egypt, and who was preserved by the hand of the Lord, that he might preserve his father, Jacob, and all his household from perishing with famine.

16. And thus my father, Lehi, did discover the genealogy of his fathers. And Laban [he from whom the plates had been secured] also was a descendant of Joseph, wherefore he and his fathers had kept the records.

1N 5-10

3. THE CONTENT OF THE BRASS PLATES DISCUSSED BY THE NEPHITE TEACHERS. (*The Brass Plates were referred to often.*) 4. Behold, it has been prophesied by our fathers that they [the Brass Plates] should be kept and handed down from one generation to another, and be kept and preserved by the hand of the Lord until they should go forth unto every nation, kindred, tongue, and people, that they shall know of the mysteries contained thereon.

5. And now behold, if they are kept they must retain their brightness; yea, and they will retain their brightness; yea, and also shall all the plates which do contain that which is holy writ.

8. And now, it has hitherto been wisdom in God that these things should be preserved; for behold, they have enlarged the memory of this people, yea, and convinced many of the error of their ways, and brought them to the knowledge of their God unto the salvation of their souls.

A 37-288

1. And now, I, Nephi, speak concerning the prophecies of which my father hath spoken, concerning Joseph, who was carried into Egypt.

2. For behold, he [Joseph] truly prophesied concerning all his seed. And the prophecies which he wrote, there are not many greater. And he prophesied concerning us, and our future generations; and they are written upon the plates of brass. 2N 4-57

22. Now it came to pass that I, Nephi, did teach my brethren these things; and it came to pass that I did read many things to them, which were engraven upon the plates of brass, that they might know concerning the doings of the Lord in other lands, among people of old.

24. Wherefore I spake unto them, saying: Hear ye the words of the prophet [Isaiah], ye who are a remnant of the house of Israel, 1N 20-43

12. And now Alma said unto them: Do ye believe those scriptures which have been written by them of old?

13. Behold, if ye do, ye must believe what Zenos said;

15. For it is not written that Zenos alone spake of these things, but Zenock also spake of these things—

17. And now, my brethren, ye see that a second prophet of old has testified of the Son of God, and because the people would not understand his words they stoned him to death. A 33-280

3. And he [King Benjamin] also taught them concerning the records which were engraven on the plates of brass, saying: My sons, I would that ye should remember that were it not for these plates, which contain these records and these commandments, we must have suffered in ignorance,

4. For it were not possible that our father, Lehi, could have remembered all these things, to have taught them to his children, except it were for the help of these plates; for he having been taught in the language of the Egyptians therefore he could read these engravings, and teach them to his children,

5. ---were it not for these things, ---even our fathers would have dwindled in unbelief,

6. O my sons, I would that ye should remember that these--- records are true. Mo 1-134

30. Wherefore, my brethren, I [Nephi] would that ye should consider that the things which have been written upon the plates of brass are true; and they testify that a man must be obedient to the commandments of God.

31. Wherefore, ye need not suppose that I and my father are the only ones that have testified, and also taught them. Wherefore, if

ye shall be obedient to the commandments, and endure to the end, ye shall be saved at the last day. And thus it is. Amen. 1N 22-49

4. THE BRASS PLATES COMPARED WITH THE BIBLE. (See Chapter XVII, Part IV, for additional information on this subject.)

23. And he said: Behold it proceedeth out of the mouth of a Jew. And I, Nephi, beheld it; and he said unto me: The book that thou beholdest is a record of the Jews, which contains the covenants of the Lord, which he hath made unto the house of Israel; and it [the Bible] also containeth many of the prophecies of the holy prophets; and it is a record like unto the engravings which are upon the plates of brass, save there are not so many; nevertheless, they contain the covenants of the Lord, which he hath made unto the house of Israel; 1N 13-23

III. THE RECORD OF LEHI

(Lehi was the first great patriarch, the "father" of the Nephites and the Lamanites. See Chart 1 and Chart 3.) 1. And now I, Nephi, do not give the genealogy of my fathers in this part of my record; ---for it is given in the record which has been kept by my father; 1N 6-10

16. And now I, Nephi, do not make a full account of the things which my father hath written, for he hath written many things which he saw in visions and in dreams; and he also hath written many things which he prophesied and spake unto his children,

17. ---Behold, I make an abridgment of the record of my father, upon plates which I have made with mine own hands; 1N 1-2

1. And it came to pass that the Lord commanded me, wherefore I did make plates of ore that I might engraven upon them the record of my people. And upon the plates which I made I did engraven the record of my father, and also our journeyings in the wilderness, 1N 19-41

IV. THE PLATES OF NEPHI

(It is difficult to follow what is meant by the term "Plates of Nephi" in the Book of Mormon. This is because the term is used, interchangeably, in connection with two different sets of plates—the small plates and the large plates.) 2. And I knew not at the

time when I made them [the first plates made by Nephi] that I should be commanded of the Lord to make these plates; wherefore, the record of my father, and the genealogy of his fathers, and the more part of all our proceedings in the wilderness are engraven upon those plates of which I have spoken; wherefore, the things which transpired before I made these plates are, of a truth, more particularly made mention upon the first plates.

3. And after I had made these plates by way of commandment, I, Nephi, received a commandment that the ministry and the prophecies, the more plain and precious parts of them, should be written upon these plates;

4. Wherefore, I, Nephi, did make a record upon the other plates, which gives an account, or which gives a greater account of the wars and contentions and destructions of my people. And this have I done, and commanded my people what they should do after I was gone; and that these plates should be handed down from one generation to another, or from one prophet to another, until further commandments of the Lord.

1N 19-41

29. And I, Nephi, had kept the records upon my plates [large plates], which I had made, of my people thus far.

30. And it came to pass that the Lord God said unto me: Make other plates [small plates]; and thou shalt engraven many things upon them which are good in my sight, for the profit of thy people.

31. Wherefore, I, Nephi, to be obedient to the commandments of the Lord, went and made these [small] plates upon which I have engraven these things.

33. And if my people desire to know the more particular part of the history of my people they must search mine other [large] plates.

2N 6-62

15. And upon these [small plates] I [Nephi] write the things of my soul, and many of the scriptures which are engraven upon the plates of brass.

16. Behold, my soul delighteth in the things of the Lord; and my heart pondereth continually upon the things which I have seen and heard.

2N 4-58

2. And now, as I have spoken concerning these plates [small], behold they are not the plates upon which I make a full account of the history of my people; for the plates upon which I make a full account of my people I have given the name of Nephi; wherefore, they are called the plates of Nephi, after mine own name; and these plates also are called the plates of Nephi—

3. Nevertheless, I have received a commandment of the Lord that I should make these [small] plates, for the special purpose that there should be an account engraven of the ministry of my people.

1N 9-15

CHART 4

*THE PLATES OF NEPHI

THE SMALL PLATES OF NEPHI

(A sacred history of the Nephite people, about 589 B.C. - 385 A.D.)

These plates were first made by Nephi I. He recorded upon them the sacred history of his people, and they were then passed from generation to generation (or from prophet to prophet through the generations) of the Nephite people.

(Joseph Smith translated directly from these plates as far as the end of the record of Amaleki (Book of Omni). The part translated included the writings of Nephi I (two books), Jacob, Enos, Jarom, and Omni (the "Book of Omni" contains the writings of Omni, Amaron, Chemish, Abinadom, and Amaleki). The time covered by these writings was from 600 to 130 B.C. approximately.)

THE LARGE PLATES OF NEPHI

(A civil and political record, or a record of the reigns of the kings—c. 590 B.C. - 385 A.D.)

These plates were first made by Nephi I. He recorded upon them an abridgment of the record of his father, Lehi I; the account of their trip from Jerusalem and their travels in the wilderness; and other accounts pertaining to the history of his people. These plates were handed down from generation to generation.

Mormon abridged the Large Plates of Nephi.

*[Joseph Smith made two translations from Mormon's abridgment of the Large Plates. The first included the Nephite record to the time of King Benjamin. The manuscript containing this translation was lost by Martin Harris, and the information contained therein does not appear in the *Book of Mormon*. The second translation of Joseph Smith from Mormon's abridgment begins with epoch of King Benjamin and follows Nephite history to about 320 A.D. [that is from about 130 B.C. to 320 A.D.] This translation is to be found in the *Book of Mormon* under the following titles: Words of Mormon, Book of Mosiah, Book of Alma, Book of Helaman, Third Nephi, and Fourth Nephi. (See Charts 1 and 3.)

To substitute for the manuscript lost by Martin Harris, Joseph Smith chose to translate from the Small Plates of Nephi. These plates contain a record paralleling that of the Large Plates, but accent the religious history of the people. The Small Plates are limited, therefore, in historic scope. (See Appendix A, Part I.)]

4. Upon the other [large] plates should be engraven an account of the reign of the kings, and the wars and contentions of my people;---

1N 9-15

15. ---I do not write in this book; ---[but] in mine other book---

1N 10-17

1. ---wherefore, Nephi gave me, Jacob, a commandment concerning the small plates, upon which these things are engraven.

2. And he gave me, Jacob, a commandment that I should write upon these plates a few of the things which I considered to be most precious;

3. For he said that the history of his people should be engraven upon his other [large] plates, and that I should preserve these plates and hand them down unto my seed, from generation to generation.

J 1-107

14. And I, Jarom, do not write more for the plates are small. But behold, my brethren, ye can go to the other [large] plates of Nephi; for behold, upon them the records of our wars are engraven, according to the writings of the kings, or those which they caused to be written.

JM 1-129

21. ---and he [Amos] kept it [the record] upon the plates of Nephi; and it was also written in the book of Nephi, which is this book.

4N 1-457

V. RECORD OF THE MULEKITES

(These people were also known as the "people of Zarahemla" and the "people of Mulek." They left Jerusalem about 585 B.C. and journeyed to the Western Hemisphere. See Charts 1 and 3.)

18. ---And it came to pass that after they were taught in the language of Mosiah, Zarahemla gave a genealogy of his fathers, according to his memory; and they are written, but not in these plates.

O 1-181

VI. RECORD OF THE PEOPLE OF ZENIFF

(A record of three generations of Nephites who left the land of Zarahemla and migrated south to re-claim their former land of Nephi. Kings over this group were Zeniff, Noah, and Limhi. These people later returned to Zarahemla.) 5. And it came to pass that he caused that the plates which contained the record of his people from the time that they left the land of Zarahemla, should be brought before Ammon, that he might read them.

Mo 8-150

with the remainder of my record, for they are choice unto me; and I know they will be choice unto my brethren.

7. And I do this for a wise purpose; for thus it whispereth me, according to the workings of the Spirit of the Lord which is in me. And now, I do not know all things; but the Lord knoweth all things which are to come; wherefore, he worketh in me to do according to his will.

9. And now I, Mormon, proceed to finish out my record, which I take from the plates of Nephi; and I make it according to the knowledge and the understanding which God has given me. [Mormon is speaking of the small plates of Nephi here.]

10. Wherefore, it came to pass that after Amaleki had delivered up these plates into the hands of king Benjamin, he took them and put them with the other plates, which contained records which had been handed down by the kings, from generation to generation until the days of king Benjamin.

11. And they were handed down from king Benjamin, from generation to generation until they have fallen into my hands. And I, Mormon, pray to God that they may be preserved from this time henceforth. And I know that they will be preserved; for there are great things written upon them, out of which my people and their brethren shall be judged at the great and last day, according to the word of God which is written.

Mn 1-132

1. Behold I, Moroni, do finish the record of my father, Mormon. Behold, I have but few things to write, which things I have been commanded by my father.

Mn 8-472

X. PLATES OF MORONI

(See Chart 1 for itemization of these plates.) 1. Now I, Moroni, after having made an end of abridging the account of the people of Jared [the Book of Ether], I had supposed not to have written more, but I have not as yet perished; and I make not myself known to the Lamanites lest they should destroy me.

4. Wherefore, I write a few more things, contrary to that which I had supposed; for I had supposed not to have written any more; but I write a few more things, that perhaps they may be of worth unto my brethren, the Lamanites, in some future day, according to the will of the Lord.

M 1-510

PART II

THE ANCIENT HISTORIANS

An account of the transmission of the records from generation to generation.

(The following material elaborates Chart No. 5)

I. TRANSMISSION OF THE RECORDS

(The records were usually transmitted from father to son. The following account traces the transmission in sequence as is given in the Book of Mormon. See Chart 5.) 1. And now I, Nephi, do not give the genealogy of my father--for it is given in the record which has been kept by my father [Lehi];

1N 6-10

3. And I [Nephi] know that the record which I make is true; and I make it with mine own hand; and I make it according to my knowledge.

1N 1-1

1. ---Nephi gave me, Jacob, a commandment concerning the small plates, upon which these things are engraven.

2. And he gave me, Jacob, a commandment that I should write upon these plates a few of the things which I considered to be most precious;

J 1-107

14. These plates are called the plates of Jacob, and they were made by the hand of Nephi.

J 3-113

27. And I, Jacob, saw that I must soon go down to my grave; wherefore, I said unto my son Enos: Take these plates. ---and he promised obedience unto my commands.

J 7-125

1. Now behold, I, Jarom, write a few words according to the commandment of my father, Enos, that our genealogy may be kept.

Jm 1-127

14. ---And I, Jarom, do not write more, for the plates are small.

15. And I deliver these plates into the hands of my son Omni, that they may be kept according to the commandments of my fathers.

Jm 1-129

3. ---and I had kept these plates according to the commandments of my fathers; and I conferred them upon my son Amaron. And I make an end.

O 1-129

8. And it came to pass that I [Amaron] did deliver the plates unto my brother Chemish.

9. Now I, Chemish, write what few things I write, in the same book with my brother; for behold, I saw the last which he wrote, that he wrote it with his own hand; and he wrote it in the day that he delivered them unto me. And after this manner we keep the records, for it is according to the commandments of our fathers. And I make an end.

10. Behold, I, Abinadom, am the son of Chemish.

11. ---and I know of no revelation save that which has been written, neither prophecy; wherefore that which is sufficient is written. And I make an end.

O 1-130

CHART 5
PART I
NEPHITE HISTORIANS

NAME	APPROXIMATE DATE	
	<i>From</i>	<i>To</i>
Lehi	600 B.C.	588-570 B.C.
Nephi I (son)	588-570	544
Jacob (brother)	544	544-421
Enos (son)	544-421	420
Jarom (son)	420	400
Omni (son)	400	361
Amaron (son)	361	279
Chemish (brother)	279
Abinadom (son)
Amaleki (son)
Benjamin (king)	136	124
Mosiah II (son) (king)	124	91
Alma II	91	73
Helaman I (son)	73	56
Shiblon (brother)	56	53
Helaman II (son of Helaman)	53 B.C.	39 B.C.
Nephi II (son)	39 B.C.	1 A.D.
Nephi III (son)	1 A.D.	? A.D.
Nephi IV (son)	? A.D.	110 A.D.
Amos I (son)	110 A.D.	194 A.D.
*Amos II (son)	194 A.D.	305 A.D.
Ammaron (brother)	305 A.D.	320 A.D.
Mormon (son of Mormon, a Nephite)	320 A.D.	385 A.D.
Moroni (son)	385 A.D.	431 A.D.

*Note: Notice that Amos II was historian from 194 A.D. until 305 A.D. or for 111 years. This is out of keeping with the rest of the record, and may be explained, therefore, by supposing that there existed an Amos III. (The numerical titles are given by the author.)

CHART 5

PART II

THE BOOKS OF THE BOOK OF MORMON and their respective writers

NAME OF THE BOOKS IN THE BOOK OF MORMON	WRITERS CONTRIBUTING TO EACH BOOK	*THE PERSON- AL PRONOUN IN WHICH BOOK IS PRESENTED
The First Book of Nephi	Nephi I (Nephi presents some material which was also given in the "Book of Lehi" — the writ- ings of his father)	1st
The Second Book of Nephi	Nephi I Jacob	1st 1st
The Book of Jacob	Jacob	1st
The Book of Enos	Enos	1st
The Book of Jarom	Jarom	1st
The Book of Omni	Omni Amaron Chemish Abinadom Amaleki	1st 1st 1st 1st 1st
The Words of Mormon	Mormon (Mormon, the abridger of the above books and those below makes a few comments.)	1st
The Book of Mosiah	Benjamin Mosiah II Contained in Mosiah's record are the records of: Zeniff (Noah and Limhi) Alma	3rd 3rd 1st 3rd
The Book of Alma	Alma II Helaman I Shiblon	3rd 3rd 3rd

NAME OF THE BOOKS IN THE BOOK OF MORMON	WRITERS CONTRIBUTING TO EACH BOOK	*THE PERSON- AL PRONOUN IN WHICH BOOK IS PRESENTED
The Book of Helaman	Helaman II Nephi II	3rd 3rd
The Book of Nephi (Third Nephi)	Nephi III	3rd
The Book of Nephi (Fourth Nephi)	Nephi IV Amos I Amos II (Amos III?) Ammaron	3rd 3rd 3rd 3rd 3rd
The Book of Mormon	Mormon Moroni II	1st 1st
The Book of Ether	Writers of the Jaredites Abridged by Moroni II Chart 2) (Personal comments of Moroni)	 3rd 1st
The Book of Moroni	Moroni II	1st

*The parts of the *Book of Mormon* preceding the "Book of the Words of Mormon" are in the first person. This part of the record is supposed to be a direct translation from the small plates of Nephi. (See Chart 3.)

12. Behold, I am Amaleki, the son of Abinadom.

23. Behold, I, Amaleki, was born in the days of Mosiah [I]; and I have lived to see his death; and Benjamin, his son, reigneth in his stead.

25. And it came to pass that I began to be old; and, having no seed, and knowing king Benjamin to be a just man before the Lord, wherefore, I shall deliver up these plates unto him, exhorting all men to come unto God,

O 1-131

15. And it came to pass that after king Benjamin had made an end of these sayings to his son [Mosiah II], that he gave him charge concerning all the affairs of the kingdom.

16. And moreover, he also gave him charge concerning the records which were engraven on the plates of brass; and also the plates of Nephi; and also, the sword of Laban, and the ball or director, which led our fathers through the wilderness,

Mo 1-185

20. ---after king Mosiah had done these things, he took the plates of brass, and all the things which he had kept, and conferred them upon Alma, who was the son of Alma [I]; yea, all the records, and also the interpreters, and conferred them upon him, and commanded him that he should keep and preserve them, and also keep a record of the people, handing them down from one generation to another, even as they had been handed down from the time that Lehi left Jerusalem.

Mo 28-191

1. And now, my son Helaman, I [Alma] command you that ye take the records which have been entrusted with me;

2. And I also command you that ye keep a record of this people, according as I have done,

47. And now, my son, see that ye take care of these sacred things, yea, see that ye look to God and live. Go unto this people and declare the word, and be sober. My son, farewell. A 37-288

1. ---Shiblon took possession of those sacred things which had been delivered unto Helaman by Alma.

11. Therefore it became expedient for Shiblon to confer those sacred things, before his death, upon the son of Helaman, who was called Helaman, being called after the name of his father. A 63-358

37. And it came to pass in the fifty and third year of the reign of the judges, Heleman died, and his eldest son, Nephi, began to reign in his stead. H 3-366

2. And Nephi [II], the son of Helaman, had departed out of the land of Zarahemla, giving charge unto his son Nephi [III], who was his eldest son, concerning the plates of brass, and all the records which had been kept, and all those things which had been kept sacred from the departure of Lehi out of Jerusalem. 3N 1-399

19. And it came to pass that Nephi [this must be Nephi IV], he that kept this last record---died, and his son Amos kept it in his stead;

21. And it came to pass that Amos died also, ---and his son Amos [Amos II] kept the record in his stead; and he also kept it upon the plates of Nephi; and it was also written in the book of Nephi, which is this book. 4N 1-457

47. ---Amos died [is this Amos III?]; and his brother, Ammaron, did keep the record in his stead. 4N 1-459

48. And it came to pass that---Ammaron, being constrained by the Holy Ghost, did hide up the records which were sacred---yea, even all the sacred records which had been handed down from generation to generation, which were sacred---even until the three hundred and twentieth year from the coming of Christ.

49. And he did hide them up unto the Lord, that they might come again unto the remnant of the house of Jacob, according to the prophecies and the promises of the Lord. And thus is the end of the record of Ammaron. 4N 1-459

1. And now I, Mormon, make a record of the things which I have both seen and heard, and call it the Book of Mormon.

2. And about the time that Ammaron hid up the records unto the Lord, he came unto me, ---and Ammaron said unto me:

3. ---when ye are about twenty and four years old---go to the land Antum, unto a hill which shall be called Shim; and there have I deposited unto the Lord all the sacred engravings concerning this people.

4. And behold, ye shall take the plates of Nephi unto yourself, and the remainder shall ye leave in the place where they are; and ye shall engrave on the plates of Nephi all the things that ye have observed concerning this people.

5. And I, Mormon, ---remembered the things which Ammaron commanded me. Mn 1-460

1. And now I, Mormon, being about to deliver up the record which I have been making into the hands of my son Moroni, behold I have witnessed almost all the destruction of my people, the Nephites.

2. And it is many hundred years after the coming of Christ that I deliver these records into the hands of my son; and it supposeth me that

he will witness the entire destruction of my people. But may God grant that he may survive them, that he may write somewhat concerning them, and somewhat concerning Christ,

WoMn 1-132

1. Behold I, Moroni, do finish the record of my father, Mormon. Behold, I have but few things to write, which things I have been commanded by my father.

4. Therefore I will write and hide up the records in the earth; and whither I go it mattereth not.

5. Behold, my father hath made this record, and he hath written the intent thereof. And behold, I would write it also if I had room upon the plates, but I have not; and ore I have none, for I am alone. My father hath been slain in battle, and all my kinsfolk, and I have not friends nor whither to go; and how long the Lord will suffer that I may live I know not.

Mn 8-472

14. And I [Moroni] am the same who hideth up this record unto the Lord; the plates thereof are of no worth, because of the commandment of the Lord. For he truly saith that no one shall have them to get gain; but the record thereof is of great worth; and whoso shall bring it to light, him will the Lord bless.

15. [Speaking to the one who shall bring the record forth in the latter days. Joseph Smith, Jr.?] For none can have power to bring it to light save it be given him of God; for God wills that it shall be done with an eye single to his glory, or the welfare of the ancient and long dispersed covenant people of the Lord.

16. And blessed be he that shall bring this thing to light; for it shall be brought out of darkness unto light, according to the word of God; yea, it shall be brought out of the earth, and it shall shine forth out of darkness, and come unto the knowledge of the people; and it shall be done by the

Mn 8-473

PART III

PRESERVATION OF THE RECORDS

I. PRECAUTIONS USED TO PRESERVE THE RECORDS. (*The Nephites desired to preserve their records. The enemy, on the other hand, sought to destroy the Nephite records.*)

1. *THE PLATES WERE OF METAL.* 1. And it came to pass that the Lord commanded me, wherefore I did make plates of ore that I might engraven upon them the record of my people.

1N 19-41

2. But whatsoever things we write upon anything save it be upon the plates must perish and vanish away;

J 4-118

5. ---And behold, I would write it also if I had room upon the plates, but I have not; and ore I have none, for I am alone. [Moroni is speaking.]

Mn 8-472

2. *THE RECORDS WERE HIDDEN IN THE GROUND.* (*The plates were hidden in the Hill Cumorah, after being hidden for many years in the Hill Shim.*) 3. Therefore, [Ammaron speaks to Mormon]---go to the land Antum, unto a hill which shall be called Shim; and there have I deposited unto the Lord all the sacred engravings concerning this people.

Mn 1-460

17. And now, the city of Jashon was near the land where Ammaron had deposited the records unto the Lord, that they might not be destroyed.

Mn 2-462

23. And now I, Mormon, seeing that the Lamanites were about to overthrow the land, therefore I did go to the hill Shim, and did take up all the records which Ammaron had hid up unto the Lord.

Mn 4-467

6. ---behold I, Mormon, began to be old; and knowing it to be the last struggle of my people, and having been commanded of the Lord that I should not suffer the records which had been handed down by our fathers, which were sacred, to fall into the hands of the Lamanites, (for the Lamanites would destroy them) therefore I made this record out of the plates of Nephi, and hid up in the hill Cumorah all the records which had been entrusted to me by the hand of the Lord, save it were these few plates which I gave unto my son Moroni.

Mn 6-469

11. And it came to pass that the army of Coriantumr [Jaredite] did pitch their tents by the hill Ramah; and it was that same hill where my father Mormon did hide up the records unto the Lord, which were sacred. [Note comparison of Nephite and Jaredite topography.] E 15-508

16. And I had faith, and I did cry unto God that he would preserve the records; and he covenanted with me that he would bring them forth unto the Lamanites in his own due time.

18. And the Lord said unto me: Thy fathers have also required of me this thing; and it shall be done unto them according to their faith; for their faith was like unto thine. E 15-126

II. THE RECORDS WERE THREATENED WITH DESTRUCTION

1. *"UNBELIEVERS" AND DISSENTERS SEEK TO DESTROY THE RECORDS.* 17. For thus saith the Lord God: They shall write the things which shall be done among them, ---and those who have dwindled in unbelief shall not have them, for they seek to destroy the things of God. 2N 26-94

8. And they brought their wives and children together, and whosoever believed or had been taught to believe in the word of God they caused that they should be cast into the fire; and they also brought forth their records which contained the holy scriptures, and cast them into the fire also, that they might be burned. A 14-231

2. *THE LAMANITES DESTROYED THE NEPHITE RECORDS.* (Whenever these records of the Nephites fell into their hands, the Lamanites would destroy them. In this way, they desired to destroy the Nephite culture. It is interesting that the conquering Spaniards treated the Indian records in a like manner.) 6. ---the Lord [commanded] that I should not suffer the records which had been handed down by our fathers---to fall into the hands of the Lamanites (for the Lamanites would destroy them), Mn 6-469

14. For at present our strugglings were vain in restoring them to the true faith. And they [the Lamanites] swore in their wrath that, if it were possible, they would destroy our records and us, and also all the traditions of our fathers. E 1-126



CHAPTER III

*TOPOGRAPHY OF THE LANDS

Much discussion has taken place as to the possible routes traveled by the ancient peoples of the *Book of Mormon* in their journeys from the Old World to the "Promised Land," and in their journeys about their "Promised Land." This chapter represents a study of this subject.

Such a small amount of information is given in the *Book of Mormon* concerning the migration of the Jaredites and the migration of the Mulekites (Map I) that any suggested map is open to question. Nevertheless, the route in Map I is a likely one and is in harmony with the direction of existing ocean currents and prevailing winds.

Much more information is given concerning the migration of Lehi's party than is given of the Jaredite and the Mulekite migrations. However, the exact place of leave-taking, the ocean route followed, and the point of debarkation are unknown. Scientific maps and charts were called upon to assist the author in projecting the probable course of this migration (Map II).

In Map III, a possible arrangement of the lands and cities mentioned in the *Book of Mormon* is projected. A close study of the *Book* has led the author to assume that the "Promised Land" was either the Western Hemisphere as a whole or was a portion of that hemisphere. The ancient writers of the *Book of Mormon* gave definite place-names to their cities, rivers, mountains, etc. Many students of the *Book* have attempted to correlate these ancient sites with modern locations. Since the *Book of Mormon* does not present a map of the lands mentioned, there is no definite agreement as yet as to the exact location of these lands. (See Appendix C, Part VI for a discussion of this subject.)

The estimated scale (one-fourth inch) given for Map III has been charted by calculating the average distance a man (or a migrating party) could walk in one day.

In Appendix C, arranged in sequence, are all the quotations from the *Book of Mormon* which trace these migrations. Information concerning these migrations is also to be found in Chapters IV and V of this volume.

*For key to reference symbols, see page 2.



MAP I

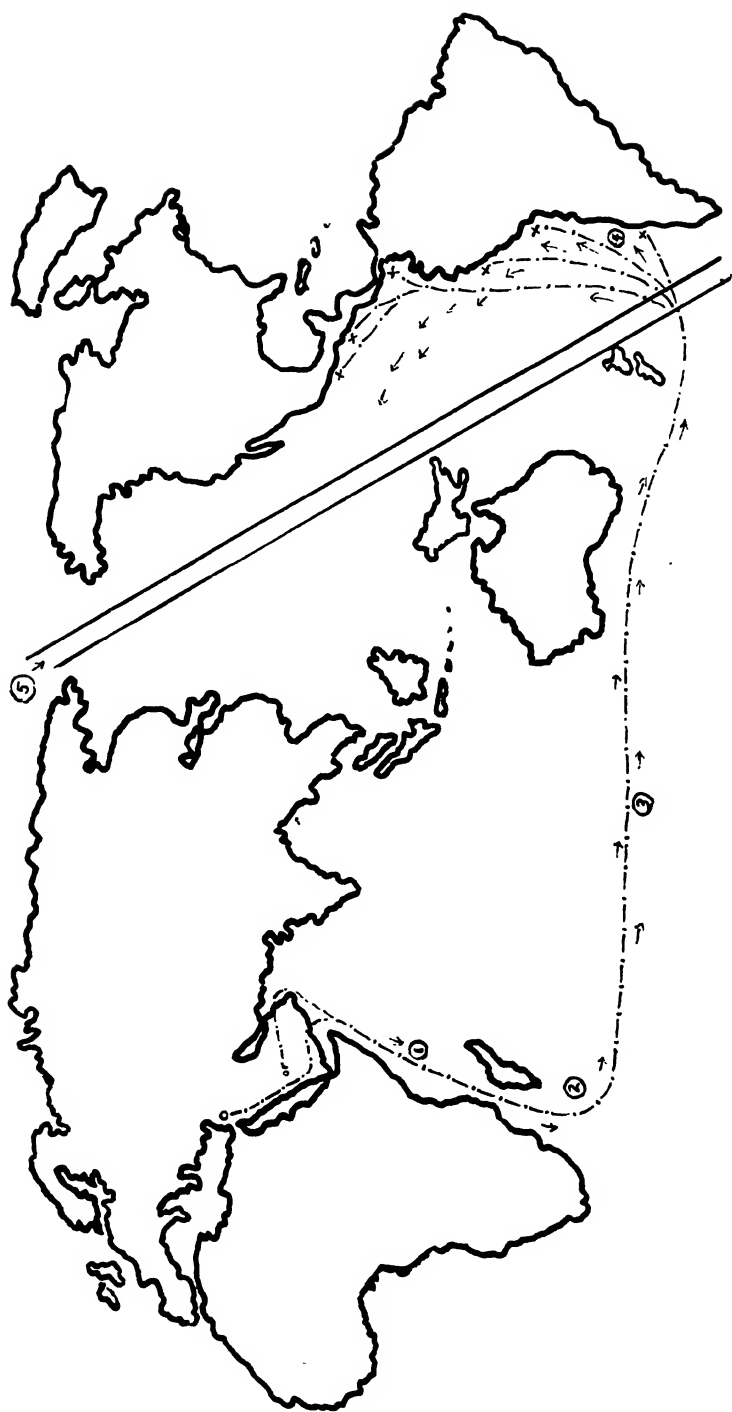
LEGEND OF MAP I

*SUGGESTED ROUTES OF THE JAREDITES (c. 2700 B.C.) AND MULEKITES (c. 585 B.C.) BETWEEN THE "OLD WORLD" AND THE WESTERN HEMISPHERE

- (1) Northern Equatorial Current (also the direction of the prevailing winds).
 - (2) Southern Equatorial Current converges with the Northern Equatorial Current. The southern current then runs into the Caribbean Sea and northward to the Gulf of Mexico.
 - (3) Starting point of the Mulekites (People of Zarahemla). (It is suggested by some that these people could have come by Phoenician ships via the Mediterranean.)
 - (4) Starting point of the Jaredites. (The scant information concerning this people states that they went northward down into the valley of Nimrod (named after the great hunter), and that they crossed many waters and finally the great sea which took them 344 days to cross).
- (←) Arrows indicate direction of prevailing winds and ocean currents.
- (x) Crosses indicate possible landing areas.
- (—.) Possible routes suggested for Jaredites and Mulekites.

(The Mulekites were called "People of Mulek" or were more often known as the "People of Zarahemla..")

*For a better understanding of this map, see Appendix C, Part II, Section I.



MAP II

LEGEND OF MAP II

*SUGGESTED ROUTE OF LEHI'S PARTY BETWEEN THE "OLD WORLD" AND THE WESTERN HEMISPHERE (c. 600 B.C.)

- (1) Mozambique Current
- (2) Agutha Current
- (3) West Wind Drift
- (4) Peruvian or Humbolt Current
- (5) Omitted area
- (←) Arrows indicate direction of prevailing winds and ocean currents.
- (x) Possible landing areas
- (—.) Possible route of Lehi's Party

*For a better understanding of this map, see Appendix C, Part II, Section II.

LEGEND OF MAP III

*SUGGESTED MAP SHOWING COMPARATIVE LOCATION OF SITES FOUND IN THE "PROMISED LAND"

This map suggests the general directions of the migrations of four great groups of people: the Jaredites, the Mulekites (people of Zarahemla), the Nephites, and the Lamanites. Any likeness to the existing topography of the land at the present day is purely coincidental. The borders, the mountains, rivers, lakes, etc., are hypothetical. The distances have been calculated on the basis of about 15-20 miles a day for migrations.

- (.....) Borders of Jaredite Lands
- (-----) Borders of Nephite Lands
- (⚙) Peaks or hills mentioned
- (▒▒▒▒▒▒▒▒) Possible mountain chains—or position of plateaus
- (∨) Wilderness
- (← ← ←) Arrows indicate direction of migration

(NOTE 1) The *Book of Mormon* gives no east-west direction land marks for the LAND OF NEPHI. Consequently, an alternate map is given (see Map IV).

Likewise, such land-marks as the "Hill Antipas" and the "Place Onidah" in "Nephi" may be placed anywhere in the country.

The Land of Nephi apparently has the highest altitude of any of the *Book of Mormon* lands.

(NOTE 2) In the LAND OF ZARAHEMLA, the River Sidon is definitely mentioned as east of the City of Zarahemla, east of Melek, west of the Hill Riplah, and that it rises or has its "head" in the southern part of the country. The place where it enters the sea is not given.

The Land of Melek is the most questionable as to location. (The People of Ammon were moved from Jershon to Melek, and according to Map III, the distance looks to be too great to be feasible.)

The "narrow strip of wilderness" between the Land of Nephi and the Land Zarahemla may have been narrow both from north to south and from east to west. This would mean that the two countries would narrow at this juncture.

The "Hill Manti" is in the general position as being near to the City of Zarahemla.

*This map is based upon the quotations from the *Book of Mormon* found in Appendix C, Part III and Part IV.

(NOTE 3) Above the LAND OF BOUNTIFUL was a "narrow neck of land" where the "sea separates the land." This description may mean that a tongue of the sea ran into the land; or it may mean that two lands were separated by the sea; or it may mean that the land was an isthmus connecting larger bodies of land. The last possibility is the one generally accepted, but it is well to keep in mind these other possibilities.

The Land of Bountiful may have been considerably larger than this map shows, since the Nephites resided in the area for about 300 years.

The Land of Bountiful, apparently, was placed mostly to the east (or west?) of the narrow neck of land, since the Jaredites could come down from "Desolation" directly into the Land of Zarahemla to hunt.

(NOTE 4) Very little information is given in the *Book of Mormon* concerning the sites in the LAND OF DESOLATION and the LAND NORTHWARD. Some north-south directions are given, but few east-west ones. For example, "Teancum" is said to be by the sea (whether by an east or a west sea is not stated). The sites of Gilgal, Heshlon, Heth, and Nehor could be almost anywhere in the general area of the Land of Desolation.

The ruins, lakes, rivers, etc. mentioned probably covered most of the land northward as well as most of the Land of Desolation (?).

(NOTE 5) Most of the cities listed as destroyed in the great cataclysm are not given a place on Map III. This is because there is no location given for them in the *Book of Mormon*.



CHAPTER IV

*MAJOR MIGRATIONS AND MAJOR TRIBES OF THE BOOK OF MORMON

An account of the character and history of the following peoples: the Jaredites, the people of Lehi (later known as "Nephites" and "Lamanites"), and the Mulekites. (For other tribes, see Chapter V.)

The *Book of Mormon* mentions many tribes of people who lived in ancient times upon the Western Hemisphere. It gives the history of some of these tribes in detail, but alludes to others in such general terms as: "there were a great number" or "as many as the sands of the sea," etc. Still others are mentioned only in connection with enemy invasions into their territory.

The earliest people who are discussed in the *Book of Mormon* are the Jaredites. So few details are given in Moroni's abridgment of the "Book of Ether" (the story of the Jaredite people as it appears in the *Book of Mormon*) that it is impossible to follow the course of the migration of this people. The only part of the Jaredite migration treated in the following pages is their journey from the "Old World" to the Western Hemisphere. Their movements about the "Promised Land" (the Western Hemisphere) are not included in this study.

The next *Book of Mormon* people (in time sequence) are the people of Lehi, who upon arriving in the "Promised Land," separated into two great tribes (the Nephites and the Lamanites). The *Book* gives more information concerning the history and migrations of the Nephites than it gives of any other people. Much of the material of this chapter, therefore, is concerned with these Nephites. The Lamanites plagued their brethren, the Nephites, throughout the course of Nephite history and finally succeeded in completely annihilating the Nephite culture. The extent to which the Nephites spread over their land is given in the following quotation: "7. Now it was the custom of the people of Nephi to call their lands, and their

*For key to reference symbols, see page 2.

cities, and their villages, yea, even all their small villages, after the name of him who first possessed them;" (A 8-214). This statement might indicate that to each place name (city or land) mentioned in the *Book of Mormon* could be ascribed a tribe or a clan of people. The sites appearing on Map 3 (Chapter III), as well as those listed in connection with the great cataclysm (see Appendix C, Part V), should be indicative of the groups of people listed in the *Book of Mormon*.

The Mulekites (people of Mulek—people of Zarahemla) are the third great group of people (in time sequence) who migrated to the Western Hemisphere from the "Old World." The fact that they arrived in the land of the Jaredites suggests that their path of migration, between the "Old World" and the "New World," might have been similar to that of the Jaredites.

It would be well to mention one more group at this time, a tribe that originated in the "Promised Land." Of the many dissenting groups (see Chapter V), the Gadianton Robbers seem to have been the largest. Both Nephites and Lamanites were included in their ranks. Similar combinations existed among the ancient Jaredites. In fact, the *Book of Mormon* says that this type of organization has existed since the beginning of man and that their oaths and secret combinations are as old as Cain, the first murderer.

Chart 6 lists the most important groups of people discussed in the *Book of Mormon*. (For outstanding individuals see Chart 19.)

(For other data concerning the *Book of Mormon* peoples, see the following chapters: for their source, population distribution, and physical characteristics, see Chapter X; for social characteristics, etc., see Chapter VIII; for outstanding women, see Chapter VIII; and for outstanding men, see Chapter XV.)

PART I

THE JAREDITES

A group under Jared and his brother left the "land of their fathers" just after the destruction of the great tower and the "confusion of tongues," and migrated to the Western Hemisphere. (c. 2700 B.C.)

I. JAREDITE GENEALOGY

AN ACCOUNT FROM THE BOOK OF ETHER. 1. And now I, Moroni, proceed to give an account of those ancient inhabitants who were destroyed by the hand of the Lord upon the face of this north country.

2. And I take mine account from the twenty and four plates which were found by the people of Limhi, which is called the Book of Ether.

3. And as I suppose that the first part of this record, which speaks concerning the creation of the world, and also of Adam, and an account from that time even to the great tower, and whatsoever things transpired among the children of men until that time, is had among the Jews—

4. Therefore I do not write those things which transpired from the days of Adam until that time; but they are had upon the plates; and whoso findeth them, the same will have power that he may get the full account.

6. And on this wise do I give the account. He that wrote this record was Ether, and he was a *descendant* of Coriantor.

7. Coriantor was the son of Moron.
8. And Moron was the son of Ethem.
9. And Ethem was the son of Ahah.
10. And Ahah was the son of Seth.
11. And Seth was the son of Shiblón.
12. And Shiblón was the son of Com.
13. And Com was the son of Coriantum.
14. And Coriantum was the son of Amnigaddah.
15. And Amnigaddah was the son of Aaron.
16. And Aaron was a *descendant* of Heth,
who [Heth] was the son of Hearthom.

17. And Hearthom was the son of Lib.
18. And Lib was the son of Kish.
19. And Kish was the son of Corom.
20. And Corom was the son of Levi.
21. And Levi was the son of Kim.
22. And Kim was the son of Morianton.
23. And Morianton was a *descendant* of Riplakish.
24. And Riplakish was the son of Shez.
25. And Shez was the son of Heth.
26. And Heth was the son of Com.
27. And Com was the son of Coriantum.
28. And Coriantum was the son of Emer.
29. And Emer was the son of Omer.
30. And Omer was the son of Shule.
31. And Shule was the son of Kib.
32. And Kib was the son of Orihah,
who [Orihah] was the son of Jared;
33. Which Jared came forth—from the great tower at the time
the Lord confounded the language of the people. E 1-478

II. THE JAREDITES MIGRATED TO THE "PROMISED" LAND"

33. ---Jared came forth with his brother and their families, with some others and their families, from the great tower, at the time the Lord confounded the language of the people, and swore in his wrath that they should be scattered upon all the face of the earth; and according to the word of the Lord the people were scattered. E 1-479

1. And it came to pass that Jared and his brother, and their families, and also the friends of Jared and his brother and their families, went down into the valley which was northward, (and the name of the valley was Nimrod, being called after the mighty hunter) with their flocks which they had gathered together, male and female, of every kind.

3. ---thus they did carry with them swarms of bees, and all manner of that which was upon the face of the land, seeds of every kind. E 2-480

4. And it came to pass that when they had come down into the valley of Nimrod the Lord came down and talked with the brother of Jared; and he was in a cloud, and the brother of Jared saw him not.

5. And it came to pass that the Lord commanded them that they should go forth into the wilderness, yea, into that quarter where there never had man been. And it came to pass that the Lord did go before them, and did talk with them as he stood in a cloud, and gave directions wither they should travel.

6. And it came to pass that they did travel in the wilderness, and did build barges, in which they did cross many waters, being directed continually by the hand of the Lord.

13. ---for behold, it came to pass that the Lord did bring Jared and his brethren forth even to that great sea which divideth the lands. And as they came to the sea they pitched their tents; and they called the name of the place Moriancumer; and they dwelt in tents---upon the seashore for the space of four years.

14. And it came to pass at the end of four years that the Lord came again unto the brother of Jared, and stood in a cloud and talked with him.

E 2-480

43. And there [in the promised land] will I bless thee and thy seed, and raise up unto me of thy seed, and of the seed of thy brother, and they who shall go with thee, a great nation. And there shall be none greater than the nation which I will raise up unto me of thy seed, upon all the face of the earth.

E 1-480

16. And the Lord said: Go to work and build, after the manner of barges which ye have hitherto built. And it came to pass that the brother of Jared did go to work, and also his brethren, and built barges after the manner which they had built, according to the instructions of the Lord. And they were small, and they were light upon the water, even like unto the lightness of a fowl upon the water.

17. And they were built after a manner that they were exceeding tight, even that they would hold water like unto a dish---and the ends thereof were peaked; and the top thereof was tight like unto a dish; and the length thereof was the length of a tree; and the door thereof, when it was shut, was tight like unto a dish.

E 2-481

1. And it came to pass that the brother of Jared, (now the number of vessels which had been prepared was eight) went forth unto the mount, which they called the mount Shelem, because of its exceeding height, and did molten out of a rock sixteen small stones; and they were white and clear, even as transparent glass;

E 3-483

2. For it came to pass after the Lord had prepared the stones which the brother of Jared had carried up into the mount, the brother of Jared came down out of the mount, and he did put forth the stones into the vessels which were prepared, one in each end thereof; and behold, they did give light unto the vessels.

CHART 6 MIGRATIONS OF THE PEOPLES OF THE BOOK OF MORMON

CAUSE OF MIGRATION	PLACE OF DEPARTURE	COURSE OF MIGRATION	DESTINATION
Confusion of tongues	Mesopotamia (?) (probably near Sumeria)	Down northward to the valley of Nimrod cross land and water, then across the ocean.	The Western Hemisphere
Iniquity of Jews in Jerusalem	Jerusalem	So. E. along Red Sea, E. to ocean, across ocean	The Western Hemisphere
Destruction of Jerusalem	Jerusalem	May have crossed ocean in a Phoenician ship—Westward?	The Western Hemisphere
Followers of Nephi forced to flee from people of Lehi because of jealousy of Laman and Lemuel.	"Land of First Inheritance" or	Northward and eastward; settled land of Nephi. Later pushed north to Zarahemla, then Bountiful, then Desolation	Continually pushed northward by the southern tribes
Revolt of Laman and his group against the rule of Nephi, their younger brother.	Near place of arrival on the Land of Promise	Probably spread south, also east, and finally conquered Nephites and took the land northward.	Spread over the Western Hemisphere
They were Lamanites and were converted to the Nephite faith.	Land of Nephi	Traveled north from Nephi to Zarahemla, then N.E. to Jereshon	Jereshon
Wished to reclaim land of first inheritance (Nephi)	Zarahemla	Southward and upward	Valley of Shilom Land of Nephi
After fled Lamanite rule.	Land of Nephi	Northward and down	Zarahemla
A righteous group fled from King Noah.	Valley of Shilom, Nephi	To Mormon, then to Helam, 26 yrs. later to	Zarahemla
A wicked group banished by the people of Limhi.	Valley of Shilom, Nephi	Northward to a new valley which they called Amulon — joined Lamanites.	Amulon in Land of Nephi
Probably dissenters from whom Mosiah I and his people fled.		Probably remained in Nephi, joined Lamanites	
Dissenters from Nephites	Zarahemla	Remnant fled and joined Lamanites	Land of Nephi
Dissenters from Nephites	Antionum	Remnant fled and joined Lamanites	Land of Nephi
Dissenters from Nephites	Zarahemla	Remnant fled and joined Lamanites	Land of Nephi
Disputed over land with people of Lehi.	Morianum	Northward to Bountiful	Returned to Moriantum
Disputed over type of government	Zarahemla	Re-action within country	Zarahemla
Unity, selfishness, and other vices.	Various locations	Secret groups throughout the country	Where there was he found plunder
Minority dissenting groups	Various locations	Secret groups throughout the country	Found new land and joined Lamanites
Need or desire for new land	Bountiful	Northward by sea, Northward by land	Land of Desolation and Land Northward

3. And thus the Lord caused stones to shine in darkness, to give light unto men, women, and children, that they might not cross the great waters in darkness.

4. And it came to pass that when they had prepared all manner of food, that thereby they might subsist upon the water, and also food for their flocks and herds, and whatsoever beast or animal or fowl that they should carry with them—and it came to pass that when they had done all these things they got aboard of their vessels or barges, and set forth into the sea, commending themselves unto the Lord their God.

E 6-487

5. And it came to pass that the Lord God caused that there should be a furious wind blow upon the face of the waters, towards the promised land; and thus they were tossed upon the waves of the sea before the wind.

6. And it came to pass that they were many times buried in the depths of the sea, because of the mountain waves which broke upon them, and also the great and terrible tempests which were caused by the fierceness of the wind.

7. And it came to pass that when they were buried in the deep there was no water that could hurt them, their vessels being tight like unto a dish, and also they were tight like unto the ark of Noah; therefore when they were encompassed about by many waters they did cry unto the Lord, and he did bring them forth again upon the top of the waters.

9. And they did sing praises unto the Lord; ---and when the night came, they did not cease to praise the Lord.

10. And thus they were driven forth; and no monster of the sea could break them, neither whale that could mar them;

11. And thus they were driven forth, three hundred and forty and four days upon the water.

E 6-487

12. And they did land upon the shore of the promised land. And when they had set their feet upon the shores of the promised land they bowed themselves down upon the face of the land, and did humble themselves before the Lord,

13. And it came to pass that they went forth upon the face of the land, and began to till the earth.

18. And it came to pass that they began to spread upon the face of the land, and to multiply and to till the earth; and they did wax strong in the land.

E 6-488

19. And the brother of Jared began to be old, and saw that he must soon go down to the grave; wherefore he said unto Jared: Let us gather together our people that we may number them, that we may know of them what they will desire of us before we go down to our graves.

CHART 7

PERSONNEL OF THE MIGRATING PARTY OF THE JAREDITES

Jared and his family

(Jared had four sons: Jacom, Gilgah, Mahah and Orihah, and eight daughters. The daughters may have been born in the "Promised Land.")

Brother of Jared

(No name is given for the Brother of Jared. His name may have been *Moron, since that was the name given to the principal city of the Jaredites.)

(The Brother of Jared had sons and daughters before coming to the "Promised Land." How many is not stated. At his death he had accumulated twenty-two children, however.)

Friends of Jared

(The friends of Jared were listed as twenty-two souls, who also "begat sons and daughters before they came to the Promised Land.")

This group crossed the ocean on eight barges or ships.

Time in transit—5 years (They were 4 years on land, and 344 days on the ocean coming to the "Promised Land.")

*Note: His name may have been Gazelem. (H 37-290, verse 23.)

20. And accordingly the people were gathered together. Now the number of the sons and the daughters of the brother of Jared were twenty and two souls; and the number of sons and daughters of Jared were twelve, he having four sons.

14. And Jared had four sons: and they were called Jacom, and Gilgah, and Mahah, and Orihah.

16. And the friends of Jared and his brother were in number about twenty and two souls; and they also begat sons and daughters before they came to the promised land; and therefore they began to be many. E 6-488

III. A FEW INCIDENTS OF JAREDITE HISTORY

23. And also in the reign of Shule there came prophets among the people, who were sent from the Lord, prophesying that the wickedness and idolatry of the people was bringing a curse upon the land, and they should be destroyed if they did not repent.

24. And it came to pass that the people did revile against the prophets, and did mock them. E 7-490

20. And the country was divided; and there were two kingdoms, the kingdom of Shule, and the kingdom of Cohor, the son of Noah. [not the ancient Noah] E 7-490

20. And they built a great city by the narrow neck of land, by the place where the sea divides the land.

21. And they did preserve the land southward for a wilderness, to get game. And the whole face of the land northward was covered with inhabitants. E 10-497

22. And they were exceedingly industrious, and they did buy and sell and traffic one with another, that they might get gain.

23. And they did work in all manner of ore, and they did make gold, and silver, and iron, and brass, and all manner of metals; and they did dig it out of the earth; wherefore, they did cast up mighty heaps of earth to get ore, of gold, and of silver, and of iron, and of copper. And they did work all manner of fine work.

24. And they did have silks, and fine-twined linen; and they did work all manner of cloth, that they might clothe themselves from their nakedness.

25. And they did make all manner of tools to till the earth, both to plow and to sow, to reap and to hoe, and also to thrash.

26. And they did make all manner of tools with which they did work their beasts.

27. And they did make all manner of weapons of war.

28. And never could be a people more blessed than were they, and more prospered by the hand of the Lord. And they were in a land that was choice above all lands, for the Lord had spoken it.

E 10-498

IV. THE LAST DAYS OF THE JAREDITES

20. And---the word of the Lord came to Ether, that he should go and prophesy unto Coriantumr that, if he would repent, and all his household, the Lord would give unto him his kingdom and spare the people—

21. Otherwise they should be destroyed, and all his household save it were himself. And he should only live to see the fulfilling of the prophecies which had been spoken concerning another people receiving the land for their inheritance; and Coriantumr should receive a burial by them;

E 13.504

1. And now I, Moroni, proceed to finish my record concerning the destruction of the people of whom I have been writing. E 13-508

18. And there went a fear of Shez throughout all the land; yea, a cry went forth throughout the land—Who can stand before the army of Shiz? Behold, he sweepeth the earth before him!

19. And it came to pass that the people began to flock together in armies, through all the face of the land.

20. And they were divided; and a part of them fled to the army of Shiz, and a part of them fled to the army of Coriantumr.

21. And so great and lasting had been the war, and so long had been the scene of bloodshed and carnage, that the whole face of the land was covered with the bodies of the dead.

22. And so swift and speedy was the war that there was none left to bury the dead, but they did march forth from the shedding of blood to the shedding of blood, leaving the bodies of both men, women, and children strewed upon the face of the land, to become a prey to the worms of the flesh.

28. And they [armies of Shiz] pitched their tents in the valley of Corihor; and Coriantumr pitched his tents in the valley of Shurr.

Now the valley of Shurr was near the hill Comnor; wherefore, Coriantumr did gather his armies together upon the hill Comnor, and did sound a trumpet unto the armies of Shiz to invite them forth to battle.

30. And it came to pass that Shiz smote upon Coriantumr that he gave him many deep wounds; and Coriantumr, having lost his blood, fainted, and was carried away as though he were dead.

31. Now the loss of men, women, and children on both sides was so great that Shiz commanded his people that they should not pursue the armies of Coriantumr; wherefore, they returned to their camp. E 14-506

1. And it came to pass when Coriantumr had recovered of his wounds, he began to remember the words which Ether had spoken unto him.

2. He saw that there had been slain by the sword already nearly two millions of his people, and he began to sorrow in his heart;

3. He began to repent of the evil which he had done; he began to remember the words which had been spoken by the mouth of all the prophets, and he saw them that they were fulfilled thus far, every whit; and his soul mourned and refused to be comforted.

4. And it came to pass that he wrote an epistle unto Shiz, desiring him that he would spare the people, and he would give up the kingdom for the sake of the lives of the people.

5. And it came to pass that when Shiz had received his epistle he wrote an epistle unto Coriantumr, that if he would give himself up, that he might slay him with his own sword, that he would spare the lives of the people.

9. And it came to pass that they fought an exceedingly sore battle, in which Coriantumr was wounded again, and he fainted with the loss of blood. E 15-507

12. And it came to pass that they did gather together all the people upon all the face of the land, who had not been slain,

14. Wherefore, they were for the space of four years gathering together the people, that they might get all who were upon the face of the land, and that they might receive all the strength which it was possible that they could receive.

15. And it came to pass that when they were all gathered together, every one to the army which he would, with their wives and their children—both men, women, and children being armed with weapons of war, having shields, and breastplates, and head-plates, and being clothed after the manner of war—they did march forth one against the other to battle; and they fought all that day, and conquered not.

16. And it came to pass that when it was night they were weary, and retired to their camps; and after they had retired to their camps they took up a howling and a lamentation for the loss of the slain of their people; and so great were their cries, their howlings and lamentations, that they did rend the air exceedingly.

18. And it came to pass that Coriantumr wrote again an epistle unto Shiz, desiring that he would not come again to battle, but that he would take the kingdom, and spare the lives of the people.

19. But behold, the Spirit of the Lord had ceased striving with them, and Satan had full power over the hearts of the people; --- wherefore they went again to battle.

20. And it came to pass that they fought all that day, and when the night came they slept upon their swords.

21. And on the morrow they fought even until the night came.

22. And when the night came they were drunken with anger, even as a man who is drunken with wine; and they slept again upon their swords.

23. And on the morrow they fought again; and when the night came they had all fallen by the sword save it were fifty and two of the people of Coriantumr, and sixty and nine of the people of Shiz.

24. And it came to pass that they slept upon their swords that night, and on the morrow they fought again,

25. And when the night came there were thirty and two of the people of Shiz, and twenty and seven of the people of Coriantumr.

26. And it came to pass that they ate and slept, and prepared for death on the morrow.

27. And it came to pass that they fought for the space of three hours, and they fainted with the loss of blood.

28. ---when the men of Coriantumr had received sufficient strength that they could walk, they were about to flee for their lives; but behold Shiz arose, and also his men, and he swore in his wrath that he would slay Coriantumr or he would perish by the sword.

29. Wherefore, he did pursue them, and on the morrow he did overtake them; and they fought again with the sword. And it came to pass that when they had all fallen by the sword, save it were Coriantumr and Shiz, behold Shiz had fainted with the loss of blood.

30. And it came to pass that when Coriantumr had leaned upon his sword, that he rested a little, he smote off the head of Shiz.

31. And it came to pass that after he had smitten off the head of Shiz, that Shiz raised upon his hands and fell; and after that he had struggled for breath, he died.

32. And it came to pass that Coriantumr fell to the earth, and became as if he had no life.

it be this Jesus Christ, of which I have spoken, whereby man can be saved.

21. Wherefore, for this cause hath the Lord God promised unto me that these things which I write shall be kept and preserved--- that the promise may be fulfilled unto Joseph, that his seed should never perish as long as the earth should stand. 2N 25-31

1. Now behold I, Jarom, write a few words according to the commandment of my father, Enos, that our genealogy may be kept. Jm 1-127

2. [Manner of address] I am Amulek; I am the son of Giddonah, who was a descendant of Aminadi;

3. And Aminadi was a descendant of Nephi, who was the son of Lehi, who came out of the land of Jerusalem, who was a descendant of Manasseh, who was the son of Joseph who was sold into Egypt by the hands of his brethren. A 10-219

23. Moroni [I] said unto them: Behold, we are a remnant of the seed of Jacob; yea, we are a remnant of the seed of Joseph, whose coat was rent by his brethren.

27. And now who knoweth but what the remnant of the seed of Joseph, which shall perish as his garment, are those who have dissented from us? Yea, and even it shall be ourselves if we do not stand fast in the faith of Christ. A 46-311

6. [Helaman speaks to his sons, Nephi and Lehi.] Behold, my sons, I---have given unto you the names of our first parents who came out of the land of Jerusalem; and this I have done that when you remember your names ye may remember them; and when ye remember them ye may remember their works; H 5-369

5. And I, Mormon, being a descendant of Nephi, (and my father's name was Mormon)--- Mn 1-460

20. I am Mormon, and a pure descendant of Lehi. I have reason to bless my God and my Savior Jesus Christ, that he brought our fathers out of the land of Jerusalem, ---

21. Surely he hath blessed the house of Jacob, and hath been merciful unto the seed of Joseph. 3N 5.410

30. ---[and whosoever will lay hold upon the word of God may] sit down with Abraham, and Isaac, and with Jacob, and with all our holy fathers, to go no more out. H 3-365

II. MIGRATION OF LEHI AND HIS PARTY FROM JERUSALEM TO THE "PROMISED LAND"

4. For it came to pass in the commencement of the first year of the reign of Zedekiah, king of Judah, (my father, Lehi, having dwelt at Jerusalem in all his days); and in that same year there came many prophets, prophesying unto the people that they must repent, or the great city Jerusalem must be destroyed.

18. ---behold he [Lehi] went forth among the people, and began to prophesy and to declare unto them concerning the things which he had both seen and heard.

19. And it came to pass that the Jews did mock him because of the things which he testified of them; for he truly testified of their wickedness and their abominations;

20. And when the Jews heard these things they were angry with him; ---and they sought his life, that they might take it away.

1N 1-1

2. And it came to pass that the Lord commanded my father, even in a dream, that he should take his family and depart into the wilderness.

4. And it came to pass that he departed into the wilderness. And he left his house, and the land of his inheritance, and his gold, and his silver, and his precious things, and took nothing with him, save it were his family, and provisions, and tents, and departed into the wilderness.

5. And he came down by the borders near the shore of the Red Sea; and he traveled in the wilderness in the borders which are nearer the Red Sea; and he did travel in the wilderness with his family, which consisted of my mother, Sariah, and my elder brothers, who were Laman, Lemuel, and Sam.

6. And it came to pass that when he had traveled three days in the wilderness, he pitched his tent in a valley by the side of a river of water.

7. And it came to pass that he built an altar of stones, and made an offering unto the Lord, and gave thanks unto the Lord our God.

1N 2-8

3. For behold, Laban hath the record of the Jews and also a genealogy of thy forefathers, and they are engraven upon plates of brass.

4. Wherefore, the Lord hath commanded me that thou and thy brothers should [return to Jerusalem and] go unto the house of Laban, and seek the records, and bring them down hither into the wilderness.

CHART 8

PERSONNEL OF THE MIGRATING PARTY OF LEHI

Lehi	—Prophet from Jerusalem
Sariah	—Wife of Lehi
Laman	—Son of Lehi (in young manhood, unmarried)
Lemuel	—Son of Lehi (in young manhood, unmarried)
Sam	—Son of Lehi (in young manhood, unmarried)
Nephi	—Son of Lehi (in young manhood, unmarried)
Jacob	—Son of Lehi (born in the wilderness migration)
Joseph	—Son of Lehi (born in the wilderness migration)
Women	—Daughters of Lehi (number unknown)

Zoram —Servant of Laban, (Laban, a relative of Lehi)

Ishmael

Wife of Ishmael—No name given

Son of Ishmael—No name given (not stated if married)

Son of Ishmael—No name given (not stated if married)

Five Daughters—No names given (unmarried)

Laman, Lemuel, Sam, Nephi, and Zoram—each took one of the daughters of Ishmael as a wife. (There is the probability that the two sons of Ishmael took two of the daughters of Lehi as wives, but such a fact is not stated in the Book of Mormon.)

The tribes coming from these unions were: Lamanites, Lemuelites, Nephites, Jacobites, Josephites, Zoramites, and Ishmaelites. (No descendants of Sam are mentioned, which may indicate that he had none.)

9. And I, Nephi, and my brethren took our journey in the wilderness, with our tents, to go up to the land of Jerusalem. [For the account of this expedition, see Chapter II, Part I, Section II.]

1N 3-5

38. [They secure the Brass Plates and return to their father.] And it came to pass that we took the plates of brass and the servant of Laban, and departed into the wilderness, and journeyed unto the tent of our father.

1N 4-9

2. And it came to pass that the Lord commanded him [Lehi] that I, Nephi, and my brethren, should again return unto the land of Jerusalem, and bring down Ishmael and his family into the wilderness.

1. ---that his [Lehi's] sons should take daughters to wife, that they might raise up seed unto the Lord in the land of promise.

1N 7-11

7. And it came to pass that I, Nephi, took one of the daughters of Ishmael to wife; and also Zoram took the eldest daughter of Ishmael to wife.

1N 16-31

6. And it came to pass that as we journeyed in the wilderness, behold Laman and Lemuel, and two of the daughters of Ishmael, and the two sons of Ishmael and their families, did rebel against us; yea, against me, Nephi, and Sam, and their father, Ishmael, and his wife, and his three other daughters.

7. And it came to pass in the which rebellion, they were desirous to return unto the land of Jerusalem.

1N 7-11

34. And it came to pass that Ishmael died, and was buried in the place which was called Nahom.

35. And it came to pass that the daughters of Ishmael did mourn exceedingly, because of the loss of their father, and because of their afflictions in the wilderness; and they did murmur against my father, because he had brought them out of the land of Jerusalem.

1N 16-33

7. And now, my father had begat two sons in the wilderness; the elder was called Jacob and the younger Joseph.

1N 18-39

10. And it came to pass that as my father arose in the morning, and went forth to the tent door, to his great astonishment he beheld upon the ground a round ball of curious workmanship; and it was of fine brass. And within the ball were two spindles; and the one pointed the way whither we should go into the wilderness.

1N 16-31

38. And now, my son, I have somewhat to say concerning the thing which our fathers call a ball, or director—or our fathers called it Liahona, which is, being interpreted, a compass; and the Lord prepared it.

39. And behold, there cannot any man work after the manner of so curious a workmanship. And behold, it was prepared to show unto our fathers the course which they should travel in the wilderness.

40. And it did work for them according to their faith in God;

A 27-291

11. And it came to pass that we did gather together whatsoever things we should carry into the wilderness --- and we did take seed of every kind that we might carry into the wilderness.

12. And it came to pass that we did take our tents and depart into the wilderness, across the river Laman.

13. And it came to pass that we traveled for the space of four days, nearly a south-southeast direction, and we did pitch our tents again; and we did call the name of the place Shazer.

14. And it came to pass that we did take our bows and our arrows, and go forth into the wilderness, to slay food for our families; --- and we did go forth again in the wilderness, following the same direction, keeping in the most fertile parts of the wilderness, which were in the borders near the Red Sea.

15. And it came to pass that we did travel for the space of many days, slaying food by the way, with our bows and our arrows, and our stones and our slings.

1N 16-31

1. And it came to pass that we did again take our journey in the wilderness; and we did travel nearly eastward from that time forth. And we did travel and wade through much affliction in the wilderness; and our women did bear children in the wilderness.

4. And we did sojourn for the space of many years, yea, even eight years in the wilderness.

5. And we did come to the land which we called Bountiful, because of its much fruit and also wild honey; and all these things were prepared of the Lord that we might not perish. And we beheld the sea, which we called Irreantum, which, being interpreted, is many waters.

6. And it came to pass that we did pitch our tents by the sea-shore;

1N 17-34

8. And it came to pass that the Lord spake unto me [Nephi], saying: Thou shalt construct a ship, after the manner which I shall show thee, that I may carry thy people across these waters.

10. And it came to pass that the Lord told me whither I should go to find ore, that I might make tools.

17. And when my brethren saw that I was about to build a ship, they began to murmur against me, saying: Our brother is a fool, for he thinketh that he can build a ship; yea, and he also thinketh that he can cross these great waters.

51. And now, if the Lord has such great power, and has wrought so many miracles among the children of men, how is it that he cannot instruct me, that I should build a ship?

54. And it came to pass that I stretched forth my hand unto my brethren, and --- the Lord did shake them,

55. And now, they said: We know of a surety that the Lord is with thee, --- And they fell down before me, 1N 17-84

1. And it came to pass that they did worship the Lord, and did go forth with me; and we did work timbers of curious workmanship. And the Lord did show me from time to time after what manner I should work the timbers of the ship.

4. And it came to pass that after I had finished the ship, --- my brethren beheld that it was good, ---

5. And it came to pass that the voice of the Lord came unto my father, that we should arise and go down into the ship. 1N 18-88

22. And it came to pass that I, Nephi, did guide the ship, that we sailed again towards the promised land.

23. And it came to pass that after we had sailed for the space of many days we did arrive at the promised land; and we went forth upon the land, and did pitch our tents; and we did call it the promised land. 1N 19-40

III. SEPARATION OF THE PEOPLE OF LEHI INTO NEPHITES AND LAMANITES

1. *THE NEPHITES AND LAMANITES BECAME ENEMIES.*

12. And it came to pass after my father, Lehi, had spoken unto all this household, according to the feelings of his heart and the Spirit of the Lord which was in him he waxed old. And it came to pass that he died, and was buried.

13. And it came to pass that not many days after his death, Laman and Lemuel and the sons of Ishmael were angry with me because of the admonitions of the Lord. 2N 4-58

2. ---behold, their anger did increase against me, insomuch that they did seek to take away my life.

3. Yea, they did murmur against me, saying: Our younger brother thinks to rule over us;

5. And it came to pass that the Lord did warn me, that I, Nephi, should depart from them and flee into the wilderness, and all those who would go with me.

CHART 9

NEPHITE MIGRATIONS

Chart showing the origin and migrations of the Nephite people from the time that they left Jerusalem until they were annihilated by the Lamanites in 385 A.D.

THE PEOPLE	THE LAND	PERIOD OF HABITATION	APPROXIMATE DATES	APPROXIMATE DURATION	COMMENTS
THE PEOPLE OF ISRAEL (Jews)	Jerusalem	From the time of the "Exodus" until Lehi left Jerusalem.	1400 B.C.-600 B.C.	800 years	The family of Lehi called themselves "Jews," yet claimed that they were descendants of Jacob through Joseph and through Manasseh (?)
PEOPLE OF LEHI (In the Old World)	Enroute to "The Land of Promise"	8 years traveling from Jerusalem to Bountiful (Arabia?). 1-2 years in Bountiful and enroute to the Western Hemisphere.	600 B.C. - 590 B.C.	10 years	The people of Lehi migrated from Jerusalem, south along the Red Sea, then east to Bountiful (which was in the district of Arabia probably). On the shores of Bountiful, they built a ship and sailed for the "Promised Land."
PEOPLE OF LEHI (In the New World)	"The Land of First Inheritance"	From the time of arrival in the "Promised Land" until Lehi's death.	590 B.C. - 580 B.C.	10 years	The first land inhabited after their ocean voyage from the "Old World" was called "The Land of First Inheritance." After the death of Lehi, his people separated in "Nephites" and "Lamanites."
PEOPLE OF NEPHI (Nephites)	"The Land of Nephi"	Nephi and group fled from the "Land of First Inheritance" to a new land, Nephi.	580 B.C. - 250 B.C.	330 years	"Many days" distant from the "Land of First Inheritance" was a mountainous land (later known as the "Land of Nephi") to which Nephi and his people fled.
PEOPLE OF MOSIAH (Nephites)	*"The Land of Zarahemla"	A group of Nephites under the direction of Mosiah I, fled to Zarahemla from the land of Nephi.	250 B.C. - 34 B.C.	200 years	Due to wickedness in the "Land of Nephi," Mosiah and a righteous group fled to a new land, "Zarahemla." There they found and joined forces with another people, the Mulekites (people of Mulek). The combined peoples became known as "Nephites."
THE NEPHITES	"The Land of Bountiful"	The Nephites were driven from Zarahemla to Bountiful by the Lamanites.	34 B.C. - 327 A.D.	300 years	The Nephites were driven north by the Lamanites who captured "Zarahemla." It was in the "Land of Bountiful" that Christ appeared to the Nephites at approximately 34-35 A.D. after his crucifixion in Jerusalem.
THE NEPHITES	*"The Land of Zarahemla"	Some of the Nephites diffused back into Zarahemla. The last great war began here.	59 A.D. - 322 A.D.	250 years	During the peaceful epoch which followed Christ's appearance, the Nephites drifted back into Zarahemla and rebuilt the city.
THE NEPHITES	"The Land of Desolation" (or "The Land Northward")	The Nephites gradually spread northward, but about 327 A.D., the Nephites were forced northward in a mass retreat.	55 B.C. - 385 A.D.	330 years	Although the Nephites began to colonize the northern districts at about 55 B.C., it was not until the Nephites were pushed northward from Bountiful by the Lamanites that the center of the Nephite culture was established in the north (c. 327 A.D.) It was at Cumorah in these northern lands that the Nephites were finally destroyed.

*NOTE: In all, the Nephites inhabited the land of Zarahemla (off and on at intervals)

over a period of about 580 years.

CHART 9

NEPHITE MIGRATIONS

Chart showing the origin and migrations of the Nephite people from the time that they left Jerusalem until they were annihilated by the Lamanites in 385 A.D.

7. And we did take our tents and whatsoever things were possible for us, and did journey in the wilderness—

8. And my people would that we should call the name of the place Nephi; wherefore, we did call it Nephi.

9. And all those who were with me did take upon them to call themselves the people of Nephi. [This separation is the beginning of the two great groups—Nephites and Lamanites.] 2N 5-60

10. The people having loved Nephi exceedingly, he having been a great protector for them, ---

11. Wherefore, the people were desirous to retain in remembrance his name. And whoso should reign in his stead were called by the people, second Nephi, third Nephi, and so forth-- J 1-108

11. And it came to pass that whosoever would not believe in the tradition of the Lamanites, but believed those records which were brought out of the land of Jerusalem, and also in the tradition of their fathers, which were correct, who believed in the commandments of God and kept them, were called the Nephites, or the people of Nephi, from that time forth—

12. And it is they who have kept the records which are true of their people, and also of the people of the Lamanites. A 3-201

13. ---[The] Lamanites --- were a compound of Laman and Lemuel, and the sons of Ishmael, and all those who had dissented from the Nephites, A 43-801

13. Now the people which were not Lamanites were Nephites; nevertheless, they were called Nephites, Jacobites, Josephites, [and] Zoramanites; Lamanites, Lemuelites, and Ishmaelites.

14. But I Jacob [Nephi's brother], shall not hereafter distinguish them by these names, but I shall call them *Lamanites* that seek to destroy the people of Nephi, and those who are friendly to Nephi, I shall call Nephites, or the people of Nephi, according to the reigns of the kings. J 1-108

2. THE NEPHITES AND LAMANITES WERE RE-UNITED.

(*The period of peace which occurred after the advent of Christ, reunited the Lamanites and the Nephites.*)

2. And it came to pass in the thirty and sixth year, the people were all converted unto the Lord, upon all the face of the land, both Nephites and Lamanites, and there were no contentions and disputations among them, and every man did deal justly one with another.

3. And they had all things common among them; therefore there were not rich and poor, bond and free, but they were all made free, and partakers of the heavenly gift.

17. ---neither were there Lamanites, nor any manner of "ites"; but they were all one, the children of Christ, the heirs to the kingdom of God. 4N 1-456

3. *LANANITES VS. NEPHITES RE-APPEARED.* (*About 200 years after Christ, the two factions re-appeared.*) 20. ---there was still peace in the land, save it were a small part of the people who had revolted from the church and taken upon them the name of Lamanites; therefore there began to be Lamanites again in the land.

36. And it came to pass that in this year there arose a people who were called the Nephites, and they were true believers in Christ; and among them there were those who were called by the Lamanites—Jacobites, and Josephites, and Zoramites;

37. Therefore the true believers in Christ, and the true worshippers of Christ, ---were called Nephites---

38. And it came to pass that they who rejected the gospel were called Lamanites, and Lemuelites, and Ishmaelites; and they did not dwindle in unbelief, but they did wilfully rebel against the gospel of Christ; and they did teach their children, that they should not believe, even as their fathers, from the beginning, did dwindle. 4N 1-457

IV. FIRST GREAT SEPARATION AMONGST THE NEPHITES

(*In the land of Nephi, dissensions among the Nephites, caused a separation—part of them left the land and went with Mosiah I to find new lands.*) 12. ---Behold, I will speak unto you somewhat concerning Mosiah --- for behold, he being warned of the Lord that he should flee out of the land of Nephi, and as many as would hearken unto the voice of the Lord should also depart out of the land with him, into the wilderness—

13. And it came to pass that he did according as the Lord had commanded him. And they departed out of the land into the wilderness, ---until they came down into the land which is called the land of Zarahemla.

14. And they discovered a people, who were called the people of Zarahemla; O 130

PART III

THE MULEKITES

These people left Jerusalem at the time of the Babylonian captivity with Mulek, son of King Zedekiah. They migrated to the Western Hemisphere (c. 585 B.C.) They were also called "the people of Zarahemla." These people later joined and became part of the "Nephites."

I. GENEALOGY OF THE MULEKITES

15. Behold, it came to pass that Mosiah discovered that the people of Zarahemla came out from Jerusalem at the time that Zedekiah, king of Judah, was carried away captive into Babylon.

O 1-130

21. And now will you dispute that Jerusalem was destroyed? Will ye say that the sons of Zedekiah were not slain, all except it were Mulek? Yea, and do ye not behold that the seed of Zedekiah are with us, and they were driven out of the land of Jerusalem?

H 8-380

18. ---Zarahemla [the Mulekite] gave a genealogy of his fathers, according to his memory; and they are written, but not on these plates.

O 1-130

II. THE MULEKITE MIGRATION

(As told by the Nephites)

15. ---[They, the Mulekites], came out from Jerusalem at the time that Zedekiah, king of Judah, was carried away captive into Babylon.

16. And [from Jerusalem] they journeyed in the wilderness, and were brought by the hand of the Lord across the great waters,

O 1-130

30. [Into the] land which they called Desolation [on the Western Hemisphere], it being so far northward that it came into the land which had been peopled and been destroyed, of whose bones we have spoken --- it being the place of their first landing.

31. And they came from there up into the south wilderness. Thus the land on the northward was called Desolation, ---

A 22-254

17. And at the time that Mosiah discovered them, they had become exceedingly numerous. Nevertheless, they had had many wars and serious contentions, ---and their language had become corrupted; and they had brought no records with them --- and Mosiah, nor the people of Mosiah, could understand them.

18. But it came to pass that Mosiah caused that they should be taught in his language.

14. ---Now, there was great rejoicing among the people of Zarahemla; ---because the Lord had sent the people of Mosiah [Nephites] with the plates of brass which contained the record of the Jews—

19. And it came to pass that the people of Zarahemla [Mulekites], and [the people of] Mosiah [Nephites] did unite together; and Mosiah was appointed to be their king. O 1-130

10. Now the land south was called Lehi, and the land north was called Mulek, which was after the son of Zedekiah; for the Lord did bring Mulek into the land north, and Lehi into the land south. H 6-373

(The Mulekites lost their identity as such, and hereinafter will be included as "Nephites.")

PART IV

THE NEPHITES

The Nephites were descendants of the people of Lehi. Most of the content of the Book of Mormon is devoted to the Nephite culture. (c. 580 B.C. - 385 A.D.)

I. ORIGIN OF THE NEPHITES AND THEIR FIRST MIGRATION

(See "*people of Lehi*" in this chapter for the origin of the Nephites.)

5. And it came to pass that the Lord did warn me, that I, Nephi, should depart from them [his brethren, later known as "Lamanites"] and flee into the wilderness, and all those who would go with me.

And all those who were with me did take upon them to call themselves the people of Nephi.

2N 5-60

II. SEPARATION OF THE NEPHITES AND THEIR SECOND MIGRATION

(*Disagreements among the Nephites caused a religious group, under Mosiah I, to migrate northward. They left the land of Nephi and arrived in the land of Zarahemla.*)

12. ---Mosiah---should flee out of the land of Nephi, and as many as would hearken unto the voice of the Lord should also depart out of the land with him, ---

13. ---And they departed out of the land into the wilderness, --- until they came down into the land which is called the land of Zarahemla.

14. And they discovered a people who were called the people of Zarahemla;

O 1-180

1. *THE NEPHITES JOINED THE MULEKITES.* (*The Nephites and Mulekites became one people, and were all called "Nephites."*) 19. ---[They] did unite together; and Mosiah [I] was appointed to be their king.

O 1-181

13. And now all the people of Zarahemla [Mulekites] were numbered with the Nephites, and this because the kingdom had been conferred upon none but those who were descendants of Nephi.

Mo 25-188

1. And now king Mosiah [II] caused that all the people should be gathered together.

2. Now there were not so many of the children of Nephi, or so many of those who were descendants of Nephi, as there were of the people of Zarahemla, who was a descendant of Mulek, and those who came with him into the wilderness.

3. And there were not so many of the people of Nephi and of the people of Zarahemla as there were of the Lamanites; yea, they were not half so numerous.

4. And now all the people of Nephi were assembled together, and also all the people of Zarahemla, and they were gathered together in two bodies.

Mo 25-182

III. NORTHERN MIGRATIONS OF THE NEPHITES THIRD GREAT MIGRATION MOVEMENT

1. *NEPHITES INFILTRATE THE LAND OF ZARAHEMLA AND BOUNTIFUL.* (*The Nephites gradually expanded throughout the land of Zarahemla and Bountiful.*) 15. And they also began in that same year [c. 71 B.C.] to build many cities on the north, one in a particular manner which they called Lehi, which was in the north by the borders of the seashore.

A 50-322

2. *MASS MIGRATIONS TO THE LAND FAR NORTHWARD.* (*For various reasons—need of new land, dissatisfaction with the government, religious controversy, or the push of invasion forces—large groups of people began to push northward about 55 B.C.*) 3. And it came to pass --- there was much contention and many dissensions; in the which there were an exceeding great many who departed out of the land of Zarahemla, and went forth unto the land northward to inherit the land.

4. And they did travel to an exceeding great distance, insomuch that they came to large bodies of water and many rivers.

5. Yea, and even they did spread forth into all parts of the land, into whatever parts it had not been rendered desolate and without timber, because of the many inhabitants who had before inherited the land. [They are speaking of the Jaredites.]

H 3-363

4. And it came to pass that in the thirty and seventh year of the reign of the judges, there was a large company of men, even to the amount of five thousand and four hundred men, with their wives and their children, departed out of the land of Zarahemla into the land which was northward.

5. And it came to pass that Hagoth, he being an exceedingly curious man, therefore he went forth and built him an exceedingly large ship, on the borders of the land Bountiful, by the land Desolation, and launched it forth into the west sea, by the narrow neck which led into the land northward.

6. And behold, there were many of the Nephites who did enter therein and did sail forth with much provisions, and also many women and children; and they took their course northward. And thus ended the thirty and seventh year.

7. And in the thirty and eighth year, this man built other ships. And the first ship did also return, and many more people did enter into it; and they also took much provisions, and set out again to the land northward.

8. And it came to pass that they were never heard of more. And we suppose that they were drowned in the depths of the sea. And it came to pass that one other ship also did sail forth; and whither she did go we know not.

9. And it came to pass that in this year there were many people who went forth into the land northward. And thus ended the thirty and eighth year [of the reign of the judges].

10. ---Corianton had [also] gone forth to the land northward in a ship, to carry forth provisions unto the people who had gone forth into the land.

A 62-358

10. Now the land south was called Lehi, and the land north was called Mulek, ---

11. And behold, there was all manner of gold in both these lands, and of silver, and of precious ore of every kind;

12. They did raise grain in abundance, both in the north and in the south; and they did flourish exceedingly, both in the north and in the south.

H 6-378

(For detailed information concerning the movements of the Nephites about their land, and to other lands, see Appendix C.)

IV. CHARACTER OF THE NEPHITES

1. *PERIODS OF RIGHTEOUSNESS.* *(For the most part, the Nephites were a righteous people.)*

21. And it came to pass

that the people of Nephi did till the land, and raise all manner of grain and of fruit, ---all manner of cattle of every kind, and goats, and wild goats, and also many horses. E 1-127

9. And it came to pass that they became exceeding rich, --- and they did have an exceeding plenty of gold, and of silver, and of all manner of precious metals, both in the land south and in the land north.

11. ---and there were also curious workmen, who did work all kinds of ore and did refine it; and thus they did become rich.

12. They did raise grain in abundance --- And they did raise many flocks and herds, yea, many fatlings.

13. Behold their women did toil and spin, and did make all manner of cloth, of fine-twined linen and cloth of every kind, to clothe their nakedness.

12. ---And they did multiply and wax exceedingly strong in the land.

14. ---they did also have great joy and peace, yea, much preaching and many prophecies concerning that which was to come. H 6-373

26. And it came to pass that the work of the Lord did prosper unto the baptizing and uniting to the church of God, many souls, yea, even tens of thousands. H 3-365

3. Therefore they did forsake all their sins, and their abominations, and their whoredoms, and did serve God with all diligence day and night. 3N 5-409

20. Yea, after having been such a highly favored people of the Lord; yea, after having been favored above every other nation, kindred, tongue, or people; after having had all things made known unto them, according to their desires, and their faith, and prayers, of that which has been and which is, and which is to come;

21. Having been visited by the Spirit of God, ---and having---also many gifts, ---

22. Yea, and after having been delivered of God out of the land of Jerusalem, ---having been saved from famine, and from sickness, and all manner of disease of every kind; and they having waxed strong in battle, that they might not be destroyed; having been brought out of bondage time after time, and having been kept and preserved until now; and they have been prospered until they are rich in all manner of things— A 9-217

2. *PERIODS OF INIQUITY.* (During certain periods, the Nephites forgot their God, and slipped into iniquity.) 23. And

now behold I say unto you, that if this people who have received so many blessings, from the hand of the Lord, should transgress contrary to the light and knowledge which they do have --- that if they should fall into transgression, it would be far more tolerable for the Lamanites than for them.

24. ---for has not the Lord expressly promised and firmly decreed, that if ye will rebel against him that ye shall utterly be destroyed from off the face of the earth? A 9 217

23. And there was nothing save it was exceeding harshness, preaching and prophesying of wars, and contentions, and destructions, and continually reminding them of death, and the duration of eternity, and the judgments and power of God, and all these things—stirring them up continually to keep them in the fear of the Lord. I say there was nothing short of these things, ---would keep them from going down speedily to destruction. Ea 1-127

11. ---there were many merchants in the land, and also many lawyers, and many officers.

12. And the people began to be distinguished by ranks, according to their riches and their chances for learning---

13. Some were lifted up in pride, and others were exceedingly humble;

14. And thus there became a great inequality in all the land. 3N 6-411

6. Now this great iniquity had come upon the Nephites, in the space of not many years; and when Nephi [II] saw it, his heart was swollen with sorrow within his breast;

4. And seeing the people in a state of such awful wickedness, and those Gadianton robbers filling the judgment-seats—having usurped the power and authority of the land;

5. Condemning the righteous because of their righteousness; letting the guilty and the wicked go unpunished because of their money; and moreover to be held in office at the head of [the] government --- that they might the more easily commit adultery, and steal, and kill, and do according to their own wills— H 7-376

35. And thus we see that the Spirit of the Lord began to withdraw from the Nephites, because of the wickedness and the hardness of their hearts. H 6-875

30. And thus we can plainly discern, that after a people have been once enlightened by the Spirit of God, and have had great knowledge of things pertaining to righteousness, and then have fallen away into sin and transgression, they become more hardened,

and thus their state becomes worse than though they had never known these things.

A 24-259

(For a complete account of the iniquity found amongst the Nephites, see Chapter XVI, Part IV.)

V. PROPHECIES OF THE NEPHITE DESTRUCTION

17. And now behold, saith the Lord, concerning the people of the Nephites: If they will not repent, and observe to do my will, I will utterly destroy them, saith the Lord, because of their unbelief notwithstanding the many mighty works which I have done among them;

H 16-397

9. [Prophecy of Nephites after the coming of Christ.] But the Son of righteousness shall appear unto them; and he shall heal them, and they shall have peace with him, until three generations shall have passed away, and many of the fourth generation shall have passed away in righteousness.

10. And when these things have passed away a speedy destruction cometh unto my people; and they [shall] sell themselves for naught; for, for the reward of their pride and their foolishness they shall reap destruction;

2N 26-98

10. And these are the words: Behold, I perceive that this very people, the Nephites, according to the spirit of revelation which is in me, in four hundred years from the time that Jesus Christ shall manifest himself unto them, shall dwindle in unbelief.

11. Yea, and then shall they see wars and pestilences, yea, famines and bloodshed, even until the people of Nephi shall become extinct—

12. Yea, and this because they shall dwindle in unbelief and fall into the works of darkness---

13. And when that great day cometh, behold, the time very soon cometh that those who are now, or the seed of those who are now numbered among the people of Nephi, shall no more be numbered among the people of Nephi.

14. But whosoever remaineth, and is not destroyed in that great and dreadful day, shall be numbered among the Lamanites, and shall become like unto them, all, save it be a few who shall be called the disciples of the Lord and them shall the Lamanites pursue even until they shall become extinct. And now, because of iniquity, this prophecy shall be fulfilled.

A 45-308

VI. THE DESTRUCTION OF THE NEPHITES

(*For more detail, see Chapter VII, Part II.*) 10. And it came to pass that the Nephites began to repent of their iniquity, and began to cry even as had been prophesied by Samuel the prophet; for behold no man could keep that which was his own, for the thieves, and the robbers, and the murderers, and the magic art, and the witchcraft which was in the land.

11. Thus there began to be a mourning and a lamentation in all the land because of these things, and more especially among the people of Nephi.

14. And they did not come unto Jesus with broken hearts and contrite spirits, but they did curse God, and wish to die. Nevertheless they would struggle with the sword for their lives. Mn 2-462

11. And it is impossible for the tongue to describe, or for man to write a perfect description of the horrible scene of the blood and carnage which was among the people, both of the Nephites and of the Lamanites; and every heart was hardened, so that they delighted in the shedding of blood continually.

12. And there never had been so great wickedness among all the children of Lehi, nor even among all the house of Israel, according to the words of the Lord, as was among this people.

Mn 4-466

1. And now I finish my record concerning the destruction of my people, the Nephites.

4. And it came to pass that we did march forth to the land of Cumorah, ---

Mn 6-469

2. And now it came to pass that after the great and tremendous battle at Cumorah, behold, the Nephites who had escaped into the country southward were hunted by the Lamanites, until they were all destroyed.

9. And now, behold I say no more concerning them, for there are none save it be the Lamanites and robbers that do exist upon the face of the land.

Mn 8-472

14. ---[For] whosoever remaineth, and is not destroyed---shall be numbered among the Lamanites, and shall become like unto them,

A 45-308

16. ---they are no more called the Nephites, becoming wicked, and wild, and ferocious, yea, even becoming Lamanites.

H 3-364

6. Behold, four hundred years have passed away since the coming of our Lord and Savior.

Mn 8-472

PART V

THE LAMANITES

The Lamanites (now found among the American Indians) were for the most part, a dark race, and "full of idolatry." The tradition of their fathers incited hatred toward the Nephites, who were a white or a light race.

I. ORIGIN OF THE LAMANITES

(The Lamanites were descendants of Lehi, see this chapter, Part II. Also see Chart 6 for Nephite dissenters who joined the Lamanites. Also see Chapter V, Part III.) 13. ---the Lamanites---were a compound of Laman and Lemuel [sons of Lehi], and the sons of Ishmael, and all those who had dissented from the Nephites, who were Amalekites and Zoramites, and the descendants of the priests of Noah [etc.]. A 43-301

II. MIGRATIONS OF THE LAMANITES

(The only data given in the Book of Mormon concerning Lamanite migrations is given in connection with their invasions into the Nephite lands. They gradually spread northward as they pushed the Nephites farther north.) 6. And the Nephites---were driven even into the land of Bountiful; H 4-367

29. And the Lamanites did give unto us the land northward, yea, [south] even to the narrow passage which led into the land southward. And we did give unto the Lamanites all the land southward. Mn 2-463

6. And it came to pass that many of the Lamanites did go into the land northward; H 6-373

III. LAMANITE TRADITIONS

(The Lamanites fell into iniquity because of the traditions of their fathers.) 12. They were a wild, and ferocious, and a blood-

thirsty people, believing in the traditions of their fathers, which is this—Believing that they were driven out of the land of Jerusalem because of the iniquities of their fathers, and that they were wronged in the wilderness by their brethren, and they were also wronged while crossing the sea;

13. And again, that they were wronged while in the land of their first inheritance, after they had crossed the sea, and all this because that Nephi [and the Nephites] was more faithful in keeping the commandments of the Lord—

15. And again, they were wroth with him when they had arrived in the promised land, because they said that he had taken the ruling of the people out of their hands;

16. And again, they were wroth with him because he departed into the wilderness as the Lord had commanded him, and took the records which were engraven on the plates of brass, for they said that he had robbed them.

17. And thus they have taught their children that they should hate them [the Nephites], and that they should rob and plunder them, and do all they could to destroy them; therefore they have an eternal hatred towards the children of Nephi. Mo 10-154

17. And at some period of time they will be brought to believe in his [the Lord's] word, and to know of the incorrectness of the traditions of their fathers; and many of them will be saved, for the Lord will be merciful unto all who call on his name. A 9-217

IV. CHARACTER OF THE LAMANITES

20. Wherefore, the word of the Lord was fulfilled which he spake unto me [Nephi], saying that: Inasmuch as they [the Lamanites] will not hearken unto thy words they shall be cut off from the presence of the Lord. And behold, they were cut off from his presence. 2N 5-61

21. And he had caused the cursing to come upon them, yea, even a sore cursing, because of their iniquity. For behold, they had hardened their hearts against him, that they had become like unto a flint; wherefore, as they were white, and exceeding fair and delightful, that they might not be enticing unto my people [the Nephites] the Lord God did cause a skin of blackness to come upon them. 2N 5-61

6. And the skins of the Lamanites were dark, according to the mark which was set upon their fathers, A 3-201

14. Thus the word of God is fulfilled, for these are the words which he said to Nephi: Behold, the Lamanites have I cursed, and I will set a mark on them that they and their seed may be separated from thee and thy seed, from this time henceforth and forever, except they repent of their wickedness and turn to me that I may have mercy upon them. A 3-202

15. ---I will set a mark upon him that mingleth his seed with [that of] thy brethren, that they may be cursed also.

16. ---I will set a mark upon him that fighteth against thee and thy seed. A 3-202

23. And cursed shall be the seed of him that mixeth with their seed [saith the Lord]; for they shall be cursed even with the same cursing. 2N 5-61

9. And it came to pass that whosoever did mingle his seed with that of the Lamanites did bring the same curse upon his seed.

10. Therefore, whosoever suffered himself to be led away by the Lamanites was called under that head, and there was a mark set upon him. A 3-201

24. And because of their cursing which was upon them they [the Lamanites] did become an idle people, full of mischief and subtlety, and did seek in the wilderness for beasts of prey. 2N 5-61

20. ---[and] their hatred was fixed, and they were led by their evil nature that they became wild, and ferocious, and a blood-thirsty people, full of idolatry and filthiness; feeding upon beasts of prey; dwelling in tents, and wandering about in the wilderness with a short skin girdle about their loins and their heads shaven; and their skill was in the bow, and in the cimeter, and the ax. And many of them did eat nothing save it was raw meat; Es 1-126

14. ---[Yea, the Lamanites were] a wild and a hardened and a ferocious people; a people who delighted in murdering the Nephites, and robbing and plundering them; and their hearts were set upon riches, or upon gold and silver, and precious stones; yet they sought to obtain these things by murdering and plundering, that they might not labor for them with their own hands. A 17-238

7. And thus the Lamanites began to increase in riches, and began to trade one with another and wax great, and began to be a cunning and a wise people, as to the wisdom of the world, yea, a very cunning people, delighting in all manner of wickedness and plunder, except it were among their own brethren. Mo 24-181

4. And the Amlicites [who were a group of Nephites that had joined the Lamanites] were distinguished from the Nephites, for

they had marked themselves with red in their foreheads after the manner of the Lamanites;

18. Now the Amlicites knew not that they were fulfilling the words of God, when they began to mark themselves in their foreheads; nevertheless they had come out in open rebellion against God; therefore it was expedient that the curse should fall upon them.

19. Now I would that ye should see that they brought upon themselves the curse; and even so doth every man that is cursed bring upon himself his own condemnation. A 3-201

V. RIGHTEOUSNESS AMONGST THE LAMANITES

(There were periods of righteousness amongst the Lamanites. Indeed, there were times when they were even more righteous than the Nephites.) 1. ---I saw that which was good among them Mo 9-152

7. Behold, their husbands love their wives, and their wives love their husbands; and their husbands and their wives love their children; and their unbelief and their hatred towards you is because of the iniquity of their fathers; wherefore, how much better are you than they, in the sight of your great Creator?

9. Wherefore, a commandment I give unto you [speaking to the Nephites], which is the word of God, that ye revile no more against them because of the darkness of their skins; neither shall ye revile against them because of their filthiness; but ye shall remember your own filthiness, and remember that their filthiness came because of their fathers. J 3-112

1. *THE NEPHITES CONVERTED MANY LAMANITES TO RIGHTEOUSNESS.* *(Some of the Nephite teachings went unheeded; but at other times, the Nephites were successful in converting large numbers of Lamanites.)* 20. And I bear record that the people of Nephi did seek diligently to restore the Lamanites unto the true faith in God. But our labors were vain; Es 1-126

5. ---the Lamanites, who know nothing concerning these things [teachings of the Lord], or even do not believe them when they are taught them, because of the traditions of their fathers, which are not correct. Mo 1-184

(Ammon and his brothers succeeded in converting many Lamanites, who when converted, joined the Nephites in Zarahemla, and became known as the people of Ammon or the Anti-Nephi-Lehis.)

14. And assuredly it was great [the work that they had undertaken] for they had undertaken to preach the word of God to a wild and hardened and a ferocious people;
A 17-238

2. [The Lamanite king was converted, and he sent a decree over the land concerning Ammon and his brethren.] Yea, he sent a decree among them, that they should not lay their hands on them to bind them, or to cast them into prison; neither should they spit upon them nor smite them, nor cast them out of their synagogues, nor scourge them; neither should they cast stones at them, but that they should have free access to their houses, and also their temples, and their sanctuaries.
A 23-255

35. And it came to pass that there were many that did believe in their words; and as many as did believe were baptized; and they became a righteous people, and they did establish a church among them.
A 19-246

7. For they became a righteous people; they did lay down the weapons of their rebellion, that they did not fight against God any more, neither against any of their brethren.

8. Now, these are they who were converted unto the Lord:

9. The people of the Lamanites who were in the land of Ishmael; [Middoni, City of Nephi, Shilom, Shemlon, City of Lemuel, and City of Shimnilom.]

18. And they began to be a very industrious people; yea, and they were friendly with the Nephites; therefore, they did open a correspondence with them, and the curse of God did no more follow them.
A 23-255

(About 50 years later, Nephi II and Lehi, his brother, preached to some Lamanites.)

19. Therefore they did speak unto the great astonishment of the Lamanites, to the convincing them, insomuch that there were eight thousand of the Lamanites who were in the land of Zarahemla and round about baptized unto repentance, and were convinced of the wickedness of the traditions of their fathers.
H 5-370

1. ---[And] the Lamanites had become, the more part of them, a righteous people, insomuch that their righteousness did exceed that of the Nephites, because of their firmness and their steadiness in the faith.
H 6-372

36. And thus we see that the Lord began to pour out his Spirit upon the Lamanites, because of their easiness and willingness to believe in his words.
H 6-373

5. And I would that ye should behold that the more part of them are [at this time] in the path of their duty, and they do walk

circumspectly before God, and they do observe to keep his commandments and his statutes and his judgments according to the law of Moses. H 15-395

VI. SPECIAL PROPHECIES TO THE LAMANITES IN THE "LAST DAYS"

1. *THE ANCIENT WRITERS PLED WITH THE LAMANITES TO COME TO GOD.* (*This plea is made to the Lamanites in the "last days," or in the "days of the Gentiles."*) (*The Lamanites are to be found among the American Indians.*) 16. ---And he [the Lord] covenanted with me [Enos] that he would bring them [the records] forth unto the Lamanites in his own due time. Es 1-126

16. For there are many promises which are extended to the Lamanites [in the last days] A 9-217

12. Yea, I say unto you, that in the latter times the promises of the Lord have been extended to our brethren, the Lamanites; and notwithstanding the many afflictions which they shall have, and notwithstanding they shall be driven to and fro upon the face of the earth, and be hunted, and shall be smitten and scattered abroad, having no place for refuge, the Lord shall be merciful unto them. H 15 396

16. Therefore, saith the Lord: I will not utterly destroy them, but I will cause that in the day of my wisdom they shall return again unto me, saith the Lord. H 15-397

5. Wherefore, ---the Messiah [shall]---be made manifest unto them in the latter days, in the spirit of power, unto the bringing of them out of darkness unto light — yea, out of hidden darkness and out of captivity unto freedom. 2N 3-55

4. And then shall the remnant of our seed [Lamanites] know concerning us, how that we came out from Jerusalem, and that they are descendants of the Jews.

5. And the gospel of Jesus Christ shall be declared among them;

6. And then shall they rejoice; for they shall know that it is a blessing unto them from the hand of God; and their scales of darkness shall begin to fall from their eyes; and many generations shall not pass away among them, save they shall be a white and delightsome people. 2N 30-102

(For other prophecies to the Lamanites, see Chapter XVII.)



CHAPTER V

*MINOR MIGRATIONS AND MINOR TRIBES OF THE BOOK OF MORMON

Although the ancient writers of the *Book of Mormon* were chiefly concerned with the history of the three great groups of people (the Jaredites, the Nephites, and the Lamanites), they also included in their writings the history of various important minor tribes. Most of these tribes had separated from their parent cultures because of dissatisfaction with the then existing forms of government or religion. The accounts of these minor tribes are rich with incidents of intrigue, contention, and violence and are, therefore, fascinating episodes to follow. In fact, much of the "color" and "adventure" which enlivens the story of the *Book of Mormon* is to be found in the activities of these dissenting groups. Modern drama and fiction would do well to search out these accounts and to draw from them basic material for plots and character portrayals.

Many readers may not be interested in following the course of these lesser tribes (for this reason, this chapter is set in smaller type) or may prefer to leave this history for later consideration. The analysis of migration movements of the *Book of Mormon* peoples would be incomplete, however, without a study of the movements of these minority groups.

The various tribes that branched off from the Jaredite culture are not discussed in this volume. The history of the Jaredite people, which covered a period of more than 2000 years, is so briefly summarized in the *Book of Mormon* (under the title of the "Book of Ether") that there is not sufficient information given to make possible an analysis of their minor tribes. Some information, however, concerning various Jaredite tribes may be obtained from Chart 10 and from Chapter VI (Part I, Section I, and Part IV, Section I).

*For key to reference symbols, see page 2.

PART I

THE PEOPLE OF AMMON

These people were Lamanites, who were converted to the Nephite religion by Ammon and his brothers. They were also known as Anti-Nephi-Lehis. They became Nephites.

I. THE SONS OF MOSIAH PREACH TO THE LAMANITES

1. *AMMON AND HIS BROTHERS (SONS OF MOSIAH II) SET OUT TO PREACH TO THE LAMANITES.*

8. And this is the account of Ammon and his brethren, their journeyings in the land of Nephi, their sufferings in the land, their sorrows, and their afflictions, and their incomprehensible joy; and the reception and safety of the brethren [those that were converted of the Lamanites by the sons of Mosiah] in the land of Jershon. A 28-267

1. Now it came to pass that ---the sons of Mosiah took a small number with them and ---[went] up to the land of Nephi that they might preach the things which they had heard, and that they might impart the word of God to their brethren, the Lamanites—

7. And the Lord said unto Mosiah: Let them go up, for many shall believe on their words, and they shall have eternal life; and I will deliver thy sons out of the hands of the Lamanites. Mo 28-189

23. Now we [shall] see that Ammon could not be slain, for the Lord had said unto Mosiah [his father], I will spare him, and it shall be unto him according to thy faith—therefore, Mosiah trusted him unto the Lord. A 19-245

11. And the Lord said unto them also: Go forth among the Lamanites, thy brethren, and establish my word; yet ye shall be patient in long-suffering and afflictions, that ye may show forth good examples unto them in me, and I will make an instrument of thee in my hands unto the salvation of many souls. A 17-238

6. ---[And so, the sons of Mosiah] refused the kingdom which their father was desirous to confer upon them,

4. ---[And went among the Lamanites, and taught] the word of God for the space of fourteen years --- having had much success in bringing many to the knowledge of the truth; yea, by the power of their words many were brought before the altar of God, to call on his name and confess their sins before him. A 17-237

16. Therefore, this was the cause for which the sons of Mosiah had undertaken the work, that perhaps they might bring them [the wild and hardened Lamanites] unto repentance; that perhaps they might bring them to know the plan of redemption. A 17-238

17. Therefore they [the sons of Mosiah] separated themselves one from another, and went forth among them [the Lamanites], every man alone, according to the word and power of God which was given unto [them]---

18. Now Ammon being the chief among them, ---he departed from them, after having blessed them according to their several stations, ---and thus they took their several journeys throughout the land.

19. And Ammon went to the land of Ishmael, the land being called after the sons of Ishmael, who also became Lamanites.

20. And as Ammon entered the land of Ishmael, the Lamanites took him and bound him, as was their custom to bind all the Nephites who fell into their hands, and carry them before the king; and thus it was left to the pleasure of the king to slay them, or to retain them in captivity, or to cast them into prison, or to cast them out of his land, according to his will and pleasure.

21. And thus Ammon was carried before the king who was over the land of Ishmael; and his name was Lamoni; and he was a descendant of Ishmael.

22. And the king inquired of Ammon if it were his desire to dwell in the land among the Lamanites, or among his people.

23. And Ammon said unto him: Yea, I desire to dwell among this people for a time; yea, and perhaps until the day I die.

24. And it came to pass that King Lamoni was much pleased with Ammon, and caused that his hands should be loosed; and he would that Ammon should take one of his daughters to wife.

25. But Ammon said unto him: Nay, but I will be thy servant. Therefore Ammon became a servant [to the king] ---

A 17-238

2. AMMON CONVERTED THE LAMANITE KING, LAMONI. (*For Aaron's conversion of another Lamanite King, see Chapter XV, Part III, Miracle VI. Aaron was a brother to Ammon.*)

26. And after he had been in the service of the king three days, as he [Ammon] was with the Lamanitish servants going forth with their flocks to the place of water which was called the water of Sebus and all the Lamanites drive their flocks hither, that they may have water.

27. Therefore, as Ammon and the servants of the king were driving forth their flocks to this place of water, behold, a certain number of the Lamanites, who had been with their flocks to water, stood and scattered the flocks of Ammon and the servants of the king, and they scattered them insomuch that they fled many ways.

28. Now the servants of the king began to murmur, saying: Now the king will slay us, as he has our brethren because their flocks were scattered by the wickedness of these men. And they began to weep exceedingly, saying: Behold, our flocks are scattered already. [But Ammon comforted them.]

32. And it came to pass that they went in search of the flocks, and they did follow Ammon, and they rushed forth with much swiftness and did head the flocks of the king, and did gather them together again to the place of water.

33. And those men again stood to scatter their flocks; but Ammon said unto his brethren: Encircle the flocks round about that they flee not; and I go and contend with these men who do scatter our flocks.

34. Therefore, they did as Ammon commanded them, and he went forth and stood to contend with those who stood by the waters of Sebus; and they were in number not a few.

35. Therefore they did not fear Ammon, for they supposed that one of their men could slay him according to their pleasure, for they knew not that the Lord had promised Mosiah that he would deliver his sons out of their [the Lamanites] hands; neither did they know anything concerning the Lord; therefore they delighted in the destruction of their brethren; and for this cause they stood to scatter the flocks of the king.

36. But Ammon stood forth and began to cast stones at them with his sling; yea, with mighty power he did sling stones amongst them; and thus he slew a certain number of them insomuch that they began to be astonished at his power; nevertheless they were angry because of the slain of their brethren, and they were determined that he should fall; therefore, seeing that they could not hit him with their stones, they came forth with clubs to slay him.

37. But behold, every man that lifted his club to smite Ammon, he smote off their arms with his sword; for he did withstand their blows by smiting their arms with the edge of his sword, insomuch that they began to be astonished, and began to flee before him; yea, and they were not few in number;

38. Now six of them had fallen by the sling, but he slew none save it were their leader with his sword; and he smote off as many of their arms as were lifted against him, and they were not a few.

39. And when he had driven them afar off, [Ammon and the servants of the king returned home] ---and [the servants] went in unto the king, bearing the arms which had been smitten off by the sword of Ammon, --- A 17-239

1. And it came to pass that king Lamoni caused that his servants should stand forth and testify to all the things which they had seen concerning the matter.

2. ---[and the king] was astonished exceedingly, and said: Surely, this is more than a man. Behold, is not this the Great Spirit---

3. And they answered the king, and said: Whether he be the Great Spirit or a man, we know not; but this much we do know, that he cannot be slain by the enemies of the king; ---therefore, we know that he is a friend to the king.

4. And now, when the king heard these words, he said unto them: Now I know that it is the Great Spirit; [and]

5. ---Lamoni began to fear exceedingly, with fear lest he had done wrong in slaying his servants;

6. For he had slain many of them because their brethren had scattered their flocks at the place of water;

11. Now I surely know that this is the Great Spirit [Lamoni said], and I would desire him that he come in unto me, but I durst not.

12. And it came to pass that when Ammon --- went in unto the king, and he saw that the countenance of the king was changed; therefore he was about to return out of his presence.

13. And one of the king's servants said unto him: ---Rabbanah, the king desireth thee to stay.

15. And it came to pass that Ammon said unto him [the king]--- What desireth thou of me? But the king answered him not.

16. ---[Ammon] perceived the thoughts of the king.

17. I say unto you, what is it that thy marvelings are so great? Behold, I am a man, and am thy servant;

18. ---king Lamoni did open his mouth, and said unto him: Who are thou? Art thou that Great Spirit, who knows all things?

19. Ammon answered and said unto him: I am not.

20. And the king said: How knowest thou the thoughts of my heart?

22. Now Ammon being wise, yet harmless, he said unto Lamoni: Wilt thou hearken unto my words, if I tell thee by what power I do these things?

23. And the king answered him, and said: Yea, I will believe all thy words. And thus he was caught with guile.

36. Now when Ammon had said these words, he began at the creation of the world, and also the creation of Adam [etc.]

40. And it came to pass that after he had said all these things, and expounded them to the king, that the king believed all his words.

41. And he [the king] began to cry unto the Lord: O Lord, have mercy; according to thy abundant mercy which thou hast had upon the people of Nephi, have upon me, and my people.

42. And now, when he had said this, he fell unto the earth, as if he were dead.

43. And it came to pass that his servants took him and carried him in unto his wife, and laid him upon a bed; and he lay as if he were dead for the space of two days and two nights; and his wife, and his sons, and his daughters mourned over him, after the manner of the Lamanites, greatly lamenting his loss.

A 18-240

4. [And the queen sent for Ammon] And she said unto him: The servants of my husband have made it known unto me that thou art a prophet of a holy God, and that thou hast power to do many mighty works in his name;

5. Therefore, if this is the case, I would that ye should go in and see my husband, ---some say that he is not dead, but others say --- that he ought to be placed in the sepulchre;

6. Now, this was what Ammon desired, for he knew that king Lamoni was under the power of God; he knew that the dark veil of unbelief was being cast away from his mind---

7. And he said unto the queen: He is not dead, but he sleepeth in God, and on the morrow he shall rise again; therefore bury him not.

9. And Ammon said unto her: Believest thou this? And she said unto him: I have had no witness save thy word, and the word of our servants; nevertheless I believe that it shall be according as thou hast said.

12. And it came to pass that he [the king] arose, according to the words of Ammon; and as he arose, he stretched forth his hand unto the woman and said: Blessed be the name of God, and blessed art thou.

13. ---Now, when he had said these words, his heart was swollen within him, and he sunk again with joy; and the queen also sunk down, being overpowered by the Spirit.

16. ---they [the servants] did call on the name of the Lord, ---until they had fallen to the earth, [Ammon had also fallen to the earth]

18. And they [the people] began to assemble themselves together unto the house of the king. And there came a multitude, and to their astonishment, they beheld the king, and the queen, and their servants prostrate upon the earth, and they all lay there as though they were dead; and they also saw Ammon, and behold, he was a Nephite.

19. And now the people began to murmur among themselves; some saying that it was a great evil that had come upon them, or upon the king and his house, because he had suffered that the Nephite should remain in the land.

30. ---[And then king] Lamoni, ---arose and stood upon his feet.

31. And he, immediately, seeing the contention among his people, went forth and began to rebuke them, and to teach them the words which he had heard from the mouth of Ammon; and as many as heard his words believed, and were converted unto the Lord.

36. And thus the work of the Lord did commence among the Lamanites;

A 19-244

17. ---they [those who had been converted] called their names Anti-Nephi-Lehies; and they were called by this name and were no more called Lamanites.

A 23-256

II. THE CONVERTED LAMANITES TOOK AN OATH OF PEACE

6. Now there was not one soul among all the people who had been converted unto the Lord that would take up arms against their brethren;

12. Now, my best beloved brethren [the king is talking], since God hath taken away our stains, and our swords have become bright, then let us stain our swords no more with the blood of our brethren.

17. And now it came to pass that when the king had made an end of these sayings, and all the people were assembled together, they took their swords, and all the weapons --- and they bury them up deep in the earth.

18. ---and this they did, vouching and covenanting with God, that rather than shed the blood of their brethren they would give up their own lives;

20. And it came to pass that their brethren, [another group of] the Lamanites, made preparations for war, and came up to the land of Nephi for the purpose of destroying the king, and to place another in his stead, and also of destroying the people of Anti-Nephi-Lehi [the name of the group of converted Lamanites] out of the land.

21. Now when the people saw that they [these others] were coming against them they went out to meet them, and prostrated themselves before them to the earth, and began to call on the name of the Lord;

22. And thus without meeting any resistance, they [those other Lamanites] did slay a thousand and five of them;

24. Now when the Lamanites saw this [that their brethren would not defend themselves] they did forbear from slaying them;

26. And it came to pass that the people of God were joined that day by more than the number who had been slain.

A 24-257

III. THE LORD PROTECTED THE PEOPLE OF AMMON, THE ANTI-NEPHI-LEHIS

2. And it came to pass that the Amalekites when they saw that they could not seek revenge from the Nephites, they began to stir up the people [of the Lamanites] in anger against their brethren, the people of Anti-Nephi-Lehi [the converted Lamanites]; therefore they began again to destroy them.

12. [And God commanded Ammon:] Get this people out of this land, that they perish not; for Satan has great hold on the hearts of the Amalekites, who do stir up the Lamanites to anger against their brethren to slay them;

14. And they [the people of Ammon, the Anti-Nephi-Lehis] gathered together all their people, yea, all the people of the Lord, and did gather together all their flocks and herds, and departed out of the land, and came into the wilderness which divided the land of Nephi from the land of Zarahemla, and came over near the borders of the land.

A 27-284

IV. THE PEOPLE OF AMMON WERE WELCOMED IN ZARAHEMPLA

21. And it came to pass that the chief judge [in Zarahemla] sent a proclamation throughout all the land, desiring the voice of the people concerning the admitting their brethren, who were the people of Anti-Nephi-Lehi [the people of Ammon].

22. And it came to pass that the voice of the people came, saying: Behold, we will give up the land of Jershon, which is on the east by the sea, which joins the land Bountiful, which is on the south of the land Bountiful;

A 27-265

13. And the people of Ammon did give unto the Nephites a large portion of their substance to support their [the Nephite] armies; and thus the Nephites were compelled, alone, to withstand against the Lamanites [their enemies],

11. ---[Because] the people of Anti-Nephi-Lehi, who were called the people of Ammon ---they would not take up arms, yea, they had entered a covenant and they would not break it---

A 43-301

13. ---[Later,] the people of Ammon departed out of the land of Jershon, and came over into the land of Melek, and gave place in the land of Jershon for the armies of the Nephites, that they might contend with the armies of the Lamanites ---

A 35-285

V. THE MIRACLE OF THE SONS OF THE PEOPLE OF AMMON

(The Nephites were repaid for their hospitality to the people of Ammon.)

10. And now behold, I have somewhat to say concerning the people of Ammon, who, in the beginning, were Lamanites;

11. And because of their oath they had been kept from taking up arms against their brethren;

13. But it came to pass that when they saw the danger, and the many afflictions and tribulations which the Nephites bore for them, they were moved with compassion and were desirous to take up arms in the defense of their country.

14. ---they were overpowered by the persuasions of Helaman and his brethren, for they were about to break the oath which they had made.

16. But behold, it came to pass they had many sons, who had not entered into a covenant---

17. And they [these sons] entered into a covenant to fight for the liberty of the Nephites---

18. Now behold, there were two thousand of those young men, who entered into this covenant and took their weapons of war to defend their country.

A 53-332

9. But behold, here is one thing in which we may have great joy. For behold, ---I, Helaman, did march at the head of these two thousand young men to the city of Judea, to assist Antipus, ---a leader over the people of that part of the land.

10. And I did join my two thousand sons, (for they are worthy to be called sons) to the army of Antipus,

45. And now I say unto you, ---that never had I seen so great courage, nay, not amongst all the Nephites.

46. For--- they said unto me: Father, behold our God is with us, and he will not suffer that we should fall;

47. Now they never had fought, yet they did not fear death; and they did think more upon the liberty of their fathers than they did upon their lives; yea, they had been taught by their mothers, that if they did not doubt, God would deliver them.

55. And now it came to pass that when they [the enemy Lamanites] had surrendered themselves up unto us, behold, I numbered those young men who had fought with me, fearing lest there were many of them slain.

56. But behold, to my great joy, there had not one soul of them fallen to the earth; yea, and they had fought as if with the strength of God; yea, never were men known to have fought with such miraculous strength; and with such mighty power did they fall upon the Lamanites, that they did frighten them; and for this cause did the Lamanites deliver themselves up as prisoners of war. A 56-338

25. [After another battle] And it came to pass that there were two hundred, out of my two thousand and sixty, who had fainted because of the loss of blood; nevertheless, according to the goodness of God, and to our great astonishment, and also the foes of our whole army, there was not one soul of them who did perish; yea, and neither was there one soul among them had not received many wounds.

26. And now, their preservation was astonishing to our whole army, yea, that they should be spared while there was a thousand of our brethren who were slain. And we do justly ascribe it to the miraculous power of God, because of their exceeding faith in that which they had been taught to believe---that there was a just God, and whosoever did not doubt, that they should be preserved by his marvelous power. A 57 343

VI. THE PEOPLE OF AMMON WERE ENLARGED BY OTHER LAMANITE CONVERTS

27. Now it came to pass that many of the Lamanites that were prisoners [from war] were desirous to join the people of Ammon and become a free people.

28. And it came to pass that as many as were desirous, unto them it was granted according to their desires.

17. [And others of the Lamanite prisoners] when they had entered into this covenant [that they would no more take up their weapons of war against the Nephites] they [the Nephites] sent them to dwell with the people of Ammon, and they were in number about four thousand who had not been slain.

29. Therefore, all the prisoners of the Lamanites [at this time] did join the people of Ammon, and did begin to labor exceedingly, tilling the ground, raising all manner of grain, and flocks and herds of every kind; A 62-355

PART II

THE PEOPLE OF ZENIFF THE PEOPLE OF LIMHI THE PEOPLE OF ALMA I THE PRIESTS OF NOAH

The story of a group of Nephites who left the land of Zarahemla and returned to the land of Nephi to re-possess the land of their fathers. The above named groups were branches of the original migrating party.

I. THE PEOPLE OF ZENIFF, NOAH, AND LIMHI

1. A GROUP OF NEPHITES UNDER ZENIFF RETURNED TO THE LAND OF NEPHI.

27. And now I would speak somewhat concerning a certain number who went up into the wilderness to return to the land of Nephi; for there was a large number who were desirous to possess the land of their inheritance. O 1-181

28. Wherefore, they went up into the wilderness. And their leader being a strong and mighty man, and a stiffnecked man, wherefore he caused a contention among them; [account follows] O 1-181

1. I, Zeniff, having been taught in all the language of the Nephites and having had a knowledge of the land of Nephi, or of the land of our fathers' first inheritance, and having been sent as a spy among the Lamanites that I might spy out their forces, that our army might come upon them and destroy them—but when I saw that which was good among them I was desirous that they should not be destroyed.

2. Therefore, I contended with my brethren in the wilderness, for I would that our ruler should make a treaty with them; but he being an austere and a blood-thirsty man commanded that I should be slain; but I was rescued by the shedding of much blood; for father fought against father, and brother against brother, until the greater number of our army was destroyed in the wilderness; and we returned, those of us that were spared to the land of Zarahemla, to relate the tales to our wives and children.

3. And yet, I being over zealous to inherit the land of our fathers, collected as many as were desirous to go up to possess the land, and started again on our journey into the wilderness to go up to the land;

4. ---after many days wandering in the wilderness we pitched our tents in the place where our brethren were slain, which was near to the land of our fathers.

5. And it came to pass that I went--- with four of my men into the city, in unto the king [of the Lamanites], that I might know of the disposition of the king, and that I might know if I might go in with my people and possess the land in peace.

6. And I went in unto the king, and he covenanted with me that I might possess the land of Lehi-Nephi, and the land of Shilom.

7. And he also commanded that his people should depart out of the land, and I and my people went into the land that we might possess it.

8. And we began to build buildings, and to repair the walls of the city, yea, even the walls of the city of Lehi-Nephi, and the city of Shilom.

Mo 9-152

9. ---and we did begin to multiply and prosper in the land.

10. Now it was the cunning and craftiness of king Laman, to bring my people into bondage, that he yielded up the land that we might possess it.

11. Therefore it came to pass, that after we had dwelt in the land for the space of twelve years that king Laman began to grow uneasy, lest by any means my people should wax strong in the land, and that they could not overpower them and bring them into bondage.

12. Now [the Lamanites] they were a lazy and an idolatrous people; therefore they were desirous to bring us into bondage, that they might glut themselves with the labors of our hands; yea, that they might feast themselves upon the flocks of our fields.

Mo 9-153

3. And it came to pass that we did inherit the land of our fathers for many years, yea, for the space of twenty and two years.

6. And it came to pass that king Laman died, and his son began to reign in his stead. And he began to stir his people up in rebellion against my people; therefore, they began to prepare for war, to come up to battle against my people.

Mo 9-154

1. And now it came to pass that Zeniff conferred the kingdom upon Noah, one of his sons; ---and he did not walk in the ways of his father.

2. For behold, he did not keep the commandments of God, but he did walk after the desires of his own heart. And he had many wives and concubines.

3. ---[And he taxed the people] one fifth part of all they possessed,

4. And all this did he take to support himself, and his wives and his concubines; and also his priests, and their wives and their concubines; thus he had changed the affairs of the kingdom.

Mo 11-155

20. And it came to pass that there was a man among them whose name was Abinadi; and he went forth among them, and began to prophesy, saying:

21. And except they repent and turn to the Lord Their God, behold, I will deliver them into the hands of their enemies; yea, and they shall be brought into bondage;

26. Now it came to pass that when Abinadi had spoken these words unto them they were wroth with him, and sought to take away his life; but the Lord delivered him out of their hands.

Mo 11-157

6. ---and the king cast his eyes round about towards the land of Shemlon, and behold, the army of the Lamanites were within the borders of the land; [and they fled before the Lamanites]

14. [But] --- it came to pass that the Lamanites had compassion on them, for they were charmed with the beauty of their women.

15. Therefore the Lamanites did spare their lives, and took them captives and carried them back to the land of Nephi, and granted unto them that they might possess the land, under the condition that they would deliver up king Noah [but he had fled]---and deliver up their property, even one half of all they possessed --- and thus they should pay tribute to the king of the Lamanites from year to year.

26. And also Limhi, being the son of the king, having the kingdom conferred upon him by the people, made oath unto the king of the Laman-

ites that his people should pay tribute unto him, even one half of all they possessed.

28. And the king of the Lamanites set guards round about the land,

Mo 19-170

5. And now the afflictions of the Nephites were great,

3. ---[The Lamanites vexed them.] they would smite them on their cheeks, and exercise authority over them; and began to put heavy burdens upon their backs, and drive them as they would a dumb ass—

Mo 21-174

2. KING LIMHI DESIRED TO RETURN TO ZARAHOMLA.

7. And the king said unto him [Ammon, the Mulekite, who had come from Zarahemla to find these Nephites] being grieved for the afflictions of my people, I caused that forty and three of my people should take a journey into the wilderness, that thereby they might find the land of Zarahemla, that we might appeal unto our brethren to deliver us out of bondage.

8. And they were lost in the wilderness for the space of many days yet they were diligent, and found not the land of Zarahemla, but returned to this land, having traveled in a land of many waters, having discovered a land which was covered with the bones of men, and of beasts, and was also covered with ruins of buildings of every kind,

Mo 8-150

3. KING LIMHI AND HIS NEPHITES RETURNED TO ZARAHOMLA. (*Ammon, the Mulekite, with a group from Zarahemla rescued the people of Limhi who were in the land of Nephi.*)

4. And now, they [Ammon and his group] knew not the course they should travel in the wilderness to go up to the land of Lehi-Nephi; therefore they wandered many days in the wilderness,

5. And when they had wandered forty days they came to a hill, which is north of the land of Shilom, and there they pitched their tents.

6. ---and they went down into the land of Nephi

8. ---and they stood before the king [Limhi]

13. ---[and Ammon said] I am Ammon, and am a descendant of Zarahemla, and have come up out of the land of Zarahemla to inquire concerning our brethren; whom Zeniff brought up out of that land.

9. And [the king] ---said unto them: Behold, I am Limhi, the son of Noah, who was the son of Zeniff, who came up out of the land of Zarahemla to inherit this land.

Mo 7-147

1. And now it came to pass that Ammon and king Limhi began to consult with the people how they should deliver themselves out of bondage,

2. And it came to pass that they could find no way to deliver themselves --- [except it were to take their possessions] and depart into the wilderness;

Mo 22-176

7. [Gideon tells King Limhi of a plan to escape from the Lamanites] And I will go according to thy command and pay the last tribute of wine to the Lamanites, and they will be drunken; and we will pass through the secret pass on the left of the camp when they are drunken and asleep. [And this was done.]

11. And it came to pass that the people of king Limhi did depart by night into the wilderness with their flocks and their herds, and they went

round about the land of Shilom in the wilderness, and bent their course towards the land of Zarahemla, being led by Ammon and his brethren.

Mo 22-177

13. And after being many days in the wilderness they arrived in the land of Zarahemla, and joined Mosiah's [III] people, and became his subjects.

14. And it came to pass that Mosiah received them with joy; and he also received their records, and also the records which had been found by the people of Limhi [24 gold plates of Ether].

Mo 22-177

II. PEOPLE OF ALMA I

1. *ALMA WAS A PRIEST OF KING NOAH. (Because he believed the words of the prophet, Abinadi, he was forced to flee away from the land of Nephi.)*

2. But there was one among them whose name was Alma, he also being a descendant of Nephi. And he was a young man, and he believed the words which Abinadi had spoken --- therefore he began to plead with the king ---

3. But the king was more wroth, and caused that Alma should be cast out from among them, and sent his servants after him that they might slay him.

4. --- And he being concealed for many days did write all the words which Abinadi had spoken.

Mo 17-166

2. *ALMA CONVERTED MANY OF THE PEOPLE.*

1. And now, it came to pass that Alma, who had fled from the servants of king Noah, repented of his sins and iniquities, and went about privately among the people, and began to teach the words of Abinadi---

4. And it came to pass that as many as did believe him did go forth to a place which was called Mormon, having received its name from the king, being in the borders of the land having been infested, by times or at seasons, by wild beasts.

Mo 18-168

31. And these things were done in the borders of the land, that they might not come to the knowledge of the king.

32. But behold, it came to pass that the king, having discovered a movement among the people, sent his servants to watch them.

33. And now the king said that Alma was stirring up the people to rebellion against him; therefore he sent his army to destroy them.

34. And it came to pass that Alma and the people of the Lord were apprised of the coming of the king's army; therefore they took their tents and their families and departed into the wilderness.

35. And they were in number about four hundred and fifty souls.

Mo 18-170

3. *ALMA FLED TO THE LAND OF HELAM. (Alma and the people of the Lord settled in a land they called Helam.)*

3. And they fled eight days' journey into the wilderness.

4. And they came to a land, yea, even a very beautiful and pleasant land, a land of pure water.

19. And it came to pass that they began to prosper exceedingly in the land; and they called the land Helam. Mo 23-178

4. ALMA'S PEOPLE WERE TROUBLED BY THE OUT-CAST, WICKED PRIESTS OF NOAH.

32. Now the name of the leader of those priests [of the former king Noah] was Amulon.

35. And Amulon and his brethren did join the Lamanites, and they were traveling in the wilderness in search of the land of Nephi when they discovered the land of Helam, which was possessed by Alma and his brethren.

37. ---they [the Lamanites] set guards round about the land of Helam, over Alma and his brethren. Mo 23-180

8. And now it came to pass that Amulon began to exercise authority over Alma and his brethren, and began to persecute him,

9. For Amulon knew Alma, that he had been one of the king's priests ---and therefore he was wroth with him;

10. And it came to pass that so great were their afflictions that they began to cry mightily to God.

11. And Amulon commanded them that they should stop their cries; and he put guards over them to watch them, that whosoever should be found calling upon God should be put to death.

16. ---the voice of the Lord came unto [Alma and his people]---saying: Be of good comfort, for on the morrow I will deliver you out of bondage. Mo 24-181

5. ALMA AND HIS PEOPLE RETURNED TO ZARAHENLA.

17. And he [the Lord] said unto Alma: Thou shalt go before this people, and I will go with thee and deliver this people out of bondage.

18. Now it came to pass that Alma and his people in the night-time gathered their flocks together, and also --- their grain;

19. And in the morning the Lord caused a deep sleep to come upon the Lamanites, yea, and all their task-masters were in a profound sleep.

20. And Alma and his people departed into the wilderness; and when they had traveled all day they pitched their tents in a valley, and they called the valley Alma,

23. And now the Lord said unto Alma: Haste thee and get thou and this people out of this land, for the Lamanites have awakened and do pursue thee; therefore get thee out of this land, and I will stop the Lamanites in this valley that they come no further in pursuit of this people.

24. And it came to pass that they departed out of the valley, ---

25. And after they had been in the wilderness twelve days they arrived in the land of Zarahemla; and king Mosiah did also receive them with joy. Mo 24-181

III. THE PEOPLE OF AMULON— THE WICKED PRIESTS OF KING NOAH

1. THESE PEOPLE BECAME FUGITIVES IN THE WILDERNESS.

9. But remember the iniquity of king Noah and his priests; Mo 23-178

5. For he [Noah] put down all the priests that had been consecrated

by his father, and consecrated new ones in their stead, such as were lifted up in the pride of their hearts.

6. Yea, and thus they were supported in their laziness, and in their idolatry, and in their whoredoms, by the taxes which king Noah had put upon his people; thus did the people labor exceedingly to support iniquity.

Mo 11-155

23. And the people told the men of Gideon that they had slain the king, and his priests had fled from them farther into the wilderness.

Mo 19-171

3. And now the priests of king Noah, being ashamed to return to the city of Nephi, yea, and also fearing that the people would slay them, therefore they durst not return to their wives and their children [and so they went further into the wilderness].

Mo 20-172

2. THE PRIESTS STOLE LAMANITE MAIDENS. (*This caused a war between the Lamanites and the people in the Land of Nephi [now known as the people of Limhi], because the Lamanites thought that these people were the ones responsible for the carrying away of the Lamanite maidens.*)

4. And having tarried in the wilderness, and having discovered the daughters of the Lamanites, they laid and watched them;

5. And when there were but few of them gathered together to dance, they came forth out of their secret places and took them and carried them into the wilderness; yea, twenty and four of the daughters of the Lamanites they carried into the wilderness.

6. And it came to pass that when the Lamanites found that their daughters had been missing, they were angry with the people of Limhi, for they thought it was the people of Limhi.

7. Therefore they [the Lamanites] sent their armies forth;

15. And now the king [of the Lamanites explaining to Limhi the cause of the war] said: I have broken the oath because thy people did carry away the daughters of my people;

18. [Gideon tells King Limhi:] For do ye not remember the priests of thy father, whom this people sought to destroy? And are they not in the wilderness? And are not they the ones who have stolen the daughters of the Lamanites?

Mo 20-172

20. And he [Limhi] caused that his people should watch the land round about, that by some means they might take those priests--

3. PRIESTS OF NOAH JOINED THE LAMANITES. (*And persecuted the people of Alma, as has been stated above. See People of Alma.*)

31. And behold, they [the armies of the Lamanites] had found those priests of king Noah, in a place which they called Amulon, and they had begun to possess the land of Amulon--

32. Now the name of the leader of those priests was Amulon.

33. And it came to pass that Amulon did plead with the Lamanites; and he also sent forth their wives, who were the daughters of the Lamanites, to plead with their brethren, that they should not destroy their husbands.

34. And the Lamanites had compassion on Amulon and his brethren, and did not destroy them, because of their wives.

35. And Amulon and his brethren did join the Lamanites, --- Mo 23-180

1. And it came to pass that Amulon did gain favor in the eyes of the king of the Lamanites; therefore, the king of the Lamanites granted unto him and his brethren that they should be appointed teachers over his people. [Therefore]

6. ---they [the priests of Noah] taught them [the Lamanites] that they should keep their record, and that they might write one to another.

Mo 24-180

4. THE DESTRUCTION OF THE PEOPLE OF AMULON.
(Fulfilling the prophecy of Abinadi, the descendants of the wicked priests of king Noah were destroyed. See Chapter XV, Part IV, Section VI.)

3. ---they [the Lamanites and the people of Amulon] had many battles with the Nephites, in the which they were driven and slain.

4. And among the Lamanites who were slain were almost all the seed of Amulon and his brethren, who--- [had been] the priests of Noah,

5. And the remainder, having fled into the east wilderness --- caused that many of the Lamanites should perish by fire because of their belief—

8. Now this martyrdom caused that many of their brethren should be stirred up to anger; ---and the Lamanites began to hunt the seed of Amulon and his brethren and began to slay them; and they fled into the east wilderness.

9. And behold they are hunted at this day by the Lamanites. Thus the words of Abinadi were brought to pass,

12. And he [had] said unto the priests of Noah that their seed should cause many to be put to death, in the like manner as he was [put to death by the priests of Noah], and that they should be scattered abroad and slain, even as a sheep having no shepherd is driven and slain by wild beasts; and now behold, these words were verified, for they were driven by the Lamanites, and they were hunted, and they were smitten.

A 25-259

PART III

NEPHITE DISSENTERS

Many groups of Nehite dissenters revolted from their brethren and then joined forces with the Lamanites.

I. THE PEOPLE OF AMMONIHAH

9. Now Satan had gotten great hold upon the hearts of the people of the city of Ammonihah;

8. And it came to pass that when Alma [Alma II] had come to the city of Ammonihah he began to preach the word of God unto them.

9. ---[But] they would not hearken unto the words of Alma.

11. ---[They said unto him] Behold, we know that thou art Alma; and we know that thou art high priest over the church which thou hast established in many parts of the land, according to your tradition; and we are not of thy church, and we do not believe in such foolish traditions.

13. Now when the people had said this, and withstood all his words, and reviled him, and spit upon him, and caused that he should be cast out of their city, he departed thence and took his journey towards the city which was called Aaron.

16. And behold I [an angel speaks to Alma] am sent to command thee to return to the city of Ammonihah, and preach again unto the people of the city--- Yea, say unto them, except they repent the Lord God will destroy them. [And Alma did as the angel commanded.] A 8-214

5. ---[Now] they were a hard-hearted and a stiffnecked people.

6. And they said: Who is God, that sendeth no more authority than one man among this people, to declare unto them the truth of such great and marvelous things? A 9-216

3. And they were also angry with Alma and [with] Amulek [Amulek had been called upon by an angel to help Alma]; and because they had testified so plainly against their wickedness, they [the people] sought to put them away privily.

4. But it came to pass that they did not; but they took them and bound them with strong cords, and took them before the chief judge of the land.

5. And the people went forth and witnessed against them---testifying that they had reviled against the law, and their lawyers and judges of the land.

8. And they [the people of Ammonihah] brought their wives and children together, and whosoever believed or had been taught to believe in the word of God they caused that they should be cast into the fire.

14. Now it came to pass that when the bodies of those who had been cast into the fire were consumed, and also the records which were cast in with them, the chief judge of the land came and stood before Alma and Amulek, as they were bound; and he smote them with his hand upon their cheeks, and said unto them:

15. Behold, ye see that ye had not power to save those who had been cast into the fire; neither has God saved them because they were of thy faith.

And the judge smote them again upon their cheeks, and asked: What say ye for yourselves?

17. And it came to pass that Alma and Amulek answered him nothing: and he smote them again, and delivered them to the officers to be cast into prison.

24. And the chief judge stood before them [in the prison], and smote them again, and said unto them: If ye have the power of God deliver yourselves from these bands, and then we will believe that the Lord will destroy this people according to your words.

26. And Alma cried [unto the Lord] saying: How long shall we suffer these great afflictions, O Lord? O Lord, give us strength according to our faith which is in Christ, even unto deliverance. And they broke the cords with which they were bound; and when the people saw this, they began to flee, for the fear of destruction had come upon them.

27. And it came to pass that so great was their fear that they fell to the earth, and did not obtain the outer door of the prison; and the earth shook mightily, and the walls of the prison were rent in twain, so that they fell to the earth; and the chief judge, and the lawyers, and priests, and teachers, who smote upon Alma and Amulek, were slain by the fall thereof.

29. Now the people having heard a great noise came running together by multitudes to know the cause of it; and when they saw Alma and Amulek coming forth out of the prison, and the walls thereof had fallen to the earth, they were struck with great fear, and fled from the presence of Alma and Amulek even as a goat fleeth with her young from two lions; and thus they did flee from the presence of Alma and Amulek.

A 14-230

1. And it came to pass that Alma and Amulek were commanded to depart out of that city; and they departed,

A 15-233

AN ACCOUNT OF THE DESTRUCTION OF AMMONIHAH.

2. For behold, the armies of the Lamanites had come in upon the wilderness side, into the borders of the land, even into the city of Ammonihah, and began to slay the people and destroy the city.

3. And now it came to pass, before the [other] Nephites could raise a sufficient army to drive them out of the land, they [the Lamanites] had destroyed the people who were in the city of Ammonihah,

9. And thus ended the eleventh year of the judges, the Lamanites having been driven out of the land, and the people of Ammonihah were destroyed; yea, every living soul of the Ammonihahites was destroyed, and also their great city, which they said God could not destroy, because of its greatness.

10. But behold, in one day it was left desolate; and the carcasses were mangled by dogs and wild beasts of the wilderness.

11. Nevertheless, after many days their dead bodies were heaped up upon the face of the earth, and they were covered with a shallow covering. And now so great was the scent thereof that the people did not go in to possess the land of Ammonihah for many years. And it was called Desolation of Nehors; for they were the profession of Nehor, who were slain; and their lands remained desolate.

A 16-235

II. THE AMALEKITES

(Were the Amalekites the wicked Nephites who were left in the land of Nephi, when Mosiah I left the land of Nephi and migrated to Zarahemla with his people?)

2. [About 90 B.C.] Now the Lamanites and the Amalekites and the people of Amulon had built a great city, which was called Jerusalem.

2. Now this Amlici had, by his cunning, drawn away much people after him; even so much that they began to be very powerful;

9. And it came to pass that they gathered themselves together, and did consecrate Amlici to be their king.

11. Now the people of Amlici were distinguished by the name of Amlici, being called Amlicites;

10. Now when Amlici was made king over them he commanded them that they should take up arms against their brethren; and this he did that he might subject them to him.

12. ---the people of the Nephites were aware of the intent of the Amlicites, and therefore they did prepare to meet them;

19. And it came to pass that the Nephites did pursue the Amlicites all that day, and did slay them with much slaughter, insomuch that there were slain of the Amlicites twelve thousand five hundred thirty and two souls; and there were slain of the Nephites six thousand five hundred sixty and two souls.

24. [Nephite scouts are talking] Behold, we followed the camp of the Amlicites, and to our great astonishment, in the land of Minon, --- we saw a numerous host of Lamanites; and behold, the Amlicites have joined them;

25. And they are upon our brethren in that land; and they are fleeing before them --- towards our city;

27. ---And behold, ---[when the Nephites] were crossing the river Sidon, the Lamanites and the Amlicites, ---came upon them to destroy them.

36. ---[But after an encounter] they fled before the Nephites towards the wilderness which was west and north, away beyond the borders of the land; and the Nephites did pursue them with their might, and did slay them. A 2-198

4. And the Amlicites were distinguished from the Nephites, for they had marked themselves with red in their foreheads after the manner of the Lamanites; A 3-201

37. Yea, they were met on every hand, and slain and driven---until they had reached the wilderness --- infested by wild --- beasts

38. And it came to pass that many died in the wilderness of their wounds, and were devoured by those beasts and also the vultures of the air; and their bones have been found, and have been heaped up on the earth. A 2-200

V. THE PEOPLE OF MORIANTON

26. For behold, the people who possessed the the land of Morianton did claim a part of the land of Lehi; therefore there began to be a warm contention between them---

27. But behold, the people who possessed the land of Lehi fled to the camp of Moroni [I],

28. ---[The people of Morianton] were exceedingly fearful lest the army of Moroni should come upon them and destroy them.

29. Therefore, Morianton put it into their hearts that they should flee to the land which was northward, which was covered with large bodies of water,

30. And behold, they would have carried this plan into effect, --- but behold, Morianton being a man of much passion, therefore he was angry with one of his maid servants, and he fell upon her and beat her much.

31. And it came to pass that she fled, and came over to the camp of Moroni, and told Moroni all things concerning the matter, and also concerning their intentions to flee into the land northward.

33. Therefore Moroni sent an army, with their camp, to head the people of Morianton,

34. And it came to pass that they did not head them until they had come to the borders of the land Desolation; and there they did head them, by the narrow pass which led by the sea into the land northward,

35. ---[And] a battle commenced between them, in which Teancum [the Nephite leader] did slay Morianton---

36. And thus were the people of Morianton brought back. And upon their covenanting to keep the peace they were restored to the land of Morianton, and a union took place between them and the people of Lehi; and they were also restored to their lands. A 50-322

VI. THE AMALICKIAHITES

1. *AMALICKIAH, THE DISSENTER.* (*Amalickiah caused dissensions amongst the Nephites. Amalickiah was a descendant of Zoram—therefore he was a Zoramite—and his people were probably considered a branch of the Zoramites.*)

3. [About 73 B.C.] Now the leader of those who were wroth against their brethren was a large and a strong man; and his name was Amalickiah.

4. And Amalickiah was desirous to be a king; and those people who were wroth were also desirous that he should be their king; and they were the greater part of them the lower judges of the land, and they were seeking for power.

6. Thus they were led away by Amalickiah to dissensions,

7. And there were many in the church who believed in the flattery--- A 46-309

10. Yea, ---Amalickiah, because he was a man of cunning device and a man of many flattering words, ---led away the hearts of many people to do wickedly; yea, and to seek to destroy the church of God, and to destroy the foundation of liberty --- A 46-310

28. And now it came to pass that---Moroni [I]---gathered together all the people who were desirous to maintain their liberty, to stand against Amalickiah and those who had dissented, who were called Amalickiahites.

29. ---when Amalickiah saw that the people of Moroni were more numerous than the Amalickiahites --- he took those of his people who would and departed into the land of Nephi [to the Lamanites].

30. Now Moroni thought it was not expedient that the Lamanites should have any more strength; therefore he thought to cut off the people of Amalickiah,

32. ---he [Moroni] did according to his desires, and marched forth into the wilderness, and headed the armies of Amalickiah.

33. And it came to pass that Amalickiah fled with a small number of his men, A 46-311

2. AMALICKIAH JOINED THE LAMANITES.

1. ---[And Amalickiah] did stir up the Lamanites to anger against the people of Nephi, insomuch that the king of the Lamanites sent a

proclamation throughout all his land, among all this people, that they should gather themselves together again to go to battle against the Nephites.

A 47-813

3. [And many refused] And now it came to pass that the king was wroth because of their disobedience; therefore he gave Amalickiah the command of that part of his army which was obedient unto his commands, and commanded him that he should go forth and compel them [the rest] to arms.

A 47-818

3. *THE TRICKERY OF AMALICKIAH. (Through trickery, Amalickiah became king of the Lamanites.)*

13. [Amalickiah presents a plot to the leader of the opposition army]--- Amalickiah desired him to come down with his army in the night-time, and surround [Amalickiah's army], --- [and make him, Amalickiah] a second leader over the whole army.

14. ---[And this was done, so that when Amalickiah's men] awoke at dawn of day they were surrounded by the armies of Lehonti.

17. Now it was the custom among the Lamanites, if their chief leader was killed, to appoint the second leader to be their chief leader.

18. And it came to pass that Amalickiah caused that one of his servants should administer poison by degrees to Lehonti, that he died.

19. Now, when Lehonti was dead, the Lamanites appointed Amalickiah to be their leader and their chief commander.

20. ---Amalickiah marched with his armies --- to the city of Nephi,

21. And the king came out to meet him with his guards, for he supposed that Amalickiah had fulfilled his commands,

22. But behold, as the king came out to meet him Amalickiah caused that his servants should go forth to meet the king. And they went and bowed themselves before the king, as if to reverence him because of his greatness.

23. And it came to pass that the king put forth his hand to raise them, as was the custom with the Lamanites, as a token of peace, which custom they had taken from the Nephites.

24. And it came to pass that when he had raised the first from the ground, behold he stabbed the king to the heart; and he fell to the earth.

25. Now the servants of the king fled; and the servants of Amalickiah raised a cry, saying:

26. Behold, the servants of the king have stabbed him to the heart, and he has fallen and they have fled; behold, come and see.

A 47-815

34. And it came to pass that Amalickiah took the same servant that slew the king, and all who were with him, and went in unto the queen, ---and they all testified unto her that the king was slain by his own servants, and they said also: They have fled; does not this testify against them? And thus they satisfied the queen concerning the death of the king.

35. And it came to pass that Amalickiah sought the favor of the queen, and took her unto him to wife; and thus by his fraud, ---he obtained the kingdom; yea, he was acknowledged king throughout all the land,

A 47-815

4. *AMALICKIAH INVADED NEPHITE TERRITORY. (This invasion was one of the most destructive in Nephite history. Although Amalickiah was killed, his brother carried on the work of destruction.)*

9. ---Amalickiah had again stirred up the hearts of the people of the Lamanites against the people of the Nephites, and he was gathering together soldiers from all parts of his land, and arming them, and preparing for war with all diligence; for he had sworn to drink the blood of Moroni.

A 51-825

6. And it came to pass that they took their camp, and moved forth toward the land of Zarahemla in the wilderness.

7. Now it came to pass that while Amalickiah had thus been obtaining power by fraud and deceit, Moroni,

8. Yea, he [Moroni] had been strengthening the armies of the Nephites, and erecting small forts, or places of resort; throwing up banks of earth round about to enclose his armies, and also building walls of stone to encircle them about, round about their cities and the borders of their lands; yea, all round about the land.

A 48-316

5. Now at this time the chief captains of the Lamanites were astonished exceedingly, because of the wisdom of the Nephites---

11. ---And behold, his [Amalickiah's] chief captains durst not attack the Nephites at the city of Ammonihah [which had been rebuilt]

25. ---[And after attempting an attack on the city of Noah which had also been fortified, and after losing all their chief captains in the encounter] they returned to the land of Nephi to inform their king, Amalickiah---

26. And it came to pass that he was exceedingly angry with his people,

A 50-318

12. Yea, even Amalickiah did himself come down, at the head of the Lamanites.

23. And it came to pass that the Nephites were not sufficiently strong in the city of Moroni; therefore Amalickiah did drive them, slaying many.

26. And thus he went on, taking possession of many cities---

27. And thus had the Lamanites obtained, by the cunning of Amalickiah, so many cities, by their numberless hosts, all of which were strongly fortified---

28. And it came to pass that they marched to the borders of the land Bountiful, driving the Nephites before them and slaying many.

33. And it came to pass that when the night had come, Teancum [the Nephite] and his servant stole forth and went---into the camp of Amalickiah;

34. And it came to pass that Teancum stole privily into the tent of the king, and put a javelin to his heart; and he did cause the death of the king immediately that he did not awake his servants.

37. ---and thus endeth the days of Amalickiah.

A 51-825

3. And it came to pass that the brother of Amalickiah was appointed king over the people; and his name was Ammoron; [and the war continued under Ammoron to great destruction for both Nephites and Lamanites.]

A 52-327

36. And it came to pass that Teancum in his anger did go forth into the camp of the Lamanites, and did let himself down over the walls of the city. ---he did find the king; and he did cast a javelin at him [Ammoron], which did pierce him near the heart. But behold, the king did awake his servant before he died, insomuch that they did pursue Teancum, and slew him.

38. Now it came to pass that Moroni marched forth on the morrow, and came upon the Lamanites, insomuch that they did slay them with a great slaughter; and they did drive them out of the land; and --- they did not return at that time against the Nephites.

A 62-356

[For a full account of this war, see pages 318-355 in the Book of Mormon.]

VII. THE KINGMEN

1. *ORIGIN OF THE "KINGMEN."* (*The Kingmen were a group of dissenters who wished the government changed to a kingdom, with a king as a ruler. They caused a great civil war, which made the Nephites vulnerable to invasion.*)

2. ---[about 67 B.C.] there began to be a contention among the people---

5. And it came to pass that those who were desirous that Pahoran should be dethroned from the judgment-seat were called king-men, for they were desirous that the law should be altered in a manner to overthrow the free government and to establish a king over the land.

6. And those who were desirous that Pahoran should remain chief judge over the land took upon them the name of freemen; and thus was the division among them,

7. And it came to pass that this matter of their contention was settled by the voice of the people. ---[which] came in favor of the freemen, and Pahoran retained the judgment-seat,

13. And it came to pass that when the --- king-men had heard that the Lamanites were coming down to battle against them [the Nephites], they were glad in their hearts; ---[and] they would not take up arms to defend their country.

A 51-324

2. THE KINGMEN CAUSED A CIVIL WAR.

17. And it came to pass that Moroni commanded that his army should go against those kingmen, to pull down their pride and their nobility and level them with the earth, or they should take up arms and support the cause of liberty.

16. For it was his first care to put an end to such contentions and dissensions among the people; for behold, this had been hitherto a cause of all their destruction.

19. And it came to pass that there were four thousand of those dissenters who were hewn down by the sword;

20. And the remainder of those dissenters rather than be smitten down to the earth by the sword, yielded to the standard of liberty,

22. Behold, it came to pass that while Moroni was thus breaking down the wars and contentions among his own people, ---behold, the Lamanites had come into the land---

23. And it came to pass that the Nephites were not sufficiently strong---

A 51-324

9. And thus because of iniquity amongst themselves, yea, because of dissensions and intrigue among themselves they were placed in the most dangerous circumstances.

A 53-331

16. Yea, had it not been for the war which broke out among ourselves; ---we should have dispersed our enemies, for it would have been done,

17. But behold, now the Lamanites are coming upon us, taking possession of our lands, and they are murdering our people with the sword, yea, our women and our children, and also carrying them away captive, A 60-850

3. THE KINGMEN WERE REVIVED AGAIN.

3. But behold, ---they have risen up in rebellion against me [Pahoran] and also [against] those of my people who are freemen,

5. And behold, they have driven me out before them, and I have fled to the land of Gideon, with as many men as it were possible that I could get.

8. They have got possession of the land, or the city, of Zarahemla; they have appointed a king over them, and he hath written unto the king of the Lamanites, in the which he hath joined an alliance with him;

A 61-852

6. And thus [when Moroni received this epistle, he]---gathered together whatsoever men he could in all his march, [and] he came to the land of Gideon; and uniting his forces with those of Pahoran they became exceeding strong, even stronger than the men of Pachus, who was the king of those dissenters who had driven the freemen out of the land of Zarahemla and had taken possession of the land.

7. And it came to pass that Moroni and Pahoran went down with their armies into the land of Zarahemla, and went forth against the city, and did meet the men of Pachus, insomuch that they did come to battle.

8. And behold, Pachus was slain and his men were taken prisoners, and Pahran was restored to his judgment-seat.

A 62-354

VIII. THE GADIANTON ROBBERS— AND OTHER SECRET ORGANIZATIONS

(See Chapter VI, Part V, Section III. See Chapter XVI, Part I, Section III, Unit 3.)

1. SECRET ORGANIZATIONS AMONGST THE JAREDITES.

15. And it came to pass that thus they did agree with Akish. And Akish did administer unto them the oaths which were given by them of old who also sought power, which [oaths] had been handed down even from Cain, who was a murderer from the beginning.

16. And they were kept up by the power of the devil to administer these oaths unto the people, to keep them in darkness,

18. And it came to pass that they formed a secret combination, even as they of old; which combination is most abominable and wicked above all, in the sight of God;

19. For the Lord worketh not in secret combinations, neither doth he will that man should shed blood, but in all things hath forbidden it, from the beginning of man.

E 8-492

15. And it came to pass that there arose a rebellion among the people, because of that secret combination which was built up to get power and gain; and there arose a mighty man among them in iniquity, and gave battle unto Moron, in which he did overthrow the half of the kingdom; and he did maintain the half of the kingdom for many years.

E 11-499

2. SECRET ORGANIZATIONS AMONGST THE NEPHITES. THE GADIANTON ROBBERS.

22. And there are also secret combinations, even as in times of old, according to the combinations of the devil, for he is the foundation of all these things;

2N 26-94

24. ---behold it will be expedient that we contend no more---until we have first cleansed our inward vessel, yea, even the great head of our government.

15. For were it not for the wickedness which first commenced at our head, we could have withstood our enemies that they could have gained no power over us. A 60-350

7. But behold, Paanchi, ---was about to flatter away those people to rise up in rebellion against their brethren.

8. ---behold, he was taken, and was tried according to the voice of the people, and condemned unto death; for he had raised up in rebellion and sought to destroy the liberty of the people.

9. Now when those people who were desirous that he should be their governor saw that he was condemned unto death, therefore they were angry, and behold, they sent forth one Kishkumen, even to the judgment-seat of Pahoran, and murdered Pahoran as he sat upon the judgment-seat.

11. And he went unto those that sent him, and they all entered into a covenant, yea, swearing by their everlasting Maker, that they would tell no man that Kishkumen had murdered Pahoran. A 1-360

4. ---there was one Gadianton, who was exceeding expert in many words, and also in his craft, to carry on the secret work of murder and of robbery; therefore he became the leader of the band of Kishkumen.

5. Therefore he did flatter them, and also Kishkumen, that if they would place him in the judgment-seat he would grant unto those who belonged to his band that they should be placed in power and authority among the people; therefore Kishkumen sought to destroy [the chief Judge,] Helaman.

10. And it came to pass that Helaman did send forth to take this band of robbers and secret murderers, that they might be executed according to the law.

11. ---And they took their flight out of the land, by a secret way, into the wilderness; and thus when Helaman sent forth to take them they could nowhere be found. H 2-362

23. And it came to pass in the forty and ninth year of the reign of the judges, there was continual peace established in the land, all save it were the secret combination which Gadianton the robber had established. H 3-365

16. [and]---the people began to grow exceedingly wicked again.

17. ---they began to set their hearts upon their riches; ---therefore they began to commit secret murders, and to rob and to plunder,

18. And now behold, those murderers and plunderers were a band who had been formed by Kishkumen and Gadianton. And now it had come to pass that there were many, even among the Nephites, of Gadianton's band. But behold, they were more numerous among the more wicked part of the Lamanites. And they were called Gadianton's robbers and murderers.

19. And it was they who did murder the chief judge Cezoram, and his son, while in the judgment-seat; and behold, they were not found.

22. And it came to pass that they did have their secret signs, and their secret words; and this that they might distinguish a brother who had entered into the covenant, that whatsoever wickedness his brother should do he should not be injured by his brother, nor by those who did belong to his band, who had taken this covenant.

24. And whosoever of those who belonged to their band should reveal unto the world of their wickedness and their abominations, should be tried, not according to the laws of their country, but according to the laws of their wickedness, which had been given by Gadianton and Kishkumen.

4. ---the people [were] in a state of such awful wickedness, ---[with] those Gadianton robbers filling the judgment-seats---having usurped the power and authority of the land; laying aside the commandments of God, and not in the least aright before him; doing no justice unto the children of men;

H 7-876

10. [The Gadianton Robbers are expelled for a time.] O Lord, behold this people repenteth; and they have swept away the band of Gadianton from amongst them insomuch that they have become extinct, and they have concealed their secret plans in the earth.
H 11-886

3. REVIVAL OF THE GADIANTON ROBBERS (*about 12 B.C.*)

26. And thus in time, yea, even in the space of not many years, they became an exceeding great band of robbers; and they did search out all the secret plans of Gadianton; and thus they became robbers of Gadianton.

27. Now behold, these robbers did make great havoc, yea, even great destruction among the people of Nephi, and also among the people of the Lamanites.
H 11-887

11. And it came to pass in the thirteenth year there began to be wars and contentions throughout all the land; for the Gadianton robbers had become so numerous, and did slay so many of the people, and did lay waste so many cities, and did spread so much death and carnage throughout the land, that it became expedient that all the people, both the Nephites and the Lamanites, should take up arms against them.

13. And it came to pass that---the Nephites were threatened with utter destruction because of this war, which had become exceedingly sore.

3N 2-402

1. And now it came to pass that in the sixteenth year from the coming of Christ [the birth of Christ in Jerusalem], Lachoneus, the governor of the land, received an epistle from the leader and the governor of this band of robbers;

6. Therefore I write unto you, desiring that ye would yield up unto this my people, your cities, your lands, and your possessions,

8. And behold, I swear unto you, if ye will do this, with an oath, ye shall not be destroyed;

10. ---and except ye do this, I will avenge their [the robber bands'] wrongs.
3N 3-408

13. [Lachoneus, the Nephite Judge,] sent a proclamation among all the people, that they should gather together their women, and their children, and their flocks and their herds, and all their substance, save it were their land, *unto one place*.

14. And he caused that fortifications should be built round about them, and the strength thereof should be exceeding great. And he caused that armies, both of the Nephites and of the Lamanites, or of all them who were numbered among the Nephites, should be placed as guards round about to watch them, and to guard them from the robbers day and night.

23. *And the land which was appointed was the land of Zarahemla and the land of Bountiful, yea, to the line which was between the land Bountiful and the land Desolation.*
3N 3-404

3. And the robbers could not exist save it were in the wilderness, for the want of food; for the Nephites had left their lands desolate, and had gathered their flocks and their herds and all their substance, and they were in one body.

4. Therefore, there was no chance for the robbers to plunder and to obtain food, save it were to come up in open battle against the Nephites; and the Nephites being in one body, and having so great a number, and having reserved for themselves provisions---that they might subsist for the space of seven years, in the which time they did hope to destroy the robbers from off the face of the land;

6. And they [the robbers] durst not spread themselves upon the face of the land insomuch that they could raise grain, lest the Nephites should come upon them and slay them; therefore Giddianhi [the robber leader] gave commandment unto his armies that in this year they should go up to battle against the Nephites.

7. ---And behold, great and terrible was the day that they did come up to battle; and they were girded about after the manner of robbers; and they had a lamb-skin about their loins, and they were dyed in blood, and their heads were shorn, and they had head-plates upon them;

11. And the battle commenced in this the sixth month; and great and terrible was the battle thereof, yea, great and terrible was the slaughter thereof, insomuch that there never was known so great a slaughter among all the people of Lehi since he left Jerusalem.

14. ---[And Giddianhi] being weary because of his much fighting he was overtaken and slain.

16. And in the twenty and first year they [the robbers] did not come up to battle, but they came up on all sides to lay siege round about the people of Nephi;

17. Now they [the robbers] had appointed unto themselves another leader, whose name was Zemnariyah;

18. But behold, this [siege] was an advantage to the Nephites; for it was impossible for the robbers to lay siege sufficiently long to have any effect upon the Nephites,

19. [But] Because of the scantiness of provisions among the robbers— for behold, they had nothing save it were meat for their subsistence, which meat they did obtain in the wilderness;

20. And it came to pass that the wild game became scarce in the wilderness—insomuch that the robbers were about to perish with hunger.

22. And thus it became the desire of the people of Zemnariyah [the robber captain] to withdraw from their design, because of the great destruction which came upon them by night and by day.

24. And now, Gidgiddoni [the Nephite Captain] being aware of their design, and knowing of their weakness because of the want of food, and the great slaughter which had been made among them, therefore he did send out his armies in the night-time, and did cut off the way of their retreat,

25. ---they were met [therefore] by the armies of the Nephites both in their front and in their rear.

27. And there were many thousands who did yield themselves up prisoners unto the Nephites, and the remainder of them were slain.

28. *And their leader, Zemnariyah, was taken and hanged upon a tree, yea, even upon the top thereof until he was dead. And when they had hanged him until he was dead they did fell the tree to the earth, and did cry with a loud voice, saying:*

29. May the Lord preserve his people in righteousness and in holiness of heart, that they may cause to be felled to the earth all who shall seek to slay them because of power and secret combinations, even as this man hath been felled to the earth.

30. And they did rejoice and cry again with one voice, saying: May the God of Abraham, and the God of Isaac, and the God of Jacob, protect this people in righteousness, so long as they shall call on the name of their God for protection.

3N 4-407

1. And now it came to pass that the people of the Nephites did all return to their own lands in the twenty and sixth year [of the reign of the Judges],

3N 6-410

4. *ANOTHER REVIVAL OF THE GADIANTON ROBBERS* (*About 30 A.D.*)

7. And they did cause a great contention in the land, insomuch that the more righteous part of the people had nearly all become wicked; yea, there were but few righteous men among them.

9. Now this secret combination, which had brought so great iniquity upon the people, did gather themselves together, and did place at their head a man whom they did call Jacob;

11. And it came to pass that they were not so strong in number as the tribes of the people.

12. Therefore, Jacob seeing that their enemies were more numerous than they, he being the king of the band, therefore he commanded his people that they should take their flight into the northernmost part of the land, and there build up unto themselves a kingdom.

13. And so speedy was their march that it could not be impeded until they had gone forth out of the reach of the people. 3N 7-418

5. *THE GADIANTON ROBBERS RE-APPEARED DURING* *THE "LAST DAYS" OF THE NEPHITES.* (*About 250 A.D.*)

42. And it came to pass that the wicked part of the people began again to build up the secret oaths and combinations of Gadianton.

46. And it came to pass that the robbers of Gadianton did spread over all the face of the land; and there were none that were righteous save it were the disciples of Jesus. And gold and silver did they lay up in store in abundance, and did traffic in all manner of traffic. 4N 1-459

18. And these Gadianton robbers, who were among the Lamanites, did infest the land, insomuch that the inhabitants thereof began to hide up their treasures in the earth; and they became slippery, because the Lord had cursed the land, that they could not hold them, nor retain them again.

19. And it came to pass that there were sorceries, and witchcrafts, and magics; and the power of the evil one was wrought upon all the face of the land, Mn 1-461

IX. OTHER GROUPS OF NEPHITE DISSENTERS

(*See Chapter XVI, Part IV, Section IV.*) (*A few of the following examples show the numerous "minor" contentions amongst the Nephites.*)

1. And it came to pass in the fifty and fourth year there were many dissensions in the church, and there was also a contention among the people, insomuch that there was much bloodshed.

2. And the rebellious part were slain and driven out of the land, and they did go unto the king of the Lamanites.

4. ---it came to pass in the fifty and sixth year of the reign of the judges, there were dissenters who went up from the Nephites unto the Lamanites; and they succeeded with those others in stirring them up to anger against the Nephites; H 4-366

PART I

THE GOVERNMENT OF THE ANCIENT PEOPLE

I. BRIEF SUMMARY OF THE JAREDITE GOVERNMENT

1. *THE REIGN OF SHULE.* (*The Jaradite form of government, for the most part was based upon the reign of kings. An example of one period of their history follows:*) 6. Now the land of Moron, where the king dwelt, was near the land which is called Desolation by the Nephites.

7. And it came to pass that Kib dwelt in captivity, and his people under Corihor his son, until he became exceeding old; nevertheless Kib begat Shule in his old age, while he was yet in captivity.

8. And it came to pass that Shule waxed strong, and became mighty as to the strength of a man; and he was also mighty in judgment.

9. Wherefore, he came to the hill Ephraim, and he did molten out the hill, and made swords out of steel for those whom he had drawn away with him; and after he had armed them with swords he returned to the city Nehor, and gave battle unto his brother Corihor, by which means he obtained the kingdom and restored it unto his father Kib.

10. And now because of the thing which Shule had done, his father bestowed upon him the kingdom; therefore he began to reign in the stead of his father.

11. And it came to pass that he did execute judgment in righteousness; and he did spread his kingdom upon all the face of the land, for the people had become exceeding numerous.

12. And it came to pass that Shule also begat many sons and daughters.

13. And Corihor repented of the many evils which he had done; wherefore Shule gave him power in his kingdom.

14. And it came to pass that Corihor had many sons and daughters. And among the sons of Corihor there was one whose name was Noah.

15. And it came to pass that Noah rebelled against Shule, the king, and also his father Corihor, and drew away Cohor his brother, and also all his brethren and many of the people.

16. And he gave battle unto Shule, the king, in which he did obtain the land of their first inheritance; and he became a king over that part of the land.

17. And it came to pass that he gave battle again unto Shule, the king; and he took Shule, the king, and carried him away captive into Moron.

18. And it came to pass as he was about to put him to death, the sons of Shule crept into the house of Noah by night and slew him, and brought out their father, and placed him upon his throne in his own kingdom.

19. Wherefore, the son of Noah did build up his kingdom in his stead; nevertheless they did not gain power any more over Shule the king,

20. And the country was divided; and there were two kingdoms, the kingdom of Shule, and the kingdom of Cohor, the son of Noah.

21. And Cohor, the son of Noah, caused that his people should give battle unto Shule, in which Shule did beat them and did slay Cohor.

22. And now Cohor had a son who was called Nimrod; and Nimrod gave up the kingdom of Cohor unto Shule, and he did gain favor in the eyes of Shule, wherefore Shule did bestow great favors upon him, and he did do in the kingdom of Shule according to his desire.

27. And there were no more wars in the days of Shule; and he remembered the great things that the Lord had done for his fathers in bringing them across the great deep into the promised land; wherefore he did execute judgment in righteousness all his days. E 7-489

2. *RECORDING JAREDITE TIME.* (*Time was given in such general terms throughout the Jaredite history that it is difficult, therefore, to calculate the length of the reign of the kings.*) 7. And it came to pass that Kib dwelt in captivity, ---until he became *exceeding old*; E 7-489

23. And it came to pass that Coriantum did walk in the steps of his father,

24. And it came to pass that his wife died, being an hundred and two years old. And it came to pass that Coriantum took to wife, in his old age, a young maid, and begat sons and daughters; wherefore he lived until he was an *hundred and forty and two years old*. E 9-495

4. ---And Shez did live to an *exceeding old age*; E 10-496

CHART 10

JAREDITE KINGS

NAME	STATEMENT OF EVENTS	AGE AT DEATH	LENGTH OF REIGN
Jared and Brother of Jared	Peaceful reign	Old	Many years
Orihah, son of Jared	Righteous	Very old	Exceeding many days
Kib, son of Orihah	Dwelt in captivity under son, Corihor.	Exceedingly old	
Corihor, son of Kib	Usurped throne from father, and in turn was vanquished by Shule, his brother.		
Shule, son of Kib	Liberated father Kib, became king, was made captive by Noah, his nephew. Kingdom was divided.		
Noah, nephew of Shule, son of Corihor	Captured Shule		
Two Kingdoms Cohor, son of Noah and Shule, son of Kib			
Omer, son of Shule	Captured by son, Jared.	Exceedingly old	Exceeding many days
Jared, son of Omer	Usurped throne from father		
Omer, son of Shule	Restored to throne by sons		
Kingdom divided: 1. Jared, son of Omer Akish, son-in-law of Jared 2. Omer	Jared again takes throne.		
Omer, son of Shule	Omer and group migrate and form own kingdom.		
Omer, son of Shule	Success in war, brings Omer to head the kingdom for the third time.		
Emer, son of Omer	Righteous		62 years
Coriantum, son of Emer	Built many cities	142 yrs.	Many years
Com, son of Coriantum			49 years
Heth, son of Com	Slew father, land was cursed with drought and poisonous serpents.		
Shez, descendant of Heth	Built up broken people.	Very old	Long reign
Riplakish, son of Shez	Many wives and concubines. Built beautiful throne. Imposed heavy taxes.		42 years
Morianton, descendant of Shez	Established himself king. Built many cities, had much gold work done.	Very old	

CHART 10

JAREDITE KINGS

NAME	STATEMENT OF EVENTS	AGE AT DEATH	LENGTH OF REIGN
Kim, son of Morianton	Captured by brother. Levi, son of Kim, served in captivity 42 yrs.		
Brother of Kim	Usurped throne from Kim		
Levi, son of Kim	Obtained kingdom from uncle. Was righteous	Good old age	
Corom, son of Levi	Righteous		Many years
Lib, son of Corom	Righteous reign, people spread southward. Poisonous serpents were destroyed.	Good old age	
Hearthom, son of Lib	Reigned 24 years then served in captivity. Heth, his son lived in captivity. Aaron, son of Heath, lived in captivity. Amngaddah, son of Aaron, lived in captivity. Coriantum, son of Amnigaddah, lived in captivity.		
Kings (names not given) (Amgid, last king of this line)	These kings reigned during the captivity of the family of and descendants of Hearthom (see above). Approx. 5 generations		
Com, son of Coriantum	Captured ½ kingdom from Amgid. 42 years later, captured all the kingdom.	Old age	
Shiblom, son of Com	Wars, contention, and famine. Seth, son of Shiblom, served in captivity.		
King (no name given)	Reigned during the captivity of Seth		
Ahah, son of Seth	Iniquity		
Ethem, descendant of Ahah	Iniquity, (many appearances of prophets.)		
Moron, son of Ethem	Lost, regained and lost kingdom and dwelt in captivity as did his son, Coriantor. Ether, son of Coriantor, was a prophet who lived in the last days of the Jaredites and during the reign of Coriantumr.		
Kings (names not given)	Took kingdom from Moron.		
Coriantumr last king of this line	Coriantumr, (last king of line of three generations) was the last Jaredite king, who lived to see the annihilation of his people and the arrival of a new people (Mulekites). He lived for nine moons with these people.		
End of the Jaredites	Coriantumr's death ended the Jaredite culture.		

II. THE NEPHITE GOVERNMENT

1. *RULE OF PATRIARCHS.* (*The first patriarch, Lehi, was the leader of the migration from Jerusalem about 600 B.C.*)

4. For it came to pass in the commencement of the first year of the reign of Zedekiah, king of Judah, (my father, Lehi, having dwelt at Jerusalem in all his days) ; 1N 1-1

2. And it came to pass that the Lord commanded my father, even in a dream, that he should take his family and depart into the wilderness. 1N 2-3

37. And he [Lehi] did exhort them with all the feeling of a tender parent, ---yea, my father did preach unto them [his family].

38. And after he had preached unto them, and also prophesied unto them of many things, he bade them keep the commandments of the Lord; 1N 8-15

5. But behold, my sons and my daughters, I cannot go down to my grave save I should leave a blessing upon you;

12. And it came to pass after my father, Lehi, had spoken unto all his household, according to the feelings of his heart and the Spirit of the Lord which was in him, he waxed old. And it came to pass that he died, and was buried.

(*The second patriarch, Nephi, was ordained by Lehi to be a leader over the people. Because Nephi was the youngest son, when Lehi bestowed this honor on Nephi, the two oldest brothers became angry.*) 28. And now my son, Laman, and also Lemuel and Sam, and also my sons who are the sons of Ishmael, behold, if ye will hearken unto the voice of Nephi ye shall not perish. And if ye will hearken unto him I [Lehi] leave unto you a blessing, yea,

29. But if ye will not hearken unto him I take away my --- blessing, 2N 1-52

13. And it came to pass that not many days after his [Lehi's] death, Laman and Lemuel and the sons of Ishmael were angry with me [Nephi] because of the admonitions of the Lord.

14. For I, Nephi, was constrained to speak unto them, according to his word; 2N 4-58

2. But behold, their anger did increase against me, insomuch that they did seek to take away my life.

5. And it came to pass that the Lord did warn me, that I, Nephi, should depart from them and flee into the wilderness, and all those who would go with me.

CHART 11

TYPES OF NEPHITE GOVERNMENT

Type of Rule	Approximate Duration of Rule	Approximate Dates
PATRIARCHAL Lehi and Nephi, Priest and family unit rule.	60 yrs.	600-540 B.C.
KINGDOM Rule by kings.	450 yrs.	540- 91 B.C.
LIBERAL Rule by Chief Judges—and by voice of the people. A form of democracy. A period of Anarchy existed (Rule usurped by out-law and robber leaders, 26-1 A.D.) Gadianton Judges 26-16 B.C. Great Famine 19-16 B.C. Return to order..... 16-12 B.C. Turbulent 12- 7 B.C. Wicked 7- 1 B.C.	121 yrs.	91- 30 A.D.
TRIBAL The central government was destroyed and the people separated into family tribes.	4 yrs.	30- 34 A.D.
UNITED ORDER Following Christ's appearance to the Nephites in Land Bountiful, a period of harmony and peace was enjoyed. The people lived having "all things in common."	166 yrs.	34-200 A.D.
UNITED ORDER (continued) Type of government is not mentioned, but it may have been a corrupted form of the previous government. The people were divided into classes. Much priest-craft existed.		
END OF NEPHITE CULTURE		385 A.D.

9. And all those who were with me did take upon them to call themselves the people of Nephi. 2N 5-60

18. And it came to pass that they would that I should be their king. But I, Nephi, was desirous that they should have no king; nevertheless, I did for them according to that which was in my power. 2N 6-61

2. RULE OF THE KINGS. (*The first Nephite kings were named after Nephi I.*) 9. Now Nephi began to be old, and he saw that he must soon die; wherefore, he anointed a man to be a king and a ruler over his people---

10. The people having loved Nephi exceedingly, he having been a great protector for them, having wielded the sword of Laban in their defence, and having labored in all his days for their welfare—

11. Wherefore, the people were desirous to retain in remembrance his name. And whoso should reign in his stead were called by the people, second Nephi, third Nephi, and so forth, according to the reign of the kings;

12. And it came to pass that Nephi died. J 1-108

11. And behold, the record of this people is engraven upon plates which is had by the kings, according to the generations;

O 1-180

14. ---behold, my brethren, ye can go to the---[Large Plates] of Nephi; for behold, upon them the records of our wars are engraven, according to the writings of the kings, or those which they caused to be written. Jm 1-129

(*The kings of the Nephites in the land of Zarahemla.*) 12. Behold, I will speak unto you somewhat concerning Mosiah, who was made king over the land of Zarahemla; for behold, he being warned of the Lord that he should flee out of the land of Nephi, and as many as would hearken unto the voice of the Lord should also depart out of the land with him, in the wilderness—[and they came down into Zarahemla, Mosiah I and his people.]

23. Behold, I, Amaleki, was born in the days of Mosiah; and I have lived to see his death; and Benjamin, his son, reigneth in his stead. O 1-180

9. And it came to pass that after king Benjamin had made an end of teaching his sons, that he waxed old, and he saw that he must soon go the way of all the earth; therefore, he thought it expedient that he should confer the kingdom upon one of his sons.

10. Therefore, he had Mosiah brought before him; and these are the words which he spake unto him, saying: My son, I would that ye should make a proclamation throughout all this land among all this people, or the people of Zarahemla, and the people of Mosiah who dwell in the land, that thereby they may be gathered together; for on the morrow I shall proclaim unto this my people out of mine own mouth that thou art a king and a ruler over this people, whom the Lord our God hath given us. Mo 1-135

(The end of the reign of Nephite kings.) 5. Behold, O ye my people, or my brethren, for I esteem you as such, I desire that ye should consider the cause which ye are called to consider—for ye are desirous to have a king. [Mosiah II is speaking.]

6. Now I declare unto you that he to whom the kingdom doth rightly belong has declined, and will not take upon him the kingdom.

10. And now let us be wise and look forward to these things, and do that which will make for the peace of this people. Mo 29-191

7. ---he said unto them: Behold, it is not expedient that we should have a king; for thus saith the Lord: Ye shall not esteem one flesh above another, or one man shall not think himself above another; therefore I say unto you it is not expedient that ye should have a king.

8. Nevertheless, if it were possible that ye could always have just men to be your kings it would be well for you to have a king.

9. But remember the iniquity of king Noah [of the land of Nephi—see “the people of Zeniff”]---and I myself was caught in a snare, and did many things which were abominable in the sight of the Lord, which caused me sore repentance; Mo 28-178

16. Now I say unto you, that because all men are not just it is not expedient that ye should have a king or kings to rule over you.

17. *For behold, how much iniquity doth one wicked king cause to be committed, yea, and what great destruction!*

21. *And behold, now I say unto you, ye cannot dethrone an iniquitous king save it be through much contention, and the shedding of much blood.*

22. For behold, he has his friends in iniquity, and he keepeth his guards about him; and he teareth up the laws of those who have reigned in righteousness before him; and he trampleth under his feet the commandments of God; Mo 29-192

11. Therefore I will be your king the remainder of my days; nevertheless, let us appoint judges, to judge this people according to our law; and we will newly arrange the affairs of this people, for

CHART 12

RULERS AND RELIGIOUS LEADERS OF THE NEPHITE CULTURE

* The following chart gives the order of succession of the High Priests, Chief Judges, and Kings of the Nephite people. It will be noted, that in many cases, one man holds two offices simultaneously. (See footnote below.)

HIGH PRIESTS	RULE BY CHIEF JUDGES (OR GOVERNORS)	RULE BY KINGS	APPROX. DURATION	APPROX. DATES
Lehi			20 yrs.	*600 - (588-570) B.C.
Nephi I, son			40 yrs.	*(588-570) - (544-521) B.C.
Jacob, brother		First King, name?*		(544-421) - (544-421) B.C.
Jacob, brother		Second King, name?*		
Enos, son		King, name?*		(544-421) - 420 B.C.
Jarom, son		King, name?*	20 yrs.	420 - 400 B.C.
Omni		King, name?*	40 yrs.	400 - 361 B.C.
Amaron, son		King, name?*	44 yrs.	361 - 279 B.C.
Chemish, brother		King, name?*	?	279 - ? B.C.
Abinadom, son		King, name?*	?	? - ? B.C.
Amaleki, son		Mosiah I*	?	* ? - ? B.C.
Amaleki, and Benjamin I		Benjamin I, son	?	*(279-130) - 124 B.C.
Mosiah II		Mosiah II, son	33 yrs.	* 124 - 91 B.C.
Alma I (from People of Alma)			31 yrs.	122 - 91 B.C.
Alma II, son		Alma II	4 yrs.	* 91 - 87 B.C.
Alma II			14 yrs.	87 - 73 B.C.
	Nephihah (appointed by Alma II)		20 yrs.	* 87 - 67 B.C.
Helaman I, son			16 yrs.	73 - 57 B.C.
	Pahoran I, son		15 yrs.	* 67 - 52 B.C.
Shiblon, brother			3 yrs.	56 - 53 B.C.
Helaman II, (son of Helaman I)			23 yrs.	53 - 30 B.C.
	Pahoran II, son		1 yr.	* 52 - 52 B.C.
	Pacumeni, brother		1 yr.	* 52 - 51 B.C.
	Helaman II, (son of Helaman I)		11 yrs.	* 50 - 39 B.C.

CHART 12

RULERS AND RELIGIOUS LEADERS OF THE NEPHITE CULTURE

HIGH PRIESTS	RULE BY CHIEF JUDGES (OR GOVERNORS)	RULE BY KINGS	APPROX. DURATION	APPROX. DATES
Nephi II, son	Nephi II, son		9 yrs.	* 39 - 30 B.C.
	Cezorum ,		30 yrs.	30 - 1 A.D.
	Son of Cezorum		4 yrs.	* 30 - 26 B.C.
	Seezoram		1 yr.	* 26 - 26 B.C.
	Various Judges		3 yrs.	* 26 - 23 B.C.
	Lachoneus I		23 yrs.	* 23 - 1 A.D.
Nephi III, son (Disciple)			30 yrs.	* 1 - 30 A.D.
	Lachoneus II, son		34 yrs.	1 - 34 ? A.D.
	The central government was broken up into many small tribes. Christ appeared to the Nephites in the Land Bountiful. The people lived in harmony and peace (United Order)		1 yr.	* 30 - 30 A.D.
			4 yrs.	30 - 34 A.D.
			1 week?	34 - A.D.
			166 yrs.	34 - 200 A.D.
Nephi IV, son (and Nephi V?)			76 yrs.?	(34?) - 110 A.D.
Amos I, son			84 yrs.	110 - 194 A.D.
Amos II, son (and Amos III?)			111 yrs.?	194 - 305 A.D.
Ammaron, brother Mormon, (son of Mormon, descendant of Nephi)			17 yrs.	305 - 322 A.D.
Moroni II, son			63 yrs.	322 - 385 A.D.
			36 yrs.	385 - 421 A.D.
	Final Battle, Annihilation of Nephites, end of Culture			385 A.D.

* The dates are marked with an asterisk (*) which represent the reign of the ruler (sometimes a patriarch, sometimes a king, sometimes a priest, and sometimes a judge).

The early Nephite kings are not named in the *Book of Mormon*. Their names and their history were recorded upon the Large Plates of Nephi. Only the translation from the last part of the Large Plates appears in the Book of Mormon (See Chart 4).

The name "Governor" was sometimes used to designate the Chief Judge — during the period of the reign of the judges. The author has taken the liberty to attach numerical titles to the names of certain individuals listed on the above chart (and on other charts and throughout this volume). This has been done to alleviate confusion in identifying different persons who carry the same name. The reader should understand that the ancient people had a different system of showing succession (an example is: Alma, son of Alma, who was a priest of King Noah); and should allow for the fact that these people probably maintained a numerical system among themselves, entirely different from that given by the author. (For example, the first Nephite kings were called numerically: Second Nephi, Third Nephi, etc. See this chapter, Part I, Section II, Unit 2.)

See Chart 5 for a listing of the High Priests. (Alma I was the only high priest who did not also hold the office of Historian.)

we will appoint wise men to be judges, that will judge this people according to the commandments of God.

30. ---and I command you to do these things, and that ye have no king; that if these people commit sins and iniquities they shall be answered upon their own heads.

31. For behold I say unto you, the sins of many people have been caused by the iniquities of their kings; therefore their iniquities are answered upon the heads of their kings. Mo 29-192

47. And thus ended the reign of the kings over the people of Nephi; Mo 29-194

3. *RULE OF THE JUDGES.* (*The reign of the judges began with Alma II.*) 44. And thus commenced the reign of the judges throughout all the land of Zarahemla, among all the people who were called the Nephites; and Alma was the first and chief judge.

42. And it came to pass that Alma was appointed to be the first chief judge, he being also the high priest, his father [Alma I] having conferred the office upon him, and having given him the charge concerning all the affairs of the church. Mo 29-194

16. And he [Alma II] selected a wise man who was among the elders of the church,

17. Now this man's name was Nephihah, and he was appointed chief judge;

18. Now Alma did not grant unto him the office of being high priest over the church, but he retained the office of high priest unto himself;

19. And this he did that he himself might go forth among his people, or among the people of Nephi, that he might preach the word of God unto them. A 4-204

37. And it came to pass --- that Nephihah, the second chief judge, died, having filled the judgment-seat with perfect uprightness before God.

39. Behold, it came to pass that the son of Nephihah was appointed to fill the judgment-seat, in the stead of his father; yea, he was appointed chief judge and governor over the people, with an oath and sacred ordinance to judge righteously, and to keep the peace and the freedom of the people, and to grant unto them their sacred privileges to worship the Lord, their God,

40. Now behold, his name was Pahoran. And Pahoran did fill the seat of his father--- A 50-328

2. For behold, Pahoran had died, and gone the way of all the earth; therefore there began to be a serious contention concerning who should have the judgment-seat among the brethren, who were the sons of Pahoran.

3. Now these are their names who did contend for the judgment-seat, who did also cause the people to contend: Pahoran, Paanchi, and Pacumeni.

5. Nevertheless, it came to pass that Pahoran was appointed by the voice of the people to be chief judge---

9. Now when those people who were desirous that he [Paanchi] should be their governor saw that he was condemned unto death [because he had raised a rebellion], therefore they were angry, and behold, they sent forth one Kishkumen, even to the judgment-seat of Pahoran, and murdered Pahoran as he sat upon the judgment-seat.

13. And now behold, Pacumeni was appointed, according to the voice of the people, to be chief judge and a governor over the people. H 1-360

18. [The Lamanites invade the heart of the Nephite lands] And it came to pass that because of so much contention and so much difficulty in the government, that they had not kept sufficient guards in the land of Zarahemla:

20. Therefore Coriantumr [Lamanite leader] did cut down the watch by the entrance of the city [Zarahemla],

21. And it came to pass that Pacumeni, who was the chief judge, did flee before Coriantumr, even to the walls of the city. And it came to pass that Coriantumr did smite him against the wall, insomuch that he died. And thus ended the days of Pacumeni. H 1-361

2. And it came to pass that Helaman, who was the son of Helaman [I], was appointed to fill the judgment-seat, by the voice of the people. H 2-362

37. And it came to pass in the fifty and third year of the reign of the judges, Helaman died, and his eldest son Nephi began to reign in his stead. H 3-366

1. And it came to pass that --- Nephi delivered up the judgment-seat to a man whose name was Cezoram.

4. And it came to pass that Nephi had become weary because of --- [the iniquity of the people]; and he yielded up the judgment-seat, and took it upon him to preach the word of God all the remainder of his days. H 5-368

(*Rebel groups took over the office of chief judge.*) 15. And it came to pass that in the sixty and sixth year of the reign of the

judges, behold, Cezoram was murdered by an unknown hand as he sat upon the judgment-seat. And it came to pass that in the same year, that his son, who had been appointed by the people in his stead, was also murdered.

18. And now behold, those murderers and plunderers were a band who had been formed by Kishkumen and Gadianton.

39. And thus they did obtain the sole management of the government, insomuch that they did trample under their feet and smite and rend and turn their backs upon the poor and the meek, and the humble followers of God. H 6-378

23. [Nephi II through revelation prophesies of a murder, and is accused of it himself.] Behold ye say that I have agreed with a man that he should murder Seezoram, our chief judge. But behold, I say unto you, that this is because I have testified unto you that ye might know concerning this thing; yea, even for a witness unto you, that I did know of the wickedness and abominations which are among you. [Is Cezoram and Seezoram the same man?] H 9-382

4. And seeing the people in a state of such awful wickedness, and those Gadianton robbers filling the judgment-seats—having usurped the power and authority of the land --- [Nephi was in agony of spirit.] H 7-376

(A righteous ruler became chief judge.) (Peace and unity were re-established because of the necessity to organize against the robber bands.) 1. Now it came to pass that the ninety and first year [of the reign of the judges] had passed away and it was six hundred years from the time that Lehi left Jerusalem; and it was in the year that Lachoneus was the chief judge and the governor over the land. 3N 1-399

19. And now it was in the days of Lachoneus, the son of Lachoneus, for Lachoneus did fill the seat of his father and did govern the people that year. 3N 6-412

4. *THE CENTRAL GOVERNMENT BROKE UP INTO TRIBAL UNITS.* *(About 30-34 A.D.)* 25. ---a complaint came up unto the land of Zarahemla, to the governor of the land against these judges who had condemned the prophets of the Lord unto death, not according to the law. [Many were prophesying of the coming of Christ and they were being tortured.]

24. Now behold, this was contrary to the laws of the land, that any man should be put to death except they had power from the governor of the land—

26. Now it came to pass that they [the judges who had put to death secretly the prophets of the Lord] were taken and brought up before the [chief] judge,

27. Now it came to pass that those judges had many friends and kindreds; and the remainder, yea, even almost all the lawyers and the high priests, did gather themselves together,

28. And they did enter into a covenant one with another, yea, even into that covenant which was given by them of old, which covenant was given and administered by the devil, to combine against all righteousness.

30. And they did set at defiance the law and the rights of their country, and they did covenant one with another to destroy the governor, and to establish a king over the land 3N 6-412

1. Now behold, I will show unto you that they did not establish a king over the land; but in this same year, yea, the thirtieth year, they did destroy upon the judgment-seat, yea, did murder the chief judge of the land.

14. And it came to pass in the thirty and first year that they were divided into tribes, every man according to his family, kindred and friends; nevertheless, they had come to an agreement that they would not go to war one with another; but they were not united as to their laws, and their manner of government, for they were established according to the minds of those who were their chiefs and their leaders. But they did establish very strict laws that one tribe should not trespass against another, insomuch that in some degree they had peace in the land; nevertheless, their hearts were turned from the Lord their God, and they did stone the prophets and did cast them out from among them.

3. And every tribe did appoint a chief or a leader over them; and thus they became tribes and leaders of tribes.

4. Now behold, there was no man among them save he had much family and many kindreds and friends; therefore their tribes became exceeding great.

7. And they did cause a great contention in the land, insomuch that the more righteous part of the people had nearly all become wicked; yea, there were but few righteous men among them.

6. And the regulations of the government were destroyed, 3N 7-418

5. *THE RULE OF UNITED ORDER.* (Some sort of united order seems to have been in practice during and after the time of Christ.) 19. And they taught, and did minister one to another; and they had all things common among them, every man dealing justly, one with another.

20. And it came to pass that they did do all things even as Jesus had commanded them. 3N 26-449

2. ---and every man did deal justly one with another.

3. And they had all things in common among them; therefore there were not any rich and poor, bond and free, they were all made free, and partakers of the heavenly gift.

16. And there were no envyings, nor strife, nor tumults, nor whoredoms, nor lyings, nor murders, nor any manner of lasciviousness; and surely there could not be a happier people among all the people who had been created by the hand of God.

17. ---neither were there Lamanites, nor any manner of "ites"; but they were in one, the children of Christ, and heirs to the Kingdom of God. 4N 1-456

6. PERIOD OF DISINTEGRATION. (*The Utopian conditions existing after Christ's visitation, were replaced by a break down of the church, a separation of the people into classes, and a period of selfishness and wickedness.*) 24. And now, in this two hundred and first year [A.D.] there began to be among them those who were lifted up in pride, such as the wearing of costly apparel, and all manner of fine pearls, and of the fine things of the world.

25. And from that time forth they did have their goods and their substance no more common among them.

26. And they began to be divided into classes; and they began to build up churches unto themselves to get gain, and began to deny the true church of Christ. 4N 1-458

45. And it came to pass that when three hundred years had passed away, both the people of Nephi and the Lamanites had become exceeding wicked one like unto another. 4N 1-459

19. And it came to pass that there were sorceries, and witchcrafts, and magics; and the power of the evil one was wrought upon all the face of the land, Mn 1-461

7. END OF THE NEPHITE GOVERNMENT AND CULTURE. (*See Chapter IV, Part IV, Section VI.*) 2. And now it came to pass that after the great and tremendous battle at Cumorah, behold, the Nephites --- were all destroyed.

3. And --- I even remain alone to write the sad tale of the destruction of my people. But behold, they are gone, and I fulfill the commandment of my father. And whether they will slay me, I know not. [Moroni is speaking.] Mn 8-472

III. THE LAMANITE GOVERNMENT.

(Very little information is given in the Book of Mormon concerning the chronological history and the government of the Lamanites. What is given tells of the rule of kings.) 21. ---therefore being deceived by the cunning and craftiness of king Laman, Mo 7-149

3. And now the name of the king of the Lamanites was Laman, being called after the name of his father; and therefore he was called king Laman. And he was king over a numerous people. Mo 24-180

CHART 13

LAMANITE KINGS AND LEADERS

Approximate
Dates

Names

KINGS

580 B.C.	Laman, son of Lehi, first leader and probably king of those who dissented with him.
90 B.C.	Lamoni, King of the land of Ishmael.
90 B.C.	Antiomno, King of the land of Middoni.
72 B.C.	Amalickiah, a Nephite dissenter who became king of the Lamanites.
66 B.C.	Ammoron, brother of Amalickiah, became king after the death of his brother.
51 B.C.	Tubaloth, son of Ammoron, became king after the death of his father.
331 A.D.	Aaron, King of the Lamanites.

 LEADERS

72 B.C.	Lehonti,	leader of the Lamanite army.
21 A.D.	Zerahemnah,	leader of the Lamanite army.

PART II

NEPHITE LAWS

I. NEPHITE LAWS OF THE LAND

(Religious laws were closely associated with the laws of the land.)

5. And now, behold two hundred years had passed away [from the time Lehi left Jerusalem], and the people of Nephi had waxed strong in the land. ---And the Laws of the land were exceedingly strict.

Jm 1-146

1. ---he [Mosiah II] had established laws, and they were acknowledged by the people; therefore they were obliged to abide by the laws which he had made.

A 1-195

13. [Benjamin speaks to his people about their laws.] Neither have I suffered that ye should be confined in dungeons, nor that ye should make slaves one of another, nor that ye should murder, or plunder, or steal, or commit adultery; nor even have I suffered that ye should commit any manner of wickedness, and have taught you that ye should keep the commandments of the Lord,

Mo 2-137

(The laws of Mosiah II are honored by the people.)

13. And thou hast shed the blood of a righteous man, yea, a man who has done much good among this people; and were we to spare thee his blood would come upon us for vengeance.

14. Therefore thou art condemned to die, according to the law which has been given us by Mosiah, our last king; and it has been acknowledged by this people; therefore this people must abide by the law.

A 1-195

22. Now there was no lawyer nor judge nor high priest that could have power to condemn any one to death save their condemnation was signed by the governor of the land.

3N 6-412

17. ---they durst not lie, if it were known, for fear of the law, for liars were punished;

18. And they durst not steal, for fear of the law, for such were punished; neither durst they rob, nor murder, for he that murdered was punished unto death.

A 1-195

2. Now if a man owed another, and he would not pay that which he did owe, he was complained of to the judge; and the judge executed authority, and sent forth officers that the man should be brought before him; and he judged the man according to the law and the evidences which were brought against him, and thus the man was compelled to pay that which he owed, or be stripped, or be cast out from among the people as a thief and a robber. A 11-221

7. And they were strict to observe that there should be no iniquity among them; and whoso was found to commit iniquity, and if they repented not, and confessed not, their names were blotted out, and they were not numbered among the people of Christ. M 6-512

7. Now there was no law against a man's belief; for it was strictly contrary to the commands of God that there should be a law which should bring men on to unequal grounds.

8. For thus saith the scripture: Choose ye this day, whom ye will serve.

9. Now if a man desired to serve God, it was his privilege;

11. For there was a law that men should be judged according to their crimes. Nevertheless, there was no law against a man's belief; therefore a man was punished only for the crimes which he had done; therefore all men were on equal grounds. A 30-269

2. For as their laws and their governments were established by the voice of the people, and they who chose evil were more numerous than they who chose good, therefore they were ripening for destruction, for the laws had become corrupted.

3. Yea, and this was not all; they were a stiffnecked people, insomuch that they could not be governed by the law nor justice, save it were to their destruction. H 5-368

11. ---[When the central government was broken up, tribes were formed and] their leaders did establish their laws, every one according to his tribe; 3N 7-413

II. MOSAIC LAWS

1. *THE BRASS PLATES RECORDED THE LAWS OF MOSES.* (See Chapter II, Part I, Sections II and III. See also Chapter XIII, Part I, Section II, Unit 2, for a list of the "Ten Commandments.") 15. Yea, and I also thought that they [the people of the promised land] could not keep the commandments of the Lord according to the law of Moses, save they should have the law.

16. And I also knew that the law was engraven upon the plates of brass.

17. And again, I knew that the Lord had delivered Laban into my hands for this cause—that I might obtain the records according to his commandments. [The plates were secured from Laban in Jerusalem.] 1N 4-8

10. And we did observe to keep the judgments, and the statutes, and the commandments of the Lord in all things, according to the law of Moses. 2N 5-60

5. ---They observed to keep the law of Moses and the sabbath day holy unto the Lord. And they profaned not; neither did they blaspheme. Jm 1-128

2. *THE LAWS OF MOSES—AND THE ATONEMENT OF CHRIST.* (*The laws of Moses were ordinances and practices typifying the atonement of Christ.*) 4. Behold, my soul delighteth in proving unto my people the truth of the coming of Christ; for, for this end hath the law of Moses been given; and all things which have been given of God from the beginning of the world, unto man, are the typifying of him. 2N 11-73

3. Yea, and the people did observe to keep the commandments of the Lord; and they were strict in observing the ordinances of God, according to the law of Moses; for they were taught to keep the law of Moses until it should be fulfilled. A 30-269

15. Yea, and they did keep the law of Moses; ---But notwithstanding the law of Moses, they did look forward to the coming of Christ, considering that the law of Moses was a type of his coming, and believing that they must keep those outward performances until the time that he should be revealed unto them.

16. Now they did not suppose that salvation came by the law of Moses; but the law of Moses did serve to strengthen their faith in Christ; and thus they did retain a hope through faith, unto eternal salvation, relying upon the spirit of prophecy, which spake of those things to come. A 26-260

29. ---there should be a law given to the children of Israel, yea, even a very strict law; for they were a stiff-necked people, quick to do iniquity, and slow to remember the Lord their God;

30. Therefore there was a law given them, yea, a law of performances and of ordinances, a law which they were to observe strictly from day to day, to keep them in remembrance of God and their duty towards him.

32. And now, did they understand the law? I say unto you, Nay, they did not all understand the law; and this because of the hardness of their hearts; for they understood not that there could not any man be saved except it were through the redemption of God.

Mo 14-162

12. [Behold!]
---the law requireth the life of him who hath murdered; therefore there can be nothing which is short of an infinite atonement which will suffice for the sins of the world.

A 34-282

3. *THE COMING OF CHRIST FULFILLED.* (*The ordinances of the laws of Moses fulfilled at the coming of Christ.*) 17. Think not that I am come to destroy the law or the prophets. I am not come to destroy but to fulfill; [Christ is speaking.]

18. For verily I say unto you, one jot nor one tittle hath not passed away from the law, but in me it hath all been fulfilled.

3N 12-424

46. Therefore those things which were of old time, which were under the law, in me are all fulfilled.

47. Old things are done away, and all things have become new.

3N 12-426

3. And he said unto them: Marvel not that I said unto you that old things had passed away, and that all things had become new.

4. Behold, I say unto you that the law is fulfilled that was given unto Moses.

5. Behold, I am he that gave the law, and I am he who covenanted with my people Israel; therefore, the law in me is fulfilled, for I have come to fulfill the law; therefore it hath an end.

7. And because I said unto you that old things have passed away, I do not destroy that which hath been spoken concerning things which are to come.

8. For behold, the covenant which I have made with my people is not all fulfilled; but the law which was given unto Moses hath an end in me.

3N 15-429

12. And they [the Nephites] did not walk any more after the performances and ordinances of the law of Moses; but they did walk after the commandments which they had received from their Lord and their God,

4N 1-457

11. Wherefore, by faith was the law of Moses given. But in the gift of his Son hath God prepared a more excellent way; and it is by faith that it hath been fulfilled.

E 12-501

PART III

JUDICIAL CUSTOMS OF THE NEPHITES

I. JUDGES

25. Therefore, choose you by the voice of his people, judges, that ye may be judged according to the laws which have been given by our fathers, which are correct, and which were given them by the hand of the Lord.

26. Now it is not common that the voice of the people desireth anything contrary to that which is right; but it is common for the lesser part of the people to desire that which is not right; therefore this shall ye observe and make it your law—to do your business by the voice of the people.

38. ---[they] became exceedingly anxious that every man should have an equal chance throughout all the land; yea, and every man expressed a willingness to answer for his own sins.

39. Therefore, it came to pass that they assembled themselves to gether in bodies throughout the land, to cast in their voices concerning who should be their judges, to judge them according to the law which had been given them; and they were exceedingly rejoiced because of the liberty which had been granted unto them.

41. And it came to pass that they did appoint judges to rule over them, or to judge them according to the law; and this they did throughout all the land.

Mo 29-193

1. Now it was in the law of Mosiah that every man who was a judge of the law, or those who were appointed to be judges, should receive wages according to the time which they labored to judge those who were brought before them to be judged.

3. And the judge received for his wages according to his time—a senine of gold for a day, or a senum of silver, which is equal to a senine of gold; and this is according to the law which was given.

A 11-221

28. And now if ye have judges, and they do not judge you according to the law which has been given, ye can cause that they may be judged of a higher judge.

29. If your higher judges do not judge righteous judgements, ye shall cause that a small number of your lower judges should be gathered together, and they shall judge your higher judges, according to the voice of the people.

Mo 29-193

III. LAWYERS

14. Now it was those men---who were lawyers, who were hired or appointed by the people to administer the law at their times of trials, or at the trials of the crimes of the people before the judges.

15. Now these lawyers were learned in all the arts and cunning of the people; and this was to enable them that they might be skillful in their profession.

16. And it came to pass that they began to question Amulek [in Ammonihah], that thereby they might make him cross his words, or contradict the words which he should speak.

17. Now they knew not that Amulek could know of their designs.

26. [And Amulek said:] ---Ye do not understand; ye say that I have spoken against your law; but I have not, but I have spoken in favor of your law, to your condemnation.

24. And now it came to pass that the people were more angry with Amulek, and they cried out, saying: This man doth revile against our laws which are just, and our wise lawyers whom we have selected.

A 10-221

PART IV

POLITICAL CUSTOMS AND POLITICAL TRICKERY OF THE ANCIENT PEOPLE

II. AN EPISODE OF JAREDITE POLITICAL TRICKERY

(A very colorful example of intrigue among the ancient Jaredites.)

8. Now the daughter of Jared [II] being exceeding expert, and seeing the sorrows of her father [who had illegally acquired the kingdom and then had lost it], thought to devise a plan whereby she could redeem the kingdom unto her father.

9. Now the daughter of Jared was exceeding fair. And it came to pass that she did talk with her father, and said unto him: Whereby hath my father so much sorrow? Hath he not read the record which our fathers brought across the great deep? Behold, is there not an account concerning them of old, that they by their secret plans did obtain kingdoms and great glory?

10. And now, therefore, let my father send for Akish, the son of Kimnor; and behold, I am fair, and I will dance before him, and I will please him, that he will desire me to wife; wherefore if he shall desire of thee that ye shall give [me] unto him---to wife, then shall ye say: I will give her if ye will bring unto me the head of my father [Omer], the king.

11. And now Omer was a friend to Akish; wherefore, when Jared had sent for Akish, the daughter of Jared danced before him that she pleased him, insomuch that he desired her to wife. And it came to pass that he said unto Jared: Give her unto me to wife.

12. And Jared said unto him: I will give her unto you, if ye will bring unto me the head of my father, the king.

13. And it came to pass that Akish gathered in unto the house of Jared all his kinsfolk, and said unto them: Will ye swear unto me that ye will be faithful unto me in the thing which I shall desire of you?

14. And it came to pass that they all sware unto him, by the God of heaven, and also by the heavens, and also by the earth, and by their heads, that whoso should vary from the assistance which Akish desired should lose his head; and whoso should divulge what-

soever thing Akish made known unto them, the same should lose his life. E 8-491

1. ---Therefore, behold, it came to pass that because of the secret combinations of Akish and his friends, behold, they did overthrow the kingdom of Omer.

3. [But] ---the Lord warned Omer in a dream that he should depart out of the land; wherefore Omer departed out of the land with his family,

4. And it came to pass that Jared was anointed king over the people, by the hand of wickedness; and he gave unto Akish his daughter to wife.

5. And it came to pass that Akish sought the life of his father-in-law; and he applied unto those whom he had sworn by the oath of the ancients, and they obtained the head of his father-in-law, as he sat upon this throne,

7. And it came to pass that Akish began to be jealous of his son, therefore he shut him up in prison, and kept him upon little or no food until he had suffered death.

8. And now the brother of him that suffered death, (and his name was Nimrah) was angry with his father because of that which his father had done unto his brother.

12. And there began to be a war between the sons of Akish and Akish, which lasted for the space of many years, yea, unto the destruction of nearly all the people of the kingdom, yea, even all, save it were thirty souls, and they who fled with the house of Omer. E 9-493

II. EXAMPLES OF POLITICAL TRICKERY AND DECEIT AMONGST THE NEPHITES

(See Chapter V, Part III—especially Section VI—for other examples.) 8. They [king-men] have got possession of the land, or the city of Zarahemla; they have appointed a king over them, and he hath written unto the king of the Lamanites, in the which he hath joined an alliance with him; in the which alliance he hath agreed to maintain the city of Zarahemla, which maintenance he supposeth will enable the Lamanites to conquer the remainder of the land, and he shall be placed king over this people when they shall be conquered under the Lamanites. A 6-352

30. And they did set at defiance the law and the rights of their country; and they did covenant one with another to destroy the

governor, and to establish a king over the land, that the land should no more be at liberty but should be subject unto kings.

3N 6-413

9. Now this secret combination, which had brought so great iniquity upon the people, did gather themselves together, and did place at their head a man whom they did call Jacob;

10. And they did call him their king; therefore he became a king over this wicked band; ---

3N 7-413

(*Other examples of political turmoil and civil war amongst the Nephites.*) 40. And there had been murders, and contentions, and dissensions, and all manner of iniquity among the people of Nephi;

A 62-357

(*Contention over the choice of a new ruler.*) 2. For behold, Pahoran had died, and gone the way of all the earth; therefore there began to be a serious contention concerning who should have the judgment-seat among the brethren, who were the sons of Pahoran.

H 1-359

(*Complaint of the army captain because of a lack of support by the central government.*) 5. But behold, great has been the slaughter among our people; yea, thousands have fallen by the sword, while it might have otherwise been if ye had rendered unto our armies sufficient strength and succor for them. Yea, great has been your neglect towards us.

7. Can you think to sit upon your thrones in a state of thoughtless stupor, while your enemies are spreading the work of death around you?

A 60-349

(*Invasions facilitated by dissensions and civil war.*) 10. Now this did stir up the Zoramites to anger against the people of Ammon, and they began to mix with the Lamanites and to stir them up also to anger against them.

11. And thus the Zoramites and the Lamanites began to make preparations for war against the people of Ammon, and also against the Nephites.

A 35-285

16. Yea, had it not been for the war which broke out among ourselves; ---yea, at the time we were contending among ourselves, if we had united our strength as we hitherto have done; ---we should have dispersed our enemies,

A 60-350

III. POLITICAL CONTENTIONS BETWEEN THE NEPHITES AND THE LAMANITES

1. *CONTENTIONS IN THE OLD WORLD.* (*Before embarking for the promised land, the sons of Lehi had many contentions.*)

11. ---Laman and Lemuel; ---did murmur in many things against their father, because he was a visionary man, and had led them out out of the land of Jerusalem, to leave the land of their inheritance, and their gold, and their silver, and their precious things, to perish in the wilderness.

13. Neither did they [Laman and Lemuel] believe that Jerusalem, that great city, could be destroyed according to the words of the prophets. And they [Laman and Lemuel] were like unto the Jews who were at Jerusalem, who sought to take away the life of my father. [Nephi, another son of Lehi, is speaking] 1N 2-4

29. And it came to pass as they [Laman and Lemuel] smote us with a rod, behold, an angel of the Lord came and stood before them, and he spake unto them saying: Why do ye smite your younger brother [Nephi] with a rod? Know ye not that the Lord hath chosen him to be a ruler over you, and this because of your iniquities? 1N 8-6

6. And it came to pass that as we journeyed in the wilderness, behold Laman and Lemuel, and two of the daughters of Ishmael, and the two sons of Ishmael and their families, did rebel against us; yea, against me, Nephi, and Sam, and their father, Ishmael, and his wife, and his three other daughters.

7. And it came to pass in the which rebellion, they were desirous to return unto the land of Jerusalem. 1N 7-11

35. And it came to pass that the daughters of Ishmael did mourn exceedingly, because of the loss of their father, ---and they did murmur against my father, because he had brought them out of the land of Jerusalem, --- [Ishmael died in the wilderness.]

36. And thus they did murmur against my father, [Lehi] and also against me [Nephi], and they were desirous to return again to Jerusalem. 1N 16-33

16. ---they were angry with me [Nephi]. And it came to pass that they did lay their hands upon me, for behold, they were exceeding wroth, and they did bind me with cords, for they sought to take away my life, that they might leave me in the wilderness to be devoured by wild beasts. 1N 7-12

20. And thou [Nephi] art like unto our father, led away by the foolish imaginations of his heart; yea, he hath led us out of the

land of Jerusalem, and we have wandered in the wilderness for these many years; And our women have toiled, being big with child; and they have borne children in the wilderness and suffered all things, save it were death; and it would have been better that they had died before they came out of Jerusalem than to have suffered these afflictions. [Laman and Lemuel are complaining.]

21. Behold, these many years we have suffered in the wilderness, which time we might have enjoyed our possessions and the land of our inheritance; yea, and we might have been happy.

1N 17-85

2. CONTENTIONS ENROUTE TO THE PROMISED LAND.

(While on the ocean enroute to the Western Hemisphere the people of Lehi had serious contentions.) 48. And now it came to pass

that when I [Nephi] had spoken these words [Nephi was preaching to his brothers, Laman and Lemuel] they were angry with me, and were desirous to throw me into the depths of the sea; and as they came forth to lay their hands upon me I spake unto them saying: In the name of the Almighty God, I command you that ye touch me not, for I am filled with the power of God, even unto the consuming of my flesh; and whoso shall lay his hands upon me shall wither even as a dried reed;

52. And it came to pass that I, Nephi, said many things unto my brethren, ---[and they] durst [not]---lay their hands upon me---

1N 17-37

9. And after we had been driven forth before the wind for the space of many days, behold, my brethren and the sons of Ishmael and also their wives began to make themselves merry, insomuch that they began to dance, and to sing, and to speak with much rudeness, yea, even that they did forget by what power they had been brought thither; yea, they were lifted up unto exceeding rudeness.

10. And I, Nephi, began to fear exceedingly lest the Lord should be angry with us, and smite us because of our iniquity, that we should be swallowed up in the depths of the seas; wherefore, I, Nephi, began to speak to them with much soberness; but behold they were angry with me saying: We will not that our younger brother shall be a ruler over us.

11. And it came to pass that Laman and Lemuel did take us and bind me with cords, and they did treat me with much harshness; nevertheless, the Lord did suffer it that he might show forth his power, unto the fulfilling of his word which he had spoken concerning the wicked.

12. And it came to pass that after they had bound me insomuch that I could not move, the compass, which had been prepared of the Lord, did cease to work.

13. Wherefore, they knew not whither they should steer the ship, insomuch that there arose a great storm, yea, a great and

terrible tempest, and we were driven back upon the waters for the space of three days; and they began to be frightened exceedingly lest they should be drowned in the sea; nevertheless they did not loose me.

15. And it came to pass that we were about to be swallowed up in the depths of the sea. And after we had been driven back upon the waters for the space of four days, my brethren began to see that the judgments of God were upon them, and that they must perish save that they should repent of their iniquities; wherefore, they came unto me, and loosed the bands which were upon my wrists, and behold they [the wrists] had swollen exceedingly; and also mine ankles were much swollen, and great was the soreness thereof.

21. And it came to pass after they had loosed me, behold, I took the compass, and it did work whither I desired it. And it came to pass that I prayed unto the Lord; and after I had prayed the winds did cease, and the storm did cease, and there was a great calm.

1N 18-39

3. CONTENTION IN THE PROMISED LAND, CAUSED THE PEOPLE OF LEHI TO SEPARATE INTO TWO FACTIONS. (See Chapter IV, Part II, Section III.) (*These contentions between the Nephites and the Lamanites lasted 1000 years, and ended in the defeat of the Nephites, see Chapter VII, Part II, for details of the last encounter.*) 37. And Laman said unto Lemuel and also unto the sons of Ishmael: Behold, let us slay our father, and also our brother Nephi, who has taken it upon him to be our ruler and our teacher, who are his elder brethren.

38. Now, he says that the Lord has talked with him, and also that angels have ministered unto him. But behold, we know that he lies unto us; and he tells us these things, and he worketh many things by his cunning arts, that he may deceive our eyes, thinking, perhaps, that he may lead us away into some strange wilderness; and after he has led us away, he has thought to make himself a king and a ruler over us, that he may do with us according to his will and pleasure. And after this manner did my brother Laman stir up their hearts to anger.

1N 33-33

24. [Lehi speaks to his sons, Laman and Lemuel.] Rebel no more against your brother, whose views have been glorious, and who hath kept the commandments from the time that we left Jerusalem; and who hath been an instrument in the hands of God, in bringing us forth into the land of promise; for were it not for him, we must have perished with hunger in the wilderness; nevertheless, ye sought to take away his life; yea, and he hath suffered much sorrow because of you.

27. And it must needs be that the power of God must be with him, even unto his commanding you that ye must obey. But behold,

it was not he, but it was the Spirit of the Lord which was in him, which opened his mouth to utterance that he could not shut it.

2N 1-51

12. And it came to pass ---that he [Lehi] died, and was buried.

13. And it came to pass that not many days after his death, Laman and Lemuel and the sons of Ishmael were angry with me [Nephi]—

2N 4-58

3. Yea, they murmur against me, saying: Our younger brother thinks to rule over us; and we have had much trial because of him; wherefore, now let us slay him, that we may not be afflicted more because of his words. For behold, we will not have him to be our ruler; for it belongs unto us, who are the elder brethren, to rule over this people.

5. And it came to pass that the Lord did warn me, that I, Nephi, should depart from them and flee [Nephi flees with his people.]

2N 5-60

(After Nephi and his people left, there continued to be wars between the two peoples.) 24. And I [Enos] saw wars between the Nephites and Lamanites in the course of my days.

25. And it came to pass that I began to be old, and an hundred and seventy and nine years had passed away from the time that our father Lehi left Jerusalem.

En 1-127

6. And they [the Nephites] were scattered upon much of the face of the land, and the Lamanites also. And they [the Lamanites] were exceeding more numerous than were they of the Nephites; and they loved murder and would drink the blood of beasts.

7. And it came to pass that they came many times against us, the Nephites, to battle. But our kings and our leaders were mighty men in the faith of the Lord; and they taught the people the ways of the Lord;

Jm 1-128

13. Therefore it came to pass that king Laman began to stir up his people that they should contend with my people; therefore there began to be wars and contentions in the land.

Mo 9-155

(Throughout the Book of Mormon, accounts of wars between the Nephites and the Lamanites may be found. The most information on this subject is given in the Book of Alma, and especially on pages 300 to 385.) (See Chapter VII, Part II of this volume for an example of the last war between the Nephites and the Lamanites. See Chapter XVI, Part IV, for internal Nephite contentions and civil war).

PART V

ANCIENT FORMS OF GOVERNMENT CORRELATED WITH PRESENT-DAY FORMS

During certain periods, the government
of the ancient people resembled certain
modern trends in government.

I. DEMOCRACY

1. *GOVERNMENT BY THE "VOICE OF THE PEOPLE."*

26. Now it is not common that the voice of the people desireth anything contrary to that which is right; but it is common for the lesser part of the people to desire that which is not right; therefore this shall ye observe and make it your law—to do your business by the voice of the people. Mo 29-193

27. And if the time comes that the voice of the people doth choose iniquity, then is the time that the judgments of God will come upon you; yea, then is the time he will visit you with great destruction even as he has hitherto visited this land. Mo 29-193

33. ---and he [the Lord] inviteth them all to come unto him and partake of his goodness; and he denieth none that come unto him, black and white, bond and free, male and female; and he remembreth the heathen; and all are alike unto God, both Jew and Gentile. 2N 26-95

25. Therefore, choose you by the voice of this people, Mo 29-193

2. *RELIGIOUS FREEDOM.* 21. Now there was a strict law among the people of the church, that there should not any man, belonging to the church, arise and persecute those that did not belong to the church, and that there should be no persecution among themselves. A 1-196

7. Now there was no law against a man's belief; for it was strictly contrary to the commands of God that there should be a law which should bring men on to unequal grounds.

8. For thus saith the scripture: Choose ye this day, whom ye will serve. A 30-269

3. *INEQUALITY—vs.—EQUALITY.* 12. And now behold, my brethren, this is the word which I declare unto you, that many of you have begun to search for gold, and for silver, and for all manner of precious ores, in the which this land, which is a land of promise unto you and to your seed, doth abound most plentifully.

13. And the hand of providence hath smiled upon you most pleasingly, that you have obtained many riches; and because some of you have obtained more abundantly than that of your brethren ye are lifted up in the pride of your hearts, and wear stiff necks and high heads because of the costliness of your apparel, and persecute your brethren because ye suppose that ye are better than they.

J 2-110

32. And now I desire that this inequality should be no more in this land, especially among this my people; but I desire that this land be a land of liberty, and every man may enjoy his rights and privileges alike, so long as the Lord sees fit that we may live and inherit the land, yea, even as long as any of our posterity remains upon the face of the land.

Mo 29-193

4. *THE ANCIENT INHABITANTS RALLIED TO THE CAUSE OF LIBERTY.* 11. And now it came to pass that when Moroni, who was chief commander of the armies of the Nephites, had heard of these dissensions, he was angry with Amalickiah [who had sought to destroy the foundation of liberty, and to destroy the people of the church of God].

12. And it came to pass that he [Moroni I] rent his coat; and he took a piece thereof, and wrote upon it—In memory of our God, our religion, and freedom, and our peace, our wives, and our children—and he fastened it upon the end of a pole.

13. ---and he took the pole, which had on the end thereof his rent coat, (and he called it the title of liberty) and he bowed himself to the earth, and he prayed mightily unto his God for the blessings of liberty to rest upon his brethren,

17. And it came to pass that when he had poured out his soul to God, he named all the land which was south of the land Desolation, yea, and in fine, all the land, both on the north and on the south—A chosen land, and the land of liberty.

19. And when Moroni had said these words, he went forth among the people, waving the rent part of his garment in the air, that all might see the writing which he had written upon the rent part, and crying with a loud voice, saying:

20. Behold, whosoever will maintain this title upon the land, let them come forth in the strength of the Lord, and enter into a covenant that they will maintain their rights, and their religion, that the Lord God may bless them.

A 46-310

17. And they entered into a covenant to fight for the liberty---
[and to] protect the land unto the laying down of their lives;

A 58-382

II. SOCIALISM

7. ---for thus saith the Lord: Ye shall not esteem one flesh
above another, or one man shall not think himself above another;

Mo 28-178

7. And king Mosiah did cause his people that they should till
the earth. And he also, himself, did till the earth, that thereby he
might not become burdensome to his people, that he might do ac-
cording to that which his father had done in all things.

Mo 6-147

24. And he also commanded them that the priests whom he
had ordained should labor with their own hands for their support.

26. And the priests were not to depend upon the people for
their support.

Mo 18-189

5. ---save it were in sickness, or in much want;

Mo 27-186

26. And when the priests left their labor to impart the word of
God unto the people, the people also left their labors to hear the
word of God. ---and the priest, not esteeming himself above his
hearers, for the preacher was no better than the hearer, neither was
the teacher any better than the learner; and thus they were all
equal, and they did all labor, every man according to his strength.

A 1-197

30. And thus in their prosperous circumstances, they did not
send away any who were naked, or that were hungry, or that were
athirst, or that were sick, or that had not been nourished; and they
did not set their hearts upon riches; therefore they were liberal to
all, both old and young, both bond and free, both male and female,
whether out of the church or in the church, having no respect to
persons as to those who stood in need.

A 1-197

33. And notwithstanding the many labors which I have per-
formed in the church, I have never received so much as even one
senine for my labor; neither has any of my brethren, save it were
in the judgment-seat; and then we have received only according to
law for our time. [Alma II is speaking.]

A 30-271

17. And behold, I tell you these things that ye may learn wis-
dom; that ye may learn that when ye are in the service of your
fellow beings ye are only in the service of your God.

18. Behold, ye have called me your king; and if I, whom ye call your king, do labor to serve you, then ought not ye to labor to serve one another?

19. And behold also, if I, whom ye call your king, who has spent his days in your service, and yet has been in the service of God, do merit any thanks from you, O how you ought to thank your heavenly King! Mo 2-137

19. And they taught, and did minister one to another; and they had all things common among them, every man dealing justly, one with another. 3N 26-449

III. SECRET ORGANIZATIONS AND TRAITORS

(Communism, Fascism, Nazi-ism, and all other organizations whose aim is to break down freedom and liberty, and [or] to destroy the belief in God are warned against by the prophets of old. See Chapter V, Part III, Section VIII, and see Chapter XVI, Part I, Section III.)

1. *IN THE DAYS OF THE JAREDITES.* 2. And Jared rebelled against his father, and came and dwelt in the land of Heth. And it came to pass that he did flatter many people, because of his cunning words, until he had gained the half of the kingdom.

E 8-491

18. And it came to pass that they formed a secret combination, even as they of old; [Moroni II is the speaker.]

22. And whatsoever nation shall uphold such secret combinations, to get power and gain, until they shall spread over the nation, behold, they shall be destroyed; for the Lord will not suffer that the blood of his saints, which shall be shed by them, shall always cry unto him from the ground for vengeance upon them and yet he avenge them not.

23. Wherefore, O ye Gentiles, it is wisdom in God that these things should be shown unto you, that thereby ye may repent of your sins, and suffer not that these murderous combinations shall get above you, which are built up to get power and gain—and the work, yea, even the work of destruction come upon you, yea, even the sword of the justice of the Eternal God shall fall upon you, to your overthrow and destruction if ye shall suffer these things to be.

24. Wherefore, the Lord commandeth you, when ye shall see these things come among you that ye shall awake to a sense of your

awful situation, because of this secret combination which shall be among you;

25. For it cometh to pass that whoso buildeth it up seeketh to overthrow the freedom of all lands, nations, and countries; and it bringeth to pass the destruction of all people, for it is built up by the devil, who is the father of all lies;

E 8-492

2. *IN THE DAYS OF THE NEPHITES.* (*An example of how secret organizations caused the destruction of the government.*) (Indeed, "a house divided against itself cannot stand.") 5. And it came to pass that those---king-men---were desirous that the law should be altered in a manner to overthrow the free government---

6. And those---freemen---had sworn or covenanted to maintain their rights and privileges of their religion by a free government.

9. But behold, this was a critical time for such contentions to be among the people of Nephi; ---[for the Lamanites were] preparing for war with all diligence;

13. ---when the men who were called king-men had heard that the Lamanites were coming down to battle against them, they were glad in their hearts; and they refused to take up arms,

17. And it came to pass that Moroni [I] commanded that his army should go against those king-men

21. And thus Moroni put an end to the king-men,

22. Behold, it came to pass that while Moroni was thus breaking down the wars and contentions among his own people, the Lamanites had come into he land---

23. And it came to pass that the Nephites were not sufficiently strong---

A 51-324

16. Yea, had it not been for the war which broke out among ourselves; yea, were it not for these king-men, who caused so much bloodshed among ourselves; we should have dispersed our enemies,

17. But behold, now the Lamanites are coming upon us, taking possession of our lands, [etc.]

23. ---Now I would that ye should remember that God has said that the inward vessel shall be cleansed first, and then shall the outer vessel be cleansed also.

A 60-350

(*Force was sometimes necessary. Traitors were executed to maintain order.*) 9. ---[And] whosoever would not take up arms in the defense of their country, but would fight against it, were put to death.

10. And thus it became expedient that this law should be strictly observed for the safety of their country; yea, and whosoever was found denying their freedom was speedily executed according to the law.

A 62-354

8. ---behold, he [a traitor] was taken, and was tried according to the voice of the people, and condemned unto death; for he had raised up in rebellion and sought to destroy the liberty of the people.

H 1-360

(*A ruler was often to blame for the righteousness or the iniquity of his people!*) 17. For behold, how much iniquity doth one wicked king [or dictator] cause to be committed, yea, and what great destruction!

22. And behold, now I say unto you, ye cannot dethrone an iniquitous king [or dictator] save it be through much contention, and the shedding of much blood.

23. And he enacteth laws, ---after the manner of his own wickedness; and whosoever doth not obey his laws he causeth to be destroyed; and whosoever doth rebel against him he will send his armies against

31. For behold I say unto you, the sins of many people have been caused by the iniquities of their kings [or dictators]; therefore their iniquities are answered upon the heads of their kings [or dictators].

Mo 29-192



CHAPTER VII

*MILITARY CUSTOMS OF THE ANCIENT PEOPLE

The major portion of the content of the *Book of Mormon* deals with the wars between the Nephites and the Lamanites. In fact, many readers remember these wars and forget other more important occurrences. Indeed, a large part of the activity of the ancient Nephites was spent in erecting fortifications and in preparing for warfare with the Lamanites.

The Nephites were primarily a peace-loving people. There is no account of their sallying forth to invade enemy territory for the purpose of bloodshed or for material gain. (The exception comes in the last days of the Nephites when they had fallen into iniquity. "4. And it was because the armies of the Nephites went up unto the Lamanites that they began to be smitten; for were it not for that, the Lamanites could have had no power over them.")

On the other hand, the Lamanites were continually invading the Nephite lands for the desire of plunder, for the acquisition of new land, or for the purpose of conflict. It was, therefore, necessary for the Nephites to fortify against these enemies. (It is interesting to note that most of these invasions came from the south; and because of this, the Nephites were gradually pushed northward.)

The methods of warfare employed by the ancient peoples are interesting to follow. Their use of strategy and subterfuge was varied and picturesque. Of their many military leaders, Moroni I was the most outstanding of the army captains. The powerful leadership of this man adds interest and color to the story of the *Book of Mormon*. His name could well be listed with the names of other great generals in history who have become famous for their ability and conquests. (For more information concerning this great Nephite captain, see Chapter XV, Part II.)

*For key to reference symbols, see page 2.

PART I

MILITARY CUSTOMS OF THE NEPHITES

I. ORGANIZATION OF THE ARMY

1. *PERSONNEL OF THE ARMY.* 13. And thus they were prepared---And there were appointed captains, and higher captains, and chief captains, according to their numbers. A 2-199

9. ---and I also caused that all my old men that could bear arms, and also all my young men that were able to bear arms, should gather themselves together to go to battle against the Lamanites; and I did place them in their ranks, every man according to his age. Mo 10-154

19. Now it was the custom among all the Nephites to appoint for their chief captains, (save it were in their times of wickedness) some one that had the spirit of revelation and also prophecy; 3N 8-405

2. *IN TIMES OF CRISIS, WOMEN AND CHILDREN AIDED THE ARMY.* 7. And it came to pass that my people, with their wives and their children, did now behold the armies of the Lamanites marching towards them.

19. [Mormon is speaking] O ye fair sons and daughters, ye fathers and mothers, ye husbands and wives, ye fair ones, how is it ye could have fallen! Mn 7-470

15. [In the time of the Jaredites there is a record of women and children fighting.] ---they were all gathered together, every one to the army which he would, with their wives and their children---both men, and women and children being armed with weapons of war, having shields, and breast-plates, and head-plates, and being clothed after the manner of war--- E 16-508

3. *THE RULER OFTEN LED THE ARMY.* 13. ---But behold, king Benjamin gathered together his armies, and he did stand against them, and he did fight with the strength of his own arm, with the sword of Laban. WoMn 1-133

CHART 14

SOME OF THE CHIEF LEADERS OF THE NEPHITE ARMIES

Name	Approx. Date
King Benjamin - - - - -	200 B.C.
Gideon, under King Limhi - - - - -	130 B.C.
Alma II - - - - -	87 B.C.
Zoram - - - - -	81 B.C.
Lehi	
Aha	
Moroni I - - - - -	74-60 B.C.
Lehi	
Gid	
Antipus	
Teancum	
Helaman I	
Teomner	
Moronihah, son of Moroni I - - - - -	60 B.C.
Gidgiddoni - - - - -	17 A.D.
*Mormon - - - - -	327-385 A.D.
Archeantus	
Luram	
Emron	
Zenephi	
Moroni II, son of Mormon	
Lamha	
Gidgiddonah	
Gilgal	
Limhah	
Joneam	
Camemihah	
Moronihah	
Antionum	
Shiblom	
Shem	
Josh	

*(Each captain under Mormon was responsible for 10,000 men. The numerical titles are the authors.)

16. Now Alma, being the chief judge and the governor of the people of Nephi, therefore he went up with his people, yea, with his captains, and chief captains, yea, at the head of his armies, against the Amlicites to battle. A 2-199

4. *SUPPORT OF THE ARMY.* 24. And now behold, this will we do unto our brethren, that they may inherit the land Jershon; and we will guard them from their enemies with our armies, on condition that they will give us a portion of their substance to assist us that we may maintain our armies. A 27-265

II. GOD SUSTAINED HIS PEOPLE IN WAR

1. *NEPHITES PRAYED FOR ASSISTANCE.* 17. Yea, in the strength of the Lord did we go forth to battle against the Lamanites; for I and my people did cry mightily to the Lord that he would deliver us out of the hands of our enemies, for we were awakened to a remembrance of the deliverance of our fathers.

18. And God did hear our cries and did answer our prayers; and we did go forth in his might; yea, we did go forth against the Lamanites, and in one day and a night we did slay three thousand and forty-three; we did slay them even until we had driven them out of our land. Mo 9-153

14. And in the strength of the Lord they did contend against their enemies, Mn 1-133

25. Wherefore, the people of Nephi did fortify against them with their armies, and with all their might, trusting in God and rock of their salvation; wherefore, they became as yet, conquerors of their enemies. J 7-125

31. But behold, the Nephites were not slow to remember the Lord their God in this their time of affliction. A 55-337

29. [An example of a personal combat] and it came to pass that Alma fought with Amlici with the sword, face to face; and they did contend mightily, one with another.

30. And it came to pass that Alma, being a man of God, being exercised with much faith, cried, saying: O Lord, have mercy and spare my life, that I may be an instrument in thy hands to save and preserve this people.

31. Now when Alma had said these words he contended again with Amlici; and he was strengthened, insomuch that he slew Amlici with the sword. A 2-200

23. [The captain of the army depends upon the Lord for help.] ---and Moroni, also, knowing of the prophecies of Alma, sent certain men unto him, desiring him that he should inquire of the Lord whither the armies of the Nephites should go to defend themselves against the Lamanites.

24. And it came to pass that the word of the Lord came unto Alma, and Alma informed the messengers of Moroni, that the armies of the Lamanites were marching round about in the wilderness, that they might come over into the land of Manti, that they might commence an attack upon the weaker part of the people. And those messengers went and delivered the message unto Moroni.

A 43-302

5. [A conversation between the chief captain of the Nephites and chief captain of the Lamanites.] And now, Zerahemnah [the Lamanite], I command you, in the name of that all-powerful God, who has strengthened our arms that we have gained power over you, by our faith, by our religion, and by our rites of worship, and by our church, and by the sacred support which we owe to our wives and our children, by that liberty which binds us to our lands and our country; yea, and also by the maintenance of the sacred word of God, to which we owe all our happiness; and by all that is most dear unto us—

6. ---that ye deliver up your weapons of war unto us, and we will seek not your blood, but we will spare your lives, if ye will go your way and come not again to war against us.

9. [Zerahemnah answers] Behold, we are not of your faith; we do not believe that it is God that has delivered us into your hands; but we believe that it is your cunning that has preserved you from our swords. Behold, it is your breast plates and your shields that have preserved you.

A 44-305

27. And there were some [among the Lamanites] ---who said ---that it was the Great Spirit that had always attended the Nephites, who had ever delivered them [the Nephites] out of their hands; and they said that it was this Great Spirit who had destroyed so many of their brethren, the Lamanites.

A 19-246

30. [After a successful encounter, the Nephites rejoice.] And they did rejoice and cry again with one voice, saying: May the God of Abraham, and the God of Isaac, and the God of Jacob, protect this people in righteousness, so long as they shall call on the name of their God for protection.

31. And it came to pass that they did break forth, all as one, in singing, and praising their God for the great thing which he had done for them, in preserving them from falling into the hands of their enemies.

33. ---and they knew it was because of their repentance and their humility that they had been delivered from everlasting destruction.

3N 5-408

2. [During the last days of the Nephites, Mormon finds the people have forgotten their God, and he knows therefore, that God will no longer protect them.] But behold, I was without hope, for I knew the judgments of the Lord which should come upon them; for they repented not of their iniquities, but did struggle for their lives without calling upon that Being who created them.

Mn 5-467

2. *THE LAMANITES RE-INFORCED THEIR COURAGE WITH WINE.*

10. But Laman said unto them: Let us keep of our wine till we go against the Nephites to battle. But this saying only made them more desirous to drink of the wine;

11. For, said they: We are weary, therefore let us take of the wine for our rations, which will strengthen us to go against the Nephites.

A 55-335

III. PREPAREDNESS FOR WAR

1. *THE NEPHITES USED A SYSTEM OF DEFENSE NOT ONE OF OFFENSE.* 46. ---for the Lord had said unto them, and also unto their fathers, that: Inasmuch as ye are not guilty of the first offense, neither the second, ye shall not suffer yourselves to be slain by the hands of your enemies.

47. And again, the Lord has said that: Ye shall defend your families even unto bloodshed. Therefore for this cause were the Nephites contending with the Lamanites, to defend themselves, and their families, and their lands, their country, and their rights and their religion.

A 48-304

14. Now the Nephites were taught to defend themselves against their enemies, even to the shedding of blood if it were necessary; yea, and they were also taught never to give an offense, yea, and never to raise the sword except it were against an enemy, except it were to preserve their lives.

15. And this was their faith, that by so doing God would prosper them in the land, or in other words, if they were faithful in keeping the commandments of God that he would prosper them in the land; yea, warn them to flee, or to prepare for war, according to their danger;

16. And also, that God would make it known unto them whither they should go to defend themselves against their enemies, and by so doing, the Lord would deliver them;

A 48-317

2. *BE PREPARED! BE VIGILANT! THESE WERE THE WATCH-WORDS OF THE NEPHITES.* 11. Behold, could ye suppose that ye could sit upon your thrones [or in your homes], and because of the exceeding goodness of God ye could do nothing and he would deliver you? Behold, if ye have supposed this ye have supposed in vain. A 60-349

3. *FORTIFICATIONS.* (*See Chapter XI, Part II, Section I.*)

8. Yea, he [Moroni I] had been strengthening the armies of the Nephites, and erecting small forts, or places of resort; throwing up banks of earth round about to enclose his armies, and also building walls of stone to encircle them about, round about their cities and the borders of their lands; yea, all round about the land.

9. And in their weakest fortifications he did place the greater number of men; and thus he did fortify and strengthen the land which was possessed by the Nephites. A 48-316

1. ---Moroni did not stop making preparations for war, ---to defend his people against the Lamanites; for he caused that his armies should commence---digging up heaps of earth round about all the cities, throughout all the land which was possessed by the Nephites.

2. And upon the top of these ridges of earth he caused that there should be timbers, yea, works of timbers built up to the height of a man, round about the cities.

3. And he caused that upon those works of timbers there should be a frame of pickets built upon the timbers round about; and these were strong and high.

4. And he caused towers to be erected that overlooked those works of pickets, and he caused places of security to be built upon those towers, that the stones and the arrows of the Lamanites could not hurt them.

5. And they were prepared that they could cast stones from the top thereof, according to their pleasure and their strength, and slay him who should attempt to approach near the walls of the city.

6. Thus Moroni did prepare strongholds against the coming of their enemies, round about every city in all the land. A 50-321

4. [The Lamanites are astonished at the Nephite fortifications.] ---the Lamanites could not cast their stones and their arrows at them that they might take effect, neither could they come upon them save it was by their place of entrance. A 49-318

12. [The movement of troops to defend the land.] ---Moroni immediately caused that provisions should be sent, and also an army of six thousand men should be sent unto Helaman, to assist him in preserving that part of the land.

13. And he also caused that an army of six thousand men, with a sufficient quantity of food, should be sent to the armies of Lehi and Teancum. And it came to pass that this was done to fortify the land against the Lamanites.

14. And it came to pass that Moroni and Pahoran, leaving a large body of men in the land of Zarahemla, took their march with a large body of men towards the land of Nephihah, being determined to overthrow the Lamanites in that city. A 62-354

4. **WEAPONS AND ARMOR.** (*See Chapter XI, Part I, Section IV.*) 18. But behold, their [the Lamanites] naked skins and their bare heads were exposed to the sharp swords of the Nephites; yea, behold they were pierced and smitten, yea, and did fall exceedingly fast before the swords of the Nephites; A 44-307

38. While on the other hand, there was now and then a man fell among the Nephites, ---the more vital parts of the body being shielded from the strokes of the Lamanites, by their breast-plates, and their arm-shields, and their head-plates; A 43-303

8. ---[The Nephites made] all manner of---weapons of war---yea, the sharp pointed arrow, and the quiver, and the dart, and the javelin, Jm 1-128

14. [Later, the Lamanites copy the Nephite armor.] And it came to pass in the forty and first year of the reign of the judges, that the Lamanites had gathered together an innumerable army of men, and armed them with swords, and with cimeters and with bows, and with arrows, and with head-plates, and with breast-plates, and with all manner of shields of every kind. A 1-360

IV. THE USE OF STRATEGY IN WARFARE

1. **SPIES.** 21. And Alma sent spies to follow the remnant of the Amlicites, that he might know of their plans and their plots, whereby he might guard himself against them, that he might preserve his people from being destroyed. A 2-199

23. But it came to pass, as soon as they had departed into the wilderness Moroni sent spies into the wilderness to watch their camp; A 43-302

20. And it came to pass that when the Lamanites had passed by, or when the army had passed by, Gid and Teomner did rise up from their secret places, and did cut off the spies of the Lamanites that they should not return to the city. A 58-346

22. And it came to pass that we kept spies out round about, to watch the movements of the Lamanites, that they might not pass us by night nor by day---
A 56-338

30. ---And it came to pass that we did meet the spies of our armies, who had been sent out to watch the camp of the Lamanites.
A 57-344

35. And it came to pass that when they [the Lamanites] had been informed by their spies, they came forth with their army and marched against us.
A 56-339

2. *USE OF POISON IN WARFARE.* 30. And many times did they [the Lamanites] attempt to administer of their wine to the Nephites, that they might destroy them with poison or with drunkenness.

31. But behold, the Nephites---could not be taken in their snares; yea, they would not partake of their wine, save they had first given [it] to some of the Lamanite prisoners.

32. And they were thus cautious that no poison should be administered them; for if their wine would poison a Lamanite it would also poison a Nephite; and thus they did try all their liquors.
A 55-337

13. [The Nephites send one of their members who is a Lamanite, and others to the Lamanite guards with prepared wine.] And it came to pass that they [the Lamanite guards] did take of the wine freely; and it was pleasant to their taste, therefore they took of it more freely; and it was strong, having been prepared in its strength.

14. And it came to pass they did drink and were merry, and by and by they were all drunken.

15. And now when [the Nephites]---saw that they were all drunken, and were in a deep sleep, they returned to Moroni and told him all the things that had happened.

16. ---And Moroni had prepared his men with weapons of war; and he sent to the city Gid, while the Lamanites were in a deep sleep and drunken, and cast in weapons of war unto the prisoners [who were Nephies], insomuch that they were all armed; A 55-335

3. *FIVE EXAMPLES OF STRATEGY AND SUBTERFUGE.*
(*These acts took place under the direction of Moroni I, the great chief captain of the Nephites.*)

EXAMPLE I. (How the Nephites re-captured the city of Mulek.)

17. And it came to pass that Teancum [one of Moroni's captains] made preparations to make an attack upon the city of Mulek, and

march forth with his army against the Lamanites; but he saw that it was impossible that he could overpower them while they were in their fortifications; therefore he abandoned his designs and returned again to the city Bountiful, to wait for the coming of Moroni, that he might receive strength to his army.

18. And it came to pass that Moroni did arrive with his army

19. ---Moroni and Teancum and many of the chief captains held a council of war—what they should do to cause the Lamanites to come out against them to battle; or that they might by some means flatter them out of their strongholds, that they might gain advantage over them and take again the city of Mulek.

22. Therefore he [Moroni] caused that Teancum should take a small number of men and march down near the seashore; and Moroni and his army, by night, marched in the wilderness, on the west of the city Mulek; and thus, on the morrow, when the guards of the Lamanites had discovered Teancum, they ran and told it unto Jacob, their leader.

23. And it came to pass that the armies of the Lamanites did march forth against Teancum, supposing by their numbers to overpower Teancum because of the smallness of his numbers. And as Teancum saw the armies of the Lamanites coming out against him he began to retreat down by the seashore, northward.

24. And it came to pass that when the Lamanites saw that he began to flee, they took courage and pursued them with vigor. And while Teancum was thus leading away the Lamanites who were pursuing them in vain, behold, Moroni commanded that a part of his army who were with him should march forth into the city, and take possession of it.

25. And thus they did, and slew all those who had been left to protect the city, yea, all those who would not yield up their weapons of war.

26. And thus Moroni had obtained possession of the city of Mulek.

A 52-829

EXAMPLE II. (How the Nephites took the city of Antiparah, and returned it to the people of the Nephites.)

29. And the Lamanites, thus, seeing our forces increase daily, and provisions arrive for our support, they began to be fearful, and began to sally forth, if it were possible to put an end to our receiving provisions and strength.

30. Now when we saw that the Lamanites began to grow uneasy on this wise, we were desirous to bring a stratagem into effect upon them; therefore Antipus ordered that I should march forth with my little sons [the sons of the people of Ammon] to a neighboring city, as if we were carrying provisions to a neighboring city.

31. And we were to march near the city of Antiparah, as if we were going to the city beyond, in the borders by the seashore.

32. And it came to pass that we did march forth.

33. And it came to pass that Antipus did march forth with a part of his army [Antipus—another captain under Moroni], leaving the remainder to maintain the city [where they were stationed]. But he did not march forth until I had gone forth with my little army, and came near the city Antiparah.

34. And now, in the city Antiparah were stationed the strongest army of the Lamanites; yea, the most numerous.

35. And it came to pass that when they had been informed by their spies, they came forth with their army and marched against us.

36. And it came to pass that we did flee before them, northward. And thus we did lead away the most powerful army of the Lamanites;

37. Yea, even to a considerable distance, insomuch that when they saw the army of Antipus pursuing them, with their might, they did not turn to the right nor to the left, but pursued their march in a straight course after us; and, as we suppose, it was their intent to slay us before Antipus should overtake them, and this that they might not be surrounded by our people.

38. And now Antipus, beholding our danger, did speed the march of his army. But behold, it was night; therefore they did not overtake us, neither did Antipus overtake them; therefore we did camp for the night.

39. And it came to pass that before the dawn of the morning, behold the Lamanites were pursuing us. Now we were not sufficiently strong to contend with them; yea, I would not suffer that my little sons should fall into their hands; therefore we did continue our march,

40. Now they durst not turn to the right nor to the left lest they should be surrounded; neither would I turn to the right nor to the left lest they should overtake me, ---and thus we did flee all that day into the wilderness, even until it was dark.

41. And it came to pass that again, when the light of the morning came we saw the Lamanites upon us, and we did flee before them.

42. But it came to pass that they did not pursue us far before they halted;

43. And now, whether they were overtaken by Antipus we knew not, but I said unto my men: Behold, we know not but they have halted for the purpose that we should come against them, that they might catch us in their snare;

44. Therefore what say ye, my sons, will ye go against them to battle?

49. And it came to pass that I did return with my two thousand against these Lamanites who had pursued us. And now behold, the armies of Antipus had overtaken them, and a terrible battle had commenced.

50. The army of Antipus being weary, because of their long march in so short a space of time, were about to fall into the hands of the Lamanites; and had I not returned with my two thousand they would have obtained their purpose.

51. ---Antipus had fallen by the sword, and many of his leaders, because of their weariness, which was occasioned by the speed of their march—therefore the men of Antipus, being confused because of the fall of their leaders, began to give way before the Lamanites.

52. And it came to pass that the Lamanites took courage, and began to pursue them; and thus were the Lamanites pursuing them with great vigor when Helaman came upon their rear with his two thousand, and began to slay them exceedingly, insomuch that the whole army of the Lamanites halted and turned upon Helaman.

53. Now when the people of Antipus saw that the Lamanites had turned them about, they gathered together their men and came again upon the rear of the Lamanites.

54. And now it came to pass that we, the people of Nephi, the people of Antipus, and I with my two thousand, did surround the Lamanites, and did slay them; yea, insomuch that they were compelled to deliver up their weapons of war and also themselves as prisoners of war.

A 56-339

EXAMPLE III. (How the city of Cumeni was re-captured for the Nephites.) 7. And it came to pass that it was our desire to wage a battle with the army which was placed to protect the city of Cumeni.

9. And it came to pass that we did camp round about the city for many nights; but we did sleep upon our swords, and keep guards, that the Lamanites could not come upon us by night and slay us, which they attempted many times; but as many times as they attempted this their blood was spilt.

10. At length their provisions did arrive, and they were about to enter the city by night. And we, instead of being Lamanites, were Nephites; therefore, we did take them and their provisions.

11. And notwithstanding the Lamanites being cut off from their support after this manner, they were still determined to maintain the city; therefore it became expedient that we should take those provisions and send them to Judea, and our prisoners to the land of Zarahemla.

12. And it came to pass that not many days had passed away before the Lamanites began to lose all hopes of succor; therefore they yielded up the city unto our hands; and thus we had accomplished our designs in obtaining the city Cumeni. A 57-842

EXAMPLE IV. (How the Nephites succeeded in recapturing the city of Manti.

1. And behold, now it came to pass that our next object was to obtain the city of Manti; but behold, there was no way that we could lead them out of the city by our small bands. For behold, they remembered that which we had hitherto done; therefore we could not decoy them away from their strongholds.

2. And they were so much more numerous than was our army that we durst not go forth and attack them in their strongholds. A 58-844

13. And thus we did go forth with all our might against the Lamanites, who were in the city of Manti; and we did pitch our tents by the wilderness side, which was near to the city.

16. And when we saw that they were making preparations to come out against us, behold, I caused that Gid, with a small number of men, should secrete himself in the wilderness, and also that Teomner and a small number of men should secrete themselves also in the wilderness.

20. And it came to pass that when the Lamanites had passed by, Gid and Teomner did rise up from their secret places, and did cut off the spies of the Lamanites that they should not return to the city.

21. And it came to pass that when they had cut them off, they ran to the city and fell upon the guards who were left to guard the city, insomuch that they did destroy them and did take possession of the city.

26. Now it came to pass that when it was night, I caused that my men should not sleep, but that they should march forward by another way towards the land of Manti.

27. And because of this our march in the night-time, behold, on the morrow we were beyond the Lamanites, insomuch that we did arrive before them at the city of Manti.

28. And thus it came to pass, that by this stratagem we did take possession of the city of Manti without the shedding of blood. A 58-845

EXAMPLE V. (How the Nephites regained the city of Nephihah.)

20. And when the night came, Moroni went forth in the darkness of the night, and came upon the top of the wall to spy out in what part of the city the Lamanites did camp with their army.

21. And it came to pass that they were on the east, by the entrance; and they were all asleep. And now Moroni returned to his army, and caused that they should prepare in haste strong cords

and ladders, to be let down from the top of the wall into the inner part of the wall.

22. And it came to pass that Moroni caused that his men should march forth and come upon the top of the wall, and let themselves down into that part of the city, yea, even on the west, where the Lamanites did not camp with their armies.

23. And it came to pass that they were all let down into the city by night, by the means of their strong cords and their ladders; thus when the morning came they were all within the walls of the city.

24. And now, when the Lamanites awoke and saw that the armies of Moroni were within the walls, they were affrighted exceedingly, insomuch that they did flee out by the pass. A 62-355

4. WEAKENING ENEMY RESISTANCE, BY PLAYING ENEMY AGAINST ENEMY. (*The conquering Spaniards used the same system to overcome native resistance.*) 6. And now, as the Amalekites were of a more wicked and murderous disposition than the Lamanites were, in and of themselves, therefore Zerahemnah appointed chief captains over the Lamanites, and they were all Amalekites and Zoramites. [The Amalekites and Zoramites were Nephite dissenters.]

7. Now this he did that he might preserve their hatred towards the Nephites, that he might bring them into subjection to the accomplishment of his designs.

8. For behold, his designs were to stir up the Lamanites to anger against the Nephites; this he did that he might usurp great power over them, and also that he might gain power over the Nephites by bringing them into bondage. A 43-301

V. CASUALTIES OF WARFARE

1. NUMBER KILLED IN THE JAREDITE'S LAST BATTLE.

22. And so swift and speedy was the war that there was none left to bury the dead, but they did march forth from the shedding of blood to the shedding of blood, leaving the bodies of both men, women, and children strewed upon the face of the land, to become a prey to the worms of the flesh.

23. And the scent thereof went forth upon the face of the land, even upon all the face of the land; wherefore the people became troubled by day and by night, because of the scent thereof.

2. He [Coriantumr] saw that there had been slain by the sword already nearly two millions of his people, and he began to sorrow in his heart; E 15-506

2. NUMBER KILLED IN NEPHITE AND LAMANITE ENCOUNTERS. 18. ---yea, we did go forth against the Lamanites, and in one day and a night we did slay three thousand and forty-three;

19. And I, myself, with mine own hands, did help to bury their dead. And behold, to our great sorrow and lamentation, two hundred and seventy-nine of our brethren were slain. Mo 9-153

19. And it came to pass that the Nephites did pursue the Amlicites---and did slay them with much slaughter, insomuch that there were slain of the Amlicites twelve thousand five hundred thirty and two souls; and there were slain of the Nephites six thousand five hundred sixty and two souls. A 2-199

1. And it came to pass that the Nephites who were not slain by the weapons of war, ---now the number of the slain were not numbered, because of the greatness of their number---

2. Now many women and children had been slain with the sword, and also many of their flocks and their herds; and also many of their fields of grain were destroyed, for they were trodden down by the hosts of men. A 3-201

26. And in one year were thousands and tens of thousands of souls sent to the eternal world, that they might reap their rewards according to their works, A 3-202

2. And thus there was a tremendous battle; yea, even such an one as has never had been known among all the people in the land from the time Lehi left Jerusalem; yea, and tens of thousands of the Lamanites were slain and scattered abroad.

3. Yea, and also there was a tremendous slaughter among the people of Nephi; A 28-266

10. And from the first year to the fifteenth has brought to pass the destruction of many thousand lives; yea, it has brought to pass an awful scene of bloodshed.

11. And the bodies of many thousands are laid low in the earth, while the bodies of many thousands are moldering in heaps upon the face of the earth; A 29-267

3. NUMBER KILLED IN THE NEPHITE'S LAST BATTLE.

7. And it came to pass that my people, with their wives and their children, did now behold the armies of the Lamanites marching towards them; and with that awful fear of death which fills the breasts of all the wicked, did they await to receive them.

8. And it came to pass that they came to battle against us, and every soul was filled with terror because of the greatness of their numbers.

9. And it came to pass that they did fall upon my people with the sword, and with the bow, and with the arrow, and with the ax, and with all manner of weapons of war.

10. And it came to pass that my men were hewn down, yea, even my ten thousand who were with me, and I fell wounded in the midst; and they passed by me that they did not put an end of my life.

12. And we also beheld the ten thousand of my people who were led by my son Moroni [had fallen].

13. And behold, the ten thousand of Gidgiddonah had fallen, and he also in the midst.

14. And Lamah had fallen with his ten thousand; and Gilgal had fallen with his ten thousand; and Limhah had fallen with his ten thousand; and Joneam had fallen with his ten thousand; and Camenihah, and Moronihah, and Antionum, and Shiblom, and Shem, and Josh, had fallen with their ten thousand each.

15. And it came to pass that there were ten more who did fall by the sword, with their ten thousand each; yea, even all my people, save it were those twenty and four who were with me, and also a few who had escaped into the south countries---and their flesh, and bones, and blood lay upon the face of the earth---to crumble and to return to their mother earth.

M 6-470

VI. SURRENDER AND TREATY

1. *THE NEPHITES DEMANDED A COVENANT OF PEACE FROM THEIR CONQUERED PEOPLES.* (See "*Religious Persecution*," Chapter XIV, Part IV.) 37. Now Moroni seeing their confusion, said unto them: If ye will bring forth your weapons of war and deliver them up, behold we will forbear shedding your blood.

38. And it came to pass that---the Lamanites---came forth and threw down their weapons of war at the feet of Moroni, A 52-330

6. [Nephite captain talking to Lamanite captain] Yea, and this is not all; I command you---that ye deliver up your weapons of war unto us,

11. ---as the Lord liveth, ye will not depart except ye depart with an oath that ye will not return again against us to war

A 44-305

14. Even as this *scalp* has fallen to the earth, which is the *scalp* of your chief, so shall ye fall to the earth except ye will deliver up your weapons of war and depart with a covenant of peace.

20. And it came to pass that Moroni caused that the work of death should cease again among the people. And he took the weapons of war from the Lamanites; and after they had entered into a covenant with him of peace they were suffered to depart into the wilderness.

A 44-306

2. THE LAMANITES DEMANDED TRIBUTE FROM THE CONQUERED PEOPLES.

15. Therefore the Lamanites did spare their lives, and took them captives and carried them back to the land of Nephi, and granted unto them that they might possess the land, under the condition that they would deliver up their property, even one half of all they possessed, one half of their gold, and their silver, and all their precious things, and thus they should pay tribute to the king of the Lamanites from year to year.

Mo 19-171

7. [And the Nephites] go according to thy command and pay the last tribute of wine to the Lamanites.

Mo 22-177

3. LAND SETTLEMENTS WERE MADE BETWEEN THE NEPHITES AND LAMANITES BY TREATY. (*The following example is the great treaty of 350 A.D.*)

29. And the Lamanites did give unto us the land northward, yea, even to the narrow passage which led into the land southward. And we did give unto the Lamanites all the land southward.

Mn 2-463

VII. PRISONERS OF WAR AND THEIR TREATMENT

1. NEPHITE PRISONERS. (*The Nephites took many prisoners.*)

40. And now the number of prisoners who were taken exceeded more than the number of those who had been slain, yea, more than those who had been slain on both sides.

A 52-330

8. And Moroni also sent orders unto him that he should retain all the prisoners who fell into his hands; for as the Lamanites had taken many prisoners, that he should retain all the prisoners of the Lamanites as a ransom for those whom the Lamanites had taken.

A 52-328

25. And it came to pass that he did cause the Lamanites whom he had taken prisoners, that they should commence a labor in strengthening the fortifications round about the city Gid.

A 55-336

(*An interesting episode concerning a Nephite experience with prisoners.*) 13. But it came to pass that our prisoners were so numerous that, notwithstanding the enormity of our numbers, we

were obliged to employ all our force to keep them, or to put them to death.

14. For behold, they would break out in great numbers, and would fight with stones, and with clubs, or whatsoever thing they could get into their hands, insomuch that we did slay upwards of two thousand of them after they had surrendered themselves prisoners of war.

15. Therefore it became expedient for us, that we should put an end to their lives, or guard them, sword in hand, down to the land of Zarahemla; and also our provisions were not any more than sufficient for our own people, notwithstanding that which we had taken from the Lamanites.

30. ---[The Nephites explain the loss of their prisoners.] And it came to pass that we did meet the spies of our armies, who had been sent out to watch the camp of the Lamanites.

31. And they cried unto us, saying—Behold, the armies of the Lamanites are marching towards the city of Cumeni; and behold, they will fall upon them, yea, and will destroy our people.

32. And it came to pass that our prisoners did hear their cries, which caused them to take courage; and they did rise up in rebellion against us.

33. And it came to pass because of their rebellion we did cause that our swords should come upon them. And it came to pass that they did in a body run upon our swords, in the which, the greater number of them were slain; and the remainder of them broke through and fled from us.

A 57-342

(The Nephites attempted to convert their prisoners to their religion.)

4. And now it came to pass that when they had taken all the robbers prisoners, insomuch that none did escape who were not slain, they did cast their prisoners into prison, and did cause the word of God to be preached unto them; and as many as would repent of their sins and enter into a covenant that they would murder no more were set at liberty.

3N 5-409

(During the "Last Days" of the Nephites, when they had fallen into iniquity, the Nephites treated their prisoners with depravity.)

9. And notwithstanding this great abomination of the Lamanites, it doth not exceed that of our people in Moriantum [Nephites]. For behold, many of the daughters of the Lamanites have been taken prisoners; and after depriving them of that which was most dear and precious above all things, which is chastity and virtue—

10. And after they had done this thing, they did murder them in a most cruel manner, torturing their bodies even unto death; and after they have done this, they devour their flesh like unto wild beasts, because of the hardness of their hearts; and they do it for a token of bravery.

11. O my beloved son, how can a people like this, that are without civilization—

12. (And only a few years have passed away, and they were a civil and a delightsome people) M 9-518

2. **LANANITE PRISONERS.** (*Lamanites took women and children.*) 3. Now the Lamanites had taken many women and children, and there was not a woman nor a child among all the prisoners of ---[the Nephites], or the prisoners whom---[the Nephites] had taken; A 54-333

12. And the Lamanites had also retained many prisoners, all of whom are chief captains, for none other have they spared alive. And we suppose that they are now at this time in the land of Nephi; it is so if they are not slain. A 56-338

20. ---the Lamanites took him [Ammon] and bound him, as was their custom to bind all the Nephites who fell into their hands, and carry them before the king; and thus it was left to the pleasure of the king to slay them, or to retain them in captivity, or to cast them into prison, or to cast them out of his land, according to his will and pleasure. A 17-238

(*In the last days of the Book of Mormon story, the Lamanites practiced HUMAN SACRIFICE.*) 14. And they did also march forward against the city Teancum, and did drive the inhabitants forth out of her, and did take many prisoners both women and children, and did offer them up as sacrifices unto their idol gods. Mn 4-466

7. And now I write somewhat concerning the sufferings of this people. For according to the knowledge which I have received from Amoron, behold, the Lamanites have many prisoners, which they took from the tower of Sherrizah; and there were men, women, and children.

8. And the husbands and fathers of those women and children they have slain; and they feed the women upon the flesh of their husbands, and the children upon the flesh of their fathers; and no water, save a little, do they give unto them. M 9-518

3. **EXCHANGE OF PRISONERS.** 1. And now it came to pass in the twenty and ninth year of the judges, that Ammoron [the Lamanite] sent unto Moroni [the Nephite] desiring that he would exchange prisoners.

2. And it came to pass that Moroni felt to rejoice exceedingly at this request, for he desired the provisions which were imparted for the support of the Lamanite prisoners for the support of his own

people; and he also desired his own people for the strengthening of his army.

3. Now the Lamanites had taken many women and children,

11. [Moroni sends a communication to the Lamanite captain.]
---therefore I will close my epistle by telling you that I will not exchange prisoners, save it be on conditions that ye will deliver up a man and his wife and his children, for one prisoner; if this be the case that ye will do it, I will exchange.

A 54-333

VIII. CEREMONIES OF TRIUMPH AND DEFEAT AMONG THE NEPHITES

30. And they did rejoice and cry again with one voice, saying: May the God of Abraham, and the God of Isaac, and the God of Jacob, protect this people in righteousness, so long as they shall call on the name of their God for protection.

33. And their hearts were swollen with joy, unto the gushing out of many tears, because of the great goodness of God in delivering them out of the hands of their enemies;

3N 5-408

5. Yea, the cry of widows mourning for their husbands, and also of fathers mourning for their sons, and the daughters for the brother, yea, the brother for the father; and thus the cry of mourning was heard among all of them, mourning for their kindred who had been slain.

A 28-266

PART II

THE LAST GREAT WAR BETWEEN THE NEPHITES AND THE LAMANITES

(An example of an encounter in warfare)

11. And it is impossible for the tongue to describe, or for man to write a perfect description of the horrible scene of the blood and carnage which was among the people, both of the Nephites and of the Lamanites; and every heart was hardened, so that they delighted in the shedding of blood continually.

12. And there never had been so great wickedness among all the children of Lehi, nor even among all the house of Israel, according to the words of the Lord, as was among this people. Mn 4-466

8. And it came to pass in this year there began to be a war between the Nephites, who consisted of the Nephites, and the Jacobites, and the Josephites and the Zoramites; and this war was between the Nephites, and the Lamanites and the Lemuelites and the Ishmaelites.

10. And it came to pass that the war began to be among them in the borders of Zarahemla, by the waters of Sidon.

11. And it came to pass that the Nephites had gathered together a great number of men, even to exceed the number of thirty thousand. Mn 1-460

1. And it came to pass in that same year there began to be a war again between the Nephites and the Lamanites. And notwithstanding I [Mormon] being young, was large in stature; therefore the people of Nephi appointed me that I should be their leader, or the leader of their armies.

3. And it came to pass that in the three hundred and twenty and seventh year [from the birth of Christ] the Lamanites did come upon us with exceeding great power, insomuch that they did frighten my armies; therefore they would not fight, and they began to retreat towards the north countries.

4. And it came to pass that we did come to the city of Angola, and we did take possession of the city, and make preparations to defend ourselves against the Lamanites. ---but notwithstanding all our fortifications the Lamanites did come upon us and did drive us out of the city.

5. And they did also drive us forth out of the land of David.

15. And it came to pass that my sorrow did return unto me again, and I saw that the day of grace was passed with them, both

temporally and spiritually; for I saw thousands of them hewn down in open rebellion against their God, and heaped up as dung upon the face of the land.

16. And it came to pass that in the three hundred and forty and fifth year the Nephites did begin to flee before the Lamanites; and they were pursued until they came even to the land of Jashon, before it was possible to stop them in their retreat. Mn 2-461

20. And it came to pass that in this year the people of Nephi again were hunted and driven. And it came to pass that we were driven forth until we had come northward to the land which was called Shem.

21. And it came to pass that we did fortify the city of Shem.

25. And it came to pass that we did contend with an army of thirty thousand against an army of fifty thousand.

27. ---But behold, we did go forth against the Lamanites and the robbers of Gadianon, until we had again taken possession of the lands of our inheritance.

28. ---we made a treaty with the Lamanites---in the which we did get the lands of our inheritance divided.

29. And the Lamanites did give unto us the land northward, yea, even to the narrow passage which led into the land southward. Mn 2-463

5. And it came to pass that I did cause my people that they should gather themselves together at the land Desolation,

6. And there we did place our armies, that we might stop the armies of the Lamanites,

8. And in the three hundred and sixty and second year they did come down again to battle. And we did beat them again, Mn 3-464

1. ---the Nephites did go up with their armies to battle---

2. And it came to pass that the armies of the Nephites were driven back again to the land of Desolation. ---a fresh army of the Lamanites did come upon them; ---[and] did take possession of the city Desolation, and did slay many of the Nephites, and did take many prisoners.

8. ---and they [the Nephites] went forth in their own might, and took possession again of the city Desolation.

10. ---and the Lamanites came again upon the Nephites to battle; Mn 4-465

13. And it came to pass that the Lamanites did take possession of the city Desolation,

14. And they did also march forward against the city Teancum, and did drive the inhabitants forth out of her, and did take many

prisoners both women and children, and did offer them up as sacrifices unto their idol gods.

18. And from this time forth did the Nephites gain no power over the Lamanites, but began to be swept off by them even as a dew before the sun.

20. And they [the Nephites] fled again from before them, and they came to the city Boaz; and there they did stand against the Lamanites---

21. And when they had come the second time, the Nephites were driven and slaughtered with an exceedingly great slaughter; their women and their children were again sacrificed unto idols.

22. And it came to pass that the Nephites did again flee from before them, taking all the inhabitants with them, both in towns and villages---

Mn 4-466

5. But it came to pass that whatsoever lands we had passed by, and the inhabitants were not gathered in, were destroyed by the Lamanites, and their towns, and villages, and cities were burned with fire;

6. And it came to pass that in the three hundred and eightieth year the Lamanites did come again against us to battle, and we did stand against them boldly; but it was all in vain, for so great were their numbers that they did tread the people of the Nephites under their feet.

7. And it came to pass that we did again take to flight, and those whose flight was swifter than the Lamanites did escape,

Mn 5-467

5. And when three hundred and eighty and four years had passed away, we had gathered in all the remainder of our people unto the land Cumorah.

7. And it came to pass that my people, with their wives and their children, did now behold the armies of the Lamanites marching towards them; and with that awful fear of death which fills the breasts of all the wicked, did they await to receive them.

9. And it came to pass that they did fall upon my people

10. And it came to pass that my men were hewn down, ---

11. ---ten thousand of my people who were hewn down, being led in front by me.

12. And we also beheld the ten thousand of my people who were led by my son Moroni.

13. And behold, the ten thousand of Gidgiddonah had fallen, and he also in the midst.

14. And Lamah had fallen with his ten thousand; and Gilgal had fallen with his ten thousand; and Limhah had fallen with his

ten thousand; and Joneam had fallen with his ten thousand; and Camenihah, and Moronihah, and Antionum, and Shiblom, and Shem, and Josh, had fallen with their ten thousand each.

15. And it came to pass that there were ten more who did fall by the sword, with their ten thousand each; yea, even all my people, save it were those twenty and four who were with me, Mn 6-469

2. And now it came to pass that after the great and tremendous battle of Cumorah, behold, the Nephites who had escaped into the country southward were hunted by the Lamanites, until they were all destroyed.

3. ---and I even remain alone to write the sad tale of the destruction of my people. Mn 8-472

10. And behold, this I speak unto their seed, and also to the Gentiles who have care for the house of Israel, that realize and know from whence their blessings come.

11. For I know that such will sorrow for the calamity of the house of Israel; yea, they will sorrow for the destruction of this people; they will sorrow that this people had not repented that they might have been clasped in the arms of Jesus.

12. Now these things are written unto the remnant of the house of Jacob; ---and they are to be hid up unto the lord that they may come forth in his own due time. Mn 5-468



CHAPTER VIII

*SOCIAL CUSTOMS AND VARIOUS OTHER CUSTOMS OF THE ANCIENT PEOPLE

Social, Domestic, Hunting, Agricultural, and
Commercial Customs, and also Customs of
Communication and Exchange.

Customs of certain of the early peoples of the Western Hemisphere are to be found recorded in the *Book of Mormon*. Usually such information is included incidentally and in connection with some other subject. For example — the following quotation, in which Nephi prayed to God from his tower and then preached to the people who gathered there, shows that in or near the ancient villages there existed towers, highways, and town markets: “10. ---Nephi had bowed himself upon his tower which was in his garden, which tower was also near unto the garden gate by which led the highway, ---which led to the chief market, which was in the city of Zarahemla.” Many such interesting accounts are scattered throughout the *Book of Mormon* and may be found by carefully studying the *Book*. Those who are doing research in archaeology will be particularly interested in such findings.

The reader should keep in mind, however, that any custom presented here (or any custom given in this volume) may not be typical of the practice of the ancient people during their entire cultural period but may be typical of only a short phase of that period. The appearance of “classes” in a culture is an example of the transitory nature of some customs. Certain classes may appear in times of prosperity (or in times of civil strife) that may be of a temporary type. When a culture is broken up into many classes, the condition may indicate that the culture is a complex one, and the condition may indicate also the existence of discord and disintegration. Class distinctions tend to become less marked, and the people are apt to re-unite, in times of national stress. Many other customs, however, may become an intrinsic part of a culture and may, therefore change but slightly during many centuries.

*For key to reference symbols, see page 2.

PART I

SOCIAL CHARACTERISTICS AND CUSTOMS

(See Chapter XIV, Part III, for "Religious Rituals"
—some of which have social significance.)

I. CLASSES OF PEOPLE IN ANCIENT SOCIETY

1. *THE PEOPLE WERE DIVIDED INTO CLASSES.* (*During certain periods, class distinctions were more prominent than at other times. There were judges, lawyers, merchants, learned men, slaves, prisoners, robbers, etc.*) 25. And from that time forth they did have their goods and their substance no more common among them.

26. And they began to be divided into classes; 4N 1-458

RULING CLASS

8. Now those who were in favor of kings were those of high birth, A 51-325

PROFESSIONAL CLASS

11. For there were many merchants in the land, and also many lawyers, and many officers. 3N 6-411

WEALTHY CLASS

(*Poor and rich classes*) 3. And they had all things common among them; therefore there were not rich and poor, bond and free, but they were all made free, and partakers of the heavenly gift. 4N 1-456

12. ---[But later,] the people, began to be distinguished by ranks, according to their riches and their chances for learning; yea, some were ignorant because of their poverty, and others did receive great learning because of their riches.

14. And thus there became a great inequality in all the land, insomuch that the church began to be broken up; 3N 6-411

RELIGIOUS TEACHERS

11. Wherefore, the prophets, and the priests, and the teachers, did labor diligently, exhorting with all long-suffering the people to diligence; teaching the law of Moses, Jm 1-128

INTELLECTUAL CLASS

(*The priests and the rulers were apparently an educated class.*)

21. ---we depend upon them [the prophets and priests] to teach us the word. H 16-398

2. ---[King Benjamin] caused that they [his sons] should be taught the language of his fathers, Mo 1-184

1. ---the king of the Lamanites granted unto him [Amulon] and his brethren that they should be appointed teachers over his people, Mo 24-180

SERFS

(*People in bondage to the Lamanites, were treated as serfs.*)

5. Yea, and I will cause that they shall have burdens lashed upon their backs ;and they shal be driven before like a dumb ass. Mo 12-158

SLAVES AND PRISONERS

(*There are indications that slaves were in existence.*) 15. ---for it is better that we be slaves to the Nephites than to pay tribute to the king of the Lamanites. Mo 7-148

9. ---It is against the law of our brethren [the Nephites], ---that there should be any slaves among them; A 27-264

25. And it came to pass that---[the Nephites did cause the Lamanites whom---[they] had taken prisoners, that they should commence a labor in strengthening the fortifications--- A 55-386

ROBBERS

10. ---for behold no man could keep that which was his own, for the thieves, and the robbers, Mn 2-462

"WITCH-DOCTORS"

(*Black magic and priestcraft?*) 10. ---and the magic art, and the witchcraft which was in the land. Mn 2-462

2. **RACIAL PREJUDICE.** 8. O my brethren, I fear that unless ye shall repent of your sins that their skins will be whiter than yours, when ye shall be brought with them before the throne of God.

9. Wherefore, a commandment I give unto you, which is the word of God, that ye revile no more against them because of the darkness of their skins; neither shall ye revile against them because of their filthiness;

7. ---how much better are you than they, in the sight of your great Creator? J 8-112

7. ---for thus saith the Lord: Ye shall not esteem one flesh above another, or one man shall not think himself above another;
Mo 23-178

33. ---and he [the Lord] inviteth them all to come unto him and partake of his goodness; and he denieth none that come unto him, black and white, bond and free, male and female; and he remembereth the heathen; and all are alike unto God, both Jew and Gentile.
2N 26-95

II. THE PLACE OF WOMEN IN ANCIENT SOCIETY

(Note: Women are scarcely mentioned in the Book of Mormon. Their social organization was an outgrowth of the old patriarchal system which afforded women little social status. The two occupations in which women are especially mentioned are the raising of children, and the making of cloth [spinning and weaving]. Six women are mentioned by name in the Book of Mormon, others are alluded to as: "the daughters of Ishmael," "my sisters," "the women and the children," "the Lamanite maidens," "the beauty of our women," etc.) (Three Lamanite queens are mentioned, but their names are not given.)

CHART 15

BOOK OF MORMON WOMEN

Names found in the Book of Mormon of women who are outstanding characters in that Book and in the Bible.

Names common to the Book of Mormon and the Bible

Eve — wife of Adam - - - (1N 6-10, v. 11)
Sarah — wife of Abraham - (2N 8-65, v. 2)
Mary — Mother of Christ - (Chapter XII,
Part III, Section II, of this volume.)

Names common only to the Book of Mormon

Sariah — wife of Lehi I
Abish — Lamanite woman, converted to Nephite religion
Isabel — Harlot of Siron (Lamanite?)
Daughter of Jared I (plays an important role but is not given a name in the Book of Ether)

1. *SPINNING AND WEAVING.* (*See Chapter XI, Part I, "Clothing."*) 13. Behold their women did toil and spin, and did make all manner of cloth, of fine-twined linen and cloth of every kind, to clothe their nakedness. H 6-373

5. And I cause that the women should spin, and toil, and work, and work all manner of fine linen, yea, and cloth of every kind, that we might clothe our nakedness. Mo 10-154

2. *WOMEN IN WARFARE.* (*See Chapter VII, Part I, Section I.*) 15. And it came to pass [during the time of the Jaredites] that when they were all gathered together, every one to the army which he would, with their wives and their children—both men, women and children being armed with weapons of war, having shields, and breastplates, and head-plates, and being clothed after the manner of war—they did march forth one against another to battle; and they fought all that day, and conquered not. E 15-908

3. *MISCELLANEOUS COMMENTS CONCERNING WOMEN.* 20. ---and our women have toiled, being big with child; and they have borne children in the wilderness and suffered all things, save it were death; and it would have been better that they had died before they came out of Jerusalem than to have suffered these afflictions. 1N 17-35

14. And it came to pass that the Lamanites had compassion on them, for they were charmed with the beauty of their women. Mo 19-170

23. And now, he imparteth his word by angels unto men, yea, not only men but women also. A 32-278

35. ---and he [the Lord] denieth none that come unto him, --- male and female; 2N 26-95

III. MARITAL AND SEX CUSTOMS

1. *ADULTERY.* 27. Behold, it is written by them of old time, that thou shalt not commit adultery;

28. But I say unto you, that whosoever looketh on a woman, to lust after her, hath committed adultery already in his heart.³N 12-425

32. Verily, verily, I say unto you, that whosoever shall put away his wife, saving for the cause of fornication, causeth her to commit adultery; and whoso shall marry her who is divorced committeth adultery. [?] 3N 12-425

29. Behold, I give unto you a commandment, that ye suffer none of these things to enter into your heart;

30. For it is better that ye should deny yourself of these things, wherein ye will take up your cross, than that ye should be cast into hell.

3N 12-425

3. And this is not all, my son. Thou didst do that which was grievous unto me; for thou didst forsake the ministry, and did go over into the land of Siron, among the borders of the Lamanites, after the harlot Isabel.

4. Yea, she did steal away the hearts of many; but this was not excuse for thee, my son. Thou shouldst have tended to the ministry wherewith thou wast entrusted.

5. Know ye not, my son, that these things are an abomination in the sight of the Lord; yea, most abominable above all sins save it be the shedding of innocent blood or denying the Holy Ghost?

A 89-293

14. And it came to pass that he [King Noah] placed his heart upon riches, and he spent his time in riotous living with his wives and his concubines; and so did also his priests spend their time with harlots.

Mo 11-156

29. ---Why do ye commit whoredoms and spend your strength with harlots, yea, and cause this people to commit sin, that the Lord has cause to send me to prophesy against this people,

Mo 12-159

2. *CONCUBINES.* 5. And it came to pass that Riplakish did not do that which was right in the sight of the Lord, for he did have many wives and concubines,

E 10-496

2. ---And he had many wives and concubines. [Noah, son of Zeniff]

Mo 11-155

3. *POLYGAMY.* (*The Book of Mormon protests against polygamy.*) 27. Wherefore, my brethren, hear me, and hearken to the word of the Lord. For there shall not any man among you have save it be one wife; and concubines he shall have none;

28. For I, the Lord God, delight in the chastity of women. And whoredoms are an abomination before me; thus saith the Lord of Hosts.

J 2-111

23. ---For behold, thus saith the Lord: This people begin to wax in iniquity; they understand not the scriptures, for they seek to excuse themselves in committing whoredoms, because of the things which were written concerning David, and Solomon his son.

24. Behold, David and Solomon truly had many wives and concubines, which thing was abominable before me, saith the Lord.

25. Wherefore, thus saith the Lord, I have led this people forth [the Nephites] out of the land of Jerusalem, by the power of mine arm, that I might raise up unto me a righteous branch from the fruit of the loins of Joseph.

26. Wherefore, I the Lord God will not suffer that this people shall do like unto them of old.

29. Wherefore, this people shall keep my commandments, saith the Lord of Hosts, or cursed be the land for their sakes.

31. For behold, I, the Lord, have seen the sorrow, and heard the mourning of the daughters of my people in the land of Jerusalem, yea, and in all the lands of my people, because of the wickedness and abominations of their husbands.

32. And I will not suffer, saith the Lord of Hosts, that the cries of the fair daughters of this people, which I have led out of the land of Jerusalem, shall come up unto me against the men of my people, saith the Lord of Hosts.

33. For they shall not lead away captive the daughters of my people because of their tenderness, ---for they shall not commit whoredoms, like unto them of old, saith the Lord of Hosts. J 3-111

4. MARITAL CUSTOMS AMONG THE VARIOUS PEOPLES.

(*Jaredite Customs*) 5. And it came to pass that Riplakish did not do that which was right in the sight of the Lord, for he did have many wives and concubines, E 10-497

(*Nephite Customs*) 15. And now it came to pass that the people of Nephi, under the reign of the second king, began to grow hard in their hearts, and indulge themselves somewhat in wicked practices, such as like unto David of old desiring many wives and concubines, and also Solomon, his son. J 1-109

10. Wherefore, ye shall remember your children, how that ye have grieved their hearts because of the example that ye have set before them; and also remember that ye may—bring your children unto destruction, and their sins be heaped upon your heads J 3-112

(*Lamanite Customs*) 9. Behold, the Lamanites your brethren, whom ye hate because of their filthiness and the cursing which hath come upon their skins, are more righteous than you; for they have not forgotten the commandment of the Lord, which was given unto our fathers—that they should have save it were one wife, and concubines they should have none,

7. Behold, their husbands love their wives, and their wives love their husbands; and their husbands and their wives love their children:

J 3-112

5. **DIVORCE.** 31. It hath been written, that whosoever shall put away his wife, let him give her a writing of divorcement.

32. Verily, verily, I say unto you, that whosoever shall put away his wife, saving for the cause of fornication, causeth her to commit adultery; and whoso shall marry her who is divorced committeth adultery.

3N 12-425

6. **CHASTISEMENT AND PUNISHMENT FOR BREAKING MARRIAGE AND MORAL LAWS.** (*The Lord warned that those who had committed adultery, polygamy, whoredoms, etc., should acknowledge their sins and repent.*) 13. That ye turn to the Lord with all your mind, might, and strength; that ye lead away the hearts of no more to do wickedly; ---and acknowledge your faults and that wrong which ye have done.

A 39-294

7. ---[The Lamanites sustained the iniquity of their fathers—the Lord gives a warning not to do likewise.] and their unbelief and their hatred---is because of the iniquity of their fathers; wherefore, how much better are you than they, in the sight of your great Creator?

J 3-112

25. ---except ye make our Creator a liar from the beginning, or suppose that he is a liar from the beginning, ye cannot suppose that such [acts of wickedness] can have place in the kingdom of heaven; but they shall be cast out for they are the children of the kingdom of the devil.

A 5-206

8. Now, the decrees of God are unalterable,

A 41-297

18. For he is the same yesterday, to-day, and forever; and the way is prepared for all men from the foundation of the world, if it so be that they repent and come unto him.

19. For he that diligently seeketh shall find; and the mysteries of God shall be unfolded unto them, by the power of the Holy Ghost, as well in these times as in times of old, and as well in times of old as in times to come; wherefore, the course of the Lord is one eternal round.

1N 11-17

18. Or otherwise, can ye imagine yourselves brought before the tribunal of God with your souls filled with guilt and remorse, having a remembrance of all your guilt, yea, a perfect remembrance of all your wickedness, yea, a remembrance that ye have set at defiance the commandments of God?

19. I say unto you, can ye look up to God at that day with a pure heart and clean hands? I say unto you, can you look up, having the image of God engraven upon your countenances?

20. I say unto you, can ye think of being saved when you have yielded yourselves to become subjects to the devil? A 5-206

20. Therefore remember, O man, for all thy doings thou shalt be brought into judgment. 1N 11-17

IV. BURIAL CUSTOMS

1. *JAREDITES*. 22. ---and the severity of the Lord fell upon them [the Jaredites] according to his judgments, which are just; and their bones lay scattered in the land northward. O 1-181

2. *NEPHITES AND LAMANITES. (Types of burial)* 1. And it came to pass that after two days and two nights they were about to take his body and lay it in a sepulchre, which they had made for the purpose of burying their dead. A 19-243

10. And it came to pass that on the morrow [the day after the death] the people did assemble themselves together to mourn and to fast, at the burial of their great chief judge who had been slain. H 9-381

18. ---Alma---departed out of the land of Zarahemla, as if to go into the land of Melek. And it came to pass that he was never heard of more; as to his death or burial we know not of.

19. Behold, this we know, that he was a righteous man; and the saying went abroad in the church that he was taken up by the Spirit, or buried by the hand of the Lord, even as Moses. A 46-308

3. Then he [Nephi II] departed out of the land, and whither he went, no man knoweth; and his son Nephi did keep the records in his stead, yea, the record of this people. 3N 1-399

38. And it came to pass that many died in the wilderness of their wounds, and were devoured by those beasts and also the vultures of the air; and their bones have been found, and have been heaped up on the earth. A 2-200

15. ---for I saw thousands of them hewn down in open rebellion against their God, and heaped up as dung upon the face of the land. Mn 2-462

11. Nevertheless, after many days their dead bodies were heaped up upon the face of the earth, and they were covered with a shallow covering. A 16-236

8. ---And we did beat them again, and did slay a great number of them, and their dead were cast into the sea. Mn 3-464

22. And it came to pass that they did cast their dead into the waters of Sidon [river], and they have gone forth and are buried in the depths of the sea. A 44-307

3. And now as many---who had been slain upon the bank of the river Sidon were cast into the waters of Sidon; and behold their bones are in the depths of the sea, and they are many. A 3-201

14. Now it came to pass that when the bodies of those who had been cast into the fire were consumed, A 14-281

28. ---when they had hanged him until he was dead they did fell the tree to the earth, 3N 28-408

3. *CUSTOM OF LAMENTING THE DEAD.* 2. ---they did cease lamenting and howling for the loss of their kindred which had been slain; 3N 10-419

43. And it came to pass that his servants took him and carried him in unto his wife, and laid him upon a bed; ---and his wife, and his sons, and his daughters mourned over him, after the manner of the Lamanites, greatly lamenting his loss. A 18-243

PART II

DOMESTIC, HUNTING, AGRICULTURAL, AND INDUSTRIAL CUSTOMS

I. DOMESTIC CUSTOMS

(See also Part I of this chapter. See Chapter XI for architecture, clothing, etc.)

1. **MAKING FIRE.** 11. And it came to pass that I, Nephi, did make a bellows wherewith to blow the fire, of the skins of beasts; and after I had made a bellows, that I might have wherewith to blow the fire, I did smite two stones together that I might make fire.

12. For the Lord had not hitherto suffered that we should make much fire, as we journeyed in the wilderness; for he said: I will make thy food become sweet, that ye cook it not; 1N 17-34

3. And it shall come to pass that the life of king Noah shall be valued even as a garment in a hot furnace; for he shall know I am the Lord. Mo 12-138

23. [The Jaredites during their migration to the "Promised Land."] neither shall ye take fire with you, for ye shall not go by the light of fire. E 2-482

21. [The Nephites, during the time of the cataclysm] neither could there be fire kindled with their fine and exceedingly dry wood. 3N 8-416

2. **HUNTING.** (See Chapter X, Part III, Section I, for "Animals.") (Hunters among the Jaredites.) 1. And it came to pass that Jared and his brother, and their families---went down into the valley which was northward, (and the name of the valley was Nimrod, being called after the mighty hunter)---[Nimrod was in the "Old World."]

2. And they did also lay snares and catch fowls of the air; and they did also prepare a vessel, in which they did carry with them the fish of the waters. E 2-480

19. ---Wherefore they did go into the land southward, to hunt food for the people of the land, for the land was covered with animals of the forest. And Lib also himself became a great hunter.

21. And they did preserve the land southward for a wilderness to get game. [The land was in the "New World."] E 10-497

(*Hunters among the Nephites.*) 14. [During the migration of the people of Lehi from Jerusalem.] And it came to pass that we did take our bows and our arrows, and go forth into the wilderness to slay food for our families; and after we had slain food for our families we did return again to our families in the wilderness, ---

15. And it came to pass that we did travel for the space of many days, slaying food by the way, with our bows and arrows and our stones and our slings.

18. ---I, Nephi, went forth to slay food, behold, I did break my bow, which was made of fine steel; and after I did break my bow, behold, my brethren were angry with me because of the loss of my bow, for we did obtain no food. 1N 16-31

25. [Nephites in the Western Hemisphere] And it came to pass that we did find upon the land of promise---all manner of wild animals which were for the use of men. 1N 18-40

II. AGRICULTURAL CUSTOMS

(For "Food," and for "Domestic Animals," see Chapter X, Part III. For "Tools," see Chapter XI.) 25. [Jaredites] And they did make all manner of tools to till the earth, both to plow and to sow, to reap and to hoe, and also to thrash.

26. And they did make all manner of tools with which they did work their beasts. E 10-498

8. [Nephites]---making all manner of tools of every kind to till the ground. Jm 1-128

4. And I did cause that the men should till the ground, and raise all manner of grain and all manner of fruit of every kind. Mo 10-154

III. INDUSTRIAL CUSTOMS

1. *INDUSTRY, PROSPERITY, AND PROGRESS AT THE TIME OF THE JAREDITES.* 23. And they did work in all manner of ore, and they did make gold, and silver, and iron, and brass, and all manner of metals; and they did dig it out of the earth; wherefore, they did cast up mighty heaps of earth to get ore,

or gold, and of silver, and of iron, and of copper. And they did work all manner of fine work.

24. And they did have silks, and fine-twined linen; and they did work all manner of cloth, that they might clothe themselves from their nakedness.

27. And they did make all manner of weapons of war, and they did work all manner of work of exceedingly curious workmanship.

28. And never could be people more blessed than they, and more prosperous by the hand of the Lord. And they were in a land that was choice above all lands, for the Lord had spoken it.

E 10-498

7. Wherefore he did obtain all his fine work, yea, even his fine gold he did cause to be refined in prison; and all manner of fine workmanship he did cause to be wrought in prison.

E 10-496

17. Having all manner of fruit, and of grain, and of silks, and of fine linen, and of gold, and of silver, and of precious things;

18. And also all manner of cattle, of oxen, and cows, and of sheep, and of swine, and of goats, and also many other kinds of animals which were useful for the food of man.

19. And they also had horses, and asses, and there were elephants and cureloms and cumoms; all of which were useful unto man, and more especially the elephants and cureloms and cumoms.

E 9-494

2. INDUSTRY, PROSPERITY, AND PROGRESS AT THE TIME OF THE NEPHITES.

17. And it came to pass that I, Nephi, did cause my people to be industrious, and to labor with their hands.

2N 5-61

8. And we multiplied exceedingly, and spread upon the face of the land, and became exceeding rich in gold, and in silver, and in precious things, and in fine workmanship of wood, in buildings, and in machinery, and also in iron and copper, and brass and steel, making all manner of tools of every kind to till the ground, and weapons of war—

Jm 1-128

6. ---all manner of precious things which they had obtained by their industry; and---they began to wear very costly apparel.

A 4-203

15. And it came to pass that they did repent, and inasmuch as they did repent they did begin to prosper.

H 4-367

17. And in these prosperous circumstances were the people of Nephi in the commencement of the twenty and first year of the reign of the judges---

18. And they did prosper exceedingly, and they became exceeding rich; yea, and they did multiply and were strong in the land.

A 50-322

6. ---because of their many flocks and herds, and their gold and their silver, and all manner of precious things, which they had obtained by their industry;

A 4-208

48. And the people of Nephi began to prosper again in the land, and began to multiply and to wax exceeding strong again in the land. And they began to grow exceeding rich.

A 62-357

3. MORAL AND ETHICAL STANDARDS SEEMED TO WEAKEN DURING PERIODS OF PROSPERITY.

12. And now behold, my brethren, this is the word which I declare unto you, that many of you have begun to search for gold, and for silver, and for all manner of precious ores, in the which this land, which is a land of promise unto you and to your seed, doth abound most plentifully.

13. And the hand of providence hath smiled upon you most pleasantly, that you have obtained many riches; and because some of you have obtained more abundantly than that of your brethren ye are lifted up in the pride of your hearts, and wear stiff necks and high heads because of the costliness of your apparel, and persecute your brethren because ye suppose that ye are better than they.

J 2-110

6. And it came to pass in the eighth year of the reign of the judges, that the people of the church began to wax proud, because of their exceeding riches, and their fine silks, and their fine-twined linen, and because of their many flocks and herds, and their gold and their silver, and all manner of precious things, which they had obtained by their industry; and in all these things were they lifted up in the pride of their eyes, for they began to wear very costly apparel.

8. For they [Alma and other teachers] saw and beheld with great sorrow that the people of the church began to be lifted up in the pride of their eyes, and to set their hearts upon riches and upon the vain things of the world, that they began to be scornful, one towards another, and they began to persecute those that did not believe according to their own will and pleasure.

A 4-208

PART III

PUBLIC AFFAIRS AND CUSTOMS OF COMMUNICATION

This part of the chapter deals with the communication of ideas, and the preservation of historic material. (For "Transportation," see Chapter XI, Part II, Section III, "Roads," and see this chapter, Part IV.)

I. COMMUNICATION OF INFORMATION FROM ONE GENERATION TO ANOTHER

(Maintenance of genealogical and historical records.)

1. *JAREDITE GENEALOGY.* (*See Chapter IV, Part I. See Chapter II, Parts I and II.*) 22. It [the stone tablet] also spake a few words concerning his fathers. And his first parents came out from the tower, at the time the Lord confounded the language of the people; O 1-181

2. *GENEALOGY OF THE NEPHITES.* (*See Chapter IV, Part II and Part IV. See Chapter II, Parts II and IV.*) 2. And Nephi, the son of Helaman, had departed out of the land of Zarahemla, giving charge unto his son Nephi, who was his eldest son, concerning the plates of brass, and all the records which had been kept, and all those things which had been kept sacred from the departure of Lehi out of Jerusalem. 3N 1-399

14. ---Now, there was great rejoicing among the people of Zarahemla; ---because the Lord had sent the people of Mosiah with the plates of brass which contained the record of the Jews [and the genealogy of their fathers] Jm 1-130

18. ---Zarahemla gave a genealogy of his fathers, according to his memory; and they are written, --- O 1-181

3 *BURIAL IN THE GROUND OF SACRED RECORDS, AND VALUED POSSESSIONS.* (*Treasures were hidden in the earth. See also Chapter XVI, Part III, Section II, Unit 5.*) 18. ---the Lamanites, did infest the land, insomuch that the inhabitants thereof began to hide up their treasures in the earth; Mn 1-461

(Manner of keeping records. See Chapter II, Parts II, and III.)
 20. And now, as I said unto you, that after king Mosiah had done these things, he took the plates of brass, and all the things which he had kept, and conferred them upon Alma, who was the son of Alma; yea, all the records, and also the interpreters, and conferred them upon him, and commanded him that he should keep and preserve them, and also keep a record of the people, handing them down from one generation to another, even as they had been handed down from the time that Lehi left Jerusalem. Mo 28-191

6. ---behold I, Mormon, began to be old; ---therefore I made this record out of the plates of Nephi, and hid up in the hill Cumorah all the records which had been entrusted to me by the hand of the Lord, save it were these few plates which I gave unto my son Moroni. Mn 6-469

II. COMMUNICATION OF INFORMATION DURING ANCIENT TIMES

(Public and private meetings)

1. *LARGE PUBLIC GATHERINGS.* 18. ---Mosiah went and ---proclaimed unto all the people who were in the land of Zarahemla that thereby they might gather themselves together, to go up to the temple to hear the words which his father should speak unto them. Mo 1-135

3. And they also took of the firstlings of their flocks that they might offer sacrifices and burnt offerings according to the law of Moses;

5. And it came to pass that when they came up to the temple, they pitched their tents round about, every man according to his family, consisting of his wife, and his sons, and his daughters, and their sons, and their daughters, from the eldest down to the youngest, every family being separate one from another.

6. And they pitched their tents round about the temple, every man having his tent with the door thereof towards the temple, that thereby they might remain in their tents and hear the words which king Benjamin should speak unto them;

8. And it came to pass that he began to speak to his people from the tower; and they could not all hear his words because of the greatness of the multitude; therefore he caused that the words which he spake should be written and sent forth among those that were not under the sound of his voice, that they might also receive his words.

28. I say unto you [king Benjamin is speaking] that I have caused that ye should assemble yourselves together that I might rid my garments of your blood, at this period of time when I am about to go down to my grave, that I might go down in peace,

29. And moreover, I say unto you that I have caused that ye should assemble yourselves together, that I might declare unto you that I can no longer be your teacher, nor your king. Mo 2-186

10. [Nephi II speaks to a crowd from his tower.] And behold, now it came to pass that it was upon a tower, ---[and] Nephi had bowed himself upon the tower---

11. And it came to pass that there were certain men passing by and saw Nephi as he was pouring out his soul unto God upon the tower; and they ran and told the people what they had seen,

12. And now, when Nephi arose he beheld the multitudes of people who had gathered together.

15. And because of my mourning and lamentation ye have gathered yourselves together, and do marvel; ---yea, ye ought to marvel because ye are given away that the devil has got so great hold upon your hearts. [And Nephi proceeds to preach to the people gathered.] H 7-377

1. [Nephites gather to hear Samuel, the Lamanite.] And now, it came to pass that there were many who heard the words of Samuel, the Lamanite, which he spake upon the walls of the city.

2. But as many as there were who did not believe in the words of Samuel were angry with him; and they cast stones at him upon the wall, and also many shot arrows at him as he stood upon the wall;

6. ---when they saw that they could not hit him---they cried unto their captains, saying: Take this fellow and bind him,

7. And as they went forth to lay their hands on him, behold, he did cast himself down from the wall, and did flee out of their lands, yea, even unto his own country, H 16-397

2. MANNER OF TEACHING AND PREACHING. (*The information was read, was rehearsed from memory, came as a revelation. See Chapter XV, Part IV.*) 4. [Jacob preaches to the people.] ---and I speak unto you for your sakes, that ye may learn and glorify the name of your God.

5. And now, the words which I shall read are they which Isaiah spake concerning all the house of Israel; wherefore, they may be likened unto you, for ye are of the house of Israel. 2N 6-62

36. Now when Ammon had said these words, he began at the creation of the world, and also the creation of Adam, and told him

all the things concerning the fall of man, and rehearsed and laid before him the records and the holy scriptures of the people,

37. And he also rehearsed unto them (for it was unto the king and his servants) all the journeyings of their fathers in the wilderness, A 18-243

5. And he said unto them: Behold, I, Samuel, a Lamanite, do speak the words of the Lord which he doth put into my heart; H 13-390

3. *COUNCILS.* 17. And it came to pass that king Noah--- commanded that the priests should gather themselves together that he might hold a council with them what he should do with him [Abinadi].

18. And it came to pass that they said unto the king: Bring him hither that we may question him; Mo 12-159

19. And in the commencement of the twenty and eighth year, Moroni and Teancum and many of the chief captains held a council of war--- A 52-329

27. ---almost all the lawyers and the high priests, did gather themselves together, 3N 6-412

4. *EMBASSIES.* (For "Spies," see Chapter VII, Part I, Section IV.) 10. And it came to pass that when it was night he sent a secret embassy into the mount--- A 47-313

32. ---Amalickiah had sent an embassy to the queen informing her that the king had been slain by his servants, A 47-315

20. And it came to pass they sent embassies to the army of the Lamanites, which protected the city of Mulek, to their leader, whose name was Jacob. A 52-329

4. And it came to pass that I thus did send an embassy to the governor of our land, to acquaint him concerning the affairs of our people. A 58-344

5. *MESSENGERS.* (Communication of information by means of epistles, and messengers.) 4. ---the king of the Lamanites sent an epistle unto me, which gave unto me to know that they were preparing to come again to battle against us. Mn 3-464

1. ---Lachoneus, the governor of the land, received an epistle from the leader and the governor of this band of robbers; 3N 3-403

22. ---the proclamation of Lachoneus had gone forth through-
out all the face of the land, 3N 3-405

24. ---and Alma informed the messengers of Moroni--- A 43-302

III. INDIVIDUAL COMMUNICATION

(*Manner of salutation or greeting.*) 9. And he said unto them:
Behold, I am Limhi, the son of Noah, who was the son of Zeniff,
who came up out of the land of Zarahemla--- Mo 7-147

2. And it came to pass that he went in unto him into the king's
palace, and his brethren, and bowed himself before the king, A 22-251

22. ---And they went and bowed themselves before the king,
as if to reverence him because of his greatness.

23. And it came to pass that the king put forth his hand to
raise them, as was the custom with the Lamanites, as a token of
peace, which custom they had taken from the Nephites. A 47-315

14. [Were subjects supposed to stand with back to king?]
Therefore Ammon turned himself unto the king, and said unto
him: What wilt thou that I should do for thee, O king? A 18-241

20. [Treatment of the enemy] And as Ammon entered the
land of Ishmael, the Lamanites took him and bound him, as was
their custom to bind all the Nephites who fell into their hands, and
carry them before the king; and thus it was left to the pleasure of
the king to slay them. A 17-238

20. [Treatment of a dissenter] But behold they [the people of
Ammon] were more wise than many of the Nephites; for they took
him [a dissenter], and bound him, and carried him before Ammon,
who was a high priest over that people. A 20-270

PART IV

EXCHANGE OF GOODS AND SERVICES CUSTOMS OF THE ANCIENT PEOPLE

Trade, Transportation, Markets, Money and
Wages, Loans, "Banking," Taxes, Tithes,
and Tribute.

I. TRADE

22. And they [the Nephites] were exceedingly industrious, and they did buy and sell and traffic one with another, that they might get gain. E 10-497

8. And it came to pass that the Lamanites did also go whithersoever they would, whether it were among the Lamanites or among the Nephites; and thus they did have free intercourse one with another, to buy and to sell, and to get gain, according to their desire. H 6-373

46. ---and gold and silver did they lay up in store in abundance, and did traffic in all manner of traffic. 3N 1-459

10. And it came to pass---[that] Corianton had gone forth to the land northward in a ship, to carry forth provisions unto the people who had gone forth into that land. A 63-358

10. And it came to pass as timber was exceeding scarce in the land northward, they did send forth much by the way of shipping. H 3-364

7. And thus the Lamanites began to increase in riches, and began to trade one with another and wax great and began to be a cunning and a wise people--- Mo 24-181

II. TRANSPORTATION

(See Chapter XI, Part II, Section III, for "Roads," and "Ships." For "Shipping," see Section I above.) 8. And there were many highways cast up, and many roads made, which led from city to city, and from land to land, and from place to place. 3N 6-411

III. MARKETS

10. And behold, now it came to pass that it --- was by the highway which led to the chief market, which was in the city of Zarahemla;

H 7-877

IV. MONEY AND WAGES

1. *THE JAREDITES.* 11. Now the people of Akish were desirous for power; wherefore, the sons of Akish did offer them money, by which means they drew away the more part of the people after them.

E 9-494

2. *THE NEPHITES.* 20. Yea, it [the gospel] shall come in a day when there shall be churches built up that shall say: Come unto me, and for your money you shall be forgiven of your sins.

Mn 8-474

50. Come, my brethren, every one that thirsteth, come ye to the waters [the Gospel]; and he that hath no money, come buy and eat; yea, come buy wine and milk without money or without price. [This is a quotation from Isaiah on the Brass Plates.]

2N 9-70

5. And it came to pass that he did teach these things so much that many did believe on his words, even so many that they began to support him and give him money.

A 1-195

33. And notwithstanding the many labors which I have performed in the church, I have never received so much as even one senine for my labor;

A 30-271

20. Now, it was for the sole purpose to get gain, because they received their wages according to their employ, therefore, they [the wicked lawyers] did stir up the people to riotings, and all manner of disturbances and wickedness, that they might get money according to the suits which were brought before them;

3. And the judge received for his wages according to his time a senine of gold for a day, or a senum of silver, which is equal to a senine of gold; and this is according to the law which was given.

A 11-222

3. *NAMES OF THE PIECES OF THE NEPHITE MONEY.*

4. Now these are the names of the different pieces of their gold, and of their silver, according to their value. And the names are given by the Nephites, for they did not reckon after the manner

of the Jews who were at Jerusalem; neither did they measure after the manner of the Jews; but they altered their reckoning and their measure, according to the minds and the circumstances of the people, in every generation, until the reign of the judges, they having been established by king Mosiah.

5. Now the reckoning is thus—a senine of gold, a seon of gold, a shum of gold, and a limnah of gold.

6. A senum of silver, and amnor of silver, and ezrom of silver, and an onti of silver.

7. A senum of silver was equal to a senine of gold, and either for a measure of barley, and also for a measure of every kind of grain.

8. Now the amount of a seon of gold was twice the value of a senine.

9. And a shum of gold was twice the value of a seon.

10. And a limnah of gold was the value of them all.

11. And an amnor of silver was as great as two senums.

12. And an ezrom of silver was as great as four senums.

13. And an onti was as great as them all.

14. Now this is the value of the lesser numbers of their reckoning—

15. A shiblon is half of a senum; therefore a shiblon for half a measure of barley.

16. And a shiblum is a half of a shiblon.

17. And a leah is the half of a shiblum.

18. Now this is their number, according to their reckoning.

19. Now an antion of gold is equal to three shiblons. A 11-222

V. LOANS AND BORROWING

28. And I would that ye should remember, that whosoever among you borroweth of his neighbor should return the thing that he borroweth, according as he doth agree, or else thou shalt commit sin; and perhaps thou shalt cause thy neighbor to commit sin also. Mo 4-144

42. Give to him that asketh thee, and from him that would borrow of thee turn thou not away. 3N 12-426

2. Now if a man owed another, and he would not pay that which he did owe, he was complained of to the judge; and the judge executed authority, and sent forth officers that the man should be brought before him; and he judged the man according to the law and the evidences which were brought against him, and

thus the man was compelled to pay that which he owed, or be stripped, or be cast out from among the people as a thief and a robber.

A 11-221

VI. "BANKING"

(*Treasures were hidden in the ground.*) 18. ---the inhabitants thereof began to hide up their treasures in the earth; Mn 1-461

VII. TAXES

1. *JAREDITES' TAXES.* 5. ---yea, he did tax them with heavy taxes; and with the taxes he did build many spacious buildings.

6. ---And he did build many prisons, and whoso would not be subject unto taxes he did cast into prison; and whoso was not able to pay taxes he did cast into prison; and he did cause that they should labor continually for their support; and whoso refused to labor he did cause to be put to death. E 11-496

2. *NEPHITES' TAXES.* 14. And even I, myself, have labored with mine own hands that I might serve you, and that ye should not be laden with taxes, and that there should nothing come upon you which was grievous to be borne— Mo 2-187

3. And he [the wicked king Noah of the Nephites in the land of Nephi] laid a tax of one fifth part of all they possessed, a fifth part of their gold and of their silver, and a fifth part of the ziff, and of their copper, and of their brass and their iron, and a fifth part of their fatlings; and also a fifth part of all their grain.

6. Yea, and thus they [the king, nobility, and priests] were supported in their laziness, and in their idolatry, and in their whoredoms, by the taxes which king Noah had put upon his people; thus did the people labor exceedingly to support iniquity. Mo 11-155

VIII. TITHES

(*The system of tithes was known—as it was quoted from ancient scripture, and was given by Christ. No mention was made, however, of its actual practice among the Nephites.*) 15. And it

was this same Melchizedek to whom Abraham paid tithes; yea, even our father Abraham paid tithes of one-tenth part of all he possessed.

A 13-229

8. Will a man rob God? Yet ye have robbed me. But ye say: Wherein have we robbed thee? In tithes and offerings.

9. Ye are cursed with a curse, for ye have robbed me, even this whole nation.

10. Bring ye all the tithes into the storehouse, that there may be meat in my house; and prove me now herewith, saith the Lord of Hosts, if I will not open you the windows of heaven, and pour you out a blessing that there shall not be room enough to receive it.

3N 24-447

IX. TRIBUTE

(See Chapter VII, Part I, Section VI, Unit 2.) 21. And ye all are witnesses this day, that Zeniff, ---entered into a treaty with [King Laman]---

22. And all this he [King Laman] did, for the sole purpose of bringing this people into subjection or into bondage. And behold, we at this time do pay tribute to the king of the Lamanites, to the amount of one half of our corn, and our barley, and even all our grain of every kind, and one half of the increase of our flocks and our herds; and even one half of all we have or possess the king of the Lamanites doth exact of us, or our lives.

23. And now, is not this grievous to be borne? And is not this, our affliction, great?

Mo 7-149

15. Therefore the Lamanites did spare their lives, and took them captives and carried them back to the land of Nephi, and granted unto them that they might possess the land, under the conditions that they would deliver---up---even one half of all they possessed---and thus they should pay tribute to the king of the Lamanites from year to year.

Mo 19-171

26. And also Limhi, being the son of the king [Noah] having the kingdom conferred upon him by the people, made oath unto the king of the Lamanites that his people should pay tribute unto him, even one half of all they possessed.

Mo 19-172



CHAPTER IX

*THE LANGUAGE, WRITING, KNOWLEDGE, AND SCIENCE OF THE ANCIENT AMERICANS

There are suggestions made in the *Book of Mormon* that the knowledge of two or more languages was common to certain members of the upper, or intellectual class, such as that of the High Priests. These priests could read the ancient Egyptian characters which were on the Brass Plates; they could read and write Hebrew (the Hebrew of 600 B.C.); and they could read and write the language which was the common vernacular of their day.

After two hundred and fifty years of separation from Jerusalem, the people of Zarahemla (the Mulekites) with no written records to stabilize their language had so altered their native Hebrew that they were unable to understand the Nephites when these Nephites first appeared in Zarahemla. The Nephite language had probably undergone some alteration also during their more than two hundred years separation from Jerusalem. The above incident affords an example of the alteration of language in communities separated and isolated from their mother tongue. Such an example suggests that other alterations of language were possibly taking place among other isolated groups on the Western Hemisphere.

Evidence is given in the following pages that the ancient people also had a fair understanding of certain of the sciences. Their teachers, however, frequently advised them that their worldly knowledge should be kept in balance with their faith in the word and the work of the Lord, and cautioned them that men: "When they are learned they think they are wise, and they hearken not unto the counsel of God, for they set it aside, supposing they know of themselves, wherefore, their wisdom is foolishness and it profiteth them not."

2N 9-69

*For key to reference symbols, see page 2.

PART I

LANGUAGE

The following account is concerned, primarily with the spoken language. See Chapter II, for the use of the written language. See, also, Part III of this chapter.

I. LANGUAGE OF THE JAREDITES

34. And the brother of Jared being a large and mighty man, and a man highly favored of the Lord, Jared his brother, said unto him: Cry unto the Lord, that he will not confound us that we may not understand our words. [This was at the time of the confusion of tongues.]

35. And it came to pass that the brother of Jared did cry unto the Lord, and the Lord had compassion upon Jared; therefore he did not confound the language of Jared; and Jared and his brother were not confounded.

36. Then Jared said unto his brother: Cry again unto the Lord, and it may be that he will turn away his anger from them who are our friends, that he confound not their language.

37. And it came to pass that the brother of Jared did cry unto the Lord, and the Lord had compassion upon their friends and their families also, that they were not counfounded. [*Would this, therefore, make their language that of Father Noah, he who built the ark to protect his family from the flood?*]

E 1-479

1. *JAREDITE RECORDS WRITTEN IN AN UNKNOWN LANGUAGE.* (*Concerning the revelations which were given to the brother of Jared by the Lord, which revelations were written down by the brother of Jared.*) 21. And it came to pass that the Lord said unto the brother of Jared: Behold, thou shalt not suffer these things which ye have seen and heard to go forth unto the world, until the time cometh that I shall glorify my name in the flesh; Wherefore, ye shall treasure up the things which ye have seen and heard, and show it to no man.

22. And behold, when ye shall come unto me, ye shall write them and shall seal them up, that no one can interpret them; for ye shall write them in a language that they cannot be read.

23. And behold, these two stones will I give unto thee, and ye shall seal them up also with the things which ye shall write.

24. For behold, the language which ye shall write I have confounded; wherefore I will cause in my own due time that these stones shall magnify to the eyes of men these things which ye shall write.

E 3-484

II. THE LANGUAGE OF THE NEPHITES

1. *THE SOURCE OF THE NEPHITE (AND MULEKITE) LANGUAGE.* (*Lehi left Jerusalem about 600 B.C. The "Nephites," his descendants, spoke the language of Jerusalem.*) (*According to the following statement, the Brass Plates may have had some parts written in Hebrew, although the bulk of the plates were apparently written in some form of Egyptian characters.*) 19. And behold, it is wisdom in God that we should obtain these records, that we may preserve unto our children the language of our fathers; 1N 3-6

2. Yea, I make a record in the language of my father, which consists of the learning of the Jews and the language of the Egyptians.

1N 1-1

4. For it were not possible that our father, Lehi, could have remembered all these things, to have taught them to his children, except it were for the help of these plates; for he having been taught in the language of the Egyptians therefore he could read these engravings, and teach them to his children, that thereby they could teach them to their children, and so fulfilling the commandments of God, even down to this present time.

Mo 1-184

2. *THE LANGUAGE KNOWLEDGE OF THE PRIESTS.*

2. ---And he, [Benjamin] caused that they [his sons] should be taught in all the language of his fathers, that thereby they might become men of understanding; and that they might know concerning the prophecies which had been spoken by the mouths of their fathers, which were delivered them by the hand of the Lord.

3. And he also taught them concerning the records which were engraven on the plates of brass, saying: My sons, I would that ye should remember that were it not for these plates, which contain these records and these commandments, we must have suffered in ignorance, even at this present time, not knowing the mysteries of God.

5. I say unto you, my sons, were it not for these things, which have been kept and preserved by the hand of God, that we might

read and understand of his mysteries, and have his commandments always before our eyes, that even our fathers would have dwindled in unbelief,

6. O my sons, I would that ye should remember that these sayings are true, and also that these records are true. Mo 1-134

1. I, Zeniff, having been taught in all the language of the Nephites, Mo 9-152

3. LANGUAGE CHANGES AMONG THE NEPHITES. (*As time went on, the spoken and the written language seems to have undergone changes.*) 32. And now, behold, we have written this record according to our knowledge, in the characters which are called among us the reformed Egyptian, being handed down and altered by us, according to our manner of speech.

33. And if our plates had been sufficiently large we should have written in Hebrew; but the Hebrew hath been altered by us also; and if we could have written in Hebrew, behold, ye would have had no imperfection in our record.

34. But the Lord knoweth the things which we have written, and also that none other people knoweth our language, therefore he hath prepared means for the interpretation thereof. Mn 9-478

(*The following passage may infer that different groups of Nephites in isolated localities developed local dialects.*) 1. Behold my beloved brethren, seeing that I have been permitted to come unto you, therefore I attempt to address you in my language; [Alma is preaching to the people of Gideon who were also Nephites.] yea, by my own mouth, seeing that it is the first time that I have spoken unto you by the words of my mouth, I having been wholly confined to the judgment-seat, having had much business that I could not come unto you. A 7-211

(*A change had taken place in the language of the people of Zarahemla between the time that they left Jerusalem and joined the ranks of the Nephites.*) 17. And at the time that Mosiah discovered them [the people of Zarahemla, Mulekites] they had become exceeding numerous. ---and their language had become corrupted; and they had brought no records with them; ---and Mosiah, nor the people of Mosiah, could understand them. [This may also suggest that although both the Nephite language and the Mulekite language was one and the same at about 600 B.C., that both had changed form in the two hundred and fifty years separation.]

18. But it came to pass that Mosiah caused that they should be taught in his language. And it came to pass that after they were taught in the language of Mosiah, Zarahemla gave a genealogy of his fathers, O 1-130

III. THE LANGUAGE OF THE LAMANITES

(The Nephites and the Lamanites were originally one and the same people until about 580 B.C. Apparently four hundred and fifty years after their separation into two factions, the original language of the Lamanites had completely changed. Of course, there probably had also been changes in the Nephite language.)

4. And he [king of the Lamanites] appointed teachers of the brethren of Amulon in every land which was possessed by his people; and thus the language of Nephi began to be taught among all the people of the Lamanites.

Mo 24-180

IV. THE GIFT OF TONGUES

(The following quotation may mean that Nephi II and his brother, Lehi II, had the gift of tongues given them so that their words could be understood by the Lamanites.)

18. And it came to pass that Nephi and Lehi did preach unto the Lamanites with such great power and authority, for they had power and authority given unto them that they might speak, and they also had what they should speak given unto them—

19. Therefore they did speak unto the great astonishment of the Lamanites,

H 5-370

PART II

VOCABULARY

A few ancient words appear to be used in the Book of Mormon in their original, untranslated form.

I. JAREDITE WORDS FOUND IN THE BOOK OF MORMON

19. ---and there were elephants and cureloms and cumons; all of which were useful unto man, and more especially the elephants and cureloms and cumoms. E 9-494

3. And they did also carry with them deseret, which, by interpretation, is a honey bee; E 2-480

8. And it came to pass that he came to the waters of Ripliancum, which, by interpretation, is large, or to exceed all; E 15-508

1. ---[the brother of Jared] went forth unto the mount, which they called the mount Shelem, because of its exceeding height, E 3-483

30. For the brother of Jared said unto the mountain Zerin, Remove—and it was removed. E 12-502

II. ANCIENT NEPHITE WORDS FOUND IN THE BOOK OF MORMON

23. And the Lord said: I will prepare unto my servant Gazelem, a stone, which shall shine forth in darkness unto light, that I may discover unto my people who serve me, that I may discover unto them the works of their brethren, yea, their secret works, their works of darkness, and wickedness and abominations. A 37-290

5. ---And we beheld the sea, which we called Irreantum, which, being interpreted, is many waters. 1N 17-34

3. And now, my son, I have somewhat to say concerning the thing which our fathers call a ball, or director—or our fathers called it Liahona, which is being interpreted, a compass. A 37-291

CHART 16

SOME ANCIENT WORDS USED IN THE BOOK OF MORMON

FROM THE JAREDITES

Cumoms and Cureloms	—Useful animals to the Jaredites
Deseret	—Honey Bee
Ripliancum	—Large, or exceeding all (great waters)
Shelem	—Exceedingly high (a mountain)
Zerin	—Name of a Mountain

FROM THE NEPHITES

Gazelem	—The name of the “Seer Stone?” (or the name of the “Seer?”)
Irreantum	—Many waters (the sea)
Liahona	—Compass
Neas	—A food, probably grain
Onidah	—Place of arms (fortress)
*Rabbanah	—Powerful or great king
*Raca	—A derogatory term (Example: knave or fool)
*Rahab	—Meaning (?)
Rameumptom	—Holy platform (a small pyramid?)
Sheum	—A food, probably grain
Ziff	—A metal, probably bronze or tin

*Words also found in the Bible under Isaiah

5. ---therefore---they fled to Onidah, to the place of arms.

A 47-818

13. And one of the king's servants said unto him, Rabbanah, which is, being interpreted, powerful or great king, considering their kings to be powerful;

A 18-241

22. But I say unto you, that whosoever is angry with his brother shall be in danger of his judgment. And whosoever shall say to his brother, Raca, shall be in danger of the council; and whosoever shall say, Thou Fool, shall be in danger of hell fire.

3N 12-425

13. For they had a place built up in the center of their synagogue, a place for standing, which was high above the head; and the top thereof would only admit one person.

21. Now the place was called by them Rameumpton, which, being interpreted, is the holy stand.

A 81-274

9. ---and with neas, and with sheum, and with seeds--- Mo 9-152

8. ---and of all manner of precious things, of gold, and of silver, and of iron, and of brass, and of ziff, and of copper;

Mo 11-156

PART III

WRITING

See Chapter II, and Chapter XVII, Part IV
for more information concerning the ancient
written records.

I. VARIOUS TYPES OF WRITING AND RECORDS

1. *FROM THE ANCIENT JAREDITES.* 20. ---there was a large stone brought unto him [[Mosiah I] with engravings on it;

21. And they [the engravings] gave an account of one Coriantumr [a Jaredite], O 1-181

9. And for a testimony that the things that they had said are true, they [some Nephite explorers] brought twenty-four plates which are filled with engravings, and they are of pure gold. [The Jaredite plates of the Book of Ether] Mo 8-150

4. And it came to pass that he [Coriantumr] wrote an epistle unto Shiz, desiring him that he would spare the people, E 15-507

2. *FROM THE ANCIENT SCRIPTURES.* 10. ---Lehi, took the records which were engraven upon the plates of brass, [containing the ancient holy scripture], and he did search them from the beginning.

11. And he beheld that they did contain the five books of Moses, which gave an account of the creation of the world,

12. And also a record of the Jews from the beginning,

13. And also the prophecies of the holy prophets 1N 5-10

1. [From the Brass Plates] Moreover, the word of the Lord said unto me [Isaiah]: Take thee a great roll, and write in it with a man's pen, 2N 18-80

8. And now I [Jacob, brother of Nephi I,] write some of the words of Isaiah, that whoso of my people shall see these words may lift up their hearts and rejoice for all men. 2N 11-74

3. *FROM THE PEOPLE OF LEHI.* 27. And it came to pass that when my father beheld the things which were written upon the ball [the compass, or Liahona which directed Lehi and his group to the promised land], he did fear and tremble exceedingly,

29. And there was also written upon them [the pointers in the ball] a new writing, which was plain to be read, which did give us understanding concerning the ways of the Lord; 1N 16-32

2. I am Amulek: I am the son of Giddonah, who was the son of Ishmael, who was a descendant of Aminadi; and it was the same Aminadi who interpreted the writing which was upon the wall of the temple, which was written by the finger of God. A 10-219

17. ---Behold, I [Nephi] make an abridgment of the record of my father, [Lehi] upon plates which I have made with mine own hands; 1N 1-2

4. *FROM THE PEOPLE OF NEPHI.* 32. And now, behold, we have written this record according to our knowledge, in the characters which are called among us the reformed Egyptian, being handed down and altered by us, according to our manner of speech.

33. And if our plates had been sufficiently large we should have written in Hebrew;

34. But the Lord knoweth the things which we have written, and also that none other people knoweth our language. Mn 9-478

30. And it came to pass that the Lord God said unto me [Nephi]: Make other plates; and thou shalt engraven many things upon them which are good in my sight, for the profit of my people. 2N 6-62

23. [When Moroni was told that the plates would come forth in the last days, he said:]---Lord, the Gentiles will mock at these things, because of our weakness in writing; for Lord thou hast made us mighty in word by faith, but thou hast not made us mighty in writing; E 12-501

(*Various phases and uses of writing among the Nephites.*) 8. And it came to pass that he [king Benjamin] began to speak to his people from the tower; and they could not all hear his words because of the greatness of the multitude; therefore he caused that the words which he spake should be written and sent forth among those that were not under the sound of his voice, that they might also receive his words. Mo 2-136

4. Therefore king Mosiah sent again among the people; yea, even a written word sent he among the people. Mo 29-191

12. Now behold, all those engravings which were in the possession of Helaman were written and sent forth among the children

of men throughout all the land, save it were those parts which had been commanded by Alma should not go forth. A 63-359

4. But he [Alma I] fled from before them [the wicked priests], and hid himself that they found him not. And he being concealed for many days did write all the words which Abinadi [the prophet] had spoken. Mo 17-166

33. And it came to pass when Alma had heard these words he wrote them down that he might have them, and that he might judge the people of that church according to the commandments of God. Mo 26-186

19. ---[Moroni] went forth among the people, waving the rent part of his garment in the air, that all might see the writing which he had written upon the rent part, A 46-310

52. And Korihor put forth his hand and wrote, saying: I know that I am dumb, for I cannot speak; and I know that nothing save it were the power of God could bring this upon me; A 30-273

5. *FROM THE LAMANITES.* (*Nothing is said of records kept among the Lamanites, and little is said about writing among the Lamanites in the Book of Mormon. However, since many Nephites dissented and went among the Lamanites, there was probably some writing known.*) 6. But they [the people of Amulon, Nephites] taught them [Lamanites] that they should keep their record, and that they might write one to another. Mo 24-181

4. ---the king of the Lamanites sent an epistle unto me, which gave unto me to know that they were preparing to come again to battle against us. Mn 3-464

6. OTHER SOURCES OF WRITING AND RECORDS.

26. And also others who have been, to them hath he [the Lord] shown all things, and they have written them; and they are sealed up to come forth in their purity, according to the truth which is in the lamb, in the own due time of the Lord, unto the house of Israel. 1N 14-27

25. For behold, out of the books which have been written, shall this people be judged, for by them shall their works be known unto men.

26. And behold, all things are written by the Father; therefore out of the books which shall be written shall the world be judged. 3N 28-451

22. Wherefore, these things shall go from generation to generation as long as the earth shall stand; ---and the nations who shall possess them shall be judged of them according to the words which are written. 2N 25-91

PART IV

WISDOM AND KNOWLEDGE

1. THE SOURCE OF ALL KNOWLEDGE IS GOD

13. Come unto me, O ye Gentiles, and I will show unto you the greater things, the knowledge which is hid up because of unbelief. E 4-486

8. And he that will contend against the word of the Lord, let him be accursed; and he that shall deny these things, let him be accursed; for unto them will I show no greater things, A 22-252

6. For the Lord said unto me: They [certain of the ancient records] shall not go forth unto the Gentiles until the day that they shall repent of their iniquity, and become clean before the Lord.

7. And in that day that they shall exercise faith in me, saith the Lord, even as the brother of Jared did, that they may become sanctified in me, then will I manifest unto them the things which the brother of Jared saw, even to the unfolding unto them all my revelations, saith Jesus Christ, the Son of God, the Father of the Heavens and of the earth, and all things that in them are. E 4-485

16. ---If thou desireth this thing, if you wilt bow down before God, yea, if thou wilt repent of all thy sins, and will bow down before God, and call on his name in faith, believing that ye shall receive, then shalt thou receive the hope which thou desirest. E 4-485

25. And whosoever shall believe in my name, doubting nothing, unto him will I confirm all my words, even unto the ends of the earth. Mn 9-477

II. WORLDLY WISDOM vs. TRUE KNOWLEDGE

8. Behold, great and marvelous are the works of the Lord. How unsearchable are the depths of the mysteries of him; and it is impossible that man should find out all his ways. And no man knoweth of his ways save it be revealed unto him; wherefore, brethren, despise not the revelations of God.

9. For behold, by the power of his word man came upon the face of the earth, which earth was created by the power of his word. Wherefore, if God being able to speak and the world was, and to speak and man was created, O then, why not able to command the earth, or the workmanship of his hands upon the face of it, according to his will and pleasure?

10. Wherefore, brethren, seek not to counsel the Lord, but to take counsel from his hand. For behold, ye yourselves know that he counseleth in wisdom, and in justice, and in great mercy, over all his works. J 4-114

9. And now, my son, I have told you this that ye may learn wisdom, that ye may learn of me that there is no other way or means whereby man can be saved, only in and through Christ. Behold, he is the life and the light of the world. Behold, he is the word of truth and righteousness. A 88-292

28. O that cunning plan of the evil one! O the vainness, and the frailties, and the foolishness of men! When they are learned they think they are wise, and they hearken not unto the counsel of God, for they set it aside, supposing they know of themselves, wherefore, their wisdom is foolishness and it profiteth them not. And they shall perish.

29. But to be learned is good if they hearken unto the counsels of God. 2N 9-69

7. For the things which some men esteem to be of great worth, both to the body and soul, others set at naught and trample under their feet. Yea, even the very God of Israel do men trample under their feet; I say, trample under their feet but I would speak in other words—they set him at naught, and hearken not to the voice of his counsels. 1N 19-41

20. And [in the last days] the Gentiles are lifted up in the pride of their eyes---that they have built many churches; nevertheless, they put down the power and miracles of God, and preach up unto themselves their own wisdom and their own learning, that they may get gain and grind upon the face of the poor. 2N 26-94

III. "BOASTING" OF KNOWLEDGE IS A FORM OF WICKEDNESS

11. See that ye are not lifted up unto pride; yea, see that ye do not boast in your own wisdom, nor of your much strength. A 88-293

IV. "TRUTH" IS "HARD" ON THE WICKED

11. And they that will harden their hearts, to them is given the lesser portion of the word [of God] until they know nothing concerning his mysteries; and then they are taken captive by the devil, and led by his will down to destruction. Now this is what is meant by the chains of hell.

A 12-225

7. ---and I am left to mourn because of the unbelief, and the wickedness, and the ignorance, and the stiffneckedness of men; for they will not search knowledge, nor understand great knowledge, when it is given unto them in plainness, even as plain as word can be.

2N 82-106

20. O how marvelous are the works of the Lord, and how long doth he suffer with his people; yea, and how blind and impenetrable are the understandings of the children of men; for they will not seek wisdom, neither do they desire that she should rule over them!

21. Yea, they are as a wild flock which fleeth from the shepherd, and scattereth, and are driven, and are devoured by the beasts of the forest.

Mo 8-151

2. And it came to pass that I [Nephi] beheld my brethren, and they were disputing one with another concerning the things which my father [Lehi] had spoken unto them.

3. For he truly spake many great things unto them, which were hard to be understood, save a man should inquire of the Lord; and they being hard in their hearts, therefore they did not look unto the Lord as they ought.

1N 15-28

2. And it came to pass that I [Nephi] said unto them [his brothers] that I knew that I had spoken hard things against the wicked, according to the truth; and the righteous have I justified, and testified that they should be lifted up at the last day; *wherefore, the guilty taketh the truth to be hard, for it cutteth them to the very center.*

1N 16-81

PART V

SCIENTIFIC MATERIAL PRESENTED IN THE BOOK OF MORMON

(For subject matter pertaining to anthropology, botany, and zoology, see Chapter X. For archaeology and engineering, see Chapter XI.)

I. THE CALENDAR—THE COMPUTING OF TIME

1. *GOD'S TIME.* 8. Now whether there is more than one time appointed for men to rise it mattereth not; for all do not die at once, and this mattereth not; all is as one day with God, and time only is measured unto men. A 40-295

2. *EACH NEPHITE EPOCH WAS GIVEN A SPECIALIZED TIME COUNT.* (*Time was counted at first from the date that Lehi left Jerusalem.*) 19. For according to the words of the prophets, the Messiah cometh in six hundred years from the time that my father left Jerusalem; 2N 25-91

(*Time was also counted from the beginning of the reign of the Judges.*) 1. Now it came to pass in the thirtieth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi, --- A 59-247

(*Time was also counted from the birth of Christ.*) 6. Behold, four hundred years have passed away since the coming of our Lord and Savior. M 8-472

(*Upon occasions, all time counts were correlated.*) 5. And also an hundred years had passed away since the days of Mosiah, who was king over the people of the Nephites. [A hundred years' reign by judges]

6. And six hundred and nine years had passed away since Lehi left Jerusalem.

7. And nine years had passed away from the time when the sign was given, which was spoken of by the prophets, that Christ should come into the world.

8. Now the Nephites began to reckon their time from this period when the sign was given, or from the coming of Christ;

3N 2-402

3. UNITS OF NEPHITE TIME. (*The Nephites divided their time into segments.*)

(Hours) 14. ---And for the space of three hours did the Lord talk with the brother of Jared. [Jaredite] E 2-481

19. And it came to pass that when the thunderings---did cease—for behold, they did last for about the space of three hours; and it was said by some that the time was greater; 3N 8-416

(Days) 21. Cry unto him in your houses, yea, over all your household, both morning, mid-day, and evening. A 34-282

11. And thus they were driven forth, three hundred and forty and four days upon the water. E 6-488

(Weeks) 11. And moreover, I would ask, do ye suppose that ye must not worship God only once in a week? A 32-277

(Months) 1. And now it came to pass in the eleventh month of the nineteenth year, on the tenth day of the month, --- A 49-318

(Years) 4. And we did sojourn for the space of many years, yea, even eight years in the wilderness. 1N 17-34

II. ASTRONOMY AND PHYSICS

44. ---all things denote there is a God; yea, even the earth, and all things that are upon the face of it, yea, and its motion, yea, and also all the planets which move in their regular form do witness that there is a Supreme Creator. A 30-272

(*Phenomena at the time of Christ's appearance on the Western Hemisphere, about 34 A. D.*) 3. And behold, this will I [Samuel, the Lamanite] give unto you for a sign at the time of his coming; for behold, there shall be great lights in heaven, inso-much that in the night before he cometh there shall be no darkness, inso-much that it shall appear unto man as if it were day.

4. Therefore, there shall be one day and a night and a day, as if it were one day and there were no night; and this shall be unto you for a sign; for ye shall know of the rising of the sun and also of its setting;---and it shall be the night before he [Christ] is born.

5. And behold, there shall a new star arise, such an one as ye never have beheld; and this also shall be a sign unto you.

6. And behold this is not all, there shall be many signs and wonders in heaven. H 14-398

15. And thus, according to his word the earth goeth back, and it appeareth unto man that the sun standeth still; H 12-388

III. GEOLOGY AND PHYSICS

1. *THE GREAT CATACLYSM.* (*At the time of the crucifixion of Christ, just prior to his appearance upon the Western Hemisphere, a great geological disturbance took place which changed the "face" of the "Promised Land." See in addition, Chapter XII, Part III, Section III, and Appendix C, Part V.*) 21. Yea, at the time that he [Christ] shall yield up the ghost there shall be thunderings and lightnings for the space of many hours, and the earth shall shake and tremble; and the rocks which are upon the face of this earth, which are both above the earth and beneath, which ye know at this time are solid, or the more part of it is one solid mass, shall be broken up;

22. Yea, they shall be rent in twain, and shall ever after be found in seams and in cracks, and in broken fragments upon the face of the whole earth, yea, both above the earth and beneath.

23. And behold, there shall be great tempests, and there shall be many mountains laid low, like unto a valley, and there shall be many places which are now called valleys which shall become mountains, whose height is great. [A prophecy of Samuel, the Lamanite.] H 14-394

(*The above prophecy is fulfilled.*) 19. ---nevertheless, all these terrible things were done in about the space of three hours—and then behold, there was darkness upon the face of the land.

20. And it came to pass that there was thick darkness upon all the face of the land, insomuch that the inhabitants thereof who had not fallen could feel the vapor of darkness;

21. And there could be no light, because of the darkness, neither candles, neither torches; neither could there be fire kindled with their fine and exceedingly dry wood, so that there could not be any light at all;

22. And there was not any light seen, neither fire, nor glimmer, neither the sun, nor the moon, nor the stars, for so great were the mists of darkness which were upon the face of the land.

23. And it came to pass that it did last for the space of three days that there was no light seen; and there was great mourning and howling and weeping among all the people continually; 3N 8-416

[For a description of the cities destroyed, see Appendix C, Part V.]

2. THE POWER OF THE WORD OF GOD. (*See Chapter XIII, Part II, Section I*) 11. Yea, by the power of his voice doth the whole earth shake;

13. Yea, and if he say unto the earth—Move—it is moved.

H 12-388

3. WIND AND OCEAN CURRENTS. (*Mention is made of the wind and ocean currents in the Jaredite migration, about 2700 B.C.*)

5. And it came to pass that the Lord God caused that there should be a furious wind blow upon the face of the waters, towards the promised land; and thus they were tossed upon the waves of the sea before the wind.

6. And it came to pass that they were many times buried in the depths of the sea, because of the mountain waves which broke upon them.

11. And thus they were driven forth, three hundred and forty and four days upon the water.

E 6-487

IV. MEDICINE

40. And there were some who died with fevers, which at some seasons of the year were very frequent in the land—but not so much so with fevers, because of the excellent qualities of the many plants and roots which God had prepared to remove the cause of diseases, to which men were subject by the nature of the climate—

A 46-313

24. ---I immediately gave orders that my men who had been wounded should be taken from among the dead, and caused that their wounds should be dressed.

A 57-343

24. There were about fifty who were wounded, who had been exposed to the arrows of the Lamanites through the pass, but they were shielded by their shields, and their breastplates, and their head-plates, insomuch that their wounds were upon their legs, many of which were very severe.

A 49-320

18. And it came to pass that Amalickiah caused that one of his servants should administer poison by degrees to Lehonti, that he died.

A 47-314



CHAPTER X

*TYPES OF HUMAN, ANIMAL, AND PLANT LIFE FOUND IN THE "PROMISED LAND" (The Western Hemisphere)

The question as to whether certain forms of plant and animal life were native to the Western Hemisphere or were transported from other regions, has been a subject of much controversy among anthropologists since the discovery of America. The *Book of Mormon* has something to say on this subject and reveals other interesting data concerning the biology of this hemisphere in ancient times.

The reader should keep in mind that since the exact location of the *Book of Mormon* lands has not yet been fixed, there is the possibility that migratory groups other than those mentioned in the *Book* arrived on the Western Hemisphere and settled sites not listed in the *Book*. It is quite possible that the American Indian as we know him today is the result of the intermingling of these various peoples.

When the *Book of Mormon* was published in 1830, the animal life which was mentioned in its pages was the subject of much discussion. According to popular understanding at that time, there were no elephants upon this hemisphere in ancient times. It was generally understood also that there were no horses upon this hemisphere until the Spaniards brought them. Many attacks were made upon the *Book of Mormon* by its critics, because it gave an account of the use of horses and elephants by the ancient Jaredites. Since 1830, however, the bones of both horses and elephants have been found upon this hemisphere; and what is more important, many of these bones have been found in close proximity with those of early man.

*For key to reference symbols, see page 2.

PART I

SOURCE OF MAN—AS PRESERVED IN THE RELIGIOUS TRADITION OF THE BOOK OF MORMON

With special reference to the source
of the people of the Western Hemisphere
(See A 42-298, verses 2-28)

I. THE CREATION

15. Behold, I am Jesus Christ, the Son of God. I created the heavens and the earth, and all things that in them are. I was with the Father from the beginning. 3N 9-418

10. ---Yea, he is that Great Spirit, and he created all things both in heaven and in earth. A 22-252

3. ---the first part of this record [the Book of Ether]---speaks concerning the creation of the world, and also of Adam, and an account from that time even to the great tower, and whatsoever things transpired among the children of men until that time, E 1-478

18. ---[And concerning the temptation of Eve, Lucifer said;] Partake of the forbidden fruit, and ye shall not die, but ye shall be as God, knowing good and evil.

19. And after Adam and Eve had partaken of the forbidden fruit they were driven out of the garden of Eden, to till the earth. [For more information concerning the "fall of man," see Chapter XIII, Part II.]

20. And they have brought forth children; yea, even the family of all the earth. 2N 2-54

36. Behold, the Lord hath created the earth that it should be inhabited; and he hath created his children that they should possess it. 1N 17-36

34. ---I [Ammon] am a man; and man in the beginning was created after the image of God, A 18-248

9. For behold, by the power of his word man came upon the face of the earth, which earth was created by the power of his word. Wherefore, if God being able to speak and the world was, and to

speaking and man was created, O then, why not able to command the earth, or the workmanship of his hands upon the face of it, according to his will and pleasure?
J 4-114

II. THE FLOOD

2. ---he truly told them of all things, from the beginning of man; and that after the waters had receded from off the face of this land [the Western Hemisphere] it became a choice land above all other lands, a chosen land of the Lord; wherefore the Lord would have that all men should serve him who dwell upon the face thereof;
E 13-508

9. For this, the waters of Noah unto me, for as I have shown that the waters of Noah should not more go over the earth, so have I sworn that I would not be wroth with thee.
3N 23-445

22. Yea, and I say unto you that if it were not for the prayers of the righteous, who are now in the land, that ye would even now be visited with utter destruction; yet it would not be by flood, as were the people in the days of Noah, but it would be by famine, and by pestilence, and the sword.
A 10-220

III. THE FALL OF THE "GREAT TOWER" AND THE CONFUSION OF TONGUES

3. ---an-account---[of] the great tower,
E 1-478

28. And also it is that same being [the devil] who put it into the hearts of the people to build a tower sufficiently high that they might get to heaven.
H 6-375

33. ---Jared came forth with his brother and their families, with some others and their families, from the great tower at the time the Lord confounded the language of the people, ---
E 1-479

IV. THE EXODUS

(*The migration of the Israelites from Egypt.*) 34. I am the Lord thy God, who hath brought thee out of the land of Egypt, out of the house of bondage.
Mo 12-160

12. Yea, I have always remembered the captivity of my fathers;
A 29-268

20. ---And the Lord God liveth that brought Israel up out of the land of Egypt, ---
2N 25-91

40. ---Behold, he loved our fathers, ---wherefore he did bring them out of the land of Egypt.
1N 17-87

10. ---[And]---our fathers, ---were led out of bondage,
1N 19-41

19. Therefore, lift up your heads, and rejoice, and put your trust in God, in that God who was the God of Abraham, and Isaac, and Jacob; and also, that God who brought the children of Israel out of the land of Egypt, and caused that they should walk through the Red Sea on dry ground, and fed them with manna that they might not perish in the wilderness; and many more things did he do for them.
Mo 7-14S

27. But ye know that the Egyptians were drowned in the Red Sea, who were the armies of Pharaoh.

29. Yea, and ye also know that Moses, by his word according to the power of God which was in him, smote the rock, and there came forth water, that the children of Israel might quench their thirst.

30. ---[Yet] they hardened their hearts and blinded their minds, and reviled against Moses and against the true and living God.

32. And after they crossed the river Jordan he did make them mighty unto the driving out of the children of the land, yea, unto the scattering them to destruction.

33. And now, do ye suppose that the children---who were driven out by our fathers, ---were righteous? Behold, I say unto you, Nay.

35. Behold, the Lord esteemeth all flesh in one; he that is righteous is favored of God. ---and the Lord did curse the land against them, and bless it unto our fathers---unto their obtaining power over it.
1N 17-35

14. And it came to pass that my father, Lehi, also found upon the plates of brass a genealogy of his fathers; wherefore he knew that he was a descendant of Joseph; yea, even that Joseph who was sold into Egypt,
1N 6-10

23. And I [Nephi] did read many things unto them which were written in the book of Moses; ---that I might more fully persuade them to believe in the Lord
1N 19-48

V. THE FALL OF JERUSALEM

1. *LEHI PROPHESED OF THE FALL OF JERUSALEM.*

18. Therefore, I would that ye should know, that after the Lord had shown so many marvelous things unto my father, Lehi, yea,

concerning the destruction of Jerusalem, behold he [Lehi] went forth among the people, and began to prophesy and to declare unto them concerning the things which he had both seen and heard.

19. And it came to pass that the Jews did mock him because of the things which he testified of them; 1N 1-2

2. LEHI AND HIS PEOPLE DEPARTED FROM JERUSALEM. (*Before the fall of Jerusalem, Lehi was warned by the Lord. Therefore, he took his family and departed out of Jerusalem.*) 4. For, behold, said he [Lehi], I have seen a vision, in which I know that Jerusalem is destroyed; and had we remained in Jerusalem we should also have perished. 2N 1-49

3. And he [Lehi] also spake unto them concerning the land of promise, which they had obtained—how merciful the Lord had been in warning us that we should flee out of the land of Jerusalem. 2N 1-49

8. ---For behold, the Lord has shown me [Jacob] that those who were at Jerusalem, from whence we came have been slain and carried away captive. 2N 2-63

20. ---and no one knew it [that is, knew of the Western Hemisphere and the people upon it] save it were [Christ] himself and those he brought out of the land [of the "Old World"]. 3N 5-410

36. ---Yea, blessed is the name of my God, who has been mindful of this people, who are a branch of the tree of Israel, and [who] had been lost from its body in a strange land; A 26-263

7. ---Wherefore, the Lord brought a remnant of the seed of Joseph [the people of Lehi] out of the land of Jerusalem, that he might be merciful unto the seed of Joseph.

8. Wherefore, the remnant of the house of Joseph shall be built upon this land; and it shall be a land of their inheritance; E 13-503

20. ---that same God has brought our fathers out of the land of Jerusalem, and has kept and preserved his people even until now; Mo 7-149

4. And then [at that time in the last days] shall the remnant of our seed know concerning us, how that we came out from Jerusalem, and that they are descendants of the Jews. 2N 30-102

PART II

PHYSICAL CHARACTERISTICS OF THE ANCIENT PEOPLE (Anthropology)

Certain characteristics of the ancient people of the *Book of Mormon*, pertaining to race, and population distribution. (See Chapter VIII, Part I, for "Classes" of people, and for a discussion of "Racial Prejudice.")

I. RACIAL ANATOMY AND OTHER DISTINGUISHING FEATURES

1. *THE JAREDITES.* (*Some members of the race of the Jaredites seem to have been of exceedingly large stature. See Chapter IV, Part I.*) 26. ---And they were large and mighty men as to the strength of men. E 15-509

10. ---Lib was a man of great stature, more than any other man among all the people. E 14-506

(*Size of Jaredite families.*) 2. ---And he [Orihah] begat sons and daughters; yea, he begat thirty and one, among whom were twenty and three sons--- E 7-489

(*Longevity of Jaredites.*) 24. ---And it came to pass that Coriantum took to wife, in his old age, a young maid, and begat sons and daughters; wherefore he lived until he was an hundred and forty and two years old. E 9-495

2. *THE NEPHITES.* (*The Nephites were descendants of Lehi, who came with his people out of Jerusalem, and called themselves Jews. They were, however, descendants of Joseph through Manasseh. See Chapter IV, Part II, Section I.*) 8. I have charity for the Jew—I say Jew, because I mean them from whence I came. 2N 33-107

6. But behold I, Nephi, have not taught my children after the manner of the Jews; but behold, I, of myself, have dwelt at Jerusalem, wherefore I know concerning the regions round about; and I have made mention unto my children concerning the judgments of God, which hath come to pass among the Jews, 2N 25-90

4. [In the last days]---shall the remnant of our seed know concerning us, how that we came out from Jerusalem, and that they

are descendants of the Jews. [For an account of the fate of the Nephites between their "historic epoch" and the Spanish Conquest—see the following account concerning the Lamanites.]

3. *THE LAMANITES.* (*The Lamanites were composed of groups who had branched off from the Nephites.*) 6. And the skins of the Lamanites were dark, according to the mark which was set upon their fathers, which was a curse upon them because of their transgression [against God] and their rebellion against their brethren, who consisted of Nephi, Jacob, and Joseph, and Sam, who were just and holy men.

7. ---therefore they were cursed; and the Lord God set a mark upon them, yea, upon Laman and Lemuel, and also the sons of Ishmael, and Ishmaelitish women.

9. And it came to pass that whosoever did mingle his seed with that of the Lamanites did bring the same curse upon his seed.

A 3-201

13. And when that great day cometh [the end of the Nephite culture]---the seed of those who are now numbered among the people of Nephi, shall no more be numbered among the people of Nephi.

14. But whosoever remaineth, and is not destroyed in that great and dreadful day, shall be numbered among the Lamanites, and shall become like unto them, all, save it be a few who shall be called the disciples of the Lord;

A 45-308

15. And also---the seed of this people [Nephites]---shall become a dark, a filthy, and a loathsome people---

16. For behold, the Spirit of the Lord hath already ceased to strive with their fathers; and they are without Christ and God in the world; and they are driven about as chaff before the wind.

Mn 5-468

(*And so the Nephites as a culture disintegrated; and all became a dark people, or all became Lamanites.*)

II. RACIAL COLORS

(*There was a light and dark race upon the Western Hemisphere.*)

21. [The Lamanites were dark because of a curse placed upon them by the Lord.]---For behold, they had hardened their hearts against him [the Lord], that they had become like unto a flint; wherefore, as they were white, and exceeding fair and delightsome, that they might not be enticing unto my people [the Nephites] the Lord God did cause a skin of blackness to come upon them.

23. And cursed shall be the seed of him that mixeth with their seed; for they shall be cursed even with the same cursing. And the Lord spake it, and it was done. 2N 5-61

14. ---[But] it came to pass that those Lamanites who had united with the Nephites were numbered among the Nephites;

15. And their curse was taken from them, and their skin became white like unto the Nephites;

16. And their young men and their daughters became exceedingly fair, and they were numbered among the Nephites, and were called Nephites. 3N 2-402

8. O my brethren, I fear that unless ye [the Nephites] shall repent of your sins that their [the Lamanites'] skins will be whiter than yours, when ye shall be brought with them before the throne of God. J 3-112

5. And the gospel of Jesus Christ shall be declared [in the last days] among them [the Lamanites]; wherefore, they shall be restored unto the knowledge of their fathers, and also to the knowledge of Jesus Christ, which was had among their fathers.

6. And then shall they rejoice; for they shall know that it is a blessing unto them from the hand of God; and their scales of darkness shall begin to fall from their eyes; and many generations shall not pass away among them, save they shall be a white and delightsome people. 2N 30-102

15. And I [Nephi I] beheld the Spirit of the Lord, that it was upon the Gentiles [in the "last days"], and they did prosper and obtain the land for their inheritance; and I beheld that they were white and exceedingly fair and beautiful, like unto my people [the Nephites] before they were slain. 1N 13-22

III. POPULATION DISTRIBUTION ON THE "PROMISED LAND"

1. *JAREDITE POPULATION.* 19. And the brother of Jared began to be old, and saw that he must soon go down to the grave; wherefore he said unto Jared: Let us gather together our people that we may number them, that we may know of them what they will desire of us before we go down to our graves.

21. And it came to pass that they did number their people;

E 6-488

20. And they built a great city by the narrow neck of land, by the place where the sea divides the land.

21. ---And the whole face of the land northward was covered with inhabitants. E 10-497

2. *NEPHITE POPULATION.* 1. And it came to pass that the angel said unto me: Look, and behold thy seed, and also the seed of thy brethren. And I looked and beheld the land of promise; and I beheld multitudes of people, yea, even as it were in number as many as the sand of the sea.

3. ---I beheld many cities, yea, even that I did not number them. 1N 12-20

20. And thus it did come to pass that the people of Nephi began to prosper again in the land, and began to build up their waste places, and began to multiply and spread, even until they did cover the whole face of the land, both on the northward and on the southward, from the sea west to the sea east. H 11-386

2. And there were a great number, even so many that they did not number them; for they had multiplied exceedingly and waxed great in the land. Mo 2-136

3. *LAMANITE POPULATION.* 6. And they [the Lamanites] were scattered upon much of the face of the land, ---And they were exceeding more numerous than were they of the Nephites; Jm 1-128

PART III

ANIMALS AND PLANTS MENTIONED IN THE BOOK OF MORMON

(See page 252 for a list of plants and animals)

I. ANIMALS

1. *ANIMALS AT THE TIME OF THE JAREDITES.* (*The Jaredites hunted in Zarahemla. See "Hunting," Chapter VIII, Part II, Section I, Unit 2.*) 41. Go to and gather together thy flocks, both male and female, of every kind; E 1-480

3. And they did also carry with them deseret, which, by interpretation, is a honey bee; and thus they did carry with them swarms of bees, E 2-480

18. [Animals in the Western Hemisphere at the time of the Jaredites] And also all manner of cattle, of oxen, and cows, and of sheep, and of swine, and of goats, and also many other kinds of animals which were useful for the food of man.

19. And they also had horses, and asses, and there were elephants and cureloms and cumoms; all of which were useful unto man, and more especially the elephants and cureloms and cumoms. E 9-494

19. ---Wherefore, they did go into the land southward, to hunt ---for the land was covered with animals of the forest. E 10-497

2. *ANIMALS AT THE TIME OF THE NEPHITES.* 11. And we began to raise flocks, and herds, and animals of every kind. 2N 5-6

25. And it came to pass that we did find upon the land of promise, as we journeyed in the wilderness, that there were beasts in the forests of every kind, both the cow and the ox, and the ass and the horse, and the goat and the wild goat, and all manner of wild animals, which were for the use of men. 1N 19-40

21. And it came to pass that the people of Nephi did till the land, and raise---flocks of herds, and flocks of all manner of cattle of every kind, and goats, and wild goats, and also many horses. E 1-127

22. ---and they had taken their horses, and their chariots, and their cattle, and all their flocks, and their herds, and their grain,

3N 8-405

44. ---[The Lamanites] did fight like dragons.

A 43-304

7. ---and they had a lamb-skin about their loins,

3N 4-406

2. ---yea, and [they]---shall be slain; and the vultures of the air, and the dogs, yea, and the wild beasts, shall devour their flesh.

Mo 12-158

3. ANIMALS—FROM ISAIAH AND THE BRASS PLATES.

12. And then shall the wold dwell with the lamb; and the leopard shall lie down with the kid, and the calf, and the young lion,

13. And the cow and the bear shall feed;---

2N 30-103

10. [From Christ's teachings] Or if he ask a fish, will he give him a serpent?

3N 14-425

9. ---Art thou not he that hath cut Rahab, and wounded the dragon?

2N 8-65

12. ---as a young lion, among flocks of sheep,

3N 21-441

II. FOODS AND PLANTS

1. *JAREDITE FOOD.* (See Chapter VIII, "Agricultural Customs." Also see Chapter XI, "Tools.") 1. Having all manner of fruit, and of grain,

E 9-494

3. ---and all manner of that which was upon the face of the land, seeds of every kind.

E 2-486

35. ---and there began to be fruit in the north countries round about.

E 9-496

2. *FOOD OF LEHI'S PEOPLE.* (Food used by the people en-route between Jerusalem and embarking—the location was probably in Arabia.) 11. And it came to pass that we did gather together whatsoever things we should carry into the wilderness, and all the remainder of our provisions which the Lord had given unto us; and we did take seed of every kind that we might carry into the wilderness.

1N 16-31

5. And we did come to the land which we called Bountiful, [in Arabia (?)], because of its much fruit and also wild honey; and all these things were prepared of the Lord that we might not perish. 1N 17-34

12. For the Lord had not hitherto suffered that we should make much fire, as we journeyed in the wilderness; for he said: I will make thy food become sweet, that ye cook it not.

2. And so great were the blessings of the Lord upon us, that while we did live upon raw meat in the wilderness, our women did give plenty of suck for their children, and were strong, yea, even like unto the men; 1N 17-34

3. *FOOD ON THE "PROMISED LAND."* (*Food cultivated from seeds brought from Jerusalem [and Arabia]; and also, food found to be existing upon the promised land.*) 1. And it came to pass that we had gathered together all manner of seeds of every kind, both of grain of every kind, and also of the seeds of fruit of every kind. 1N 8-13

24. And it came to pass that we did begin to till the earth, and we began to plant seeds; yea, we did put all our seeds into the earth, which we had brought from the land of Jerusalem. And it came to pass that they did grow exceedingly; wherefore, we were blessed in abundance. 1N 19-40

11. And the Lord was with us; and we did prosper exceedingly; for we did sow seed, and we did reap again in abundance. 2N 5-60

21. And it came to pass that the people of Nephi did till the land, and raise all manner of grain, and of fruit, Es 1-127

22. ---And behold, we at this time do pay tribute to the king of the Lamanites, to the amount of one half of our corn, and our barley, and even all our grain of every kind. Mo 7-149

9. And we began to till the ground, yea, even with all manner of seeds, with seeds of corn, and of wheat, and of barley, and with neas, and with sheum, and with seeds of all manner of fruits; Mo 9-152

12. They did raise grain in abundance, both in the north and in the south; and they did flourish exceedingly, both in the north and in the south. H 6-373

9. [Christ's teachings] Or what man is there of you, who, if his son ask bread, will give him a stone?

16. Ye shall know them by their fruits. Do men gather grapes of thorns, or figs of thistles? 3N 14-428

13. Verily, verily, I [Christ] say unto you, I give unto you to be the salt of the earth; but if the salt shall lose its savor wherewith shall the earth be salted? The salt shall be thenceforth good for nothing, but to be cast out and to be trodden under foot of men.
3N 12-424

4. *GRAPES, GRAPEVINES, AND WINE.* (*These are mentioned in the Book of Mormon during the time of the Nephites and the Lamanites.*) 15. And it came to pass that he planted vineyards round about in the land; and he built wine-presses, and made wine in abundance; and therefore he became a wine-bibber, and also his people.
Mo 11-156

10. ---and he [Limhi] sent the tribute of wine to the Lamanites;
Mo 22-177

10. ---Let us [the Lamanites are speaking] keep of our wine till we go against the Nephites to battle. But this saying only made them more desirous to drink of the wine;

32. And they [the Nephites] were thus cautious that no poison should be administered among them; for if their wine would poison a Lamanite it would also poison a Nephite; and thus they did try all their liquors.
A 55-335

16. Ye shall know them by their fruits. Do men gather grapes of thorns ---?
3N 14-428

4. ---my vineyard---brought forth wild grapes.
2N 15-77

50. ---buy wine and milk without money and without price.
2N 9-70

23. ---therefore, we are thus highly favored, for we have these glad tidings declared unto us in all parts of our vineyard. A 12-229

(*Christ initiates the sacrament.*) 7. But he truly gave unto them bread to eat, and also wine to drink.
3N 7-439

8. And it came to pass that when he said these words, he commanded his disciples that they should take of the wine of the cup and drink of it, and that they should also give unto the multitude that they might drink of it.
3N 18-434

5. *FOODS MENTIONED ON THE ANCIENT BRASS PLATES.* 4. What could have been done more to my vineyard that I have not done in it? Wherefore, when I looked that it should bring forth grapes it brought forth wild grapes. 2N 15-77

50. Come, my brethren, every one that thirsteth, come ye to the waters; and he that hath no money, come buy and eat; yea, come buy wine and milk without money and without price. 2N 9-70

15. Butter and honey shall he eat, that he may know to refuse the evil and to choose the good. 2N 17-80

19. ---God---fed them with manna that they might not perish in the wilderness; [the Exodus from Egypt] Mo 7-149

5. Behold, the field was ripe, and blessed are ye, for ye did thrust in the sickle, and did reap with your might, yea, all the day long did ye labor; and behold the number of your sheaves! And they shall be gathered into the garner, that they are not wasted. A 26-261

18. ---Satan desireth to have you, that he may sift you as wheat. 8N 18-435

CHART 17

A LIST OF ANIMALS AND PLANTS MENTIONED IN THE BOOK OF MORMON

ANIMALS OF THE JAREDITES

cattle	swine
oxen	goats
cows	horses
sheep	asses
elephants	cumoms
cureloms	wild animals

ANIMALS OF THE NEPHITES

cows	dogs
oxen	wild animals
asses	wild goats
horses	other animals
goats	(Dragons, serpents, fish
cattle	and lamb-skins)

FOODS (mentioned in the Nephite records and in the more ancient scriptures.)

fruits	bread
grain	grapes
wild honey	figs
corn	salt
barley	milk
neas	sheum



CHAPTER XI

*ARCHAEOLOGY

The clothing, artifacts, and architecture mentioned in the *Book of Mormon* as belonging to the ancient people of the Western Hemisphere.

The field of archaeology is ever widening in its scope: new discoveries are constantly being unearthed, and many serious students are turning to this form of scientific investigation. That the *Book of Mormon* has a place in the study of archaeology is one of the premises of this volume.

In this chapter, some of the archaeological traits of the ancient peoples of the *Book of Mormon* are presented, but no attempt is made to correlate the characteristics which distinguished their civilization with those of other ancient cultures. Such as subject, which offers sufficient material for another study, is being prepared by the author for later publication. In passing, it is interesting to note that many of the legends which are found among the American Indians have their parallels in incidents which occurred in the *Book of Mormon* (see Part III of this chapter).

The reader is reminded that the *Book of Mormon* was presented to the world in 1830—before the dawn of real archaeological enterprise in America. The *Book* has not only been able to maintain its position through archaeological controversies, but contains enough reserve material to challenge discoveries for centuries to come. An illustration of this is the question of the smelting of metals. The *Book of Mormon* gives examples that indicate that the ancient peoples mined, smelted, cast, and alloyed ores. Archaeologists have changed their viewpoint three times on the subject of the use of ore by the Pre-Columbian peoples: first, they expressed their opinion that the Indians did not smelt ore, but that they hammered the pure natural metal; then they suggested that the Indians (Peruvian) not only smelted ore, but that they also cast it (but maintained that alloys were accidental); finally, they admitted that certain Indians had definite formulas for the alloy of metals. This is but one of many indications which suggest the possibility that the *Book of Mormon* will in time “prove” itself through its archaeological foundation.

*For key to reference symbols, see page 2.

PART I

CLOTHING, TOOLS, AND OTHER ARTIFACTS USED BY THE ANCIENT PEOPLE OF THE BOOK OF MORMON

I. CLOTHING AND JEWELRY

1. *JAREDITES*. 24. And they did have silks, and fine-twined linen; and they did work all manner of cloth, that they might clothe themselves from their nakedness. E 10-498

17. Having all manner of---silks, and of fine linen, and of gold, and of silver, and of precious things. E 9-494

2. *THE NEPHITES*. 5. And I did cause that the women should spin, and toil, and work, and work all manner of fine linen, yea, and cloth of every kind, that we might clothe our nakedness; and thus we did prosper in the land— Mo 10-154

13. Behold their women did toil and spin, and did make all manner of cloth, of fine-twined linen and cloth of every kind, H 6-373

29. ---having abundance of all things whatsoever they stood in need---and of precious things, and abundance of silk and fine-twined linen, and all manner of good homely cloth. A 1-197

6. ---And their silks and fine-twined linen---they began to wear very costly apparel. A 4-203

28. Behold, O my God, their costly apparel and their ringlets, and their bracelets, and their ornaments of gold, and all their precious things which they are ornamented with; and behold, their hearts are set upon them, A 31-275

24. ---there began to be among them those who were were lifted up in pride, such as the wearing of costly apparel, and all manner of fine pearls, and of the fine things of the world. 4N 1-458

25. And except they repent in sackcloth and ashes, and cry mightily to the Lord their God, I will not hear their prayers, neither will I deliver them out of their afflictions; Mo 11-157

18. [From Isaiah] In that day the Lord will take away the bravery of their tinkling ornaments, and cauls, and round tires like the moon;

19. The chains and the bracelets, and the mufflers;

20. The bonnets, and the ornaments of the legs, and the headbands, and the tablets, and the ear-rings;

21. The rings, and nose jewels;

22. The changeable suits of apparel, and the mantles, and the wimples, and the crisping-pins;

23. The glasses, and the fine linen, and hoods, and the veils.
2N 15-76

31. But behold, ye shall examine him, and ye shall find blood upon his cloak.
H 9-383

3. *THE LAMANITES.* 8. ---they had their heads shaved that they were naked; and they were girded with a leathern girdle about their loins.
Mo 10-154

4. ---And the Amlicites were distinguished from the Nephites, for they had marked themselves with red in their foreheads after the manner of the Lamanites;
A 3-201

24. [From Isaiah and the Brass Plates] And it shall come to pass, instead of sweet smell there shall be stink; and instead of a girdle, a rent; and instead of well set hair, baldness; and instead of a stomacher, a girding sackcloth; burning instead of beauty.
2N 13-76

11. FURNITURE AND MISCELLANEOUS ARTICLES

6. And he [Riplakish] did erect him an exceedingly beautiful *throne*.
E 10-496

9. And he also built him a spacious palace, and a *throne* in the midst thereof, all of which was of fine wood and was ornamented with gold and silver and precious things.

11. And the *seats* which were set apart for the high priests, which were above all the other seats, he did ornament with pure gold; and he caused a breastwork to be built before them, that they might rest their bodies and their arms upon while they should speak lying and vain words to his people.
Mo 11-156

43. And it came to pass that his servants took him and carried him in unto his wife, and laid him upon a *bed*;
A 18-243

1. And it came to pass that after two days and two nights they were about to take his body and lay it in a *sepulchre*, which they had made for the purpose of burying their dead. A 19-248

1. ---Behold, they took the *cup*, M 5-511

23. The *glasses*, and the fine linen, [are “glasses” used as jewelry, or objects of utility?] 2N 13-76

17. ---even that they would hold water like unto a *dish*; E 2-482

4. ---many were brought before the *altar* of God, to call on his name and confess their sins before him. A 17-287

7. And it came to pass that he built an *altar* of stones, and made an offering unto the Lord. 1N 2-8

20. ---I saw the servant of Laban who had the *keys* of the treasury. 1N 4-8

15. Behold, do men light a *candle* and put it under a bushel? Nay, but on a *candlestick*, and it giveth light to all that are in the house; 3N 12-424

21. And there could be no light, ---neither *candles*, nor *torches*; neither could there be fire kindled with their *fine* and exceedingly *dry wood*, 3N 8-416

21. ---[Moroni] caused that they should prepare in haste strong *cords* and *ladders*, to be let down from the top of the wall into the inner part of the wall. A 62-355

22. ---they had taken their horses, and their *chariots*, ---and did march forth by the thousands [Note: the people “marched forth”—this may indicate that the chariots were few, or that the chariots were “litters” and carried on the shoulders.] 3N 3-405

5. ---and bindeth them down, and yoketh them with a *yoke* of iron--- 1N 13-22

III. METALS AND MONEY

1. *THE JAREDITES.* (*The Jaredites used metal.*) 23. And they did work in all manner of ore, and they did make gold, and silver, and iron, and brass, and all manner of metals; and they did dig it out of the earth; wherefore, they did cast up mighty heaps

of earth to get ore, of gold, and of silver, and of iron, and of copper. And they did work all manner of fine work. E 10-498

7. Wherefore he did obtain all his fine work, yea, even his gold he did cause to be refined in prison; and all manner of fine workmanship he did cause to be wrought in prison. E 10-496

9. Wherefore, he came to the hill Ephraim, and he did molten out of the hill, and made swords out of steel for those whom he had drawn away with him; E 7-490

(The Jaredites' metal was found by some exploring Nephites.)
9. And for a testimony that the things that they had said are true they have brought twenty-four plates which are filled with engravings, and they are of pure gold.

10. And behold, also, they have brought breastplates, which are large, and they are of brass and of copper, and are perfectly sound.

11. And again, they have brought swords, and the hilts thereof have perished, and the blades thereof were cankered with rust; Mo 8-151

2. *THE NEPHITES' METAL.* *(Metal used in the Old World by Lehi and his party before coming to the "Promised Land."—For metal used as money by the Nephites, see Chapter VIII, Part IV, Section IV, Unit 3.)* 4. And it came to pass that he [Lehi] departed into the wilderness [from Jerusalem]. And he left his house, and the land of his inheritance, and his gold, and his silver, and his precious things, and took nothing with him save it were his family, and provisions, and tents, and departed into the wilderness. [This statement suggests that little of the "Old World" art culture was transported to the "Promised Land," which was the Western Hemisphere.] 1N 2-3

12. And I, Nephi, had also brought the records which were engraven upon the plates of brass; and also the ball, or compass, 2N 5-60

18. ---I did break my bow, which was made of fine steel; 1N 16-32

9. And I said: Lord, whither shall I go that I may find ore to molten, that I may make tools to construct the ship after the manner which thou hast shown unto me?

10. And it came to pass that the Lord told me whither I should go to find ore, that I might make tools.

11. And it came to pass that I, Nephi, did make a bellows wherewith to blow the fire, of the skins of beasts; and after I had made a bellows---I did smite two stones together that I might make fire. 1N 17-34

(*The use of metal in the "Promised Land."*) 25. And it came to pass that we did find upon the land of promise, as we journeyed in the wilderness---all manner of ore, both of gold, and of silver, and of copper. 1N 18-40

15. And I did teach my people to build buildings, and to work in all manner of wood, and of iron, and of copper, and of brass, and of steel, and of gold, and of silver, and of precious ores, which were in great abundance. 2N 5-61

14. And I, Nephi, did take the sword of Laban, and after the manner of it did make many swords, lest by any means the people who were now called Lamanites should come upon us and destroy us; 2N 5-61

13. ---and he [King Benjamin] did fight with the strength of his own arm, with the sword of Laban. WoMn 1-133

12. And now behold, my brethren, this is the word which I declare unto you, that many of you have begun to search for gold, and for silver, and for all manner of precious ores, in the which this land, which is a land of promise unto you and to your seed, doth abound most plentifully. J 2-110

8. And we multiplied exceedingly, and spread upon the face of the land, and became exceedingly rich in gold, and in silver, and in precious things, and in fine workmanship of wood, in buildings, and in machinery, and also in iron and copper, and brass and steel making all manner of tools of every kind--- Jm 1-128

8. ---with fine work of wood, and all manner of precious things, of gold, and of silver, and of iron, and of brass, and of ziff, and of copper; Mo 11-156

9. And it came to pass that they became exceeding rich, both the Lamanites and the Nephites; and they did have an exceeding plenty of gold, and of silver, and of all manner of precious metals, both in the land south and in the land north.

11. And behold, there was all manner of gold in both these lands, and of silver, and of precious ore of every kind; and there were also curious workmen, who did work all kinds of ore and did refine it; and thus they did become rich. H 6-373

(*Migration of the people of Limhi with their metal.*) 12. And they had taken all their gold, and silver, and their precious things, which they could carry, and also their provisions with them, into the wilderness; and they pursued their journey. Mo 22-177

3. And he [King Noah had] laid a tax of one fifth part of all they possessed, a fifth part of their gold, and of their silver, and a

fifth part of their ziff, and of their copper, and of their brass and their iron; Mo 11-155

(*"Metal" used as figure of speech in quotations from the Brass Plates.*) 4. And I did it because I knew that thou art obstinate, and thy neck is an an iron sinew, and thy brow brass; 1N 20-43

19. For I will make my people with whom the Father hath covenanted, yea, I will make thy horn iron, and I will make thy hoofs brass. And thou shalt beat in pieces many people; ---And behold, I am he who doeth it. 3N 20-440

21. The rings, and nose jewels;

22. ---and the crisping-pins; 2N 18-76

4. ---and they shall *beat* their swords into plow-shares, and their spears into pruning-hooks. 2N 12-74

16. Behold, I have created the smith that bloweth the coals in the fire, and that bringeth forth an instrument for his work; 8N 22-445

3. *THE LAMANITES (The Lamanites used metal.)* 9. ---and they did have an exceeding plenty of gold, and of silver, and of all manner of precious metals. H 6-373

IV. WEAPONS AND ARMOR

1. *JAREDITES WEAPONS AND ARMOR.* 15. And it came to pass that when they were all gathered together, every one to the army which he would, with their wives and their children—both men women and children being armed with weapons of war, having shields, and breastplates, and head-plates, and being clothed after the manner of war— E 15-508

10. And behold, also, they have brought breastplates, which are large, and they are of brass and of copper, and are perfectly sound.

11. And again, they have brought swords--- Mo 8-151

2. *NEPHITE WEAPONS AND ARMOR.* 27. And they did make all manner of weapons of war--- E 10-498

(*SWORDS*). 14. And I Nephi, did take the sword of Laban, and after the manner of it did make many swords, 2N 5-61

13. ---and he [King Benjamin] did fight with the strength of his own arm, with the sword of Laban. WoMn 1-133

. 9. ---he [a dissenter] was wroth with Gideon, and drew his sword and began to smite him. A 1-195

33. ---And it came to pass that they [the Lamanite prisoners] did in a body run upon our swords, in the which, the greater number of them were slain; A 57-344

(*OTHER WEAPONS—bow and arrow, ax, cimeter, javelin, sling, stones, club, spear, dagger, dart, and quiver.*) 19. And it came to pass that we did travel for the space of many days, slaying food by the way, with our bows and our arrows and our stones and our slings.

18. ---I [Nephi] did break my bow, which was made of fine steel; 1N 16-32

16. And it came to pass that I did arm them with bows, and with arrows, with swords, and with cimeters, and with clubs, and with slings, and with all manner of weapons which we could invent, Mo 9-153

8. ---yea, the sharp pointed arrow, and the quiver, and the dart, and the javelin, Jm 1-128

8. ---with their numerous hosts, men armed with bows, and with arrows, and with swords, and with cimeters, and with stones, and with slings; [same weapons listed v. 12, A 2-199] Mo 10-154

7. Nevertheless they departed out of the land of Zarahemla, and took their swords, and their spears, and their bows, and their arrows, and their slings; A 17-237

36. ---he did find the king; and he did cast a javelin at him, which did pierce him near the heart. A 62-356

14. ---the Lamanites had gathered together an innumerable army of men, and armed them with swords, and with cimeters and with bows, and with arrows, and with head-plates, and with breast-plates, and with all manner of shields of every kind. H 1-360

9. And it came to pass that they did fall upon my people with the sword, and with the bow, and with the arrow, and with the ax, and with all manner of weapons of war. Mn 6-470

(*NEPHITE ARMOR—shields, bucklers, head-shields, arm-shields, breast-plates, head-plates, and thick garments.*) 7. And they

gathered themselves together again, and put on their armor, and went forth against the Lamanites to drive them out of their land.

Mo 1-174

26. ---And Gidgiddoni did cause that they should made weapons of war of every kind, and they should be strong with armor, and with shields, and with bucklers, after the manner of his instruction.

3N 3-405

19. And when the armies of the Lamanites saw that the people of Nephi, or that Moroni, had prepared his people with breastplates and with arm-shields, yea, and also shields to defend their heads, [Also verse 38]

A 48-302

44. ---Yea, they [the Lamanites] did fight like dragons, and many of the Nephites were slain by their hands, yea, for they did smite in two many of the head-plates, and they did pierce many of their breastplates, and they did smite off many of their arms.

A 43-304

3. *LAMANITE WEAPONS AND ARMOR.* (*The Lamanites copy the metal armor of the Nephites.*) 5. Now the heads of the Lamanites were shorn; and they were naked, save it were skin which was girded about their loins, and also their armor which was girded about them, and their bows, and their arrows, and their stones, and their slings, and so forth.

A 3-201

6. Now the leaders of the Lamanites had---prepared themselves with shields, and with breastplates [after the manner of the Nephites?]; and they had also prepared themselves with garments of skins, yea, very thick garments to cover their nakedness.

A 49-318

7. And it came to pass that they did come up to battle; ---and they were girded about after the manner of robbers; and they had a lamb-skin about their loins, and they were dyed in blood [or red dye?], and their heads were shorn, and they had head-plates upon them;

3N 4-406

4. *WAS THE ATOM BOMB PREDICTED?* 17.[The house of Israel in the "last days"] No weapon that is formed against thee shall prosper; and every tongue that shall rise against thee in judgment thou shalt condemn. This is the heritage of the servants of the Lord,

3N 22-446

18. Wherefore, as those who have been destroyed have been destroyed speedily; and the multitude of their terrible ones shall be as chaff that passeth away---yea, thus saith the Lord God: It shall be at an instant, suddenly—

2N 26-94

2. And when that day shall come they shall be visited of the Lord of Hosts, with thunder and with earthquake, and with a great noise, and with storm, and with tempest, and with the flame of devouring fire. [prophecy of the world in the "last days"] 2N 26-95

V. TOOLS

1. *JAREDITE TOOLS.* 25. And they did make all manner of tools to till the earth, both to plow and to sow, to reap and to hoe, and also to thrash.

26. And they did make all manner of tools with which they did work their beasts. E 10-498

2. *NEPHITE TOOLS.* 9. And I said: Lord, whither shall I go that I may find ore to molten, that I make make tools to construct the ship after the manner which thou hast shown unto me?

10. And it came to pass that the Lord told me whether I should go to find ore, that I might make tools.

11. And it came to pass that I, Nephi, did make a bellows wherewith to blow the fire, of the skins of beasts; 1N 17-84

15. And I did teach my people to build buildings and to work in all manner of wood, and of iron, and of copper, and of brass, and of steel, and of gold, and of silver, and of precious ores, which were in great abundance. 2N 5-61

8. ---we---became exceedingly rich in---machinery, and also in iron and copper, and brass and steel, making all manner of tools of every kind--- Jm 1-128

11. ---and there were also curious workmen, who did work all kinds of ore and did refine it; H 6-378

52. [Sermon of Alma] And again I say unto you, the Spirit saith: Behold, the ax is laid at the root of the tree; A 5-209

34. Behold, we lay a tool here and on the morrow it is gone; and behold, our swords are taken from us in the day we have sought them for battle. H 18-892

15. [From Isaiah and the Brass Plates] Shall the ax boast itself against him that heweth therewith? Shall the saw magnify itself against him that shaketh it? As if the rod should shake itself

against them that lift it up, or as if the staff should lift up itself as if it were no wood!

2N 20-88

3. *LAMANITE TOOLS.* (*The Book of Mormon does not list specific tools for the Lamanites, but it is likely that they used tools similar to those of the Nephites.*) 7. And thus the Lamanites began to increase in riches, and began to trade one with another and wax great, and began to be a cunning and a wise people, as to the wisdom of the world,

Mo 24-181

11. ---and there were also curious workmen, who did work all kinds of ore and did refine it; and thus they did become rich.

H 6-878

VI. INSTRUMENTS

1. *THE "SHINING STONES" OF THE JAREDITES.* (*See Chapter II, Part I, Units 1 and 2.*) 1. ---[the brother of Jared did molten out of a rock sixteen small stones; and they were white and clear, even as transparent glass;

4. ---[The brother of Jared prays to the Lord] therefore touch these stones, O Lord, with thy finger, and prepare them that they may shine forth in darkness; and they shall shine forth unto us in the vessels which we have prepared, that we may have light while we shall cross the sea.

6. And it came to pass that when the brother of Jared had said these words, behold, the Lord stretched forth his hand and touched the stones one by one with his finger.

E 8-488

2. For it came to pass after the Lord had prepared the stones which the brother of Jared had carried up into the mount, the brother of Jared came down out of the mount, and he did put forth the stones into the vessels which were prepared, one in each end thereof; and behold, they did give light unto the vessels.

E 6-487

2. *THE HOLY COMPASS OF LEHI.* 10. And it came to pass that as my father [Lehi] arose in the morning, and went forth to the tent door, to his great astonishment he beheld upon the ground a round ball of curious workmanship; and it was of fine brass. And within the ball were two spindles; and the one pointed the way whither we should go into the wilderness.

1N 16-31

28. And it came to pass that I, Nephi, beheld the pointers which were in the ball, that they did work according to the faith and diligence and heed which we did give unto them.

29. And there was also written upon them a new writing, which was plain to be read, which did give us understanding concerning the ways of the Lord; and it was written and changed from time to time, according to the faith and diligence which we gave unto it.

1N 16-38

38. And now, my son, I [Alma II] have somewhat to say concerning the thing which our fathers call a ball, or director—or our fathers called it Liahona, which is, being interpreted, a compass; and the Lord prepared it.

39. And behold, there cannot any man work after the manner of so curious a workmanship. And behold, it was prepared to show unto our fathers the course which they should travel in the wilderness.

40. And it did work for them according to their faith in God; therefore, if they had faith to believe that God could cause that those spindles should point the way they should go, behold, it was done;

A 37-291

43. ---for as our fathers were slothful to give heed to this compass---

41. ---They were slothful, and forgot to exercise their faith and diligence and then those marvelous works ceased, and they did not progress in their journey;

42. Therefore, they tarried in the wilderness, or did not travel a direct course, and were afflicted with hunger and thirst, because of their transgressions.

44. For behold, it is as easy to give heed to the word of Christ, which will point to you a straight course to eternal bliss, as it was for our fathers to give heed to this compass, which would point unto them a straight course to the promised land.

45. And now I say, is there not a type in this thing? For just as surely as this director did bring our fathers, by following its course, to the promised land, shall the words of Christ, if we follow their course, carry us beyond this vale of sorrow into a far better land of promise.

A 37-291

3. MUSICAL INSTRUMENTS MENTIONED IN THE "BRASS PLATES."

12. And the harp, and the viol, the tabret, and pipe, and wine in their feasts; but they regard not the work of the Lord, neither consider the operation of his hands. [From the Brass Plates and Isaiah.]

2N 15-77

4. THE "INTERPRETERS." (*Stones used by the Nephites to interpret the Jaredite language.*) (*See Appendix A, Part I, for Joseph Smith's description of these stones.*) (*The Book of Mormon does not explain how Mosiah II received these stones. Were they*

given to the people of Zarahemla by Coriantumr, and then to the Nephites by the people of Zarahemla? Were they found with the stone tablet of Coriantumr? Mosiah apparently was in possession of them before the plates of Ether were found.) 23. And the Lord said: I will prepare unto my servant Gazelem, a stone, which shall shine forth in darkness unto light, that I may discover unto my people who serve me, that I may discover unto them the works of their brethren, yea, their secret works, their works of darkness, and their wickedness and abominations.

24. And now, my son, these interpreters were prepared that the word of God might be fulfilled, which he spake, saying:

25. ---and I will bring to light all their secrets and abominations, unto every nation that shall hereafter possess the land. A 37-290

13. And now he translated them [the records of the Jaredites] by the means of those two stones which were fastened into the two rims of a bow.

14. Now these things were prepared from the beginning, and were handed down from generation to generation, for the purpose of interpreting languages;

15. And they have been kept and preserved by the hand of the Lord, that he should discover to every creature who should possess the land the iniquities and abominations of his people;

16. And whosoever has these things is called seer, after the manner of old times. Mo 28-190

5. ---[He] commanded---I should seal up the interpretation thereof; wherefore I have sealed up the interpreters according to the commandment of the Lord. E 4-485

PART II

ANCIENT CONSTRUCTION WORK

Types of architecture, road, and ship building.

I. ARCHITECTURE

1. *BUILDING MATERIALS AND FIXTURES. (RAW MATERIALS—wood, stone, dirt, cement, and glass.)* 8. Yea, he had been---throwing up banks of *earth* round about to enclose his armies and also building walls of *stone*---
A 48-816

6. [In the land of Desolation] And now no part of the land was desolate, save it were for *timber*;

7. And there being but little timber upon the face of the land, nevertheless the people who went forth became exceeding expert in the working of cement; therefore they did build houses of *cement*, in the which they did dwell.

9. And the people who were in the land northward did dwell in *tents*, and in *houses* of *cement*, and they did suffer whatsoever tree should spring up upon the face of the land that it should grow up, that in time they might have timber to build their houses, yea, their cities, and their temples, and their synagogues, and their sanctuaries, and all manner of their buildings.

10. And it came to pass as *timber* was exceeding scarce in the land northward, they did send forth much by the way of shipping.

H 3-364

23. [from Isaiah] The *glasses*, and the fine linen---

2N 13-76

1. ---[The brother of Jared] did molten out of a rock sixteen small stones; and they were white and clear, even as transparent *glass*; ---
E 2-483

(*FIXTURES—windows, doors, closets, furnaces, gates, ladders, shelves, curtains, etc.*) 23. ---For behold, ye cannot have *windows*, for they will be dashed to pieces;
E 2-482

21. And thrice they were cast into a *furnace* and received no harm.

22. And twice were they cast into a *den* of wild beasts;

3N 28-453

6. But thou, when thou prayest, enter into thy *closet*, and when thou hast shut thy *door*, pray to thy Father who is in secret;

3N 13-426

28. Yea, thus we see that the *gate* of heaven is open unto all,

H 3-365

10. ---which tower was also near unto the *garden gate*

H 7-877

21. ---Moroni [I] returned to his army, and caused that they should prepare in haste strong cords and *ladders*, to be let down from the top of the *wall*

A 62-855

1. ---if a man should lay his tool or his sword upon his *shelf*.

E 14-505

10. ---ye were so bold as to come near the *walls* of the city, when I, myself, was with my guards without the *gate*?

Mo 7-148

(SUPPLIES—*cords, chains, nails, etc.*) 14. ---ye may thrust your hands into my side, and also that ye may feel the prints of the *nails* in my hands and in my feet,

3N 11-422

13. ---shake off the awful *chains* by which ye are bound.

2N 1-50

16. ---they did bind me with *cords*, ---

1N 7-12

2. [From Isaiah]---the *curtains* of thy habitations---

3N 22-444

18. [From Isaiah] Wo unto them that draw iniquity with *cords* of vanity, and sin as it were with a *cart rope*.

2N 15-78

12. [From Isaiah] And I will make thy *windows* of agates, and thy *gates* of carbuncles,

3N 22-445

2. JAREDITE ARCHITECTURE. 4. And it came to pass that his father [Shez] did build up many *cities*

5. ---and with the taxes he [Riplakish] did build many spacious *buildings*.

6. And he did erect him an exceedingly beautiful *throne*; and he did build many *prisons*

E 10-496

12. And it came to pass that Morianton built up many *cities*,

20. And they built a great city by the narrow neck of land, by the place where the sea divides the land.

E 10-497

3. NEPHITE ARCHITECTURE. (*Temples, towers, fortifications, walls, buildings, prisons, markets, houses, and tents.*)

TEMPLES. 16. And I, Nephi, did build a *temple*, and I did construct it after the manner of the *temple* of Solomon save it were not built of so many precious things; for they were not to be found

upon the land, wherefore, it could not be built like unto Solomon's temple. But the manner of construction was like unto the temple of Solomon; and the workmanship thereof was exceedingly fine.

2N 5-61

10. ---all manner of fine work within the walls of the *temple*, of fine wood and of copper, and of brass.

Mo 11-156

6. And they pitched their *tents* round about the *temple*, every man having his tent with the door thereof towards the temple,

Mo 2-136

13. And Alma and Amulek went forth preaching repentance to the people in their *temples*, and in their *sanctuaries*, and also in their *synagogues*, which were built after the manner of the Jews.

A 16-236

17. And now, it came to pass on the morrow that king Limhi sent a proclamation among all his people, that thereby they might gather themselves together to the *temple*, to hear the words which he should speak unto them.

Mo 7-148

4. And it came to pass that Aaron came to the city of Jerusalem [named after the Jerusalem of old]---And he began to preach to them in their *synagogues*, for they had built synagogues after the order of the Nehors [the religion of certain dissenters].

A 21-249

TOWERS. 12. And it came to pass that he built a *tower* near the temple; yea, a very high tower, even so high that he could stand upon the top thereof and overlook the land of Shilom, and also the land of Shemlon, which was possessed by the Lamanites;

13. ---and he caused a great *tower* to be built on the hill north of the land Shilom, which had been a resort for the children of Nephi.

Mo 11-156

7. For the multitude being so great that king Benjamin could not teach them all within the walls of the temple, therefore he caused a *tower* to be erected, that thereby his people might hear the words which he should speak unto them.

8. And it came to pass that he began to speak to his people from the *tower*;

Mo 2-186

13. And it came to pass that he [the wicked king Noah] caused---a *great tower* to be built on the hill north of the land Shilom, which had been a resort for the children of Nephi at the time they fled out of the land;

Mo 11-156

1. ---yea, he [Amalickiah] did appoint men to speak unto the Lamanites from their *towers*, against the Nephites.

A 48-316

4. And he [Moroni I] caused *towers* to be erected that overlooked those works of pickets, and he caused places of security to be built upon those *towers*, that the stones and the arrows of the Lamanites could not hurt them.

5. And they were prepared that they could cast stones from the top thereof, according to their pleasure and their strength, and slay him who should attempt to approach near the *walls* of the city.

A 50-321

10. And behold, now it came to pass that it was upon a *tower*, which was in the garden of Nephi---therefore, Nephi had bowed himself upon the *tower* which was in his garden,

H 7-377

5. ---and when the king saw that he [Gideon] was about to overpower him, he fled and ran and got upon the *tower* which was near the *temple*.

Mo 19-170

FORTIFICATIONS. 25. Wherefore, the people of Nephi did *fortify* against them with their armies, and with all their might, trusting in the God and rock of their salvation; wherefore, they became as yet, conquerors of their enemies.

J 7-125

7. ---[We] began to *fortify* our cities, or whatsoever place of our inheritance.

Jm 1-128

8. ---Yea, he [Moroni I] had been strengthening the armies of the Nephites, and erecting small *forts*, or places of resort; throwing up *banks* of earth round about to enclose his armies, and also building *walls* of stone to encircle them about, round about their cities and the borders of their lands; yea, all round about the land.

A 48-316

13. For they [the Lamanites] knew not that Moroni had *fortified*, or had built *forts* of security, for every city in all the land round about;

18. Now behold, the Lamanites could not get into their *forts* of security by any other way save by the entrance, because of the highness of the *bank* which had been thrown up, and the depth of the *ditch* which had been dug round about, save it were by the entrance.

19. And thus were the Nephites prepared to destroy all such as should attempt to climb up to enter the *fort* by any other way, by casting over stones and arrows at them.

20. Thus they were prepared, yea, a body of their strongest men, with their swords and their slings, to smite down all who should attempt to come into their place of security by the place of *entrance*; and thus were they prepared to defend themselves against the Lamanites.

A 49-819

1. ---Moroni---caused that his armies---should commence in digging up *heaps* of *earth* round about all the cities,

2. And upon the top of these *ridges* of earth he caused that there should be *timbers*, yea, works of timbers built up to the height of a man, round about the cities.

3. And he caused that upon those works of timbers there should be a frame of *pickets* built upon the timbers round about; and they were strong and high.

4. And he caused *towers* to be erected that overlooked those works of *pickets*,

6. Thus Moroni did prepare *strongholds* against the coming of their enemies, round about every city in all the land. A 50-821

27. And thus had the Lamanites obtained---so many cities [of the Nephites], by their numberless hosts, all of which were strongly *fortified* after the manner of the *fortifications* of Moroni; A 51-826

3. ---Moroni caused that they [the Lamanite prisoners] should commence laboring in digging a *ditch* round about the land, or the city, Bountiful.

4. And he caused that they should build a *breastwork* of *timbers* upon the inner bank of the ditch; and they *cast up dirt* out of the ditch against the breastwork of timbers; and thus they did cause the Lamanites to labor until they had encircled the city of Bountiful round about with a *strong wall* of timbers and earth, to an exceeding height.

5. And this city became an exceeding *stronghold* ever after;

A 58-831

25. And it came to pass that he [Moroni] did cause the Lamanites, whom he had taken prisoners, that they should commence a labor in strengthening the *fortifications* round about the city Gid.

A 55-836

22. Now when they found that they could not obtain power over the Nephites by the pass, they [the Lamanites] began to dig down their *banks of earth* that they might obtain a pass to their armies, ---[but] instead of filling up their *ditches* by pulling down the banks of earth, they were filled up in a measure with their dead and wounded bodies.

24. ---[Those] who had been exposed to the arrows of the Lamanites through the pass, ---their wounds were upon their legs, many of which were very severe. A 49-820

WALLS. 10. ---I desire to know the cause whereby ye were so bold as to come near the *walls* of the city, when I, myself, was with my guards without the gate? Mo 7-148

8. And we began to build buildings, and to repair the *walls* of the city, yea, even the *walls* of the city of Lehi-Nephi, and the city of Shilom. Mo 9-152

19. And the king himself did not trust his person without the *walls* of the city, unless he took his guards with him, Mo 21-175

6. Behold the back pass, through the back *wall*, on the back side of the city. [city of Lehi-Nephi]

7. ---and we will pass through the secret pass on the left of the camp when they are drunken and asleep. Mo 22-177

21. And it came to pass that Pacumeni, who was the chief judge, did flee before Coriantumr, even to the *walls* of the city [of Zarahemla]. H 1-361

4. ---therefore he went and got upon the *wall* thereof, [because he was denied entrance into the city]. H 13-390

20. And when the night came, Moroni went forth in the darkness of the night, and came upon the top of the *wall* to spy out in what part of the city the Lamanites did camp with their army.

21. And it came to pass that they were on the *east*, by the entrance; ---Moroni---caused that they should prepare in haste strong cords and ladders, to be let down from the top of the *wall* into the inner part of the *wall*. A 62-355

BUILDINGS. 15. And I did teach my people to build *buildings*, 2N 5-61

7. The whole face of the land had become covered with *buildings*, and the people were as numerous almost, as it were the sand of the sea. Mn 1-460

8. And it came to pass that king Noah built many elegant and spacious *buildings*; and he ornamented them with fine work of wood, and of all manner of precious things, of gold, and of silver, and of iron, and of brass, and of ziff, and of copper;

9. And he also built him a spacious *palace*, and a *throne* in the midst thereof, all of which was of fine wood and was ornamented with gold and silver and with precious things.

13. And it came to pass that he caused many *buildings* to be built in the land Shilom; Mo 11-156

26. [Christ is speaking] Behold the fowls of the air, for they sow not, neither do they reap nor gather into *barns*; yet your heavenly Father feedeth them. 2N 13-427

PRISONS. 30. ---and there they were taken and cast into prison and bound with strong cords, and kept in prison for many days,

A 20-249

4. ---they did cast their prisoners into prison

3N 5-409

2. ---Behold, O king, we are the brethren of Ammon, whom thou hast delivered out of prison.

A 22-251

6. ---and he [Riplakish, the Jaredite] did build many prisons

E 10-496

MARKETS. 10. ---the highway which led to the chief *market*, which was in the city of Zarahemla:

H 7-376

HOUSES. 29. And we have entered into their *houses* and taught them,

A 26-263

30. ---they had cast them out, and had smitten them, and had driven them from *house* to *house*, and from place to place,

A 20-249

9. And the people who were in the land northward did dwell in *tents*, and in *houses* of cement,

H 3-364

TENTS. And my father [Lehi] dwelt in a *tent*.

1N 2-4

2. And it came to pass that they could find no way to deliver themselves out of bondage, except it were to take---their *tents*, and depart into the wilderness;

Mo 22-177

II. CITY STRUCTURE, REPAIR, AND DESTRUCTION

1. **JAREDITE CITIES.** 23. And it came to pass that Coriantum did walk in the steps of his father, and did build many mighty cities,

E 9-495

12. And it came to pass that Morianton built up many cities,

E 10-497

4. And it came to pass that his father [Shez] did build up many cities upon the face of the land,

E 10-496

2. **NEPHITE CITIES.** (See Map III, and see Appendix C, Parts III to V.) 7. Now it was the custom of the people of Nephi to call their lands, and their *cities*, and their villages, yea, even all their small villages, after the name of him who first possessed them;

A 8-214

15. And they also began in that same year to build many *cities* on the north, one in a particular manner which they called Lehi,
A 50-322

11. And thus they did enable the people in the land northward that they might build many *cities*, both of wood and of cement.
H 3-364

7. And it came to pass that there were many *cities* built anew, and there were many old *cities* repaired.
8N 6-411

7. And the Lord did prosper them exceedingly in the land; yea, insomuch that they did build *cities* again where there had been cities burned.

8. Yea, even that great city Zarahemla did they cause to be built again.
4N 1-456

9. But there were many *cities* which had been sunk, and waters came up in the stead thereof [during the great cataclysm], therefore these cities could not be renewed.
4N 1-456

6. ---the people began---building large cities and villages in all quarters of the land.
Mo 27-187

3. *LAMANITE CITIES.* 2. Now the Lamanites and the Amalekites and the people of Amulon had built a great *city*, which was called Jerusalem.

1. ---calling it after the land of the fathers' nativity; A 21-249

11. ---[Aaron] came over to a village which was called Anti---
A 21-250

8. Now, these are they [of the Lamanites] who were converted unto the Lord:

9. The people of the Lamanites who were in the land of Ishmael:

10. And also---in the land of Middoni:

11. And also---in the city of Nephi.

12. And also---in the land of Shilom, and who were in the land of Shemlon, and in the city of Lemuel, and in the city of Shimnilon.
A 23-255

4. *CITIES DESTROYED AT THE TIME OF THE GREAT CATACLYSM.* (*A great earth disturbance took place on the Western Hemisphere—just before the appearance of Christ. See Chapter XII, Part III, Section III. See Appendix C, Part V.*)

III. ROADS AND ROAD BUILDING

8. And there were many *highways* cast up and many *roads* made which led from city to city, and from land to land, and from place to place. 3N 6-411

29. ---and we have taught them in their *streets*; A 26-263

10. ---which tower was also near unto the garden gate by which led the *highway*. H 7-376

IV. SHIPS AND SHIP-BUILDING

(There is evidence of two types of ships, a submarine type and a sailboat type.)

1. *JAREDITE BARGES OR SHIPS.* 16. And the Lord said: Go to work and build, after the manner of *barges* which ye have hitherto built. And it came to pass that the brother of Jared did go to work, and also his brethren, and built *barges* after the manner which they had built, according to the instructions of the Lord. And they were small, and they were light upon the water, even like unto the lightness of a fowl upon the water. [Were these Balsas?]

17. And they were built after a manner that they were exceeding tight, even that they would hold water like unto a dish; and the ends thereof were peaked; and the top thereof was tight like unto a dish; and the length thereof was the length of a tree; and the door thereof, when it was shut, was light like unto a dish.

19. And behold, O Lord, in them there is no light; whither shall we steer? And also we shall perish, for in them we cannot breathe, save it is the air which is in them; therefore we shall perish.

20. And the Lord said unto the brother of Jared: Behold, thou shalt make a hole in the top, and also in the bottom; and when thou shalt suffer for air thou shalt unstop the hole and receive air; And if it be so that the water come in upon thee, behold, ye shall stop the hole, that ye may not perish in the flood.

21. And it came to pass that the brother of Jared did so, E 2-482

1. ---now the number of the *vessels* which had been prepared was eight--- E 3-482

24. For behold, ye shall be as a *whale* in the midst of the sea; for the mountain waves shall dash upon you. Nevertheless, I will bring you up again out of the depths of the sea;

25. And behold, I prepare you against these things; for ye cannot cross this great deep save I prepare you against the waves of the sea, and the winds which have gone forth, and the floods which shall come. E 2-482

2. For it came to pass after the Lord had prepared the stones which the brother of Jared had carried up into the mount, the brother of Jared did come down out of the mount, and he did put forth the stones into the *vessels* which were prepared, one in each end thereof; and behold, they did give light unto the vessels.

3. And thus the Lord caused stones to shine in darkness, to give light unto men, women, and children, that they might not cross the great waters in darkness. E 6-487

(*THE FIRST SUBMARINE?*) 8. And it came to pass that the wind did never cease to blow towards the promised land while they were upon the waters; and they were driven forth before the wind.

6. And it came to pass that they were many times buried in the depths of the sea, because of the mountain waves which broke upon them, and also the great and terrible tempests which were caused by the fierceness of the wind.

7. And it came to pass that when they were buried in the deep there was no water that could hurt them, their vessels being tight like unto a dish, and also they were tight like unto the ark of Noah; therefore when they were encompassed about by many waters they did cry unto the Lord, and he did bring them forth again upon the top of the waters.

10. And thus they were driven forth; and no monster of the sea could break them, neither whale that could mar them; and they did have light continually, whether it was above the water or under the water. E 6-487

2. *NEPHITE SHIPS.* (*Nephi and his brothers built a ship to carry the people of Lehi to the "Promised Land." This ship may have had sails since Nephi was able to guide the ship. See Chapter IV, Part II, Section II, or see IN 19-40 verse 22.*) 8. And it came to pass that the Lord spake unto me, saying: Thou shalt construct a *ship*, after the manner which I shall show thee, that I may carry thy people across these waters.

10. And it came to pass that the Lord told me whither I should go to find ore, that I might make tools.

17. And when my brethren saw that I was about to build a ship, they began to murmur against me, saying: Our brother is a fool, for he thinketh that he can build a ship; yea, and he also thinketh that he can cross these great waters.

18. ---for they did not believe that I could build a ship; neither would they believe that I was instructed of the Lord. 1N 17-34

51. [Nephi speaks to his brethren.] And now, if the Lord has such great power, and has wrought so many miracles among the children of men, how is it that he cannot instruct me, that I should build a *ship*? 1N 17-38

1. ---They [Nephi's brothers] did [also] worship the Lord, and did go forth with me; and we did work timbers of curious workmanship. And the Lord did show me from time to time after what manner I should work the timbers of the *ship*.

2. Now I, Nephi, did not work the timbers after the manner which was learned by men, neither did I build the *ship* after the manner of men; But I did build it after the manner which the Lord had shown unto me;

4. And it came to pass that after I had finished the *ship*, according to the word of the Lord, my brethren beheld that it was good, and that the workmanship thereof was exceeding fine; wherefore, they did humble themselves again before the Lord. 1N 18-38

(*The Nephites built ships to travel to the "Land Northward." The ships were launched in or near to the Land Bountiful on the "Promised Land."*) 5. And it came to pass that Hagoth, he being an exceedingly curious man, therefore he went forth and built him an exceedingly large *ship*, on the borders of the land Bountiful, by the land Desolation, and launched it forth into the west sea, by the narrow neck which led into the land northward.

6. And behold, there were many of the Nephites who did enter therein and did sail forth with much provisions, and also many women and children; and they took their course northward.

7. And in the thirty and eighth year, this man built other ships. And the first ship did also return, and many more people did enter into it; and they also took much provisions, and set out again to the land northward.

8. And it came to pass that they were never heard of more. And we suppose that they were drowned in the depths of the sea. And it came to pass that one other ship also did sail forth; and whither she did go we know not. [May these migrations not explain some "islands" of culture which appear on the Western Hemisphere and in the Pacific Islands?] A 63-358

3. "OLD WORLD" SHIPS (*Probably quoted from the Brass Plates.*) 18. But now, behold, they are led about by Satan, even as chaff is driven before the wind, or as a *vessel* is tossed about upon the waves, without sail or anchor, or without anything wherewith to steer her; and even as she is, so are they. Mn 5-469

PART III

ARCHAEOLOGY AND MYTHOLOGY

A brief summary which lists some traditions of archæological interest. Practically all the follow-information is given elsewhere in this volume, but is repeated here that it may not be overlooked. There are many possible archæological correlations throughout this entire study—other than those accented in the following pages. (For the "Origin of Man," see Chapter X, Part I.)

14. But behold, a hundredth part of the proceedings of this people, yea, the account of the Lamanites and of the Nephites, and their wars, and contentions, and dissensions, and their preaching, and their prophecies, and their shipping and their building of ships, and their building of temples, and of synagogues and their sanctuaries, and their righteousness, and their wickedness,--- cannot be contained in this work.

15. But behold, there are many books and many records of every kind, and they have been kept chiefly by the Nephites. H 3-364

I. ADVICE TO ARCHAEOLOGISTS

(Those who work with the artifacts of these ancient peoples, are given advice—which advice comes from them of old.) 12.

And whoso receiveth this record, and shall not condemn it because of the imperfections which are in it, the same shall know of greater things than these. Behold, I am Moroni; and were it possible, I would make all things known unto you. Mn 8-478

9. And when they shall have received this, which is expedient that they should have first, to try their faith, and if it shall so be that they shall believe these things then shall the greater things be made manifest unto them.

10. And if it so be that they will not believe these things, then shall the greater things be withheld from them, unto their condemnation. 3N 26-448

II. THE "PROMISED LAND" WAS UNKNOWN TO THE "OLD WORLD"

13. And behold, this is the land of your inheritance; and the Father hath given it to you.

14. And not at any time hath the Father given me commandment that I should tell it unto your brethren at Jerusalem.

3N 15-429

III. FEW "OLD WORLD" ARTIFACTS WERE BROUGHT TO THE "NEW WORLD"

4. And it came to pass that he departed into the wilderness [from Jerusalem]. And he left his house, and the land of his inheritance, and his gold, and his silver, and his precious things, and took nothing with him, save it were his family, and provisions, and tents, [Lehi and his people migrate.]

1N 2-8

IV. ANCIENT ARCHAEOLOGICAL INVESTIGATION

(The ancient people did a little archaeological investigation of their own. They found the artifacts of a still more ancient people.)

8. And they [the people of Limhi] were lost in the wilderness for the space of many days, yet they were diligent, and found not the land of Zarahemla but returned to this land, having traveled in a land among many waters, having discovered a land which was covered with bones of men, and of beasts, and was also covered with ruins of buildings of every kind, having discovered a land which had been peopled with a people who were as numerous as the hosts of Israel.

9. And for a testimony that the things that they had said are true they have brought twenty-four plates which are filled with engravings, and they are of pure gold.

10. And behold, also, they brought breastplates, which are large, and they are of brass and of copper, and are perfectly sound.

Mo 8-150

V. THE "YOUNGER BROTHER" IS MADE RULER

(When Nephi, youngest of four brothers, was anointed ruler by his father, the oldest brothers rebelled.) (See the Popul Vuh, Book of the Quiches for possible correlations.) (Also of interest is the fact

that Sam, who was just older than Nephi, may not have had offspring, since no tribe by his name is mentioned in the Book of Mormon.) 37. And Laman said unto Lemuel and also unto the sons of Ishmael: Behold, let us slay our father, and also our brother Nephi, who has taken it upon him to be our ruler and our teacher, who are his elder brethren. 1N 33-33

3. Yea, they did murmur against me [Nephi], saying: Our younger brother thinks to rule over us; ---For behold, we will not have him to be our ruler; for it belongs unto us, who are the elder brethren, to rule over this people. 2N 5-60

38. Now, he [Nephi] says that the Lord has talked with him, and also that angels have ministered unto him. But behold, we know that he lies unto us; and he tells us these things, and he worketh many things by his cunning arts, that he may deceive our eyes, thinking, perhaps, that he may lead us away into some strange wilderness; and after he has led us away, he has thought to make himself a king and a ruler over us, that he may do with us according to his will and pleasure. And after this manner did my brother Laman stir up their hearts to anger. 1N 16-33

24. [Lehi speaks to his sons.] Rebel no more against your brother, whose views have been glorious, and who hath kept the commandments from the time that we left Jerusalem; and who hath been an instrument in the hands of God, in bringing us forth into the land of promise; 2N 1-51

VI. NEPHITE CULTURAL PEAKS

(One occurred 70 B.C. and another about 70 A.D. However, many others were recorded.) 6. ---[About 100 B.C.] and the people began to be very numerous, and began to scatter abroad upon the face of the earth, yea, on the north and on the south, on the east and on the west, building large cities and villages in all quarters of the land.

7. And the Lord did visit them and prosper them, and they became a large and wealthy people. Mo 27-187

23. [About 70 B.C.] But behold there never was a happier time among the people of Nephi, since the days of Nephi, than in the days of Moroni, yea, even at this time, in the twenty and first year of the reign of the judges. A 50-322

7. [About 60 A.D.] And the Lord did prosper them exceedingly in the land; yea, insomuch that they did build cities again where there had been cities burned.

8. Yea, even that great city of Zarahemla did they cause to be built again. 4N 1-456

VII. A HISTORIC RECORD WAS KEPT

(See Chapter II, Part II.) 20. ---he [King Mosiah II] took the plates of brass, and all the things which he had kept, and conferred them upon Alma, who was the son of Alma; yea, all the records, and also the interpreters, and conferred them upon him, and commanded him that he should keep and preserve them, and also keep a record of the people, handing them down from one generation to another, even as they had been handed down from the time that Lehi left Jerusalem. Mo 1-185

3. ---My sons, I [King Benjamin] would that ye should remember that were it not for these plates, which contain these records and these commandments, we must have suffered in ignorance, even at this present time, not knowing the mysteries of God.

4. For it were not possible that our father, Lehi, could have remembered all these things, to have taught them to his children, except it were for the help of these plates; Mo 1-184

VIII. GREAT MEMORY EXHIBITED BY THE ANCIENT PEOPLE

36. ---Ammon---began at the creation of the world, and also the creation of Adam, and told him all the things concerning the fall of man, and rehearsed and laid before the records and the holy scriptures of the people,

37. And he also rehearsed unto them (for it was unto the king and to his servants) all the journeyings of their fathers in the wilderness,

38. And he also rehearsed unto them concerning the rebellions of Laman and Lemuel---yea, all their rebellions did he relate unto them; A 18-248

IX. PERIODS OF RELIGIOUS PERSECUTION (See Chapter XIV, Part IV.)

10. For they [the Nephites] knew that if they should fall into the hands of the Lamanites, that whosoever should worship God in

spirit and in truth, the true and the living God, the Lamanites would destroy. A 43-801

2. For behold, their wars are exceedingly fierce among themselves; and because of their hatred they put to death every Nephite that will not deny the Christ. M 1-510

14. ---And they swore [the Lamanites] in their wrath that, if it were possible, they would destroy our records and us, and also all the traditions of our fathers. Ea 1-126

X. METHODS OF COMPUTING TIME

(The Nephites had a multiple system of computing time. See Chapter IX, Part V.) 5. ---an hundred years had passed away since the days of Mosiah, who was king over the people of the Nephites.

6. And six hundred and nine years had passed away since Lehi left Jerusalem.

7. And nine years had passed away from the time when the sign was given, which was spoken of by the prophets, that Christ should come into the world.

8. Now the Nephites began to reckon their time from this period when the sign was given, or from the coming [birth] of Christ; 3N 2-402

XI. CULTURE HEROES

(See Chapter XV.)

(Many Nephite leaders were accorded special homage, and many may have been deified by later peoples.) 1. [God teaches the ancient Jaredites.] And they were taught to walk humbly before the Lord; and they were also taught from on high. E 6-488

(NEPHI I). 17. And it came to pass that I, Nephi, did cause my people to be industrious, and to labor with their hands.

15. And I did teach my people to build buildings, and to work in all manner of wood, and of iron, and of copper, and of brass, and of steel, and of gold, and of silver, and of precious ores, which were in great abundance.

16. And I, Nephi, did build a temple; and I did construct it after the manner of the temple of Solomon save it were not built of so many precious things;

18. And it came to pass that they would that I should be their king. But I, Nephi, was desirous that they should have no king; nevertheless, I did for them according to that which was in my power.

2N 5-61

(*ALMA II.*) 3. And they answered the king, and said: Whether he be the Great Spirit or a man, we know not; but this much we do know, that he cannot be slain by the enemies of the king; ---And now, O king, we do not believe that a man has such great power, for we know he cannot be slain.

4. And now, when the king heard these words, he said unto them: Now I know that it is the Great Spirit; ---Now this is the Great Spirit of whom our fathers have spoken.

A 18-241

(*NEPHI II.*) Behold, thou art Nephi, and I am God. Behold, I declare it unto thee in the presence of mine angels, that ye shall have power over this people, and shall smite the earth with famine, and with pestilence, and destruction, according to the wickedness of this people.

H 10-384

18. [Nephi preaches to the people; they reject his teachings; a famine is brought upon the land; the people repent; Nephi prays that the famine be lifted; peace and prosperity come again.] And behold, the people did rejoice and glorify God, and the whole face of the land was filled with rejoicing; and they did no more seek to destroy Nephi, but they did esteem him as a great prophet, and a man of God, having power and authority given unto him from God.

H 11-386

40. [Nephi II] And now there were some among the people who said that Nephi was a prophet.

41. And there were others who said: Behold, he is a god, for except he was a god he could not know of all things. For behold, he has told us the thoughts of our hearts,

H 9-388

XII. TRADITIONS OF THEIR GOD

(See Chapter XII.)

TRADITION I. God Led His People. (See Chapter XII, Part II.)

16. And they [the people of Mulek] journeyed in the wilderness, and were brought by the hand of the Lord across the great waters, into the land where Mosiah discovered them;

O 1-180

13. And I will also be your light in the wilderness; and I will prepare the way before you, [the Lord to the people of Lehi]

1N 17-84

TRADITION II. *Their God was Born of a Virgin.* 10. And behold, he shall be born of Mary, at Jerusalem which is the land of our forefathers, she being a virgin, a precious and chosen vessel, who shall be overshadowed and conceive by the power of the Holy Ghost, and bring forth a son, yea, even the Son of God. A 7-211

TRADITION III. *Their God appeared to them in person.* (*After his crucifixion in Jerusalem, Christ appeared to the people in the land Bountiful in the "Promised Land" [the Western Hemisphere]. See Chapter XII, Part III.*) 12. And all these things must surely come, saith the prophet Zenos. And the rocks of the earth must rend; and because of the groanings of the earth, many of the kings of the isles of the sea shall be wrought upon by the Spirit of God, to exclaim: The God of nature suffers.

10. ---concerning the three days of darkness, which should be a sign given of his death unto those who should inhabit the isles of the sea, more especially given unto those who are of the house of Israel.

11. For thus spake the prophet: The Lord God surely shall visit all the house of Israel at that day, some with his voice, because of their righteousness, unto their great joy and salvation, 1N 19-42

8. ---and behold they saw a Man descending out of heaven; and he was clothed in a white robe; and he came down in the midst of them;

9. And it came to pass that he stretched forth his hand and spake unto the people, saying:

10. Behold, I am Jesus Christ, whom the prophets testified shall come into the world. 8N 11-421

TRADITION IV. *Their God Wept.* (*Jesus had compassion for his people.*) 41. And it came to pass that the Lord of the vineyard wept, and said unto his servant: What could I have done more for my vineyard? J 5-118

21. And when he [the Lord, Jesus Christ] said these words, he wept, and the multitude bare record of it, and he took their little children, one by one, and blessed them, and prayed unto the Father for them.

22. And when he had done this he wept again; 3N 17-433

TRADITION V. *The "Wind" God.* 24. ---for the winds have gone forth out of my mouth, and also the rains and the floods have I sent forth. E 2-482

TRADITION VI. The Ancient People believed in a Resurrection.
 ("Every part of the body should be restored to itself." A 14-297, verse 2.) 2. I say unto thee, my son, that the plan of restoration is requisite with the justice of God; for it is requisite that all things should be restored to their proper order. Behold, it is requisite and just, according to the power and resurrection of Christ, that the soul of man should be restored to its body, and that every part of the body should be restored to itself. H 41-297

XIII. MYTHOLOGY

(Such incidents as the following could have served as the basis for the origin of mythological history.)

(The Incident of the Poisonous Serpents.) 31. [In the days of King Heth, a Jaredite] And there came forth poisonous serpents also upon the face of the land, and did poison many people. And it came to pass that their flocks began to flee before the poisonous serpents, towards the land southward, which was called by the Nephites Zarahemla.

33. And it came to pass that the Lord did cause the serpents that they should pursue them no more, but that they should hedge up the way that the people could not pass, that whoso should attempt to pass might fall by the poisonous serpents. E 9-495

(The Incident of Death of the Wicked Robber Captain.)
 28. When they [the Nephites] had hanged him [the robber captain] until he was dead they did fell the tree to the earth, and did cry with a loud voice, saying:

29. May the Lord preserve his people in righteousness and in holiness of heart, that they may cause to be felled to the earth all who shall seek to slay them because of power and secret combinations, even as this man hath been felled to the earth. 3N 28-408



CHAPTER XII

*RELIGIOUS TRADITION

Information concerning the belief
of the ancient people in the Father,
in the Son, and in the Holy Ghost.

The force of religion in the lives of the ancient peoples of the *Book of Mormon* was so powerful that it dominated their entire history. Because of the importance of religion, the civic and religious history of the people was so closely interwoven, that it is difficult to separate the one from the other. The reader is soon impressed when reading the *Book of Mormon* with the place of religion in the everyday lives of the ancient inhabitants. Examples follow one another throughout the *Book* which illustrate: that prosperity follows righteousness, and that misfortune follows iniquity. The prophets continually reminded the people of the promises of God to their fathers: "Inasmuch as ye shall keep my commandments ye shall prosper in the land; but inasmuch as ye will not keep my commandments ye shall be cut off from my presence." (2N 1-51, verse 20) "Wherefore, all things which are good cometh of God; and that which is evil cometh of the devil." (M 7-513, verse 12) The destiny of the ancient inhabitants was, indeed, dependent upon their relative status in regard to their God. It was pointed out to them many times that: "No man can serve two masters; ---ye cannot serve God and Mammon." (2N 1-51, verse 20)

From their ancient scriptures and from the words of their prophets, the people knew of Christ long before the advent of his coming. Some of the teachings of Christ as well as some of the sacred teachings of those who were the holy men among the ancient people of the *Book of Mormon* appear in this chapter and in the chapters which follow. (See Chapter X, Part I, for traditions of "The Creation," "The Great Tower," and "The Exodus.")

*For key to reference symbols, see page 2.

PART I

SYMBOLISM OF THEIR GOD

The ancient people used many symbols to represent their God: the Cross, the Dove, the Tree of Life, the Searching Eye, the Footstool, the Throne, the Rod of Iron, the "Rock," the Fountain of Living Waters, the Right Hand, the Brazen Serpent, the Weeping God, the Wind God, etc. (For the last two items, see Chapter XI, Part III, Section XII.)

I. THE CROSS

1. *THE CRUCIFIXION IS FORE-TOLD, and THE CROSS IS USED AS A FIGURE OF SPEECH.* 32. And it came to pass that the angel spake unto me again, saying: Look! And I looked and beheld the Lamb of God,

33. And I, Nephi, saw that he was lifted up upon the cross and slain for the sins of the world. 1N 11-19

30. For it is better that ye should deny yourself of these things, wherein ye will take up your cross, than that ye should be cast into hell. 8N 12-425

2. *THE SYMBOLIC CROSS.* (*The four corners of the earth.*) 16. Yea, then will he remember the isles of the sea; yea, and all the people who are of the house of Israel, will I gather in, saith the Lord, according to the words of the prophet Zenos, from the four quarters of the earth. 1N 19-42

8. And it shall come to pass that they shall be gathered in from their long dispersion, from the isles of the sea, and from the four parts of the earth; 2N 10-71

II. THE DOVE

(*See the "Holy Ghost," Part IV of this chapter.*) 8. Wherefore, after he was baptized with water the Holy Ghost descended upon him in the form of a dove. 2N 81-104

III. THE TREE OF LIFE

(Also known as "The Fountain of Living Waters.")

8. And it came to pass that the Spirit said unto me: Look! And I looked and beheld a tree; and it was like unto the tree which my father had seen; and the beauty thereof was far beyond, yea, exceeding of all beauty; and the whiteness thereof did exceed the whiteness of the driven snow.

21. ---Knowest thou the meaning of the tree which thy father saw?

22. And I answered him, saying: Yea, it is the love of God, which sheddeth itself abroad in the hearts of the children of men; wherefore, it is the most desirable above all things. 1N 11-19

5. For behold, if Adam had---partaken of the tree of life, he would have lived forever, A 42-298

62. Come and be baptized unto repentance, that ye also may be partakers of the fruit of the tree of life. A 5-210

34. Yea, he saith: Come unto me and ye shall partake of the fruit of the tree of life; yea, ye shall eat and drink of the bread and the waters of life freely; A 5-207

IV. THE ROD OF IRON, and THE
FOUNTAIN OF LIVING WATERS

25. And now it came to pass that I beheld that the rod of iron, which my father had seen, was the word of God, which led to the fountain of living waters or to the tree of life; which waters are a representation of the love of God; and I also beheld that the tree of life was a representation of the love of God. 1N 11-19

41. And he did straiten them in the wilderness with his rod; 1N 17-37

V. THE FOOTSTOOL, and THE THRONE

39. He ruleth high in the heavens, for it is his throne, and this earth is his footstool. 1N 17-36

VI. THE SEARCHING EYE

44. ---I pray the God of my salvation that he view me with his all-searching eye; ---
2N 9-70

31. ---then shall they confess, who live without God in the world, that the judgment is just upon them; and they shall quake, and tremble, and shrink beneath the glance of his all-searching eye.
Mo 27-189

VII. THE ROCK

1. *THE GOSPEL LIKENED TO A "ROCK" OR A "FOUNDATION."* 15. And now I, Jacob, am led on by the Spirit unto prophesying; for I perceive by the workings of the Spirit which is in me, that by the stumbling of the Jews they will reject the stone upon which they might build and have safe foundation.

16. But behold, according to the scriptures, this stone shall become the great, and the last and the only sure foundation, upon which the Jews can build.

17. And now, my beloved, how is it possible that these, after having rejected the sure foundation, can ever build upon it, that it may become the head of their corner?
J 4-114

45. O, my beloved brethren, turn away from your sins; shake off the chains of him that would bind you fast; come unto that God who is the rock of your salvation.
2N 9-70

38. And again I say unto you, ye must repent, and be baptized in my name, and become as a little child, or ye can in nowise inherit the kingdom of God.

39. Verily, verily, I say unto you, that this is my doctrine, and whoso buildeth upon this buildeth upon my rock, and the gates of hell shall not prevail against them.
3N 11-423

9. Verily I say unto you, that ye are built upon my gospel;
3N 27-450

24. Therefore, whoso heareth these sayings of mine and doeth them, I will liken him unto a wise man, who build his house upon a rock—

25. And the rain descended, and the floods came, and the winds blew, and beat upon that house; and it fell not, for it was founded upon a rock.

26. And every one that heareth these sayings of mine and doeth them not shall be likened unto a foolish man, who built his house upon the sand—

27. And the rain descended, and the floods came, and the winds blew, and beat upon that house; and it fell, and great was the fall of it.

3N 14-428

12. And now, my sons, remember, remember that it is upon the rock of our Redeemer, who is Christ, the Son of God, that ye must build your foundation; that when the devil shall send forth his mighty winds, yea, his shafts in the whirlwind, yea, when all his hail and his mighty storm shall beat upon you, it shall have no power over you to drag you down to the gulf of misery and endless wo, because of the rock upon which ye are built, which is a sure foundation, a foundation whereon if men build they cannot fall.

H 5-369

VIII. THE "RIGHT HAND" OF GOD

(The "accepted" will occupy a place on the "Right Hand" of God. See Chapter XIV, Part II, Section V.) 9. And it shall come to pass that whosoever doeth this shall be found at the right hand of God, for he shall know the name by which he is called; for he shall be called by the name of Christ.

10. And now it shall come to pass, that whosoever shall not take upon him the name of Christ must be called by some other name; therefore, he findeth himself on the left hand of God.

Mo 5-145

IX. THE BRAZEN SERPENT

(For the "Serpent" as a symbol of the Devil, see Chapter XVI, Part I, Section I, Unit I.) 14. Yea, did he [Moses] not bear record that the son of God should come? And as he lifted up the brazen serpent in the wilderness even so shall he be lifted up who should come.

15. And as many as should look upon the serpent should live, even so as many as should look upon the Son of God, with faith, having a contrite spirit, might live even unto that life which is eternal.

H 8-379

PART II

THE GOD OF THE ANCIENT PEOPLE

He is the same God that we know today,
whom we also know as Jesus Christ. (See
Chapter XV, Part I, Section I, Unit 2,
for witnesses of God.)

I. GOD LED HIS PEOPLE INTO FERTILE LANDS

36. Behold, the Lord hath created the earth that it should be inhabited; and he hath created his children that they should possess it.

38. And he leadeth away the righteous into precious lands, and the wicked he destroyeth, and curseth the land unto them for their sakes. 1N 17-36

1. *GOD LED THE JAREDITES.* 41. Go and gather together thy flocks, both male and female, of every kind; and also of the seed of the earth of every kind; ---

42. And when thou hast done this thou shalt go at the head of them [the migrating party] down into the valley which is northward. And there will I meet thee, and I will go before thee into a land which is choice above all the lands of the earth. E 1-480

4. [God led them upon the land.] And it came to pass that when they had come down into the valley of Nimrod the Lord came down and talked with the brother of Jared; and he was in a cloud, and the brother of Jared saw him not.

5. And it came to pass that the Lord commanded them that they should go forth into the wilderness, yea, into that quarter where there never had man been. And it came to pass that the Lord did go before them, and did talk with them as he stood in a cloud, and gave directions whither they should travel. E 2-480

24. [God led them upon the water.] For behold, ye shall be as a whale in the midst of the sea; for the mountain waves shall dash upon you. Nevertheless, I will bring you up again out of the depths of the sea; for the winds have gone forth out of the mouth, and also the rains and the floods have I sent forth.

25. And behold, I prepare you against these things; for ye cannot cross this great deep save I prepare you---
E 2-482

2. *GOD LED ISRAEL FROM EGYPT.* 34. I am the Lord thy God, who hath brought thee out of the land of Egypt, out of the house of bondage.
Mo 12-160

19. Therefore, lift up your heads, and rejoice, and put your trust in God, in that God who was the God of Abraham, and Isaac, and Jacob; and also, that God who brought the children of Israel out of the land of Egypt, and caused that they should walk through the Red Sea on dry ground, and fed them with manna that they might not perish in the wilderness; and many more things did he do for them.
Mo 7-148

11. ---yea, the Lord God, the God of Abraham, the God of Isaac, and the God of Jacob, did deliver them out of bondage.

12. Yea, I have always remembered the captivity of my fathers; and that same God who delivered them out of the hands of the Egyptians did deliver them out of bondage.
A 29-268

3. *GOD LED LEHI TO THE "PROMISED LAND."* (*God led the migrating party of Lehi—later known as Nephites and Lamanites.*) 20. And again, that same God has brought our fathers out of the land of Jerusalem, and has kept and preserved his people even until now;
Mo 7-148

13. ---wherefore, inasmuch as ye shall keep my commandments, ye shall be led towards the promised land; and ye shall know that it is by me that ye are led.

14. Yea, and the Lord said also that: After ye have arrived in the promised land, ye shall know that I, the Lord, am God; and that I, the Lord, did deliver you from destruction; yea, that I did bring you out of the land of Jerusalem.
1N 17-35

4. *GOD DELIVERED THE NEPHITES.* 27. ---[They, the Lamanites, said] that it was the Great Spirit that had always attended the Nephites, [and]---had ever delivered them out of their hands; and they said that it was this great Spirit who had destroyed so many of their brethren, the Lamanites.
A 19-246

II. THE NAMES GIVEN TO GOD

1. *THE NAME OF CHRIST IS FORETOLD TO THE PEOPLE OF OLD.* 3. Wherefore, as I said unto you, it must needs

CHART 18

*TITLES GIVEN GOD

Some of the titles found in the Book of Mormon.

Almighty	Law and the Light
Almighty God	Lord
Alpha and Omega	Lord God
Christ	Lord God Almighty
Counselor	Lord God of Hosts
Creator of all things	Lord God Omnipotent
Eternal Father of Heaven and Earth	Lord Jesus Christ
Eternal Judge	Lord of the Harvest
Eternal Head	Lord of the Vineyard
Eternal Father	Lord Omnipotent
Everlasting Father	Maker
Father	Messiah
Father of Righteousness	Mighty God
God	Mighty One of Israel
God of Israel	Mighty One of Jacob
God of the Land	Most High God
Good Shepherd	Only Begotten
Great Spirit	Prince of Peace
Heavenly King	Redeemer
Holy Ghost	Redeemer of Israel
Holy One	Savior
Holy One of Israel	Son
Holy One of Jacob	Son of God
Holy Spirit	Son of Eternal Father
Immanuel	Son of Everlasting God
Jehovah	Spirit
Jesus	Spirit of God
Jesus Christ	Spirit of the Lord
King of all the Earth	Spirit of the Lord Omnipotent
King of Heaven	Well Beloved
Lamb	Wonderful
Lamb of God	Etc.

*See Chapter XVI, Part I, Section I, for names given to Satan in the Book of Mormon.

be expedient that Christ—for in the last night the angel spake unto me that this should be his name---
2N 10-71

8. And he shall be called Jesus Christ, the Son of God, the Father of heaven and earth, the Creator of all things from the beginning; and his mother shall be called Mary.
Mo 3-140

19. ---and according to the words of the prophets, and also the word of the angel of God, his name shall be Jesus Christ, the Son of God.
2N 25-91

2. TITLES GIVEN TO GOD AND TO JESUS CHRIST.
(*A few names are given below. See Chart 18 for a complete list.*)

2. And because he dwelleth in flesh he shall be called the Son of God, and having subjected the flesh to the will of the Father, being the Father and the Son—
Mo 15-163

50. ---Behold the glory of the King of all the earth;
A 5-208

17. ---and the Son of God was the Messiah who should come—
1N 10-17

14. ---behold, a virgin shall conceive, and shall bear a son, and shall call his name Immanuel.
2N 17-80

6. For unto us a child is born---and his name shall be called, Wonderful, Counselor, The Mighty God, The Everlasting Father, The Prince of Peace.
2N 19-82

38. Behold, I say unto you, that the good shepherd doth call you; yea, and in his own name he doth call you, which is the name of Christ;
A 5-207

7. But behold, they are in the hands of the Lord of the harvest, and they are his; and he will raise them up at the last day.
A 26-261

9. And the king said: Is God that Great Spirit that brought our fathers out of the land of Jerusalem?
A 22-252

12. ---they shall know that the Lord is their Savior and their Redeemer, the Mighty One of Israel.
2N 22-47

3. THERE WAS A LAW AGAINST THE MISUSE OF THE NAME OF THEIR GOD. (*Such profanity was considered sin.*)

15. Thou shalt not take the name of the Lord thy God in vain; for the Lord will not hold him guiltless that taketh his name in vain.
Mo 13-161

34. But verily, verily, I say unto you, swear not at all; neither by heaven, for it is God's throne;

35. Nor by the earth, for it is his footstool;

36. Neither shalt thou swear by the head, because thou canst not make one hair black or white;

37. But let your communication be Yea, yea; Nay, nay; for whatsoever cometh of more than these is evil. 3N 12-425

5. ---They [the Nephites] observed to keep the law of Moses and the sabbath day holy unto the Lord. And they profaned not; neither did they blaspheme. And the laws of the land were exceedingly strict. Jm 1-128

9. ---they [the Nephites] began to boast in their own strength, and began to swear before the heavens that they would avenge themselves---

10. and they did swear by the heavens, and also by the throne of God, ---

14. And when they had sworn by all that had been forbidden them by our Lord and Savior Jesus Christ, ---behold the voice of the Lord came unto me, saying:

15. Vengeance is mine, and I will repay; and because this people repented not after I had delivered them, behold, they shall be cut off from the face of the earth. Mn 3-465

4. *CHRIST IDENTIFIES HIMSELF.* 10. Behold, I am Jesus Christ, whom the prophets testified shall come into the world. 3N 11-421

27. ---for behold, verily I say unto you, that the Father, and the Son, and the Holy Ghost are one; and I am in the Father, and the Father in me, and the Father and I are one. 3N 11-422

18. I am the light and the life of the world. I am Alpha and Omega, the beginning and the end. 3N 9-419

9. Behold, I am the law, and the light. Look unto me, and endure to the end, and ye shall live; for unto him that endureth to the end will I give eternal life.

10. Behold, I have given unto you the commandments; therefore keep my commandments. And this is the law and the prophets, for they truly testified of me. 3N 15-429

III. THE PERSONALITY OF GOD

1. *GOD AND JESUS CHRIST ARE ONE.* 2. And because he [the Lord] dwelleth in flesh he shall be called the Son of God,

and having subjected the flesh to the will of the Father, being the Father and the Son—

4. And they are one God, yea, the very Eternal Father of heaven and of earth.

5. And thus the flesh becoming subject to the Spirit, or the Son to the Father, being one God, Mo 15-163

27. ---in other words, he said that man was created after the image of God, and that God should come down among the children of men, and take upon him flesh and blood, and go forth upon the face of the earth— Mo 7-149

15. Behold, I am Jesus Christ the Son of God. I created the heavens and the earth, and all things that in them are. I was with the Father from the beginning. I am in the Father, and the Father in me; and in me hath the Father glorified his name. 3N 9-418

27. And after this manner shall ye baptize in my name; for behold, verily I say unto you, that the Father, and the Son, and the Holy Ghost are one; and I am in the Father, and the Father in me, and the Father and I are one. 3N 11-422

35. ---and I bear record of it from the Father; and whoso believeth in me believeth in the Father also; and unto him will the Father bear record of me, for he will visit him with fire and with the Holy Ghost.

36. And thus will the Father bear record of me, and the Holy Ghost will bear record unto him of the Father and me; for the Father, and I, and the Holy Ghost are one. 3N 12-423

7. For if there be no Christ there be no God; and if there be no God we are not, for there could have been no creation. But there is a God, and he is Christ, and he cometh in the fulness of his own time. 2N 11-73

14. Behold, I am he who was prepared from the foundation of the world to redeem my people. Behold, I am Jesus Christ. I am the Father and the Son. In me shall all mankind have light, and that eternally, even they who shall believe on my name; and they shall become my sons and my daughters. E 3-484

2. *GOD IS UNCHANGEABLE.* 18. For he is the same yesterday, today, and forever; and the way is prepared for all men from the foundation of the world, if it so be that they repent and come unto him.

19. For he that diligently seeketh shall find; and the mysteries of God shall be unfolded unto them, by the power of the Holy

Ghost, as well in these times as in times of old, and as well in times of old as in times to come; wherefore, the course of the Lord is one eternal round.

1N 10-17

12. ---for he [God] doth counsel in wisdom over all his works, and his paths are straight, and his course is one eternal round.

A 37-289

9. For do we not read that God is the same yesterday, today, and forever, and in him there is no variableness neither shadow of changing?

10. And now, if ye have imagined up unto yourselves a god who doth vary, and in whom there is shadow of changing, then have ye imagined up unto yourselves a god who is not a God of miracles.

Mn 9-476

18. For I know that God is not a partial God, neither a changeable being; but he is unchangeable from all eternity to all eternity.

M 8-517

3. *THE PERSON OF GOD. (Characteristic I—The personal appearance of God.)*

25. And it came to pass that Jesus blessed them as they did pray unto him; ---and behold they were as white as the countenance and also the garments of Jesus; and behold the whiteness thereof did exceed all the whiteness, yea, even there could be nothing upon earth so white as the whiteness thereof---

8N 19-438

(*Characteristic II—Man was created after the image of God.*)

6. ---And the veil was taken from off the eyes of the brother of Jared, and he saw the finger of the Lord; and it was as the finger of a man, like unto flesh and blood; and the brother of Jared fell down before the Lord, for he was struck with fear.

7. ---and the Lord said unto him: Arise, why hast thou fallen?

8. And he saith unto the Lord: I saw the finger of the Lord, and I feared lest he should smite me; for I knew not that the Lord had flesh and blood.

9. And the Lord said unto him: Because of thy faith thou hast seen that I shall take upon me flesh and blood;

15. And never have I showed myself unto man whom I have created, for never has man believed in me as thou hast. Seest thou that ye are created in the beginning after mine own image.

16. Behold, this body, which ye now behold, is the body of my spirit; and man have I created after the body of my spirit; and even as I appear unto thee to be in the spirit will I appear unto my people in the flesh.

E 3-484

10. And he said unto me: What desireth thou?

11. ---I spake unto him as a man---; for I beheld that he was in the form of a man; yet nevertheless, I knew that it was the Spirit of the Lord; and he spake unto me as a man speaketh

1N 11-18

27. ---he said unto them that Christ was the God, the Father of all things, and said that he should take upon him the image of man, and it should be the image after which man was created in the beginning; or in other words, he said that man was created after the image of God, and that God should come down among the children of men, and take upon him flesh and blood, and go forth upon the face of the earth—
Mo 7-149

34. Ammon said unto him: I am a man; and man in the beginning was created after the image of God,
A 18-248

(*Characteristic III—God is the Eternal Father.*) 17. And as many as have received me, to them have I given to become the sons of God; and even so will I to as many as shall believe on my name,
3N 9-418

14. Behold, I am he who was prepared from the foundation of the world to redeem my people. Behold, I am Jesus Christ. I am the Father and the Son. In me shall all mankind have light, and that eternally, even they who shall believe on my name; and they shall become my sons and my daughters.
E 3-484

26. And after---he [Christ] came---men also were saved by faith in his name; and by faith, they become the sons of God.
M 7-514

11. ---I say unto you, that all those who have hearkened unto their words, and believed that the Lord would redeem his people, and have looked forward to that day, for a remission of their sins, I say unto you, that these are his seed, or they are the heirs of the kingdom of God.

12. For these are they whose sins he has borne; these are they for whom he has died, to redeem them from their transgressions. And now, are they not his seed?

13. ---[And] all the holy prophets ever since the world began ---I say unto you that they are his seed.
Mo 15-163

IV. HEAVEN

(*Also see Chapter XIII, Part I. For "Hell," see Chapter XVI, Part III.*) 28. ---And Ammon said unto him [King Lamoni] again: Believest thou that this Great Spirit, who is God, created all things which are in heaven and in the earth?

30. And Ammon said unto him: The heavens is a place where God dwells and all his holy angels.
A 18-242

8. ---they saw a Man descending out of heaven; and he was clothed in a white robe;
3N 11-421

PART III

THE ADVENT OF JESUS CHRIST

Jesus Christ appeared in Jerusalem and he also appeared on the Western Hemisphere. (For witnesses of God and Jesus Christ, see Chapter XV, Part I, Section I, Unit 2; and Section II, Unit 3.)

I. PROPHECIES OF THE COMING OF CHRIST

1. *THE MISSION OF CHRIST.* 1. ---I would that ye should understand that God himself shall come down among the children of men, and shall redeem his people. Mo 15-163

6. Wherefore, all mankind were in a lost and in a fallen state, and ever would be save they should rely on this Redeemer. 1N 10-16

33. For behold, did not Moses prophesy---concerning the coming of the Messiah, and that God should redeem his people? Yea, and even all the prophets who have prophesied ever since the world began---have they not spoken more or less concerning these things?

35. Yea, and have they not said also that he should bring to pass the resurrection of the dead, and that he, himself, should be oppressed and afflicted? Mo 13-162

8. And now, behold, I will testify unto you of myself [Amulek] that these things are true. Behold, I say unto you, that I do know that Christ shall come among the children of men, to take upon him the transgressions of his people, and that he shall atone for the sins of the world; for the Lord God hath spoken it.

9. For it is expedient that an atonement should be made; for according to the great plan of the Eternal God there must be an atonement made, or else all mankind must unavoidably perish;

10. For it is expedient that there should be a great and last sacrifice; yea, not a sacrifice of man, neither of beast, neither of any manner of fowl; for it shall not be a human sacrifice; but it must be an infinite and eternal sacrifice. A 24-282

15. ---Behold, I say unto you, that it is he [Christ] that surely shall come to take away the sins of the world; yea, he cometh to declare glad tidings of salvation unto his people.

17. ---Behold, you marvel why these things should be known so long beforehand.

18. Is it not as necessary that the plan of redemption should be made known unto this people as well as unto their children?

A 39-294

18. ---[Many prophesied of the coming of Christ] and this that it should be shown unto the people, a great many thousand years before his coming, that even redemption should come unto them.

H 8-378

11. Wherefore, the prophets, and the priests, and the teachers, did labor diligently---persuading them to look forward unto the Messiah, and believe in him to come as though he already was. And after this manner did they teach them [the people].

26. ---[For] we talk of Christ, we rejoice in Christ, we preach of Christ, we prophesy of Christ, and we write according to our prophecies, that our children may know to what source they may look for a remission of their sins.

2N 25-92

2. PROPHECIES OF THE APPEARANCE OF CHRIST IN JERUSALEM.

14. Yea, did he [Moses] not bear record that the Son of God should come? And as he lifted up the brazen serpent in the wilderness, even so shall he be lifted up who should come.

16. And now behold, Moses did not only testify of these things, but also all the holy prophets, from his days even to the days of Abraham.

17. Yea, and behold, Abraham saw of his coming, and was filled with gladness and did rejoice.

H 8-379

8. And behold he cometh, according to the words of the angel, in six hundred years from the time my father left Jerusalem. [Nephi is speaking of Lehi.]

1N 19-42

4. Yea, even six hundred years from the time that my father left Jerusalem, a prophet would the Lord God raise up among the Jews—even a Messiah, or, in other words, a Savior of the world.

1N 10-16

7. And he [Lehi] spake also concerning a prophet who should come before the Messiah, to prepare the way of the Lord—

1N 10-16

9. And my father [Lehi] said he [the prophet] should baptize in Bethabara, beyond Jordan; and he also said he should baptize with water; even that he should baptize the Messiah with water.

10. And after he had baptized the Messiah with water, he should behold and bear record that he had baptized the Lamb of God, who should take away the sins of the world.

1N 10-16

II. THE BIRTH OF CHRIST

1. *PROPHECIES OF VIRGIN BIRTH IN JERUSALEM.* (*As revealed in visions to those of the Western Hemisphere.*) 13. And it came to pass that I looked and beheld the great city of Jerusalem, and also other cities. And I beheld the city of Nazareth; and in the city of Nazareth I beheld a virgin, and she was exceedingly fair and white.

18. And he [the angel] said unto me: Behold, the virgin whom thou seest is the mother of the Son of God, after the manner of the flesh.

19. And it came to pass that I beheld that she was carried away in the Spirit; and after she had been carried away in the Spirit for the space of a time the angel spake unto me saying: Look!

20. And I looked and beheld the virgin again, bearing a child in her arms.

21. And the angel said unto me: Behold the Lamb of God, yea, even the Son of the Eternal Father! 1N 11-18

14. Therefore, the Lord himself shall give you a sign—Behold, a virgin shall conceive, and shall bear a son, and shall call his name Immanuel. 2N 17-80

6. For unto us a child is born, unto us a son is given; and the government shall be upon his shoulder; and his name shall be called, Wonderful, Counselor, The Mighty God, The Everlasting Father, The Prince of Peace. 2N 19-82

10. And behold, he shall be born of Mary, at Jerusalem which is the land of our forefathers, she being a virgin, a precious and chosen vessel, who shall be overshadowed and conceive by the power of the Holy Ghost, and bring forth a son, yea, even the Son of God. A 7-211

2. *CHRIST'S BIRTH IN JERUSALEM.* (*Signs were given on the Western Hemisphere that indicated that Christ had been born near Jerusalem.*) 3. And behold, this will I give unto you for a sign at the time of his coming: for behold, there shall be great lights in heaven, insomuch that in the night before he cometh there shall be no darkness, insomuch that it shall appear unto man as if it was day.

4. Therefore, there shall be one day and a night and a day, as if it were one day and there were no night; and this shall be unto you for a sign; for ye shall know of the rising of the sun and also of its setting; therefore they shall know of a surety that there shall be two

days and a night; nevertheless the night shall not be darkened; and it shall be the night before he is born.

5. And behold, there shall a new star arise, such an one as ye never have beheld; and this also shall be a sign unto you.

6. And behold this is not all, there shall be many signs and wonders in heaven.

7. And it shall come to pass that ye shall all be amazed, and wonder, insomuch that ye shall fall to the earth. H 14-398

13. Lift up your head and be of good cheer; for behold, the time is at hand, and on this night shall the sign be given, and on the morrow come I into the world, to show unto the world that I will fulfill all that which I have caused to be spoken by the mouth of my holy prophets. 3N 1-400

14. Behold, I come unto my own, to fulfil all things which I have made known unto the children of men from the foundation of the world, and to do the will, both of the Father and of the Son--- And behold, the time is at hand, and this night shall the sign be given.

15. And it came to pass that the words which came unto Nephi were fulfilled, according as they had been spoken; for behold, at the going down of the sun there was no darkness; and the people began to be astonished because there was no darkness when the night came.

16. And there were many, who had not believed the words of the prophets, who fell to the earth and became as if they were dead, for they knew that the great plan of destruction which they had laid for those who believed in the words of the prophets had been frustrated; for the signal which had been given was already at hand.

17. And they began to know that the Son of God must shortly appear; yea, in fine, all the people upon the face of the whole earth from the west to the east, both in the land north and in the land south, were so exceedingly astonished that they fell to the earth.

19. And it came to pass that there was no darkness in all that night, but it was as light as though it was mid-day. And it came to pass that the sun did rise in the morning again, according to its proper order; and they knew that it was the day that the Lord should be born, because of the sign which had been given.

21. And it came to pass also that a new star did appear, according to the word.

20. And it had come to pass, yea, all things, every whit, according to the words of the prophets. 3N 1-400

III. THE CRUCIFIXION OF CHRIST IN JERUSALEM, and HIS APPEARANCE, THEREAFTER, UPON THE WESTERN HEMISPHERE

1. PROPHECIES OF THE CRUCIFIXION OF CHRIST IN JERUSALEM. (*Prophecies given to the people of the Western Hemisphere.*)

3. Wherefore, as I said unto you, it must needs be expedient that Christ—for in the last night the angel spake unto me that this should be his name—should come among the Jews, among those who are the more wicked part of the world; and they shall crucify him—for thus it behooveth our God, and there is none other nation on earth that would crucify their God. 2N 10-71

32. And it came to pass that the angel spake unto me again, saying: Look! And I looked and beheld the Lamb of God, that he was taken by the people; yea, the Son of the everlasting God was judged of the world; and I saw and bear record.

33. And I, Nephi, saw that he was lifted up upon the cross and slain for the sins of the world. 1N 11-19

13. Behold, they will crucify him; and after he is laid in a sepulchre for the space of three days he shall rise from the dead, with healing in his wings; 2N 25-90

11. And it came to pass after my father [Lehi] had spoken these words he spake unto my brethren concerning the gospel which should be preached among the Jews, and also concerning the dwindling of the Jews in unbelief. And after they had slain the Messiah, who should come, and after he had been slain he should rise from the dead, and should make himself manifest, by the Holy Ghost, unto the Gentiles [through his teachings as given by his disciples directly—and indirectly in the Bible and in the Book of Mormon]. 1N 10-16

13. And as for those who are at Jerusalem, saith the prophet, they shall be scourged by all people, because they crucify the God of Israel, and turn their hearts aside, rejecting signs and wonders, and the power and glory of the God of Israel.

14. And because they turn their hearts aside, saith the prophet, and have despised the Holy One of Israel, they shall wander in the flesh, and perish, and become a hiss and a by-word, and be hated among all nations. 1N 19-42

2. PROPHECIES THAT FORETOLD THE APPEARANCE OF CHRIST UPON THE WESTERN HEMISPHERE. 12. --- they [the Nephites] remembered that it had been prophesied among

them that Christ should show himself unto them after his ascension into heaven. 3N 11-421

1. And after Christ shall have risen from the dead he shall show himself unto you, my children, and my beloved brethren; and the words which he shall speak unto you shall be the law which ye shall do. 2N 26-98

20. And many of the people did inquire concerning the place where the Son of God should come; A 16-286

9. But the Son of righteousness shall appear unto them [those in the "Promised Land" on the Western Hemisphere] and he shall heal them, and they shall have peace with him, until three generations shall have passed away, and many of the fourth generation shall have passed away in righteousness. 2N 26-98

3. *PROPHECIES THAT FORETOLD THE SIGNS THAT WOULD PRECEDE THE APPEARANCE OF CHRIST ON THE WESTERN HEMISPHERE.* 20. But behold as I [Samuel, the Lamanite] said unto you concerning another sign, a sign of his death, behold, in that day that he shall suffer death the sun shall be darkened and refuse to give his light unto you; and also the moon and the stars; and there shall be no light upon the face of this land, even from the time that he shall suffer death, for the space of three days, to the time that he shall rise again from the dead.

21. Yea, at the time that he shall yield up the ghost there shall be thunders and lightnings for the space of many hours, and the earth shall shake and tremble; and the rocks which are upon the face of this earth, which are both above the earth, and beneath, which ye know at this time are solid, or the more part of it is one solid mass, shall be broken up;

23. And behold, there shall be great tempests, and there shall be many mountains laid low, like unto a valley, and there shall be many places which are now called valleys which shall become mountains, whose height is great.

24. And many highways shall be broken up, and many cities shall become desolate.

25. And many graves shall be opened, and shall yield up many of their dead; and many saints shall appear unto many. H 14-394

3. ---and great and terrible shall that day be unto the wicked, for they shall perish; and they perish because they cast out the prophets, and the saints, and stone them, and slay them; wherefore the cry of the blood of the saints shall ascend up to God from the ground against them.

5. And they that kill the prophets, and the saints, the depths of the earth shall swallow them up, saith the Lord of Hosts; and

north and in the land south, were so exceedingly astonished that they fell to the earth.

8N 1-400

2. And they were---conversing about this Jesus Christ, of whom the sign had been given concerning his death.

3. And it came to pass that while they were thus conversing one with another, they heard a voice as if it came out of heaven: and they cast their eyes round about, for they understood not the voice which they heard; and it was not a harsh voice, neither was it a loud voice; nevertheless, and notwithstanding it being a small voice it did pierce them that did hear to the center, insomuch that there was no part of their frame that it did not cause to quake;

4. And it came to pass that again they heard the voice, and they understood it not.

5. And again the third time they did hear the voice, and did open their ears to hear it; and their eyes were towards the sound thereof; and they did look steadfastly towards heaven, from whence the sound came.

6. And behold, the third time they did understand the voice which they heard; and it said unto them:

7. Behold my Beloved Son, in whom I am well pleased, in whom I have glorified my name—hear ye him.

8. And it came to pass, as they understood they cast their eyes up again towards heaven; and behold, they saw a Man descending out of heaven and he was clothed in a white robe; and he came down and stood in the midst of them; and the eyes of the whole multitude were turned upon him, and they durst not open their mouths, even one to another; and wist not what it meant, for they thought it was an angel that had appeared unto them.

9. And it came to pass that he stretched forth his hand and spake unto the people, saying:

10. Behold, I am Jesus Christ, whom the prophets testified shall come into the world.

12. ---[Then the] multitude fell to the earth; for they remembered---it had been prophesied among them that Christ should show himself unto them after his ascension into heaven.

13. And it came to pass that the Lord spake unto them saying:

14. Arise and come forth unto me, that ye may thrust your hands into my side, and also that ye may feel the prints of the nails in my hands and in my feet, that ye may know that I am the God of Israel, and the God of the whole earth, and have been slain for the sins of the world.

16. And when they had all gone forth and had witnessed for themselves, they did cry out with one accord, saying:

17. Hosanna! Blessed be the name of the Most High God! And they did fall down at the feet of Jesus, and did worship him.

8N 11-421

15. Behold, I am Jesus Christ the Son of God. I created the heavens and the earth, and all things that in them are. I was with the Father from the beginning. I am in the Father, and the Father in me; and in me hath the Father glorified his name.

16. I came unto my own, and my own received me not. And the scriptures concerning my coming are fulfilled. 8N 12-426

17. ---for behold, by me redemption cometh, and in me is the law of Moses fulfilled. 8N 9-418

46. Therefore those things which were of old time, which were under the law, in me are all fulfilled.

— 47. Old things are done away, and all things have become new. 8N 12-426

1. And now it came to pass that when Jesus had ended these sayings he cast his eyes round about on the multitude, and said unto them: Behold, ye have heard the things which I taught before I ascended to my Father; therefore, whoso remembereth these sayings of mine and doeth them, him will I raise up at the last day. 8N 15-429

22. Therefore, whoso repenteth and cometh unto me as a little child, him will I receive, for of such is the kingdom of God. Behold, for such I have laid down my life, and have taken it up again; therefore repent, and come unto me ye ends of the earth, and be saved. 8N 9-418

6. *CHRIST ASCENDED AGAIN TO HEAVEN FROM THE WESTERN HEMISPHERE.* (*Christ appeared in the Land Bountiful, and ascended from that land to Heaven.*) 38. And it came to pass that when Jesus had touched them all [his disciples on the Western Hemisphere], there came a cloud and overshadowed the multitude that they could not see Jesus.

39. And while they were overshadowed he departed from them, and ascended into heaven. And the disciples saw and did bear record that he ascended again into heaven. 8N 18-486

7. *CHRIST PROMISED THAT HE WOULD RECOVER HIS PEOPLE A "SECOND TIME."* 14. And behold, according to the words of the prophet, the Messiah will set himself again the second time to recover them; wherefore, he will manifest himself unto them in power and great glory, unto the destruction of their enemies, when that day cometh when they shall believe in him; and none will he destroy that believe in him. 2N 14-63

7. ---when I shall come in my glory with the powers of heaven. to all them that shall believe---[Christ is speaking.] 8N 28-452

15. And they that believe not in him shall be destroyed, both by fire, and by tempest, and by earthquakes, and by bloodsheds, and by pestilence, and by famine. And they shall know that the Lord is God, the Holy One of Israel. 2N 14-63

PART IV

THE HOLY GHOST

I. THE IDENTITY OF THE HOLY GHOST

27. ---for behold, verily I say unto you, that the Father, and the Son, and the Holy Ghost are one; and I am in the Father, and the Father in me, and the Father and I are one. 3N 11-422

11. And the Holy Ghost beareth record of the Father and me; and the Father giveth the Holy Ghost unto the children of men, because of me. 3N 28-452

II. CHRIST'S MISSION and THE HOLY GHOST

10. And behold he [Christ] shall be born of Mary, ---who shall be overshadowed and conceive by the power of the Holy Ghost, and bring forth a son, yea, even the Son of God. A 7-211

27. I [Nephi I] beheld the heavens open, and the Holy Ghost come down out of heaven and abide upon him [Christ] in the form of a dove. 1N 11-19

7. And I also saw and bear record that the Holy Ghost fell upon twelve others; and they were ordained of God, and chosen. 1N 12-20

21. Father, I pray thee that thou wilt give the Holy Ghost unto all them that shall believe--- 3N 19-438

13. And it came to pass when they [the disciples on the Western Hemisphere] were all baptized and had come up out of the water, the Holy Ghost did fall upon them, and they were filled with the Holy Ghost and with fire.

14. And behold, they were encircled about as if it were by fire; and it came down from heaven, and the multitude did witness it, and bear record; and angels did come down out of heaven and did minister unto them. 3N 19-437

36. And it came to pass that when Jesus had made an end of these sayings, he touched with his hand the disciples whom he had chosen, one by one, even until he had touched them all, and spake unto them as he touched them.

37. And the multitude heard not the words which he spake, therefore they did not bear record; but the disciples bare record that he gave them power to give the Holy Ghost. 8N 18-436

2. And he called them by name, saying: Ye shall call on the Father in my name, in mighty prayer; and after ye have done this ye shall have power that to him upon whom ye shall lay your hands, ye shall give the Holy Ghost; and in my name shall ye give it, for thus do mine apostles. M 2-510

III. THE HOLY GHOST IS GIVEN TO THE WORTHY

20. And ye shall offer for a sacrifice unto me [Christ] a broken heart and a contrite spirit. And whoso cometh unto me with a broken heart and a contrite spirit, him will I baptize with fire and with the Holy Ghost, 3N 9-419

6. For behold, if ye deny the Holy Ghost when it once has had place in you, and ye know that ye deny it, behold, this is a sin which is unpardonable; yea, and whosoever murdereth against the light and knowledge of God, it is not easy for him to obtain forgiveness; A 39-298

25. And the first fruits of repentance is baptism; and baptism cometh by faith unto the fulfilling the commandments; and the fulfilling the commandments bringeth remission of sins;

26. And the remission of sins bringeth meekness, and lowliness of heart; and because of meekness and lowliness of heart cometh the visitation of the Holy Ghost, which Comforter filleth with hope and perfect love, which love endureth by diligence unto prayer, until the end shall come, when all the saints shall dwell with God. M 8-517

12. Now they [the high priests], after being sanctified by the Holy Ghost, having their garments made white, being pure and spotless before God, could not look upon sin save it were with abhorrence; A 13-229

45. And behold, the Holy Spirit of God did come down from heaven, and did enter into their hearts, and they were filled as if with fire, and they could speak forth marvelous words. H 5-372

13. ---he [Christ] manifesteth himself unto all those who believe in him, by the power of the Holy Ghost; yea, unto every nation, kindred, tongue, and people, working mighty miracles, signs, and wonders, among the children of men according to their faith. 2N 26-98

4. And when ye shall receive these things, I would exhort you that ye would ask God, the Eternal Father, in the name of Christ, if these things are not true; and if ye shall ask with a sincere heart, with real intent, having faith in Christ, he will manifest the truth of it unto you by the power of the Holy Ghost. M 10-520

5. And by the power of the Holy Ghost ye may know the truth of all things--- M 10-520

IV. THE HOLY GHOST SHALL GIVE POWER TO THE GENTILES

25. And behold, ye are the children of the prophets [speaking to the Nephites]; and ye are of the house of Israel; and ye are of the covenant---

27 And after--- ye were blessed then fulfilleth the Father the covenant which he made with Abraham, saying: In thy seed shall all the kindreds of the earth be blessed—unto the pouring out of the Holy Ghost through me upon the Gentiles, which blessing upon the Gentiles shall make them mighty above all, unto the scattering of my people, O house of Israel. 3N 20-440



CHAPTER XIII

*RELIGIOUS DOCTRINES

The Plan for Salvation and the "Word" of God.

The *Book of Mormon* indicates that the one great source of all truth and knowledge is God. In fact, the statement is given that He said, "I am the light, and the life, and the truth of the world." (E 4-486, v. 12).

The Gospel has been given man as a guide for his life on this earth. In fact, the "gospel" and the commandments of God were not only given that man might have a criterion upon which to base his earthly conduct, but were given also that he might possess a means by which he could establish contact with God (through the gift of the Holy Ghost).

The time given man that he might accept or reject the "gospel" of the Lord is known as the probationary period and is the mortal life of man. It is during this period that man has his free agency to choose his own pattern of living—for good or for evil. According to his choice in this life is his reward adjusted for eternal life. The great plan for the salvation of men was made from the "beginning." It is stated in the *Book of Mormon* that: "The natural man is an enemy to God, and has been from the fall of Aadm." (Mo 3-191, v. 19) Because of Adam's transgressions, man apparently "inherited" the characteristic of transgression. Be that as it may, man is held individually responsible for his own redemption.

That man might have the opportunity to redeem himself, the Lord sent his son, Jesus Christ, to the world. The atonement of Christ made the plan of salvation possible. The great plan of salvation includes the resurrection, the restoration, the redemption, and the final allocation of the souls of men either to eternal punishment or to eternal life. If man should avail himself of this great plan (if he should embrace the gospel—repent, and be baptized), he is promised a position of recognition on "the right hand of God."

*For key to reference symbols, see page 2.

PART I

THE "WORD" OF GOD AND HIS COMMANDMENTS

The word of God is given man to assist
him in his preparation for salvation.

I. THE "WORD" OF GOD

1. *THE POWER OF GOD'S "WORD."* (See Chapter XV, Part I, Section II, Unit 3, "witnesses of God's word.") 9. For behold, by the power of his word man came upon the face of the earth, which earth was created by the power of his word. Wherefore, if God being able to speak and the world was, and to speak and man was created, O then, why not able to command the earth, or the workmanship of his hands upon the face of it, according to his will and pleasure? J 4-114

7. O how great is the nothingness of the children of men; yea, even they are less than the dust of the earth.

8. For behold, the dust of the earth moveth hither and thither, to the dividing asunder, at the command of our great and everlasting God.

9. Yea, behold at his voice do the hills and the mountains tremble and quake.

10. And by the power of his voice they are broken up, and become smooth, yea, even like unto a valley.

11. Yea, by the power of his voice doth the whole earth shake;

12. Yea, by the power of his voice, do the foundations rock, even to the very center.

13. Yea, and if he say unto the earth—Move—it is moved.

14. Yea, if he say unto the earth—Thou shalt go back, and it lengthen out the day for many hours—it is done;

15. And thus, according to his word the earth goeth back, and it appeareth unto man that the sun standeth still; yea, and behold, this is so; for surely it is the earth that moveth and not the sun.

16. And behold, also, if he say unto the waters of the great deep—Be thou dried up—it is done.

17. Behold, if he say unto this mountain—Be thou raised up, and come over and fall upon that city, that it be buried up—behold it is done. H 12-388

46. And ye also know that by the power of his almighty word he can cause the earth that it shall pass away; yea, and ye know that by his word he can cause the rough places to be made smooth, and smooth places shall be broken up. O, then, why is it, that ye can be so hard in your hearts? 1N 17-37

31. And it came to pass that according to his word he did destroy them [the children of Israel]; and according to his word he did lead them; and according to his word he did do all things for them; and there was not any thing done save it were by his word. 1N 17-86

9. And at my command [the Lord speaks] the heavens are opened and are shut; and at my word the earth shall shake; and at my command the inhabitants thereof shall pass away, even so as by fire. E 4-486

2. THE "WORD" OF GOD IS THE WORD OF TRUTH.

9. ---there is no other way or means whereby man can be saved, only in and through Christ. Behold, he is the life and the light of the world. Behold, he is the word of truth and righteousness. A 38-292

22. And now, behold, I say unto you, and I would that ye should remember, that God is merciful unto all who believe on his name; therefore he desireth, in the first place, that ye should believe, yea, even on his word.

23. And now, he imparteth his word by angels unto men, yea, not only men but women also. Now this is not all; little children do have words given unto them many times, which confound the wise and the learned. A 32-278

44. For behold, it is as easy to give heed to the word of Christ, which will point to you a straight course to eternal bliss, as it was for our fathers [people of Lehi] to give heed to this compass, which would point unto them a straight course to the promised land. A 37-291

12. ---I am the same that leadeth men to all good; he that will not believe my words will not believe me—that I am; and he that will not believe me will not believe the Father who sent me. For behold, I am the Father, I am the light, and the life, and the truth of the world. E 4-486

3. PREPARATION FOR GOD'S "WORDS." (*Humility and prayer puts the individual in a receptive mood for the "Word" of*

God. See Chapter XIV, Part I, "Faith.") 9. ---It is given unto many to know the mysteries of God; A 12-225

3. ---Save---[men] should inquire of the Lord---many great things [are]---hard to be understood; and---[men] being hard in their hearts, therefore they---[do] not look unto the Lord as they ought. 1N 15-28

10. And therefore, he that will harden his heart, the same receiveth the lesser portion of the word; and he that will not harden his heart, to him is given the greater portion of the word, until it is given unto him to know the mysteries of God until he know them in full.

11. And they that will harden their hearts, to them is given the lesser portion of the word until they know nothing concerning his mysteries; and then they are taken captive by the devil, and led by his will down to destruction. Now this is what is meant by the chains of hell. A 12-225

4. *THE "WORD" OF GOD LIMITS PERSONAL LIBERTY.* (Therefore, many in their selfishness complain against the strictness of the "Word.") 8. Behold, will ye reject these words? Will ye reject the words of the prophets; and will ye reject all the words which have been spoken concerning Christ, after so many have spoken concerning him; and deny the good word of Christ, and the power of God, and the gift of the Holy Ghost, and quench the Holy Spirit, and make a mock of the great plan of redemption, which hath been laid for you?

9. Know ye not that if ye will do these things, that the power of the redemption and the resurrection, which is in Christ, will bring you to stand with shame and awful guilt before the bar of God? J 6-122

15. ---and [Alma] having been sent to declare the word, among all the people in every city; and seeing that the hearts of the people began to wax hard, and that they began to be *offended because of the strictness of the word*, his heart was exceeding sorrowful. A 35-285

30. O my son, I [Alma] desire that ye should deny the justice of God no more. Do not endeavor to excuse yourself in the least point because of your sins, by denying the justice of God; but do you let the justice of God, and his mercy, and his long-suffering have full sway in your heart; and let it bring you down to the dust in humility. A 42-300

II. THE GOSPEL and THE COMMANDMENTS OF GOD

1. *THE GOSPEL* (*The gospel of Christ is faith, repentance, and baptism.*) (*For more information, see Chapters XIV, XV, and XVII.*) 31. Behold, verily, verily, I say unto you, I will declare unto you my doctrine.

32. And this is my doctrine, and it is the doctrine which the Father hath given unto me; and I bear record of the Father, and the Father beareth record of me, and the Holy Ghost beareth record of the Father and me; and I bear record that the Father commandeth all men, everywhere, to repent and believe in me.

33. And whoso believeth in me, and is baptized, the same shall be saved; and they are they who shall inherit the kingdom of God.

34. And whoso believeth not in me, and is not baptized, shall be damned.

35. Verily, verily, I say unto you, that this is my doctrine, and I bear record of it from the Father; and whoso believeth in me believeth in the Father also;

38. *And again I say unto you, ye must repent, and be baptized in my name, and become as a little child, or ye can in nowise inherit the kingdom of God.*

39. Verily, verily, I say unto you, that this is my doctrine, and whoso buildeth upon this buildeth upon my rock, and the gates of hell shall not prevail against them.

40. *And whoso shall declare more or less than this, and establish it for my doctrine, the same cometh of evil,* and is not built upon my rock; but he buildeth upon a sandy foundation, and the gates of hell stand open to receive such when the floods come and the winds beat upon them.

41. Therefore, go forth unto this people, and declare the words which I have spoken, unto the ends of the earth. 8N 12-423

24. Therefore, hold up your light that it may shine unto the world. Behold I am the light which ye shall hold up— 3N 18-435

20. Yea, even he commanded them that they should preach nothing save it were repentance and faith on the Lord, who had redeemed his people. Mo 18-169

22. ---[and] there was nothing preached in all the churches except it were repentance and faith in God. Mo 25-183

13. Behold I have given unto you my gospel, and this is the gospel which I have given unto you—that I came into the world to do the will of my Father, because my Father sent me.

14. And my Father sent me that I might be lifted up upon the cross; and after that I had been lifted up upon the cross, that I might draw all men unto me, that as I have been lifted up by men

even so should men be lifted up by the Father, to stand before me, to be judged of their works, whether they be good or whether they be evil—

16. And it shall come to pass, that whoso repenteth and is baptized in my name shall be filled— 3N 27-450

20. Now this is the commandment: Repent, all ye ends of the earth, and come unto me and be baptized in my name, that ye may be sanctified by the reception of the Holy Ghost, that ye may stand spotless before me at the last day.

21. Verily, verily, I say unto you, this is my gospel; 3N 27-451

2. THE TEN COMMANDMENTS, and OTHER COMMANDMENTS. (*See Chapter VI, Part II, Section II, for more information concerning the laws of Moses.*) 34. I am the Lord thy God, who hath brought thee out of the land of Egypt, out of the house of bondage.

35. Thou shalt have no other God before me.

36. Thou shalt not make unto thee any graven image, or any likeness of any thing in heaven above, or things which are in the earth beneath. Mo 12-160

13. And again: Thou shalt not bow down thyself unto them, nor serve them; for I the Lord thy God am a jealous God, visiting the iniquities of the fathers upon the children, unto the third and fourth generations of them that hate me;

14. And showing mercy unto thousands of them that love me and keep my commandments.

15. Thou shalt not take the name of the Lord thy God in vain; for the Lord will not hold him guiltless that taketh his name in vain.

16. Remember the sabbath day, to keep it holy.

17. Six days shalt thou labor, and do all thy work;

18. But the seventh day, the sabbath of the Lord thy God, thou shalt not do any work, thou, nor thy son, nor thy daughter, thy man-servant, nor thy maid-servant, nor thy cattle, nor thy stranger that is within thy gates;

19. For in six days the Lord made heaven and earth, and the sea, and all that in them is; wherefore the Lord blessed the sabbath day, and hallowed it.

20. Honor thy father and thy mother, that thy days may be long upon the land which the Lord thy God giveth thee.

21. Thou shalt not kill.

22. Thou shalt not commit adultery. Thou shalt not steal.

23. Thou shalt not bear false witness against thy neighbor.

24. Thou shalt not covet thy neighbor's house, thou shalt not covet thy neighbor's wife, nor his man-servant, nor his maid-

servant, nor his ox, nor his ass, nor anything that is thy neighbor's animal

Mo 18-161

21. Ye have heard that it hath been said by them of old time, and it is also written before you, that thou shalt not kill, and whosoever shall kill shall be in danger of the judgment of God;

22. But I say unto you, that whosoever is angry with his brother shall be in danger of his judgment. And whosoever shall say to his brother, Raca, shall be in danger of the council; and whosoever shall say, Thou fool, shall be in danger of hell fire.

23. Therefore, if ye shall come unto me, or shall desire to come unto me, and rememberest that thy brother hath aught against thee—

24. Go thy way unto thy brother, and first be reconciled to thy brother, and then come unto me with full purpose of heart, and I will receive you.

3N 12-425

20. Behold what the scripture says—man shall not smite, neither shall he judge; for judgment is mine saith the Lord, and vengeance is mine also, and I will repay.

Mn 8-473

1. ---Judge not, that ye be not judged.

2. For with what judgment ye judge, ye shall be judged; and with what measure ye mete, it shall be measured to you again.

3. And why beholdest thou the mote that is in thy brother's eye, but considerest not the beam that is in thine own eye?

4. Or how wilt thou say to thy brother: Let me pull the mote out of thine eye—and behold, a beam is in thy own eye?

5. Thou hypocrite, first cast the beam out of thine own eye; and then shalt thou see clearly to cast the mote out of thy brother's eye.

3N 14-428

12. Therefore, all things whatsoever ye would that men should do to you, do ye even so to them, for this is the law and the prophets.

3N 14-428

44. But behold I say unto you, love your enemies, bless them that curse you, do good to them that hate you, and pray for them who despitefully use you and persecute you;

45. That ye may be the children of your Father who is in heaven; for he maketh his sun to rise on the evil and on the good.

3N 12-426

28. ---whatsoever things ye shall ask the Father in my name shall be given unto you.

3N 27-451

8. For every one that asketh, receiveth; and he that seeketh, findeth; and to him that knocketh, it shall be opened.

11. If ye then, being evil, know how to give good gifts unto your children, how much more shall your Father who is in heaven give good things to them that ask him?

3N 14-428

PART II

THE PLAN FOR SALVATION

Man's life on earth is a period of probation. He has the free-agency to choose the good (Gød), or the evil (Devil); and is rewarded or punished according to his choice.

I. THE PERIOD OF PROBATION

1. *MAN IS INDEBTED TO GOD FOR HIS LIFE.* 23. And now, in the first place, he hath created you, and granted unto you your lives, for which ye are indebted unto him.

24. And secondly, he doth require that ye should do as he hath commanded you; for which if ye do, he doth immediately bless you; and therefore he hath paid you. And ye are still indebted unto him, and are, and will be, forever and ever; therefore, of what have ye to boast?

25. And now I ask, can ye say aught of yourself? I answer you, Nay. Ye cannot say that ye are even as much as the dust of the earth; yet ye were created of the dust of the earth; but behold, it belongeth to him who created you.

26. And I, even I, whom ye call your king [King Benjamin] am no better than ye yourselves are; for I am also of the dust. And ye behold that I am old, and am about to yield up this mortal frame to its mother earth. Mo 2-138

34. I say unto you, that *there are not any among you*, except it be your little children that have not been taught concerning these things, *but what knoweth that ye are eternally indebted to your heavenly father*, to render to him all that you have and are; Mo 2-139

21. And now, if God, who has created you, on whom you are dependent for your lives and for all that ye have and are, doth grant unto whatsoever ye ask that is right, in faith, believing that ye shall receive, O then, how ye ought to impart of the substance that ye have one to another. Mo 4-144

5. Yea, and I know that good and evil have come before all men; he that knoweth not good from evil is blameless; but he that knoweth good and evil, to him it is given according to his desires, whether he desireth good or evil, life or death, joy or remorse of conscience. A 29-268

20. And now remember, my brethren, that whosoever perisheth, perisheth unto himself; and whosoever doeth iniquity, doeth it unto himself; for behold, ye are free; ye are permitted to act for yourselves; for behold, God hath given unto you a knowledge and he hath made you free.

31. He hath given unto you that ye might know good from evil, and he hath given unto you that ye might choose life or death;

H 14-395

16. And also, ye yourselves will succor those that stand in need of your succor; ye will administer of your substance unto him that standeth in need; and ye will not suffer that the beggar putteth up his petition to you in vain, and turn him out to perish.

19. For behold, are we not all beggars? Do we not all depend upon the same Being, even God, for all the substance which we have, for both food and raiment, and for gold, and for silver, and for all the riches which we have of every kind?

20. And behold, even at this time, ye have been calling on his name, and begging for a remission of your sins. And has he suffered that ye have begged in vain? Nay; he has poured out his Spirit upon you,

Mo 4-143

38. ---ye contend no more against the Holy Ghost, but--- receive it, and take upon you the name of Christ; that ye humble yourselves even to the dust, and worship God, in whatsoever place ye may be in, in spirit and in truth; and that ye live in thanksgiving daily, for the many mercies and blessings which he doth bestow upon you.

A 34-284

51. Wherefore, do not spend money for that which is of no worth, nor your labor for that which cannot satisfy. Hearken diligently unto me, and remember the words which I have spoken; and come unto the Holy One of Israel, and feast upon that which perisheth not, neither can be corrupted, and let your soul delight in fatness.

2N 10-71

19. Lay not up for yourselves treasures upon earth, where moth and rust doth corrupt, and thieves break through nor steal.

21. For where your treasure is, there will your heart be also.

3N 13-427

30. For it is better that ye should deny yourselves of these things, wherein ye will take up your cross, than that ye should be cast into hell.

3N 12-425

6. Give not that which is holy unto the dogs, neither cast ye your pearls before swine, lest they trample them under their feet, and turn again and rend you.

3N 14-428

27. O then despise not, and wonder not, but hearken unto the words of the Lord, and ask the Father in the name of Jesus for what things soever ye shall stand in need. Doubt not, but be believing, and begin as in times of old, and come unto the Lord with all your heart, and work out your own salvation with fear and trembling before him.

29. See that ye are not baptized unworthily; see that ye partake not of the sacrament of Christ unworthily; but see that ye do all things in worthiness, and do it in the name of Jesus Christ, the Son of the living God; and if ye do this, and endure to the end, ye will in nowise be cast out. Mn 9-477

36. And now, I say unto you my brethren, that after ye have known and have been taught all these things, if ye should transgress and go contrary to that which has been spoken, that ye do withdraw yourself from the Spirit of the Lord, that it may have no place in you to guide you in wisdom's paths that ye may be blessed, prospered, and preserved—

37. I say unto you, that the man that doeth this, the same cometh out in open rebellion against God; therefore he listeth to obey the evil spirit, and becometh an enemy to all righteousness; therefore, the Lord has no place in him, for he dwelleth not in unholy temples. Mo 2-139

21. And the days of the children of men were prolonged, according to the will of God, that they might repent while in the flesh; wherefore, their state became a state of probation, and their time was lengthened, according to the commandments which the Lord God gave unto the children of men. For he gave commandment that all men must repent; for he showed unto all men that they were lost, because of the transgression of their parents. 2N 2-54

30. I [Lehi] have spoken these few words unto you all, my sons, in the last days of my probation; 2N 2-55

15. For behold, my brethren, it is given unto you to judge, that ye may know good from evil; and the way to judge is as plain, that ye may know with a perfect knowledge, as the daylight is from the dark night. M 7-512

28. Be wise in the days of your probation; strip yourselves of all uncleanness; ask not, that ye may consume it on your lusts, but ask with a firmness unshaken, that ye will yield to no temptation, but that ye will serve the true and living God. Mn 9-477

2. *"CHOOSE YE THIS DAY WHOM YE WILL SERVE."*

24. No man can serve two masters; for either he will hate the one and love the other, or else he will hold to the one and despise the other. Ye cannot serve God and Mammon. 3N 13-426

40. For I say unto you that whatsoever is good cometh from God, and whatsoever is evil cometh from the devil.

41. Therefore, if a man bringeth forth good works he hearkeneth unto the voice of the good shepherd, and he doth follow him; but whosoever bringeth forth evil works, the same becometh a child of the devil, for he hearkeneth unto his voice, and doth follow him.

42. And whosoever doeth this must receive his wages of him; therefore, for his wages he receiveth death, as to things pertaining unto righteousness, being dead unto all good works. A 5-207

5. For I remember the word of God, which saith by their works ye shall know them; for if their works be good, then they are good also.

6. For behold, God hath said a man being evil cannot do that which is good; for if he offereth a gift, or prayeth unto God, except he shall do it with real intent it profiteth him nothing. M 7-512

11. For behold, a bitter fountain cannot bring forth good water; neither can a good fountain bring forth bitter water; wherefore, a man being a servant of the devil cannot follow Christ; and if he follow Christ he cannot be a servant of the devil.

12. Wherefore, all things which are good cometh of God; and that which is evil cometh of the devil; for the devil is an enemy unto God, and fighteth against him continually, and inviteth and enticeth to sin, and to do that which is evil continually.

13. But behold, that which is of God inviteth and enticeth to do good continually; wherefore, every thing which inviteth and enticeth to do good, and to love God, and to serve him, is inspired of God.

14. Wherefore, take heed, my beloved brethren, that ye do not judge that which is evil to be of God, or that which is good and of God to be of the devil. M 7-512

12. And whatsoever thing persuadeth men to do good is of me; for good cometh of none save it be of me. I am the same that leadeth men to all good; he that will not believe my words will not believe me—that I am; and he that will not believe me will not believe the Father who sent me. For behold, I am the Father, I am the light, and the life, and the truth of the world. E 4-486

3. *PREPARATION FOR SALVATION.* *The period of probation is a period of preparation, in order that man may prepare for the life hereafter.)* 24. ---there was a space granted unto man in which he might repent; therefore this life became a probationary state; a time to prepare to meet God; a time to prepare for that endless state which has been spoken of by us, which is after the resurrection of the dead. A 12-226

32. For behold, this life is the time for men to prepare to meet God; yea, behold the day of this life is the day for men to perform their labors.

33. And now, as I said unto you before, as ye have had so many witnesses, therefore, I beseech of you that ye do not procrastinate the day of your repentance until the end; for after this day of life, which is given us to prepare for eternity, behold, if we do not improve our time while in this life, then cometh the night of darkness wherein there can be no labor performed.

34. Ye cannot say, when ye are brought to that awful crisis, that I will repent, that I will return to my God. Nay, ye cannot say this; for that same spirit which doth possess your bodies at the time that ye go out of this life, that same spirit will have power to possess your body in that eternal world.

35. For behold, if ye have procrastinated the day of your repentance even until death, behold, ye have become subjected to the spirit of the devil, and he doth seal you his; therefore, the Spirit of the Lord hath withdrawn from you, and hath no place in you, and the devil hath all power over you; and this is the final state of the wicked.

A 34-283

5. And men are instructed sufficiently that they know good from evil.

2N 2-53

20. Therefore remember, O man, for all thy doings thou shalt be brought into judgment.

21. Wherefore, if ye have sought to do wickedly in the days of your probation, then ye are found unclean before the judgment-seat of God; and no unclean thing can dwell with God; wherefore, ye must be cast off forever.

22. And the Holy Ghost giveth authority that I should speak these things, and deny them not.

1N 10-17

25. Adam fell that men might be; and men are, that they might have joy.

26. And the Messiah cometh in the fulness of time, that he may redeem the children of men from the fall. And because that they are redeemed from the fall they have become free forever, knowing good from evil; to act for themselves and not to be acted upon, save it be by the punishment of the law at the great and last day, according to the commandments which God hath given.

2N 2-54

2. Now behold, my son, I will explain this thing unto thee. For behold, after the Lord God sent our first parents forth from the garden of Eden, to till the ground, from whence they were taken—yea, he drew out the man, and he placed at the east end of the garden of Eden, cherubim, and a flaming sword which turned every way, to keep the tree of life—

3. Now, we see that the man had become as God, knowing good and evil; and lest he should put forth his hand, and take also of the tree of life, and eat and live forever, the Lord God placed cherubim and the flaming sword, that he should not partake of the fruit—

4. And thus we see, that there was a time granted unto man to repent, yea, a probationary time, a time to repent and serve God.

5. For behold, if Adam had put forth his hand immediately, and partaken of the tree of life, he would have lived forever, according to the word of God, having no space for repentance; yea, and also the word of God would have been void, and the great plan of salvation would have been frustrated.

6. But behold, it was appointed unto man to die—therefore, as they were cut off from the tree of life they should be cut off from the face of the earth—and man became lost forever, yea, --- [he] became fallen man.

7. And now, ye see by this that our first parents were cut off both temporarily and spiritually from the presence of the Lord; and thus we see that they became subjects to follow after their own will.

8. Now behold, it was not expedient that man should be reclaimed from this temporal death, for that would destroy the great plan of happiness.

9. Therefore, as the soul could never die, and the fall had brought upon all mankind a spiritual death as well as a temporal, that is, they were cut off from the presence of the Lord, it was expedient that mankind should be reclaimed from this spiritual death.

10. Therefore, as they had become carnal, sensual, and devilish, by nature, this probationary state became a state for them to prepare; it became a preparatory state.

13. Therefore, according to justice, the plan of redemption could not be brought about, only on conditions of repentance of men in this probationary state, yea, this preparatory state;

15. And now, the plan of mercy could not be brought about except an atonement should be made; therefore God himself atoneth for the sins of the world, to bring about the plan of mercy, to appease the demands of justice, that God might be a perfect, just God, and a merciful God also.

16. Now, repentance could not come unto men except there were a punishment, which also was eternal as the life of the soul should be, affixed opposite to the plan of happiness, which was as eternal also as the life of the soul.

17. Now, how could a man repent except he should sin? How could he sin if there was no law? How could there be a law save there was a punishment?

18. Now, there was a punishment affixed, and a just law given, which brought remorse of conscience unto man.

20. And also, if there was no law given against sin men would not be afraid to sin.

21. And if there was no law given, if men sinned what could justice do, or mercy either, for they would have no claim upon the creature?

22. But there is a law given, and a punishment affixed, and a repentance granted;

26. And thus God bringeth about his great and eternal purposes, which were prepared from the foundation of the world.

27. Therefore, O my son, whosoever will come may come and partake of the waters of life freely; and whosoever will not come the same is not compelled to come; but in the last day it shall be restored unto him according to his deeds.

28. If he has desired to do evil, and has not repented in his days [of probation], behold, evil shall be done unto him, according to the restoration of God.

A 42-298

13. And if ye shall say there is no law, ye shall also say there is no sin. If ye shall say there is no sin, ye shall also say there is no righteousness. And if there be no righteousness there be no happiness. And if there be no righteousness nor happiness there be no punishment nor misery. And if these things are not there is no God. And if there is no God, we are not, neither the earth; for there could have been no creation of things, neither to act nor to be acted upon; wherefore, all things must have vanished away.

14. And now, my sons, I speak unto you these things for your profit and learning; for there is a God, and he hath created all things, both the heavens and the earth, and all things that in them are, both things to act and things to be acted upon.

15. ---and in fine, all things which are created, it must needs be that there was an opposition; even the forbidden fruit in opposition to the tree of life; the one being sweet and the other bitter.

16. Wherefore, the Lord God gave unto man that he should act for himself. Wherefore, man could not act for himself save it should be that he was enticed by the one or the other.

2N 2-54

27. But wo unto him that has the law given, yea, that has all the commandments of God, like unto us, and that transgresseth them, and that wasteth the days of his probation, for awful is his state!

28. O that cunning plan of the evil one! O the vainness, and the frailties, and the foolishness of men! When they are learned they think they are wise, and they hearken not unto the counsel of

God, for they set it aside, supposing they know of themselves, wherefore, their wisdom is foolishness and it profiteth them not. And they shall perish. 2N 9-69

11. O my brethren, hearken unto my word; arouse the faculties of your soul; shake yourselves that ye may awake from the slumber of death; and loose yourselves from the pains of hell that ye may not become angels to the devil, to be cast into that lake of fire and brimstone which is the second death. J 4-113

38. ---yea, for ye have sought all the days of your lives for that which ye could not obtain; and ye have sought for happiness in doing iniquity, which thing is contrary to the nature of that righteousness which is in our great and Eternal Head. H 13-392

39. O, my beloved brethren, remember the awfulness in transgressing against that Holy God, and also the awfulness of yielding to the enticings of that cunning one. Remember, to be carnally-minded is death, and to be spiritually-minded is life eternal. 2N 9-69

II. THE PERIOD OF "WAITING"

1. *THE STATE OF THE SOUL AFTER DEATH, BEFORE RESURRECTION.* 6. Now there must needs be a space betwixt the time of death and the time of the resurrection.

7. And now I would inquire what becometh of the souls of men from this time of death to the time appointed for the resurrection?

8. Now whether there is more than one time appointed for men to rise it mattereth not; for all do not die at once, and this mattereth not; all is as one day with God, and time only is measured unto men.

9. Therefore, there is a time appointed unto men that they shall rise from the dead; and there is a space between the time of death and the resurrection. And now, concerning this space of time, what becometh of the souls of men is the thing which I have inquired diligently of the Lord to know; and this is the thing of which I do know.

11. Now, concerning the state of the soul between death and the resurrection—Behold, it has been made known unto me by an angel, that the spirits of all men, as soon as they are departed from this mortal body, yea, the spirits of all men, whether they be good or evil, are taken home to that God who gave them life.

12. And then shall it come to pass, that the spirits of those who are righteous are received into a state of happiness, which is

called paradise, a state of rest, a state of peace, where they shall rest from all their troubles and from all care, and sorrow.

13. And then shall it come to pass, that the spirits of the wicked, yea, who are evil—for behold, they have no part nor portion of the Spirit of the Lord; for behold, they chose evil works rather than good; therefore the spirit of the devil did enter into them, and take possession of their house—and these shall be cast out into outer darkness; there shall be weeping, and wailing, and gnashing of teeth, and this because of their own iniquity, being led captive by the will of the devil.

14. Now this is the state of the souls of the wicked, yea, in darkness, and a state of awful, fearful looking for the fiery indignation of the wrath of God upon them; thus they remain in this state, as well as the righteous in paradise, until the time of their resurrection.

15. Now, there are some that have understood that this state of happiness and this state of misery of the soul, before the resurrection, was a first resurrection. Yea, I admit it may be termed a resurrection, the raising of the spirit or the soul and their consignment to happiness or misery, according to the words which have been spoken.

21. ---but this much I say, that there is a space between death and the resurrection of the body, and a state of the soul in happiness or in misery until the time which is appointed of God that the dead shall come forth, and be reunited, both soul and body, and be brought to stand before God, and be judged according to their works.

A 40-295

III. THE RESURRECTION

1. *THE RESURRECTION COMES BECAUSE OF THE ATONEMENT.* 7. And if Christ had not risen from the dead, or have broken the bands of death that the grave should have no victory, and that death should have no sting, there could have been no resurrection.

Mo 16-165

8. And thus God breaketh the bands of death, having gained the victory over death; giving the Son power to make intercession for the children of men—

9. Having ascended into heaven, ---broken the bands of death, taken upon himself their iniquity and their transgressions, having redeemed them, and satisfied the demands of justice.

Mo 15-163

4. ---nevertheless, in our bodies we shall see God.

5. Yea, I know that ye know that in the body he shall show himself unto those at Jerusalem, from whence we came; for it is expedient that it should be among them; for it behooveth the great Creator that he suffereth himself to become subject unto man in the flesh, and die for all men, that all men might become subject unto him.

7. Wherefore, it must needs be an infinite atonement—save it should be an infinite atonement this corruption could not put on incorruption. Wherefore, the first judgment which came upon man must needs have remained to an endless duration. And if so, this flesh must have laid down to rot and to crumble to its mother earth, to rise no more.

8. O the wisdom of God, his mercy and grace! For behold, if the flesh should rise no more our spirits must become subject to that angel who fell from before the presence of the Eternal God, and became the devil, to rise no more.

10. O how great the goodness of our God, who prepareth a way for our escape from the grasp of this awful monster; yea, that monster, death and hell, which I call the death of the body, and also the death of the spirit.

11. And because of the way of deliverance of our God, the Holy One of Israel, this death, of which I have spoken, which is the temporal, shall deliver up its dead; which death is the grave.

12. And this death of which I have spoken, which is the spiritual death, shall deliver up its dead; which spiritual death is hell; wherefore, death and hell must deliver up their dead, and hell must deliver up its captive spirits, and the grave must deliver up its captive bodies and the bodies and the spirits of men will be restored one to the other; and it is by the power of the resurrection of the Holy One of Israel.

2N 9-67

18. ---For O how beautiful upon the mountains are the feet of him that bringeth good tidings, that is the founder of peace, yea, even the Lord, who has redeemed his people; yea, him who has granted salvation unto his people;

19. For were it not for the redemption which he hath made for his people, which was prepared from the foundation of the world, I say unto you, were it not for this, all mankind must have perished.

20. But behold, the bands of death shall be broken, and the Son reigneth, and hath power over the dead; therefore, he bringeth to pass the resurrection of the dead.

25. And little children also have eternal life.

26. But behold, and fear, and tremble before God, for ye ought to tremble; for the Lord redeemeth none such that rebel against him and die in their sins; yea, even all those that have perished in their sins ever since the world began, that have wilfully rebelled against God, that have known the commandments

of God, and would not keep them; these are they that have no part in the first resurrection.

Mo 15-164

45. Now, behold, I have spoken unto you concerning the death of the mortal body, and also concerning the resurrection of the mortal body. I say unto you this mortal body is raised to an immortal body, that is from death, even from the first death unto life, that they can die no more; their spirits uniting with their bodies, never to be divided; thus the whole becoming spiritual and immortal, that they can no more see corruption.

A 11-224

7. Behold he [Christ] offereth himself a sacrifice for sin, to answer the ends of the law, unto all those who have a broken heart and a contrite spirit; and unto none else can the ends of the law be answered.

8. Wherefore, how great the importance to make these things known unto the inhabitants of the earth, that they may know that there is no flesh that can dwell in the presence of God, save it be through the merits, and mercy, and grace of the Holy Messiah, who layeth down his life according to the flesh, and taketh it again by the power of the Spirit, that he may bring to pass the resurrection of the dead, being the first that should rise.

9. Wherefore, he is the first fruits unto God, inasmuch as he shall make intercession for all the children of men; and they that believe in him shall be saved.

2N 2-53

2. *THE FIRST RESURRECTION.* 21. And there cometh a resurrection, even a first resurrection; yea, even a resurrection of those that have been, and who are, and who shall be, even until the resurrection of Christ—for so shall he be called.

22. And now, the resurrection of all the prophets, and all those that have believed in their words, or all those that have kept the commandments of God, shall come forth in the first resurrection; therefore, they are the first resurrection.

23. They are raised to dwell with God who has redeemed them; thus they have eternal life through Christ, who has broken the bands of death.

24. And these are those who have part in thee first resurrection; and these are they that have died before Christ came, in their ignorance, not having salvation declared unto them. And thus the Lord bringeth about the restoration of these; and they have a part in the first resurrection, or have eternal life, being redeemed by the Lord.

Mo 15-164

3. *RESURRECTION OF THE "IGNORANT."* 26. For the atonement satisfied the demands of his justice upon all those who

have not the law given to them, that they are delivered from that awful monster, death and hell, and the devil, and the lake of fire and brimstone, which is endless torment; and they are restored to that God who gave them breath, which is the Holy One of Israel.

2N 9-69

IV. THE RESTORATION

1. And now, my son, I [Alma] have somewhat to say concerning the restoration of which has been spoken; for behold, some have wrested the scriptures, and have gone far astray because of this thing. And I perceive that thy mind has been worried also concerning this thing. But behold, I will explain it unto thee.

2. I say unto thee, my son, that the plan of restoration is requisite with the justice of God; for it is requisite that all things should be restored to their proper order. Behold, it is requisite and just, according to the power and resurrection of Christ, that the soul of man should be restored to its body, *and that every part of the body should be restored to itself.*

3. And it is requisite with the justice of God that men should be judged according to their works; and if their works were good in this life, and the desires of their hearts were good, that they should also, at the last day, be restored unto that which is good.

4. And if their works are evil they shall be restored unto them for evil. Therefore, all things shall be restored to their proper order, every thing to its natural frame—(mortality raised to immortality, corruption to incorruption)—raised to endless happiness to inherit the kingdom of God, or to endless misery to inherit the kingdom of the devil, the one on one hand, the other on the other— A 41-297

10. Do not suppose, because it has been spoken concerning restoration, that ye shall be restored from sin to happiness. Behold, I say unto you, wickedness never was happiness.

12. And now behold, is the meaning of the word restoration to take a thing of a natural state and place it in an unnatural state, or to place it in a state opposite to its nature?

13. O my son, this is not the case; but the meaning of the word restoration is to bring back again evil for evil, ---good for that which is good;

15. For that which ye do send out shall return unto you again, and be restored; therefore, the word restoration more fully condemneth the sinner, and justifieth him not at all. A 41-297

43. The spirit and the body shall be reunited again in its perfect form; both limb and joint shall be restored to its proper frame, even as we now are at this time; and we shall be brought to stand

before God, knowing even as we know now, and have a bright recollection of all our guilt.

44. *Now, this restoration shall come to all, both old and young, both bond and free, both male and female, both the wicked and the righteous; and even there shall not so much as a hair of their heads be lost; but everything shall be restored to its perfect frame, as it is now, or in the body,*

A 11-223

V. THE REDEMPTION

12. Behold, he [the Lord] created Adam, and by Adam came the fall of man. And because of the fall of man came Jesus Christ, even the Father and the Son; and because of Jesus Christ came the redemption of man.

13. And because of the redemption of man, which came by Jesus Christ, they are brought back into the presence of the Lord; yea, this is wherein all men are redeemed, because the death of Christ bringeth to pass the resurrection, which bringeth to pass a redemption from an endless sleep, from which sleep all men shall be awakened by the power of God when the trump shall sound; and they shall come forth, both small and great, and all shall stand before his bar, being redeemed and loosed from this eternal band of death, which death is a temporal death.

Mn 9-476

4. Thus all mankind were lost; and behold, they would have been endlessly lost were it not that God redeemed his people from their lost and fallen state.

6. And now if Christ had not come into the world, speaking of things to come as though they had already come, there could have been no redemption.

Mo 16-165

11. And he [Christ] hath power given unto him from the Father to redeem them from their sins because of repentance; therefore he hath sent his angels to declare the tidings of the conditions of repentance, which bringeth unto the power of the Redeemer, unto the salvation of their souls.

H 5-369

40. And he shall come into the world to redeem his people; and he shall take upon him the transgressions of those who believe on his name; and these are they that shall have eternal life, and salvation cometh to none else.

41. Therefore, the wicked remain as though there had been no redemption made except it be the loosing of the bands of death.

A 11-223

25. Now if it had not been for the plan of redemption, which was laid from the foundation of the world, there could have been

no resurrection of the dead; but there was a plan of redemption laid, which shall bring to pass the resurrection of the dead, of which has been spoken.

26. And now behold, if it were possible that our first parents could have gone forth and partaken of the tree of life they would have been forever miserable, having no preparatory state; and thus the plan of redemption would have been frustrated, and the word of God would have been void, taking none effect.

27. But behold, it was not so; but it was appointed unto men that they must die; and after death, they must come to judgment, even that same judgment of which we have spoken, which is the end. A 12-226

(The plan of redemption was laid from the beginning of the world, and man was told of the plan from the first.) 29. ---[The Lord] sent angels to converse with them [mankind],

30. And they began from that time forth to call on his name; therefore God conversed with men, and made known unto them the plan of redemption, which had been prepared from the foundation of the world; and this he made known unto them according to their faith and repentance and their holy works.

32. Therefore God gave unto them commandments, after having made known unto them the plan of redemption, that they should not do evil, the penalty thereof being a second death, which was an everlasting death as to things pertaining unto righteousness; for on such the plan of redemption could have no power, for the works of justice could not be destroyed, according to the supreme goodness of God.

33. But God did call on men, in the name of his Son, (this being the plan of redemption which was laid) saying: If ye will repent, and harden not your hearts, then will I have mercy upon you, through mine Only Begotten Son; A 12-227

20. ---yea, behold I say unto you, that as these things are true, and as the Lord God liveth, there is none other name given under heaven save it be this Jesus Christ, of which I have spoken, whereby man can be saved. 2N 25-91

6. Wherefore, redemption cometh in and through the Holy Messiah; for he is full of grace and truth. 2N 2-53

VI. THE JUDGMENT

1. *THE WICKED ARE SEPARATED FROM THE RIGHTEOUS.* 4. ---all people, and all kindreds, and all nations and tongues shall stand before God, to be judged of their works, whether they be good or whether they be evil—

5. If they be good, to the resurrection of everlasting life; and if they be evil, to the resurrection of damnation---according to the mercy, and the justice, and the holiness which is in Christ, who was before the world began.

3N 26-44s

15. And it shall come to pass that when all men shall have passed from this first death unto life, insomuch as they have become immortal, they must appear before the judgment-seat of the Holy One of Israel; and then cometh the judgment, and then must they be judged according to the holy judgment of God.

16. And assuredly, as the Lord liveth, for the Lord God hath spoken it, and it is his eternal word, which cannot pass away, that they who are righteous shall be righteous still, and they who are filthy shall be filthy still; wherefore, they who are filthy are the devil and his angels; and they shall go away into everlasting fire, prepared for them;

18. But, behold, the righteous, the saints of the Holy One of Israel, they who have believed in the Holy One of Israel, they who have endured the crosses of the world, and despised the shame of it, they shall inherit the kingdom of God, which was prepared for them from the foundation of the world, and their joy shall be full forever.

2N 9-67

32. ---for the day should come that they must be judged of their works, yea, even the works which were done by the temporal body in their days of probation.

33. Wherefore, if they should die in their wickedness they must be cast off also, as to the things which are spiritual, which are pertaining to righteousness; wherefore, they must be brought to stand before God, to be judged of their works and if their works have been filthiness they must needs be filthy; and if they be filthy it must needs be that they cannot dwell in the kingdom of God; if so, the kingdom of God must be filthy also.

34. ---there cannot any unclean thing enter into the kingdom of God; wherefore there must needs be a place of filthiness prepared for that which is filthy.

35. And there is a place prepared, yea, even that awful hell of which I have spoken, and the devil is the foundation of it;

36. Wherefore, the wicked are rejected from the righteous, and also from that tree of life, whose fruit is most precious and most desirable above all other fruits; yea, and it is the greatest of all the gifts of God.

1N 15-30

7. And he [Christ] hath brought to pass the redemption of the world, whereby he that is found guiltless before him at the judgment day hath it given unto him to dwell in the presence of God in his kingdom, to sing ceaseless praises with the choirs above, unto the Father, and unto the Son, and unto the Holy Ghost, which are one God, in a state of happiness which hath no end.

Mn 7-471

2. SPIRITUAL DEATH. (*See Chapter XVI, Part III, Section I, for an additional discussion of "Hell."*) 12. ---concerning death, and being raised from this mortality to a state of immortality, and being brought before the bar of God, to be judged according to our works.

13. Then if our hearts have been hardened, yea, if we have hardened our hearts against the word, insomuch that it has not been found in us, then will our state be awful, for then we shall be condemned.

14. For our words will condemn us, yea, all our works will condemn us; we shall not be found spotless; and our thoughts will also condemn us; and in this awful state we shall not dare to look up to our God; and we would fain be glad if we could command the rocks and the mountains to fall upon us to hide us from his presence.

15. But this cannot be; we must come forth and stand before him in his glory, and in his power, and in his might, majesty, and dominion, and acknowledge to our everlasting shame that all his judgments are just; that he is merciful unto the children of men, and that he has all power to save every man that believeth on his name and bringeth forth fruit meet for repentance.

16. And now behold, I say unto you then cometh a death, even a second death, which is a spiritual death; then is a time that whosoever dieth in his sins, as to a temporal death, shall also die a spiritual death, yea, he shall die as to the things pertaining unto righteousness.

A 12-225

17. Then is the time when their torments shall be as a lake of fire and brimstone, whose flame ascendeth up forever and ever; and then is the time that they shall be chained down to an everlasting destruction, according to the power and captivity of Satan, he having subjected them according to his will.

18. Then, I say unto you, they shall be as though there had been no redemption made; for they cannot be redeemed according to God's justice; and they cannot die, seeing there is no more corruption.

37. And now, my brethren, seeing we know these things, and they are true, let us repent, and harden not our hearts, that we provoke not the Lord our God to pull down his wrath upon us in these his second commandments which he has given unto us; But let us enter into the rest of God, which is prepared according to his word.

A 12-226

3. JUDGMENT IS BASED UPON RECORDS. 27. ---it was appointed unto men that they must die; and after death, they must come to judgment, even that same judgment of which we have spoken, which is the end.

A 12-226

25. For behold, out of the books which have been written, and which shall be written, shall this people be judged, for by them shall their works be known unto men.

26. And behold, all things are written by the Father; therefore out of the books which shall be written shall the world be judged.

3N 28-451

21. Wherefore, for this cause hath the Lord God promised unto me that these things which I write shall be kept and preserved, and handed down unto my seed, from generation to generation, that the promise may be fulfilled unto Joseph, that his seed should never perish as long as the earth should stand.

22. Wherefore, these things shall go from generation to generation as long as the earth shall stand; and they shall go according to the will and pleasure of God; and the nations who shall possess them shall be judged of them according to the words which are written.

2N 25-91

20. And these things doth the Spirit manifest unto me; therefore I write unto you all. And for this cause I write unto you, that ye may know that ye must all stand before the judgment-seat of Christ, yea, every soul who belongs to the whole human family of Adam; and ye must stand to be judged of your works, whether they be good or evil;

Mn 3-465



CHAPTER XIV

*RELIGIOUS PRACTICES

Religious faith, organization, and ritual.

Any religious expression which affects large masses of people eventually unifies itself into some type of formal organization. As the organization grows, there is a tendency to increase the number and complexity of its rituals. In time these rituals become a means of identifying the organization.

Certain unique traits characterized the religious rituals of the ancient peoples of the *Book of Mormon*. It is interesting to note: first, that some features of their various beliefs and certain of their rituals were similar to those common among the ancient Hebrews and among other ancient Old World cultures; second, that traces of their religious practices were later to be found among some of the tribes of the American Indians; and lastly, that certain phases of their rituals and beliefs seem to have been unique to their own civilization.

The accompanying chapter lists many typical religious rituals which were practiced on the Western Hemisphere among the ancient peoples of the *Book of Mormon*. As has been said, the vestiges of many of these rituals can be found today among certain primitive groups of native "Americans." Although no attempt is made to correlate the religious practices found in the *Book of Mormon* with known practices among the American Indians, the subject offers a rich field for research. One example will be mentioned at this time, however, because it is especially interesting. Certain Indians in South America during some of their festivals remove their outer garments, and, standing in their doorways, shake these garments outside. They do this to confess and remove their sins and thus endeavor to purify their garments and their persons. A similar ceremony was practiced among the ancient peoples of the *Book of Mormon* (see "Abolition Ceremony"). Many such practices which might escape notice when reading the *Book of Mormon* are emphasized in this chapter.

*For key to reference symbols, see page 2.

PART I

FAITH

Faith on the "Word" of God is a prerequisite to all good works. Faith is a forerunner to organization, ritual, and doctrine.

I. ADVICE TO THE WORLD ON "FAITH"

23. And Christ truly said unto our fathers: If ye have faith ye can do all things which are expedient unto me. M 10-521

9. ---when they shall have received this [record] which is expedient that they should have first, to try their faith, and if it shall so be that they shall believe these things then shall the greater things be made manifest unto them.

10. And if it so be that they will not believe these things, then shall the greater things be withheld from them, unto their condemnation.

11. Behold, I was about to write them, all [things] which were engraven--- but the Lord forbade it, saying: I will try the faith of my people. 3N 26-448

II. "FAITH" IS NECESSARY TO BELIEF IN CHRIST

33. Preach unto them repentance, and faith on the Lord Jesus Christ; teach them to humble themselves and to be meek and lowly in heart; teach them to withstand every temptation of the devil, with their faith on the Lord Jesus Christ. A 37-291

26. Now, as I said concerning faith—that it was not a perfect knowledge—even so it is with my words. Ye cannot know of their surety at first, unto perfection, any more than faith is a perfect knowledge.

27. But behold, if ye will awake and arouse your faculties, even to an experiment upon my words, and exercise a particle of faith, yea, even if ye can do no more than desire to believe it, let this desire work in you, even until ye believe in a manner that ye can give place for a portion of my words.

28. Now, we will compare the word unto a seed. Now, if ye give place, that a seed may be planted in your heart,

38. But if ye neglect the tree, and take no thought for its nourishment, behold it will not get any root; and when the heat of the sun cometh and scorcheth it, because it hath no root it withers away, and ye pluck it up and cast it out.

39. Now, this is---because---ye will not nourish the tree, therefore ye cannot have the fruit thereof.

40. And thus, if ye will not nourish the word, looking forward with an eye of faith to the fruit thereof, ye can never pluck of the fruit of the tree of life.

41. But if ye will nourish the word, yea, nourish the tree as it beginneth to grow, by your faith with great diligence, and with patience, looking forward to the fruit thereof, it shall take root; and behold it shall be a tree springing up unto everlasting life.

42. And because of your diligence and your faith and your patience with the word in nourishing it, that it may take root in you, behold, by and by ye shall pluck the fruit thereof, which is most precious, which is sweet above all that is sweet, and which is white above all that is white, yea, and pure above all that is pure; and ye shall feast upon this fruit even until ye are filled, that ye hunger not, neither shall ye thirst.

A 32-278

23. And now, my brethren, I desire that ye shall plant this word in your hearts, and as it beginneth to swell even so nourish it by your faith.

A 32-281

23. And Christ truly said unto our fathers: If ye have faith ye can do all things which are expedient unto me.

M 10-521

40. And again, my beloved brethren, I would speak unto you concerning hope. How is it that ye can attain unto faith, save ye shall have hope?

42. Wherefore, if a man have faith he must needs have hope; for without faith there cannot be any hope.

43. And again, behold I say unto you that he cannot have faith and hope, save he shall be meek, and lowly of heart.

44. ---none is acceptable before God, save the meek and lowly in heart; and if a man be meek and lowly in heart, and confesses by the power of the Holy Ghost that Jesus is the Christ, he must needs have charity; for if he have not charity he is nothing;

45. And charity suffereth long, and is kind, and envieth not, and is not puffed up, seeketh not her own, is not easily provoked, thinketh no evil, and rejoiceth not in iniquity but rejoiceth in the truth, beareth all things, believeth all things, hopeth all things, endureth all things.

46. Wherefore, my beloved brethren, if ye have not charity, which is the greatest of all, for all things must fail—

47. But charity is the pure love of Christ, and it endureth forever; and whoso is found possessed of it at the last day, it shall be well with him. M 7-515

26. And now, my beloved brethren, I would that ye should come unto Christ, who is the Holy One of Israel, and partake of his salvation, and the power of his redemption. Yea, come unto him, and offer your whole souls as an offering unto him, and continue in fasting and praying, and endure to the end; and as the Lord liveth ye will be saved. O 1-131

9. ---there is no other way or means whereby man can be saved, only in and through Christ. Behold, he is the life and the light of the world. Behold, he is the word of truth and righteousness. A 38-298

28. And the words which I have spoken shall stand as a testimony against you; for they are sufficient to teach any man the right way; for the right way is to believe in Christ and deny him not; for by denying him ye also deny the prophets and the law. 2N 25-92

12. And as I spake concerning the convincing of the Jews, that Jesus is the very Christ, it must needs be that the Gentiles be convinced also that Jesus is the Christ, the Eternal God;

13. And that he manifesteth himself unto all those who believe in him, by the power of the Holy Ghost; yea, unto every nation, kindred, tongue, and people, working mighty miracles, signs, and wonders, among the children of men according to their faith. 2N 26-93

10. And now, my beloved brethren, and also Jew, and all ye ends of the earth, hearken unto these words and believe in Christ; and if ye believe not in these words believe in Christ. And if ye shall believe in Christ ye will believe in these words, for they are the words of Christ, and he hath given them unto me; and they teach all men that they should do good. 2N 83-107

III. EXAMPLES OF "FAITH" AMONG THE NEPHITES

Example 1. 4. And my soul hungered; and I [Enos] kneeled down before my Maker, and I cried unto him in mighty prayer and supplication for mine own soul; and all the day long did I cry unto him; yea, and when the night came I did still raise my voice high that it reached the heavens.

5. And there came a voice unto me, saying: Enos, thy sins are forgiven thee, and thou shalt be blessed.

6. And I, Enos, knew that God could not lie; wherefore, my guilt was swept away.

7. And I said: Lord, how is it done?

8. And he said unto me: Because of thy faith in Christ, whom thou hast never before heard nor seen. And many years pass away before he shall manifest himself in the flesh; wherefore, go to, thy faith hath made thee whole. Es 1-125

Example 2. 9. And Ammon said unto her: Believeth thou this? And she said unto him: I have had no witnesses save thy word, and the word of our servants; nevertheless I believe that it shall be according as thou hast said. [The wife of King Lamoni is speaking.]

10. And Ammon said unto her: Blessed are thou because of thy exceeding faith; I say unto thee, woman, there has not been such great faith among all the people of the Nephites. A 19-244

Example 3. 16. But Aaron said unto him: If thou desireth this thing, if thou wilt bow down before God, yea, if thou wilt repent of all thy sins, and will bow down before God, and call on his name in faith, believing that ye shall receive, then shalt thou receive the hope which thou desireth. [Aaron to Lamanite king.] A 22-252

Example 4. 10. Behold it was by faith that they of old were called after the holy order of God.

11. Wherefore, by faith was the law of Moses given, but in the gift of his Son hath God prepared a more excellent way; and it is by faith that it hath been fulfilled.

12. For if there be no faith among the children of men God can do no miracle among them; wherefore, he showed not himself until after their faith.

13. Behold, it was the faith of Alma and Amulek that caused the prison to tumble to the earth.

14. Behold, it was the faith of Nephi and Lehi that wrought the change upon the Lamanites, that they were baptized with fire and with the Holy Ghost.

15. Behold, it was the faith of Ammon and his brethren which wrought so great a miracle among the Lamanites.

17. And it was by faith that the three disciples obtained a promise that they should not taste of death; and they obtained not the promise until after their faith.

16. Yea, and even all they who wrought miracles wrought them by faith, even those who were before Christ and also those who were after.

18. And neither at any time hath any wrought miracles until after their faith; wherefore they first believed in the Son of God.

19. And there were many whose faith was so exceeding strong, even before Christ came, who could not be kept from within the

veil, but truly saw with their eyes the things which they had beheld with an eye of faith, and they were glad.

20. And behold, we have seen in this record that one of these was the brother of Jared; for so great was his faith in God, that when God put forth his finger he could not hide it from the sight of the brother of Jared, because of his word which he had spoken unto him, which word he had obtained by faith.

22. And it is by faith that my fathers have obtained the promise that these things should come unto their brethren through the Gentiles; therefore the Lord hath commanded me, yea, even Jesus Christ.

E 12-501

Example 5. 38. And now, my son, I have somewhat to say concerning the thing which our fathers call a ball, or director—or our fathers called it Liahona, which is being interpreted, a compass; and the Lord prepared it.

40. And it did work for them according to their faith in God; therefore, if they had faith to believe that God could cause that those spindles should point the way they should go, behold, it was done; therefore they had this miracle, and also many other miracles wrought by the power of God, day by day.

41. Nevertheless, because those miracles were worked by small means it did show unto them marvelous works. They were slothful, and forgot to exercise their faith and diligence and then those marvelous works ceased, and they did not progress in their journey;

44. For behold, it is as easy to give heed to the word of Christ, which will point to you a straight course to eternal bliss, as it was for our fathers to give heed to this compass, which would point unto them a straight course to the promised land.

45. And now I say, is there not a type in this thing? For just as surely as this director did bring our fathers, by following its course, to the promised land, shall the words of Christ, if we follow their course, carry us beyond this vale of sorrow into a far better land of promise.

A 37-291

IV. THE USE OF "SIGNS" TO STRENGTHEN FAITH

1. *A WARNING TO THOSE WHO DEMAND A "SIGN."*

16. Therefore, blessed are they who humble themselves without being compelled to be humble; or rather, in other words, blessed is he that believeth in the word of God, and is baptized without stubbornness of heart, yea, without being brought to know the word, or even compelled to know, before they will believe.

17. Yea, there are many who do say: If thou wilt show unto us a sign from heaven, then we shall know of a surety; then we shall believe.

18. Now I ask, is this faith? Behold, I say unto you, Nay; for if a man knoweth a thing he hath no cause to believe, for he knoweth it.

19. And now, how much more cursed is he that knoweth the will of God and doeth it not, than he that only believeth, or only hath cause to believe, and falleth into transgression?

21. And now as I said concerning faith—faith is not to have a perfect knowledge of things; therefore if ye have faith ye hope for things which are not seen, which are true. A 32-277

18. And he that saith: Show unto me, or ye shall be smitten—let him beware lest he commandeth that which is forbidden of the Lord.

19. For behold, the same that judgeth rashly shall be judged rashly again; for according to his works shall his wages be; therefore, he that smiteth shall be smitten again, of the Lord Mn 8-473

18. ---and signs shall follow them that believe in my name.

E 4-486

24. And these signs shall follow them that believe—in my name shall they cast out devils; they shall speak with new tongues; they shall take up serpents; and if they drink any deadly thing it shall not hurt them; they shall lay hands on the sick and they shall recover;

25. And whosoever shall believe in my name, doubting nothing, unto him will I confirm all my words, even unto the ends of the earth. Mn 9-477

6. And now, I, Moroni, would speak somewhat concerning these things; I would show unto the world that faith is things which are hoped for and not seen; wherefore, dispute not because ye see not, for ye receive no witness until after the trial of your faith. E 12-500

2. TWO DISSENTERS WHO DEMANDED A "SIGN."

(*Sherem.*) 13. And it came to pass that he [Sherem] said unto me: Show me a sign by this power of the Holy Ghost, in the which ye know so much.

14. And I [Jacob] said unto him: What am I that I should tempt God to show unto thee a sign in the thing which thou knowest to be true? Yet thou wilt deny it, because thou art of the devil.

Nevertheless, not my will be done; but if God shall smite thee, let that be a sign unto thee that he has power, both in heaven and in earth; and also, that Christ shall come; And thy will, O Lord, be done, and not mine.

15. And it came to pass that when I, Jacob, had spoken these words, the power of the Lord came upon him, insomuch that he fell to the earth. And it came to pass that he was nourished for the space of many days.

16. And it came to pass that he said unto the people: Gather together on the morrow, for I shall die, wherefore, I desire to speak unto the people before I shall die.

17. And it came to pass that on the morrow the multitude were gathered together; and he spake plainly unto them and denied the things which he had taught them, and confessed the Christ, and the power of the Holy Ghost, and the ministering of angels.

18. And he spake plainly unto them, that he had been deceived by the power of the devil. And he spake of hell, and of eternity, and of eternal punishment.

19. And he said: I fear lest I have committed the unpardonable sin, for I have lied unto God; for I denied the Christ, and said that I believed the scriptures; and they truly testify of him. And because I have thus lied unto God I greatly fear lest my case shall be awful; but I confess unto God.

20. And it came to pass that when he had said these words he could say no more, and he gave up the ghost. J 7-124

(*Korihor.*) 43. And now Korihor said unto Alma: If thou wilt show me a sign, that I may be convinced that there is a God, yea, show unto me that he hath power, and then will I be convinced of the truth of thy words.

44. But Alma said unto him: Thou hast had signs enough will ye tempt your God? Will ye say, Show unto me a sign, when ye have the testimony of all these thy brethren, and also all the holy prophets? The scriptures are laid before thee, yea, and all things denote there is a God; yea, even the earth, and all things that are upon the face of it, yea, and its motion, yea, and also all the planets which move in their regular form do witness that there is a Supreme Creator.

45. And yet do ye go about, leading away the hearts of this people, testifying unto them there is no God? And yet will ye deny against all these witnesses? And he [*Korihor*] said: Yea, I will deny, except ye shall show me a sign.

47. ---[Alma speaks to *Korihor*] therefore if thou shalt deny again, behold God shall smite thee, that thou shalt become dumb.

48. Now *Korihor* said unto him: I do not deny the existence of a God, but I do not believe that there is a God; and I say also,

that ye do not know that there is a God; and except ye show me a sign, I will not believe.

49. Now Alma said unto him: This will I give unto thee for a sign, that thou shalt be struck dumb, according to my words; and I say, that in the name of God, ye shall be struck dumb, that ye shall no more have utterance.

50. Now when Alma had said these words, Korihor was struck dumb, that he could not have utterance, according to the words of Alma.

51. Now when the chief judge saw this, he put forth his hand and wrote unto Korihor, saying: Art thou convinced of the power of God?

52. And Korihor put forth his hand and wrote, saying: I know that I am dumb, for I cannot speak; and I know that nothing save it were the power of God could bring this upon me; yea, and I also knew that there was a God.

54. Now when he had said this, he besought that Alma should pray unto God, that the curse might be taken from him.

55. But Alma said unto him: If this curse should be taken from thee thou wouldst again lead away the hearts of this people; therefore, it shall be unto thee even as the Lord will.

56. And it came to pass that the curse was not taken off of Korihor; but he was cast out, and went about from house to house begging for food.

57. Now the knowledge of what had happened unto Korihor was immediately published throughout all the land;

A 30-272

PART II

RELIGIOUS ORGANIZATION "THE CHURCH"

(8. And how be it my church save it
be called in my name?) 3N 27-450

I. CHRIST COMMANDS THAT HIS CHURCH BE CALLED IN HIS NAME

(*For the church of the devil, see Chapter XVI, Part I, Section III, and Part IV, Section IV.*) 21. Verily, verily, I say unto you, this is my gospel; and ye know the things that ye must do in my church; for the works which ye have seen me do even that shall ye also do; 3N 27-451

4. ---Verily, verily, I say unto you, why is it that the people should murmur and dispute because of this thing?

5. Have they not read the scriptures, which say ye must take upon you the name of Christ, which is my name? For by this name shall ye be called at the last day;

6. And whoso taketh upon him my name, and endureth to the end, the same shall be saved at the last day.

7. Therefore, whatsoever ye shall do, ye shall do it in my name; therefore ye shall call the church in my name; and ye shall call upon the Father in my name that he will bless the church for my sake. 3N 27-450

8. And how be it my church save it be called in my name? For if a church be called in Moses' name then it be Moses' church; or if it be called in the name of a man then it be the church of a man; but if it be called in my name then it is my church, if it so be that they are built upon my gospel.

9. Verily I say unto you, that ye are built upon my gospel; therefore ye shall call whatsoever things ye do call, in my name; 3N 27-450

5. ---Behold there shall one be ordained among you, and to him will I give power that he shall break bread and bless it and give it unto the people of my church, unto all those who shall believe and be baptized in my name. 3N 18-484

18. Yea, blessed is this people who are willing to bear my name; for in my name shall they be called; and they are mine.

21. And he that will hear my voice shall be my sheep; and him shall ye receive into the church, and him will I also receive.

22. For behold, this is my church; whosoever is baptized shall be baptized unto repentance. And whomsoever ye receive shall believe in my name; and him will I freely forgive.

23. For it is I that taketh upon me the sins of the world; for it is I that hath created them; and it is I that granteth unto him that believeth unto the end a place at my right hand.

24. For behold, in my name, are they called; and if they know me they shall come forth, and shall have a place eternally at my right hand.

25. And it shall come to pass that when the second trump shall sound then shall they that never knew me come forth and shall stand before me.

26. And then shall they know that I am the Lord their God, that I am their Redeemer; but they would not be redeemed.

27. And then I will confess unto them that I never knew them; and they shall depart into everlasting fire prepared for the devil and his angels.

28. Therefore I say unto you, that he that will not hear my voice, the same shall ye not receive into my church, for him I will not receive at the last day.

Mo 26-185

11. [King Benjamin preaches to the people.] And moreover, I shall give this people a name, that thereby they may be distinguished above all the people which the Lord God hath brought out of the land of Jerusalem;

12. And I give unto them a name that never shall be blotted out, except it be through transgression.

Mo 1-185

7. [King Benjamin continues.] And now, because of the covenant which ye have made ye shall be called the children of Christ,

8. And under this head ye are made free---There is no other name given whereby salvation cometh; therefore, I would that ye should take upon you the name of Christ,

9. And it shall come to pass that whosoever doeth this shall be found at the right hand of God,

10. And now it shall come to pass, that whosoever shall not take upon him the name of Christ must be called by some other name; therefore, he findeth himself on the left hand of God.

Mo 5-145

20. ---there is none other name given under heaven save it be this Jesus Christ, of which I have spoken, whereby man can be saved.

2N 25-91

21. And they who were baptized in the name of Jesus were called the church of Christ.

3N 26-449

10. Behold it was by faith that they of old were called after the holy order of God. E 12-501

11. ---yea, the Lord God, the God of Abraham, the God of Isaac, and the God of Jacob, did deliver them out of bondage.

13. Yea, and that same God did establish his church among them; A 29-268

2. That he has spoken unto the Jews, by the mouth of his holy prophets, even from the beginning down, from generation to generation, until the time comes that they shall be restored to the true church and fold of God; when they shall be gathered home to the lands of their inheritance, and shall be established in all their lands of promise. 2N 9-66

38. ---Why have ye polluted the holy church of God? Why are ye ashamed to take upon you the name of Christ? Mn 8-475

II. THE NEPHITES NAMED THEIR CHURCH AFTER CHRIST

(Joseph Smith used the modern word "Christians" to denote the followers of Christ.) 13. ---and he prayed mightily unto his God for the blessings of liberty to rest upon his brethren, so long as there should a band of Christians remain to possess the land—

14. For thus were all the true believers of Christ, who belonged to the church of God, called by those who did not belong to the church.

15. And those who did belong to the church were faithful; yea, all those who were true believers in Christ took upon them, gladly, the name of Christ, or Christians as they were called, because of their belief in Christ who should come.

16. And therefore, at this time, Moroni prayed that the cause of the Christians, and the freedom of the land might be favored. A 46-310

17. And they were called the church of God, or the church of Christ, from that time forward. And it came to pass that whosoever was baptized by the power and authority of God was added to his church. Mo 18-169

18. Therefore, Alma did go forth into the water and did baptize them; yea, he did baptize them after the manner he did his brethren in the waters of Mormon; yea, and as many as he did baptize did belong to the church of God;

24. And they were called the people of God. And the Lord did pour out his Spirit upon them, and they were blessed, and prospered in the land.

Mo 25-183

III. THE NEPHITE CHURCH ORGANIZATION

19. And it came to pass that king Mosiah granted unto Alma that he might establish churches throughout all the land of Zarahemla; and gave him power to ordain priests and teachers over every church.

20. Now this was done because there were so many people that they could not all be governed by one teacher; neither could they all hear the word of God in one assembly;

21. Therefore they did assemble themselves together in different bodies, being called churches; every church having their priests and their teachers, and every priest preaching the word according as it were delivered to him by the mouth of Alma.

22. And thus, notwithstanding there being many churches they were all one church, yea, even the church of God; for there was nothing preached in all the churches except it were repentance and faith in God.

23. And now there were seven churches in the land of Zarahemla. And it came to pass that whosoever were desirous to take upon them the name of Christ, or of God, they did join the churches of God;

Mo 25-183

IV. THE "MEMBERS" OF CHRIST'S CHURCH

13. For how knoweth a man the master whom he has not served, and who is a stranger unto him, and is far from the thoughts and intents of his heart?

Mo 5-145

8. For thus saith the scriptures: Choose ye this day, whom ye will serve.

9. Now if a man desireth to serve God, it was his privilege; or rather, if he believed in God it was his privilege to serve him; but if he did not believe in him there was no law to punish him.

7. Now there was no law against a man's belief; for it was strictly contrary to the commands of God that there should be a law which should bring men on to unequal grounds.

A 30-269

(Advised not to cast out the unworthy from the churches.)

32. Nevertheless, ye shall not cast him out of your synagogues, or

your places of worship, for unto such shall ye continue to minister; for ye know not but what they will return and repent, and come unto me with full purpose of heart, and I shall heal them; and ye shall be the means of bringing salvation unto them.

28. ---ye shall not [however] suffer any one knowingly to partake of my flesh and blood unworthily, when ye shall minister it; [meaning the sacrament] 8N 18-435

22. And behold, ye shall meet together oft; and ye shall not forbid any man from coming unto you when ye shall meet together, but suffer them that they may come unto you and forbid them not;

23. But ye shall pray for them, and shall not cast them out; and if it so be that they come unto you oft ye shall pray for them unto the Father, in my name. 8N 18-435

8. But as oft as they repented and sought forgiveness, with real intent, they were forgiven. M 6-512

(The poor were discriminated against by certain dissenting sects.)

2. ---for behold, they were cast out of the synagogues because of the coarseness of their apparel—

3. Therefore they were not permitted to enter into their synagogues to worship God, being esteemed as filthiness; therefore there were poor; yea, they were esteemed by their brethren as dross; therefore they were poor as to things of the world; and also they were poor in heart.

9. Behold thy brother hath said, What shall we do?—for we are cast out of our synagogues, that we cannot worship our God.

10. Behold I say unto you, do ye suppose that ye cannot worship God save it be in your synagogues only?

11. And moreover, I would ask, do ye suppose that ye must not worship God only once in a week?

12. I say unto you, it is well that ye are cast out of your synagogues, that ye may be humble, and that ye may learn wisdom; A 32-277

V. CHURCH MEMBERS RECORDED

32. Now I say unto you, Go; and whosoever will not repent of his sins the same shall not be numbered among my people; and this shall be observed from this time forward. Mo 26-186

7. And they were strict to observe that there should be no iniquity among them; and whoso was found to commit iniquity, and three witnesses of the church did condemn them before the elders, and if they repented not, and confessed not, their names

were blotted out, and they were not numbered among the people of Christ. M 6-512

4. [But]--- after they had been received unto baptism, and were wrought upon and cleansed by the power of the Holy Ghost, they were *numbered among the people of the church of Christ*; and their names were taken, that they might be remembered and nourished by the good word of God---

36. And those that would not confess their sins and repent of their iniquity, the same were not numbered among the people of the church, and their names were blotted out. Mo 26-186

VI. GOD SHALL ACKNOWLEDGE THE "MEMBERS" OF HIS CHURCH

THE RIGHT HAND OF GOD. (*The obedient who enter into a covenant with God, shall be found on the "right hand" of God.*) 27. Wherefore, my beloved brethren, have miracles ceased because Christ hath ascended into heaven, and hath sat down on the right hand of God, to claim of the Father his rights of mercy which he hath upon the children of men? M 7-514

8. ---There is no other name given whereby salvation cometh; therefore, I would that ye should *take upon you the name of Christ*, all you that have entered into the covenant with God that ye should be obedient unto the end of your lives.

9. And it shall come to pass that whosoever doeth this shall be found at the right hand of God, for he shall know the name by which he is called; for he shall be called by the name of Christ. Mo 5-145

30. And [shall] land their souls, yea, their immortal souls, at the right hand of God in the kingdom of heaven, to sit down with Abraham, and Isaac, and with Jacob and with all our holy fathers to go no more out. H 3-365

4. Wherefore, whoso believeth in God might with surety hope for a better world, yea, even a place at the right hand of God, E 12-500

10. ---whosoever shall not take upon him the name of Christ must be called by some other name; therefore, he findeth himself on the left hand of God. Mo 5-145

57. ---The names of the wicked shall not be mingled with the names of my people;

58. For the names of the righteous shall be written in the book of life, and unto them will I grant an inheritance at my right hand. And now, my brethren, what have ye to say against this? I say unto you, if ye speak against it, it matters not, for the word of God must be fulfilled. A 5-209

PART III

RELIGIOUS RITUALS

The ancient people practiced many rituals to prove their faith. (For "Marriage," "Burial," and other social rituals, see Chapter X. See same chapter for "Tithing.") (See Chapter XVI, Part I, Section I, Unit 4, for "Priestcraft.")

I. THE ABOLUTION CEREMONY

(Before death, and at other times of deep stress, a cleansing ceremony took place.) 28. I say unto you that I have caused that ye should assemble yourselves together that I might rid my garments of your blood, at this period of time when I am about to go down in peace, and my immortal spirit may join the choirs above in singing the praises of a just God. Mo 2-138

44. O, my beloved brethren, remember my words, behold, I take off my garments, and I shake them before you; I pray the God of my salvation that he view me with his all-searching eye; wherefore, ye shall know at the last day, when all men shall be judged of their works, that the God of Israel did witness that I shook your iniquities from my soul and that I stand with brightness before him, and am rid of your blood. 2N 9-70

27. Have ye walked, keeping yourselves blameless before God? Could ye say, if ye were called to die at this time, within yourselves, that ye have been sufficiently humble? That your garments have been cleansed and made white through the blood of Christ, who will come to redeem his people from their sins? A 5-207

20. I say unto you, can ye think of being saved when you have yielded yourselves to become subjects to the devil?

21. I say unto you, ye will know at that day that ye cannot be saved; for there can no man be saved except his garments are washed white; yea, his garments must be purified until they are cleansed from all stain, through the blood of him of whom it has been spoken by our fathers, who should come to redeem his people from their sins. A 5-206

37. And it came to pass that the Lord said unto me: If they have not charity it mattereth not unto thee, thou hast been faith-

ful; wherefore, thy garments shall be made clean. And because thou hast seen thy weakness thou shalt be made strong, even unto the sitting down in the place which I have prepared in the mansions of my Father.

38. And now I, Moroni, bid farewell unto the Gentiles, yea, and also unto my brethren whom I love, until we shall meet before the judgement-seat of Christ, where men shall know that my garments are not spotted with your blood. E 13-502

25. And may the Lord bless you, and keep your garments spotless, that ye may at last be brought to sit down with Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob, and the holy prophets who have been ever since the world began, having your garments spotless even as their garments are spotless, in the kingdom of heaven to go no more out. A 7-213

35. And these things are written that we may rid our garments of the blood of our brethren, who have dwindled in unbelief. Mn 9-478

II. BAPTISM

1. "*REPENT AND BE BAPTIZED.*" (*Christ proclaims the way to salvation.*) 23. And he commandeth all men that they must repent, and be baptized in his name, having perfect faith in the Holy One of Israel, or they cannot be saved in the kingdom of God.

24. And if they will not repent and believe in his name, and be baptized in his name, and endure to the end, they must be damned; for the Lord God, the Holy One of Israel, has spoken it. 2N 9-68

14. Now I say unto you that ye must repent, and be born again; for the Spirit saith if ye are not born again ye cannot inherit the kingdom of heaven; therefore come and be baptized unto repentance, that ye may have faith on the Lamb of God, who taketh away the sins of the world, who is mighty to save and to cleanse from all unrighteousness. A 7-212

24. Now I would have you to remember also, that there were none who were brought unto repentance who were not baptized with water.

25. ---and this as a witness and a testimony before God, and unto the people, that they had repented and received a remission of their sins. 3N 7-415

33. And whoso believeth in me, and is baptized, the same shall be saved; and they are they who shall inherit the kingdom of God.

34. And whoso believeth not in me, and is not baptized, shall be damned.

35. Verily, verily, I say unto you, that this is my doctrine,

37. And again I say unto you, ye must repent, and become as a little child, and be baptized in my name, or ye can in no wise receive these things. 3N 12-428

19. And no unclean thing can enter into his kingdom; therefore nothing entereth into his rest save it be those who have washed their garments in my blood, because of their faith, and the repentance of all their sins, and their faithfulness unto the end.

20. Now this is the commandment: Repent all ye ends of the earth, and come unto me and be baptized in my name, that ye may be sanctified by the reception of the Holy Ghost, that ye may stand spotless before me at the last day.

21. Verily, verily, I say unto you, this is my gospel; 3N 27-451

38. And again I say unto you, ye must repent, and be baptized in my name, and become as a little child, or ye can in nowise inherit the kingdom of God.

39. Verily, verily, I say unto you, that this is my doctrine, and whoso buildeth upon this buildeth upon my rock, and the gates of hell shall not prevail against them.

40. And whoso shall declare more or less than this, and establish it for my doctrine, the same cometh of evil, and is not built upon my rock; but he buildeth upon a sandy foundation, and the gates of hell stand open to receive such when the floods come and the winds beat upon them.

41. Therefore, go forth unto this people, and declare the words which I have spoken, unto the ends of the earth. 3N 11-422

2. THE CORRECT AGE FOR BAPTISM. (*Baptism is for adults, not for children. Baptism is for those who have the complete faculty of responsibility. Anything else than this is an insult to Christ.*)

8. Listen to the words of Christ, your Redeemer, your Lord and your God. Behold, I came into the world not to call the righteous but sinners to repentance; the whole need no physician, but they that are sick; wherefore, little children are whole, for they are not capable of committing sin; wherefore the curse of Adam is taken from them in me, that it hath no power over them; and the law of circumcision is done away in me.

9. And after this manner did the Holy Ghost manifest the word of God unto me; wherefore, my beloved son, I know that it is solemn mockery before God, that ye should baptize little children.

10. Behold I say unto you that this thing shall ye teach—*repentance and baptism unto those who are accountable and capable of committing sin; yea, teach parents that they must repent and be baptized, and humble themselves as their little children, and they shall be saved with their little children.*

11. And their little children need no repentance, neither baptism. Behold, baptism is unto repentance to the fulfilling the commandments unto the remission of sins.

12. But little children are alive in Christ, even from the foundation of the world; if not so, God is a partial God, and also a changeable God, and a respecter of persons; for how many little children have died without baptism!

13. Wherefore, if little children could not be saved without baptism, these must have gone to an endless hell.

14. Behold I say unto you, that he that supposeth that little children need baptism is in the gall of bitterness and in the bonds of iniquity; for he hath neither faith, hope, nor charity; wherefore, should he be cut off while in the thought, he must go down to hell.

15. For awful is the wickedness to suppose that God saveth one child because of baptism, and the other must perish because he hath no baptism.

16. Wo be unto them that shall pervert the ways of the Lord after this manner, for they shall perish except they repent. Behold, I speak with boldness, having authority from God; and I fear not what man can do; for perfect love casteth out all fear.

17. And I am filled with charity, which is everlasting love; wherefore, all children are alike unto me; wherefore, I love little children with a perfect love; and they all alike and partakers of salvation.

18. For I know that God is not a partial God, neither a changeable being; but he is unchangeable from all eternity to all eternity.

19. Little children cannot repent; wherefore, it is awful wickedness to deny the pure mercies of God unto them, for they are all alive in him because of his mercy.

20. *And he that saith that little children need baptism denieth the mercies of Christ, and setteth at naught the atonement of him and the power of his redemption.*

21. Wo unto such, for they are in danger of death, hell, and an endless torment. I speak it boldly; God hath commanded me. Listen unto them and give heed, or they stand against you at the judgment-seat of Christ.

22. For behold--- all little children are alive in Christ, and also all they that are without the law. For the power of redemption cometh on all them that have no law; *wherefore, he that is not condemned, or he that is under no condemnation, cannot repent; and unto such baptism availeth nothing---*

23. *But it is mockery before God, denying the mercies of Christ, and the power of his Holy Spirit, and putting trust in dead works.*

24. Behold---this thing ought not to be; for repentance is unto them that are under condemnation and under the curse of a broken law.

25. And the first fruits of repentance is baptism; and baptism cometh by faith unto the fulfilling the commandments; and the fulfilling the commandments bringeth remission of sins;

26. And the remission of sins bringeth meekness, and lowliness of heart; and because of meekness and lowliness of heart cometh the visitation of the Holy Ghost, which Comforter filleth with hope and perfect love, which love endureth by diligence unto prayer, unto the end shall come, when all the saints shall dwell with God.

M 8-516

1. ---and they were not baptized save they brought forth fruit meet that they were worthy of it.

2. Neither did they receive any unto baptism save they came forth with a broken heart and a contrite spirit, and witnessed unto the church that they truly repented of all their sins.

3. And none were received unto baptism save they took upon them the name of Christ, having a determination to serve him to the end.

4. And after they had been received unto baptism, and were wrought upon and cleansed by the power of the Holy Ghost, they were numbered among the people of the church of Christ; and their names were taken, that they might be remembered and nourished by the good word of God,

M 6-511

17. Now, how could a man repent except he should sin?

A 42-299

3. *THE BAPTISM OF CHRIST.* 7. And he spake also concerning a prophet who should come before the Messiah, to prepare the way of the Lord—

9. And my father [Lehi] said he should baptize in Bethabara, beyond Jordan; and he also said he should baptize with water; even that he should baptize the Messiah with water.

10. And after he had baptized the Messiah with water, he should behold and bear record that he had baptized the Lamb of God, who should take away the sins of the world.

1N 10-16

26. And the angel said unto me again: Look and behold the condescension of God!

27. And I looked and beheld the Redeemer of the world, of whom my father had spoken; and I also beheld the prophet who should prepare the way before him. And the Lamb of God went forth and was baptized of him; and after he was baptized, I beheld the heavens open, and the Holy Ghost come down out of heaven and abide upon him in the form of a dove.

1N 11-19

5. And now, if the Lamb of God, he being holy, should have need to be baptized by water, to fulfill all righteousness, O then,

how much more need have we, being unholy, to be baptized, yea, even by water!

6. And now, I would ask of you, my beloved brethren, wherein the Lamb of God did fulfil all righteousness in being baptized by water?

7. Know ye not that he was holy? But notwithstanding he being holy, he showeth unto the children of men that, according to the flesh he humbleth himself before the Father, and witnesseth unto the Father that he would be obedient unto him in keeping his commandments.

8. Wherefore, after he was baptized with water the Holy Ghost descended upon him in the form of a dove.

9. And again, it showeth unto the children of men the straightness of the path, and the narrowness of the gate, by which they should enter, he having set the example before them.

10. And he said unto the children of men: Follow thou me. Wherefore, my beloved brethren, can we follow Jesus save we shall be willing to keep the commandments of the Father?

11. And the Father said: Repent ye, repent ye, and be baptized in the name of my Beloved Son.

12. And also, the voice of the Son came unto me, saying: He that is baptized in my name, to him will the Father give the Holy Ghost, like unto me; wherefore, follow me, and do the things which ye have seen me do.

2N 31-104

4. THE BAPTISM OF CHRIST'S DISCIPLES ON THE WESTERN HEMISPHERE.

10. And when they had thus prayed they went down unto the water's edge, and the multitude followed them.

11. And it came to pass that Nephi went down into the water and was baptized.

12. And he came up out of the water and began to baptize. And he baptized all those whom Jesus had chosen.

13. And it came to pass when they were all baptized and had come up out of the water, the Holy Ghost did fall upon them, and they were filled with the Holy Ghost and with fire.

14. And behold, they were encircled about as if it were by fire; and it came down from heaven, and the multitude did witness it, and did bear record; and angels did come down out of heaven and did minister unto them.

3N 19-437

5. THE BAPTISMAL CEREMONY. (*As practiced among the Nephites.*)

18. Therefore, Alma did go forth into the water and did baptize them;

Mo 25-188

13. And when he had said these words, the Spirit of the Lord was upon him, and he said: Helam, I baptize thee, having authority from the Almighty God, as a testimony that ye have entered into a covenant to serve him until you are dead as to the mortal body; and may the Spirit of the Lord be poured out upon you; and may he grant unto you eternal life, through the redemption of Christ, whom he has prepared from the foundation of the world.

14. And after Alma had said these words, both Alma and Helam were buried in the water; and they arose and came forth out of the water rejoicing, being filled with the Spirit.

15. And again, Alma took another, and went forth a second time into the water, and baptized him according to the first, only he did not bury himself again in the water. Mo 18-168

23. Verily I say unto you, that whoso repenteth of his sins through your words, and desireth to be baptized in my name, on this wise shall ye baptize them—Behold, ye shall go down and stand in the water, and in my name shall ye baptize them.

24. And now behold, these are the words which ye shall say, calling them by name, saying:

25. Having authority given me of Jesus Christ, I baptize you in the name of the Father, and of the Son, and of the Holy Ghost. Amen.

26. And then shall ye immerse them in the water, and come forth again out of the water.

28. And according as I have commanded you thus shall ye baptize. 3N 11-422

III A BLESSING

(It was customary for the father of the family to confer a blessing upon his children — usually it was a death-bed performance.)

25. And now, blessed art thou, Joseph. Behold, thou art little; wherefore hearken unto the words of thy brother, Nephi, and it shall be done unto thee even according to the words which I [Lehi] have spoken. Remember the words of thy dying father. Amen. 2N 3-57

28. ---behold, if ye [Lehi to his oldest sons] will hearken unto the voice of Nephi ye shall not perish. And if ye will hearken unto him I leave unto you a blessing, yea, even my first blessing.

29. But if ye will not hearken unto him I take away my first blessing, yea, even my blessing, and it shall rest upon him. 2N 1-52

5. But behold, my sons and my daughters, I [Lehi] cannot go down to my grave save I should leave a blessing upon you; for

behold, I know that if ye are brought up in the way ye should go ye will not depart from it.

6. Wherefore, if ye are cursed, behold, I leave my blessing upon you, that the cursing may be taken from you and be answered upon the heads of your parents.

7. Wherefore, because of my blessing the Lord God will not suffer that ye shall perish; wherefore, he will be merciful unto you and unto your seed forever. 2N 4-58

15. And now it came to pass that after Alma had said these things to Helaman, he blessed him, and also his other sons; and he also blessed the earth for the righteous' sake. A 45-308

IV. CIRCUMCISION

8. ---wherefore, little children are whole, for they are not capable of committing sin; wherefore the curse of Adam is taken from them in me, that it hath no power over them; and the law of *circumcision* is done away in me. M 8-516

33. Wo unto the *uncircumcised* of heart, for a knowledge of their iniquities shall smite them at the last day. 2N 9-69

36. And then shall be brought to pass that which is written: Awake, awake again, and put on thy strength, O Zion; put on thy beautiful garments, O Jerusalem, the holy city, for henceforth there shall no more come into thee the *uncircumcised* and the unclean. 3N 20-441

V. CONFESSION

1. ---The time shall come when all shall see the salvation of the Lord; when every nation, kindred, tongue, and people shall see eye to eye and shall confess before God that his judgments are just. Mo 16-165

29. Therefore I say unto you, Go; and whosoever transgresseth against me, him shall ye judge according to the sins which he has committed; and if he confess his sins before thee and me, and repenteth in the sincerity of his heart, him shall ye forgive, and I will forgive him also. Mo 26-185

35. And whosoever repented of their sins and did confess them, them he did number among the people of the church;

36. And those that would not confess their sins and repent of their iniquity, the same were not numbered among the people of the church, and their names were blotted out. Mo 26-186

5. ---therefore as many as believed on the words of Samuel went forth unto him to be baptized, for they came repenting and confessing their sins. H 16-397

19. ---I greatly fear lest my case shall be awful; but I confess unto God. J 7-124

31. Yea, every knee shall bow, and every tongue confess before him. Yea, even at the last day, when all men shall stand to be judged of him, then shall they confess that he is God; then shall they confess, who live without God in the world, that the judgment of an everlasting punishment is just upon them; and they shall quake, and tremble, and shrink beneath the glance of his all-searching eye. Mo 28-189

VI. CONSECRATION

(See IX, "Ordination.")

(See Chapter II, Part II, and Chapter XV, Part I, Section VII, Unit 3, for additional consecration performances.) 11. ---I [King Benjamin] have been chosen by this people, and consecrated by my father, Mo 2-136

9. Now Nephi began to be old, and he saw that he must soon die; wherefore, he anointed a man to be a king and a ruler over his people now, according to the reigns of the kings. J 1-108

13. And Alma established a church in the land of Sidom, and consecrated priests and teachers in the land, to baptize unto the Lord whosoever were desirous to be baptized. A 15-284

1. And now it came to pass that after Alma had made an end of speaking unto the people of the church, which was established in the city of Zarahemla, he ordained priests and elders, by laying on his hands according to the order of God, to preside and watch over the church. A 6-210

18. And it came to pass that Alma, having authority from God, ordained priests; even one priest to every fifty of their number did he ordain to preach unto them, and to teach them concerning the things pertaining to the kingdom of God. Mo 18-169

VII. FASTING

26. And now, my beloved brethren, I would that ye should come unto Christ, ---and offer your whole souls as an offering unto

him, and continue in *fasting* and praying, and endure to end; and as the Lord liveth ye will be saved. O 1-181

16. Moreover, when ye *fast* be not as the hypocrites, of a sad countenance, for they disfigure their faces that they may appear unto men to fast. Verily I say unto you, they have their reward.

17. But thou, when thou fasteth, anoint thy head, and wash thy face;

18. That thou appear not unto men to *fast*, but unto thy Father, who is in secret; and thy Father, who seeth it in secret, shall reward thee openly. 8N 18-426

6. Nevertheless the children of God were commanded that they should gather themselves together oft, and join in *fasting* and mighty prayer in behalf of the welfare of the souls of those who knew not God. A-6-210

3. But this is not all; they had given themselves to much prayer, and *fasting*; therefore they had the spirit of prophecy, and the spirit of revelation.

9. And it came to pass that they journeyed many days in the wilderness, and they *fasted* much and prayed much that the Lord would grant unto them a portion of his Spirit to go with them, and abide with them, that they might be an instrument in the hands of God. A 17-237

(*An example of the use of fasting by some of the ancient people.*)

22. And he [Alma, the father] caused that the priests should assemble themselves together; and they began to *fast*, and to pray to the Lord their God that he would open the mouth of Alma [the younger], that he might speak, and also that his limbs might receive their strength—

23. And it came to pass after they had *fasted* and prayed for the space of two days and two nights, the limbs of Alma received their strength, and he stood up and began to speak unto them, bidding them to be of good comfort:

For, said he, I have repented of my sins, and have been re-deemed of the Lord; behold I am born of the Spirit Mo 27-188

VIII. MOURNING

5. Yea, the cry of widows mourning for their husbands, and also of fathers mourning for their sons, and the daughters for the brother, yea, the brother for the father; and thus the cry of mourning was heard among all of them, mourning for their kindred who had been slain. A 28-266

IX. ORDINATION

(See VI, "Consecration.") (See Book of Mormon, p 510, Chap. 3, v. 1, 2, 3)

19. And it came to pass that king Mosiah granted unto Alma that he might establish churches throughout all the land of Zarahemla; and gave him power to ordain priests and teachers over every church. Mo 25-183

2. And he called them by name, saying: Ye shall call on the Father in my name, in mighty prayer; and after ye have done this ye shall have power that to him upon whom ye shall lay your hands, ye shall give the Holy Ghost; and in my name shall ye give it, for thus do mine apostles. M 2-510

X. PRAYER

1. *THE TIME FOR PRAYER.* (Pray continually and ask the help of God at all times—so advised the ancient teachers.) 52. Behold, my beloved brethren, remember the words of your God; pray unto him continually by day, and give thanks unto his holy name by night. Let your hearts rejoice. 2N 9-71

29. Therefore, ask, and ye shall receive; knock, and it shall be opened unto you; for he that asketh, receiveth; and unto him that knocketh, it shall be opened. 3N 27-451

8. And now, my beloved brethren, I perceive that ye ponder still in your hearts; and it grieveth me that I must speak concerning this thing. For if ye would hearken unto the Spirit which teacheth a man to *pray* ye would know that ye must pray; for the evil spirit teacheth not a man to pray, but teacheth him that he must not pray.

9. But behold, I say unto you that ye must *pray* always, and not faint; that ye must not perform anything unto the Lord save in the first place ye shall pray unto the Father in the name of Christ, and he will consecrate thy performance unto thee, that thy performance may be for the welfare of thy soul. 2N 32-106

3. Do ye remember to have read what Zenos, the prophet of old, has said concerning *prayer* or worship? [He said:]

11. And thou didst hear me because of mine afflictions and my sincerity; and it is because of thy Son that thou hast been thus merciful unto me, therefore I will cry unto thee in all mine afflictions, for in thee is my joy; for thou hast turned thy judgments away from me, because of thy Son. A 33-280

17. Therefore may God grant unto you, my brethren, that ye may begin to exercise your faith unto repentance, that ye begin to call upon his holy name, that he would have mercy upon you;

18. Yea, cry unto him for mercy; for he is mighty to save.

19. Yea, humble yourselves, and continue in prayer unto him.

20. Cry unto him when ye are in your fields, yea, over all your flocks.

21. Cry unto him in your houses, yea, over all your household, both morning, mid-day, and evening.

22. Yea, cry unto him against the power of your enemies.

23. Yea, cry unto him against the devil, who is an enemy to all righteousness.

24. Cry unto him over the crops of your fields, that ye may prosper in them.

25. Cry over the flocks of your fields, that they may increase.

26. But this is not all; ye must pour out your souls in your closets, and your secret places, and in your wilderness.

27. Yea, and when you do not cry unto the Lord, let your hearts be full, drawn out in prayer unto him continually for your welfare, and also for the welfare of those who are around you.

28. And now behold, my beloved brethren, I say unto you, do not suppose that this is all; for after ye have done all these things, if ye turn away the needy, and the naked, and visit not the sick and afflicted, and impart of your substance, if ye have, to those who stand in need—I say unto you, if ye do not any of these things, behold, your prayer is vain, and availeth you nothing, and ye are as hypocrites who do deny the faith.

38. [See]--- that ye humble yourself even to the dust, and worship God, in whatsoever place ye may be in, in spirit and in truth; and that ye live in thanksgiving daily, for the many mercies and blessings which he doth bestow upon you.

39. Yea, and I also exhort you, my brethren, that ye be watchful unto *prayer* continually, that ye may not be led away by the temptation of the devil, that he may not overpower you, that ye may not become his subjects at the last day; A 34-282

18. Behold, verily, verily, I say unto you, ye must watch and *pray* always lest ye enter into temptation; for Satan desireth to have you, that he may sift you as wheat.

19. Therefore ye must always *pray* unto the Father in my name;

21. *Pray* in your families unto the Father, always in my name, that your wives and your children may be blessed.

20. And whatsoever ye shall ask the Father in my name, which is right, believing that ye shall receive, behold it shall be given unto you. 3N 18-435

2. *PRAYER MUST BE SINCERE.* (*Certain groups of the ancient people misused the ritual of prayer.*) 9. ---it [is] counted

evil unto a man, if he shall *pray* and not with real intent of heart; yea, and it profiteth him nothing, for God receiveth none such.

M 7-512

8. Now the Zoramites were dissenters from the Nephites; therefore they had had the word of God preached unto them.

27. Behold, O God, they cry unto thee, and yet their hearts are swallowed up in their pride. Behold, O God, they cry unto thee with their mouths, while they are puffed up, even to greatness, with the vain things of the world.

10. Neither would they observe the performance of the church, to continue in prayer and supplication to God daily, that they might not enter into temptation.

A 31-274

13. Do not *pray* as the Zoramites do, for ye have seen that they pray to be heard of men, and to be praised for their wisdom.

14. Do not say: O God, I thank thee that we are better than our brethren; but rather say: O Lord, forgive my unworthiness, and remember my brethren in mercy—yea, acknowledge your unworthiness, before God at all times.

A 38-293

2. But behold, I was without hope, for I knew the judgments of the Lord which should come upon them; for they repented not of their iniquities, but did struggle for their lives without calling upon that Being who created them.

Mn 5-467

3. **HILLTOPS USED FOR PRAYER.** (*The Jaredites, Nephites, and possibly the Lamanites chose high places as sites for prayer.*)

1. And it came to pass that the brother of Jared---went forth unto the mount---upon the top of the mount, and cried again unto the Lord,

E 3-483

3. And I, Nephi, did go into the mount oft, and I did pray oft unto the Lord; wherefore the Lord showed unto me great things.

1N 18-38

7. And it came to pass that after I, Nephi, had been in the land of Bountiful [Arabia?] for the space of many days, the voice of the Lord came unto me, saying: Arise, and get thee into the mountain. And it came to pass that I arose and went up into the mountain, and cried unto the Lord.

1N 17-34

4. **SAMPLE OF A NEPHITE PRAYER.** (*A prayer of Nephi I.*)

30. Rejoice, O my heart, and cry unto the Lord, and say: O Lord, I will praise thee forever; yea, my soul will rejoice in thee, my God, and the rock of my salvation.

31. O Lord, wilt thou redeem my soul? Wilt thou deliver me out of the hands of mine enemies? Wilt thou make me that I may shake at the appearance of sin?

32. May the gates of hell be shut continually before me, because that my heart is broken and my spirit is contrite! O Lord, wilt thou not shut the gates of thy righteousness before me, that I may walk in the path of the low valley, that I may be strict in the plain road!

33. O Lord, wilt thou encircle me around in the robe of thy righteousness! O Lord, wilt thou make a way for mine escape before mine enemies! Wilt thou make my path straight before me! Wilt thou not place a stumbling block in my way—but that thou wouldst clear my way before me, and hedge not up my way, but the ways of mine enemy.

34. O Lord, I have trusted in thee, and I will trust in thee forever. I will not put my trust in the arm of flesh; for I know that cursed is he that putteth his trust in the arm of flesh. Yea, cursed is he that putteth his trust in man or maketh flesh his arm.

35. Yea, I know that God will give liberally to him that asketh. Yea, my God will give me, if I ask not amiss; therefore I will lift up my voice unto thee; yea, I will cry unto thee, my God, the rock of my righteousness. Behold, my voice shall forever ascend up unto thee, my rock and mine everlasting God. Amen.

2N 2-59

5. *THE PEOPLE DEPENDED UPON THE PRAYERS OF THEIR PRIESTS AND LEADERS.* (*Certain primitive Indians of Central America petition their priests to represent them at prayer. They feel that the prayer of the priest has more power and will be heard by their God.*) 8. The people began to plead---unto Nephi: Behold, we know that thou art a man of God, and therefore cry unto the Lord our God that he turn away from us this famine,

H 11-385

XI. REPENTANCE

1. *SERMONS OF THE PROPHETS AND TEACHERS CONCERNING REPENTANCE.* (*See Chapter XIII, Part II.*)

20. And they shall cry from the dust; yea, even repentance unto their brethren, even after many generations have gone by them. And it shall come to pass that their cry shall go, even according to the simpleness of their words.

2N 3-57

1. O that I were an angel, and could have the wish of mine heart, that I might go forth and speak with the trump of God, with a voice to shake the earth, and cry repentance unto every people!

2. Yea, I would declare unto every soul, as with the voice of thunder, repentance and the plan of redemption, that they should repent and come unto our God, that there might not be more sorrow upon all the face of the earth.

3. But behold, I am a man, and do sin in my wish; for I ought to be content with the things which the Lord hath allotted unto me.

A 29-267

33. Preach unto them repentance, and faith on the Lord Jesus Christ; teach them to humble themselves and to be meek and lowly in heart; teach them to withstand every temptation of the devil, with their faith on the Lord Jesus Christ.

A 37-291

14. Now I say unto you that ye must repent, and be born again;

A 7-212

30. And may the Lord grant unto you repentance, that ye may not bring down his wrath upon you, that ye may not be bound down by the chains of hell, that ye may not suffer the second death.

A 13-230

50. Yea, thus saith the Spirit: Repent, all ye ends of the earth, for the kingdom of heaven is soon---

A 5-208

10. ---for he said unto him that the Lord surely should come to redeem his people, but that he should not come to redeem them in their sins, but to redeem them from their sins.

11. And he hath power given unto him from the Father to redeem them from their sins because of repentance; therefore he hath sent his angels to declare the tidings of the conditions of repentance, which bringeth unto the power of the Redeemer, unto the salvation of their souls.

H 5-369

16. Yea, how could you have given way to the enticing of him [the devil] who is seeking to hurl away your souls down to everlasting misery and endless wo?

17. O repent ye, repent ye! Why will ye die? Turn ye, turn ye unto the Lord your God. Why has he forsaken you?

18. It is because you have hardened your hearts; yea, ye will not hearken unto the voice of the good shepherd; yea, ye have provoked him to anger against you.

19. And behold, instead of gathering you, except ye will repent, behold, he shall scatter you forth that ye shall become meat for dogs and wild beasts.

20. O, how could you have forgotten your God in the very day that he has delivered you?

H 7-377

2. *A DISCUSSION OF REPENTANCE.* 20. Yea, even he commanded them that they should preach nothing save it were repentance and faith on the Lord, who had redeemed his people.

Mo 18-169

23. And he commandeth all men that they must repent, and be baptized in his name, having perfect faith in the Holy One of Israel, or they cannot be saved in the kingdom of God.

24. And if they will not repent and believe in his name, and be baptized in his name, and endure to the end, they must be damned; for the Lord God, the Holy One of Israel, has spoken it. 2N 9-68

21. And except they repent and turn to the Lord their God, behold, I will deliver them into the hands of their enemies; yea, and they shall be brought into bondage; and they shall be afflicted by the hand of their enemies. Mo 11-157

3. WORDS OF CHRIST CONCERNING REPENTANCE.

8. Listen to the words of Christ, your Redeemer, your Lord and your God. Behold, I came into the world not to call the righteous but sinners to repentance; the whole need no physician, but they that are sick; wherefore, little children are whole, for they are not capable of committing sin; wherefore the curse of Adam is taken from them in me, that it hath no power over them; and the law of circumcision is done away in me. M 8-516

37. And again I say unto you, ye must repent, and become as a little child, and be baptized in my name, or ye can in nowise receive these things.

38. And again I say unto you, ye must repent, and be baptized in my name, and become as a little child, or ye can in nowise inherit the kingdom of God. 3N 12-423

30. Yea, and as often as my people repent will I forgive them their trespasses against me.

31. And ye shall also forgive one another your trespasses; for verily I say unto you, he that forgiveth not his neighbor's trespasses when he says that he repents, the same hath brought himself under condemnation. Mo 26-185

19. And behold, I have given you the law and the commandments of my Father, that ye shall believe in me, and that ye shall repent of your sins, and come unto me with a broken heart and a contrite spirit. Behold, ye have the commandments before you, and the law is fulfilled. 8N 12-424

16. And it shall come to pass, that whoso repenteth and is baptized in my name shall be filled; and if he endureth to the end, behold, him will I hold guiltless before my Father at that day when I shall stand to judge the world. 3N 27-450

20. Now this is the commandment: Repent all ye ends of the earth, and come unto me and be baptized in my name, that ye may be sanctified by the reception of the Holy Ghost, that ye may stand spotless before me at the last day. 3N 27-451

19. And blessed is he that is found faithful unto my name at the last day, for he shall be lifted up to dwell in the kingdom prepared for him from the foundation of the world. And behold it is I that hath spoken it. Amen. E 4-486

XII THE SACRAMENT

1. And it came to pass that Jesus commanded his disciples that they should bring forth some bread and wine unto him.

2. And while they were gone for bread and wine, he commanded the multitude that they should sit themselves down upon the earth.

3. And when the disciples had come with bread and wine, he took of the bread and brake and blessed it; and he gave unto the disciples and commanded that they should eat.

4. And when they had eaten and were filled, he commanded that they should give unto the multitude.

5. And when the multitude had eaten and were filled, he said unto the disciples: Behold there shall one be ordained among you, and to him will I give power that he shall break bread and bless it and give it unto the people of my church, unto all those who shall believe and be baptized in my name.

6. And this shall ye always observe to do, even as I have done, even as I have broken bread and blessed it and given it unto you.

7. And this shall ye do in remembrance of my body, which I have shown unto you. And it shall be a testimony unto the Father that ye do always remember me. And if ye do always remember me ye shall have my Spirit to be with you.

8. And it came to pass that when he said these words, he commanded his disciples that they should take of the wine of the cup and drink of it, and that they should also give unto the multitude that they might drink of it.

9. And it came to pass that they did so, and did drink of it and were filled; and they gave unto the multitude, and they did drink, and they were filled.

10. And when the disciples had done this, Jesus said unto them: Blessed are ye for this thing ye have done, for this is fulfilling my commandments, and this doth witness unto the Father that ye are willing to do that which I have commanded you.

11. And this shall ye always do to those who repent and are baptized in my name; and ye shall do it in remembrance of my blood, which I have shed for you, that ye may witness unto the Father that ye do always remember me. And if ye do always remember me ye shall have my Spirit to be with you.

12. And I give unto you a commandment that ye shall do these things.

3N 18-434

6. [Upon another occasion] Now, there had been no bread, neither wine, brought by the disciples, neither by the multitude;

7. But he truly gave unto them bread to eat, and also wine to drink.

8. And he said unto them: He that eateth this bread eateth of my body to his soul; and he that drinketh of this wine drinketh of my blood to his soul; and his soul shall never hunger for thirst, but shall be filled.

9. Now, when the multitude had all eaten and drunk, behold, they were filled with the Spirit; and they did cry out with one voice, and gave glory to Jesus, whom they both saw and heard. 3N 20-439

28. And now behold, this is the commandment which I give unto you, that ye shall not suffer any one knowingly to partake of my flesh and blood unworthily, when ye shall minister it;

29. For whoso eateth and drinketh my flesh and blood unworthily eateth and drinketh damnation to his soul; therefore if ye know that a man is unworthy to eat and drink of my flesh and blood ye shall forbid him. 3N 18-434

(*THE MANNER OF ADMINISTERING THE SACRAMENT—THE BREAD AND WINE.*) 2. And they did kneel down with the church, and pray to the Father in the name of Christ, saying:

3. O God, the Eternal Father, we ask thee in the name of thy Son, Jesus Christ, to bless and sanctify this bread to the souls of all those who partake of it; that they may eat in remembrance of the body of thy Son, and witness unto thee, O God, the Eternal Father, that they are willing to take upon them the name of thy Son, and always remember him, and keep his commandments which he hath given them, that they may always have his Spirit to be with them. Amen. M 4-511

1. The manner of administering the wine—Behold, they took the cup, and said:

2. O God, the Eternal Father, we ask thee, in the name of thy Son, Jesus Christ, to bless and sanctify this wine to the souls of all those who drink of it, that they may do it in remembrance of the blood of thy Son, which was shed for them; that they may witness unto thee, O God, the Eternal Father, that they do always remember him, that they may have his Spirit to be with them. Amen. M 5-511

XIII. SACRIFICE

1. *THE ANCIENT CUSTOM OF SACRIFICE.* 7. And it came to pass that he built an altar of stones, and made an offering unto the Lord, and gave thanks unto the Lord our God. 1N 2-3

9. And it came to pass that they did rejoice exceedingly, and did offer sacrifice and burnt offerings unto the Lord; and they gave thanks unto the God of Israel. 1N 5-10

3. And they also took of the firstlings of their flocks, that they might offer sacrifices and burnt offerings according to the law of Moses; Mo 2-136

2. THE RITUAL OF SACRIFICE ABANDONED BY COMMAND OF CHRIST.

19. And ye shall offer up unto me no more the shedding of blood; yea, your sacrifices and your burnt offerings shall be done away, for I will accept none of your sacrifices and your burnt offerings. [See Chapter XII, Part III, Section V, and see Chapter VI, Part II, Section II, Unit 3.]

20. And ye shall offer for a sacrifice unto me a broken heart and a contrite spirit. 3N 9-418

3. HUMAN SACRIFICE. (*Human sacrifice appeared during the last degenerate days of the Nephites. At that time it was also practiced among the Lamanites.*)

11. And it is impossible for the tongue to describe [during the last days of the Nephites], or for man to write a perfect description of the horrible scene of the blood and carnage which was among the people, both of the Nephites and of the Lamanites; and every heart was hardened, so that they delighted in the shedding of blood continually.

12. And there never had been so great wickedness among all the children of Lehi, nor even among all the house of Israel, according to the words of the Lord, as was among this people.

14. ---[the Lamanites] did---march---against the city of Teanum,--- and did take away many prisoners both women and children, and did offer them up as sacrifices unto their idol gods. Mn 4-466

15. And--- the Nephites being angry because the Lamanites had sacrificed their women and their children, that they did go against the Lamanites with exceeding great anger, insomuch that they did beat against the Lamanites, and drive them out of their lands. Mn 4-466

21. And when they had come the second time, the Nephites were driven and slaughtered with an exceedingly great slaughter; their women and their children were again sacrificed unto idols. Mn 4-467

9. And notwithstanding this great abomination of the Lamanites, it doth not exceed that of our people in Moriantum. For behold, many of the daughters of the Lamanites have they taken prisoners; and after depriving them of that which was most dear and precious above all things, which is chastity and virtue—

10. And after they had done this thing, they did murder them in a most cruel manner, torturing their bodies even unto death; and after they have done this, they devour their flesh like unto wild

beasts, because of the hardness of their hearts; and they do it for a token of bravery.

11. O my beloved son, how can a people like this, that are without civilization—

M 9-518

4. THE GREAT SACRIFICE — THE ATONEMENT OF CHRIST.

9. For it is expedient that an atonement should be made; for according to the great plan of the Eternal God there must be an atonement made, or else all mankind must unavoidably perish; yea, all are hardened, yea, all are fallen and are lost, and must perish except it be through the atonement which it is expedient should be made.

10. For it is expedient that there should be a great and last sacrifice; yea, not a sacrifice of man, neither of beast, neither of any manner of fowl; for it shall not be a human sacrifice; but it must be an infinite and eternal sacrifice.

11. Now there is not any man that can sacrifice his own blood which will atone for the sins of another. Now, if a man murdereth, behold will our law, which is just, take the life of his brother? I say unto you, Nay.

12. But the law requireth the life of him who hath murdered; therefore there can be nothing which is short of an infinite atonement which will suffice for the sins of the world. (*See Chapter XII, Part III, Section III, and see Chapter XIII, Part II, Section III.*)

A 34-282

XIV SYMBOLISTIC RITUALS

(*The symbol of the coat of Joseph was used to represent the people of Joseph's descent. The "house of Joseph" torn by civil strife, was represented by the torn garment of Moroni I.*) 19. ---Moroni--- went forth among the people, waving the rent part of his garment in the air, that all might see the writing which he had written upon the rent part, and crying with a loud voice, saying:

24. Yea, let us preserve our liberty as a remnant of Joseph; yea let us remember the words of Jacob [of old who said of his son, Joseph]---Even as this remnant of garment of my son hath been preserved, so shall a remnant of the seed of my son be preserved by the hand of God.

A 46-310

PART IV

RELIGIOUS PERSECUTION

I. RELIGIOUS PERSECUTION AMONG THE NEPHITES

1. *THE APOSTATE AND DISSENTING CHURCHES (OR GROUPS) PERSECUTED THE PEOPLE OF THE CHURCH OF GOD.* (*The prophet, Abinadi, taught righteousness to the wayward people of King Noah, son of Zeniff. He was burned to death by the mob.*) 26. Now it came to pass that when Abinadi had spoken these words unto them they were wroth with him, and sought to take away his life; Mo 11-157

13. And it came to pass that they took him and bound him, and scourged his skin with faggots, yea, even unto death. Mo 17-167

(*King Noah also sought the life of Alma.*) 3. But the king was more wroth, and caused that Alma should be cast out from among them, and sent his servants after him that they might slay him. Mo 17-166

34. ---therefore they [the people of Alma] took their tents and their families and departed into the wilderness. Mo 18-170

(*The People of Ammonihah became Wicked and persecuted the People of the Lord.*) 3. And they were also angry with Alma and Amulek; and because they had testified so plainly against their wickedness, they sought to put them away privily.

8. And they [the people of Ammonihah] brought their wives and children together, and whosoever believed or had been taught to believe the word of God they caused that they should be cast into the fire.

14 Now it came to pass that--- the bodies of those who had been cast into the fire were consumed, and also the records which were cast in with them, A 14-280

(*The Zoramites persecuted those who would not follow their wicked ways.*) 1. ---the Zoramites were perverting the ways of the Lord, and ---their leader, was leading the hearts of the people to bow down to dumb idols. A 31-273

5. ---therefore they [the Zoramite leaders] found out privily the minds of all the people.

6. And it came to pass that after they had found out the minds of all the people, those who were in favor of the words which had been spoken by Alma [concerning the word of the Lord]---were cast out of the land; and they were many; A 35-284

(The wicked priests of Noah persecuted Alma and the people of the Lord.) 11. ---and he [Amulon] put guards over them [the people of Alma] to watch them, that whosoever should be found calling upon God should be put to death. Mo 24-181

(There were times when the people of the Lord persecuted non-believers.) 1. And it came to pass in the fifty and fourth year there were many dissensions in the church, and there was also a contention among the people, insomuch that there was much bloodshed.

2. And the rebellious part were slain and driven out of the land, and they did go unto the king of the Lamanites. H 4-366

2. THERE ARE VERY FEW INCIDENTS OF NEPHITE PERSECUTION OF THE LAMANITES BECAUSE OF RELIGION. THE NEPHITES DID, HOWEVER, TRY TO CONVERT THE LAMANITES. 4. ---they did cast their prisoners

into prison, and did cause the word of God to be preached unto them; and as many as would repent of their sins and enter into a covenant that they would murder no more were set at liberty. [These prisoners were a combination of robbers and Lamanites.] 8N 5-409

(Some dissenting Nephites persecuted the Lamanites.) 5. And the remainder [of the Amulonites], having fled into the east wilderness---caused that many of the Lamanites should perish by fire because of their belief. A 25-259

3. LAWS PROTECTED AGAINST RELIGIOUS PERSECUTION. *(During certain periods, laws were enforced which protected religious freedom.)* 1. And now it came to pass that the

persecutions which were inflicted on the church by the unbelievers became so great that the church began to murmur, and complain to their leaders concerning the matter; and they did complain to Alma. And Alma laid the case before their king, Mosiah. And Mosiah consulted with the priests.

2. And it came to pass that king Mosiah sent a proclamation throughout the land round about that there should not any unbeliever persecute any of those who belonged to the church of God. Mo 27-186

21. [Likewise,]---there was a strict law among the people of the church, that there should not any man, belonging to the church, arise and persecute those that did not belong to the church, and that there should be no persecution among themselves. A 1-196

II. RELIGIOUS PERSECUTION AMONG THE LAMANITES

1. *THE LAMANITES PERSECUTED THE NEPHITES BECAUSE OF THEIR BELIEF.* 2. ---yea, and ye are angry with us because of our religion. [the Nephite commander, Moroni, is speaking to the Lamanite captain.]

3. But now, ye behold that the Lord is with us; and ye behold that he has delivered you into our hands. ---And now ye see that ye cannot destroy this our faith. A 44-303

10. For they [the Nephites] knew that if they should fall into the hands of the Lamanites, that whosoever should worship God in spirit and in truth, the true and the living God, the Lamanites would destroy. A 43-301

1. ---and I [Moroni II] make not myself known to the Lamanites lest they should destroy me.

2. ---and because of their hatred they put to death every Nephite that will not deny the Christ.

3. And I, Moroni, will not deny the Christ; wherefore, I wander whithersoever I can for the safety of mine own life. M 1-510

2. *THE LAMANITES PERSECUTED THEIR OWN BRETHREN WHO HAD BECOME CONVERTED TO CHRIST.*

20. And it came to pass that their brethren, the Lamanites, made preparations for war, A 24-258

12. [the Lord told Ammon] Get this people out of this land, that they perish not; for Satan has great hold on the hearts of the---Lamanites to anger against their brethren to slay them. A 27-264



CHAPTER XV

RELIGIOUS LEADERS

*The sermons, prophecies, and revelations of some of the outstanding religious leaders. Some of the miraculous incidents which occurred in their lives.

Although many leaders of the ancient people were mentioned in the *Book of Mormon*, none were described accurately enough to be distinguished from the rest of the people. In fact, the people were made entirely incidental to the events which occurred in their history. This objective treatment of the people by the ancient writers of the *Book of Mormon* can be understood when it is known that the *Book* is an abridged account which covers a long period of history (more than 3000 years).

That certain leaders were holy men and were teachers of righteousness is apparent from their sermons. Some of the finest passages in the *Book* are to be found in the sermons of these ancient religious leaders. In fact, many of these leaders will be remembered because of their wonderful discourses. Others will be remembered because of the miraculous events which took place in their lives. Still others will be remembered because of their spiritual leadership, their prophecies, or their revelations. The gifts of God were many and varied and seem to have been distributed abundantly to these ancient religious leaders of the Western Hemisphere. The following quotations from the *Book of Mormon* tell of these gifts:

18. And I would exhort you, my beloved brethren, that ye remember that every good gift cometh of Christ.

9. For behold, to one is given by the Spirit of God, that he may teach the word of wisdom;

12. And again, to another, that he may work mighty miracles;

13. And again, to another, that he may prophesy---

16. And again, to another, the interpretation of language and of divers kinds of tongues.

17. And all these gifts come by the Spirit of Christ; M 10-520

*For key to reference symbols, see page 2.

CHART 19

*OUTSTANDING CHARACTERS OF THE BOOK OF MORMON

(A recapitulation of all data concerning important persons
mentioned in the Book of Mormon.)

ANCIENT PROPHETS AND LEADERS

Abraham to Zedekiah—Characters common to the Bible and the
Book of Mormon. See Chapter XVII,
Part IV, Section II, Chart 26

JAREDITES

The brother of Jared—Prophet, Historian, and, with Jared,
leader of his people

Shule —Outstanding King

Omer —Great leader, and three times king

Emer —A righteous king—saw the Lord

Shez —Rebuilt a broken people—a great king

Lib —Great empire builder—a righteous king

Ether —Last great prophet of the Jaredite People

Coriantumr —Last King of the Jaredites

Other Outstanding

Jaredites: —Chapter IV, Part I, Section I, and Chap-
ter VI, Part I, Section I, Chart 10

Jaredite Women —Chapter VIII, Part I, Section II, Chart 15

NEPHITES

Lehi (I) —Ancient prophet, and leader of a group
of people from Jerusalem

Nephi (I) —Son of Lehi, spokesman and prophet of
his people

Jacob —Son of Lehi, spokesman and prophet of
his people

Mosiah (I) —Leader of his people from Nephi to land
of Zarahemla. Made King

Benjamin —Son of Mosiah (I), outstanding king and
religious teacher

Mosiah (II) —Maker of Laws, religious leader, king,
and translator

Ammon —Son of Mosiah (II), great teacher of the
Lamanites

Alma (I) —Religious leader

Alma (II) —Religious leader, and teacher throughout
Zarahemla

- Moroni (I) —Army Captain, and outstanding champion of "Liberty"
- Nephi (II) —Great prophet and religious leader
- Nephi (III) —Great prophet and religious leader
- Mormon —Last great religious champion of the Nephites
- Moroni (II) —Son of Mormon, prophet, closed the Nephite records

Other Outstanding Nephites:

- Religious Leaders—Chapter XV, gives examples of sixteen leaders and their works. See Part II, Part III and Part IV
- Christ's Disciples—Chapter XV, Part I, Section IV, Chart 20
- Historians —Chapter II, Part II, Chart 5
- Chief Judges —Chapter VI, Part I, Chart 12
- Kings —Chapter VI, Part I, Chart 12
- High Priests —Chapter VI, Part I, Chart 12
- Prophets —This Chapter, Part I, Section VI, Chart 21
- Army Leaders —Chapter VII, Part I, Section I, Chart 14
- Men who saw God and Angels—This Chapter, Part I, Sections I, II, and III, and Chart 20
- Nephite Dissenters —Chapter IV, Chart 6, and Chapter V, Part III, and Chapter XVI, Chart 23
- Miracles —This Chapter, Part III
- Nephite Women —Chapter VIII, Part I, Section II, Chart 15

LAMANITES

- Laman and Lemuel —Two oldest sons of Lehi (I), leaders of the dissenters
- King Lamoni —Who with his people were converted to the Nephite faith
- Samuel —The Lamanite prophet

Other Outstanding Lamanites:

- Lamanite Kings —Chapter VI, Part I, Section III, Chart 13
- Nephite leaders who joined the Lamanites —Chapter V, Part III, and Chapter IV, Chart 6
- Lamanite Women—Chapter VIII, Part I, Section II, Chart 15

*For "Outstanding Leaders in Iniquity," see Chart 23.

PART I

MESSENGERS OF GOD'S "WORD" WERE HIS WITNESSES

God's message was brought to the people of old through the medium of prophets, priests, teachers, and others who were the appointed. "5. And now, as the preaching of the word had a great tendency to lead the people to do that which was just—yea, it had had more powerful effect upon the minds of the people than the sword, or anything else, ---" A 81-274

I. DIRECT CONTACT WITH GOD

1. *THERE WERE THOSE WHO SAW GOD.* (*Those who saw God or Jesus Christ in person were the brother of Jared, Emer, Nephi I, Jacob, Nephi III, Mormon, and Moroni II.*) 7. And the Lord saw that the brother of Jared had fallen to the earth; and the Lord said unto him: Arise, why hast thou fallen?

8. And he saith unto the Lord: I saw the finger of the Lord.

9. And the Lord said unto him: Because of thy faith thou hast seen that I shall take upon me flesh and blood; and never has man come before me with such exceeding faith as thou hast; for were it not so ye could not have seen my finger. Sawest thou more than this?

10. And he answered: Nay; Lord, show thyself unto me.

13. And when he had said these words, behold, the Lord showed himself unto him, and said: Because thou knowest these things ye are redeemed from the fall; therefore ye are brought back into my presence; therefore I show myself unto you.

14. Behold, I am he who was prepared from the foundation of the world to redeem my people. Behold, I am Jesus Christ. I am the Father and the Son. In me shall all mankind have light, and that eternally, even they who shall believe on my name; ,

15. And never have I showed myself unto man whom I have created, for never has man believed in me as thou hast. Seest thou that ye are created after mine own image? Yea, even all men were created in the beginning after mine own image. E 3-483

22. ---yea, and he [Emer, the Jaredite] even saw the Son of Righteousness. E 9-495

2. And now I, Nephi [I], write more of the words of Isaiah, for my soul delighteth in his words. For I will liken his words unto my

people, and I will send them forth unto all my children, for he verily saw my Redeemer, even as I have seen him. 2N 11-73

3. And my brother, Jacob, also has seen him as I [Nephi I] have seen him; wherefore, I will send their words forth unto my children to prove unto them that my words are true. 2N 11-73

7. And it came to pass that he [Jesus Christ—during his visitation to the Western Hemisphere] said unto Nephi: Bring forth the record which ye have kept. 3N 23-445

15. And I, [Mormon] being fifteen years of age and being somewhat of sober mind, therefore I was visited of the Lord [in person or in revelation?], and tasted and knew of the goodness of Jesus. Mn 1-461

39. And then shall ye know that I [Moroni] have seen Jesus, and that he hath talked with me face to face, and that he told me in plain humility, even as a man telleth another in mine own language, concerning these things; E 11-503

2. WITNESSES OF CHRIST'S APPEARANCE ON THE WESTERN HEMISPHERE.

15. And it came to pass that the multitude went forth, and thrust their hands into his side, and did feel the prints of the nails in his hands and in his feet; and this they did do, going forth one by one until they had all gone forth, and did see with their eyes and did feel with their hands, and did know of a surety and did bear record, that it was he, of whom it was written by the prophets, that should come.

16. And when they had all gone forth and had witnessed for themselves--- 3N 11-422

25. And the multitude did see [Christ appeared in the Western Hemisphere] and hear and bear record; and they know that their record is true for they all of them did see and hear, every man for himself; and they were in number about two thousand and five hundred souls; and they did consist of men, women, and children. 3N 17-433

13. Therefore, I would that ye should behold that the Lord truly did teach the people, for the space of three days; and after that he did show himself unto them oft, and did break bread oft, and bless it, 3N 27-449

18. And it came to pass that he spake unto Nephi [III] (for Nephi was among the multitude) and he commanded him that he should come forth.

21. And the Lord said unto him: I give unto you power that ye shall baptize this people when I am again ascended into heaven.

22. And again the Lord called others, and said unto them likewise; 3N 11-422

1. And it came to pass when Jesus had said these words, he spake unto his disciples, one by one, saying unto them: What is it that ye desire of me, after that I am gone to the Father?

13. And behold, the heavens were opened, and they were caught up into heaven, and saw and heard unspeakable things. 3N 28-452

2. And again, more blessed are they who shall believe in your words because that ye shall testify that ye have seen me, and that ye know that I am. Yea, blessed are they who shall believe in your words, and come down into the depths of humility and be baptized, for they shall be visited with fire and with the Holy Ghost, and shall receive a remission of their sins. 3N 12-424

24. Therefore, hold up your light that it may shine unto the world. Behold I am the light which ye shall hold up—that which ye have seen me do. Behold ye see that I have prayed unto the Father, and ye all have witnessed. 3N 18-435

II. INDIRECT CONTACT WITH GOD AND WITH JESUS CHRIST (Through Dreams, Visions, and Revelations.)

1. *THOSE WHO SAW GOD (OR JESUS CHRIST) IN DREAMS OR VISIONS.* (*Those who saw the Lord in dreams or visions were Omer, Ether, Lehi I., Nephi I, King Lamoni (the Lamanite), Alma II, etc.*) 3. And the Lord warned Omer in a dream that he should depart out of the land; wherefore Omer departed out of the land. E 9-493

4. Behold, Ether saw the days of Christ, and he spake concerning a New Jerusalem upon this land. E 13-503

8. And being thus overcome with the Spirit, he [Lehi I] was carried away in a vision, even that he saw the heavens open, and he thought he saw God sitting upon his throne, surrounded with numberless concourses of angels in the attitude of singing and praising their God.

9. And it came to pass that he saw one descending out of the midst of heaven, and he beheld that his luster was above that of the sun at noon-day. 1N 1-2

1. ---as I [Nephi I] sat pondering in mine heart I was caught away in the spirit of the Lord, yea, into an exceeding high moun-

tain, which I never had before seen, and upon which I never had before set my foot.

2. And the Spirit said unto me: Behold, what desireth thou?

11. And I said unto him: To know the interpretation thereof—for I spake unto him as a man speaketh; for I beheld that he was in the form of a man; yet nevertheless, I knew that it was the Spirit of the Lord; and he spake unto me as a man speaketh with another.

1N 11-17

13. For as sure as thou livest, behold, I [King Lamoni] have seen my Redeemer; and he shall come forth, and be born of a woman, and he shall redeem all mankind who believe on his name.

A 19-244

22. Yea, methought I [Alma II] saw, even as our father Lehi saw, God sitting upon his throne, surrounded with numberless concourses of angels, in the attitude of singing and praising their God; yea, and my soul did long to be there.

A 36-287

2. THOSE WHO RECEIVED THE "WORD" OF GOD BY REVELATION. (*A number received revelations from the Lord. They were Ether, Lehi I, Nephi I, Jacob, Enos, Mosiah I, Mosiah II, Abinadi, Alma I, Alma II, Ammon, Samuel (the Lamanite), Nephi II, Nephi III, and others.*) 24. ---and the word of the Lord which came to Ether---

E 14-507

5. ---and also I [Jacob] had heard the voice of the Lord speaking unto me in very word---

J 7-123

17. Wherefore I, Jacob, gave unto them these words as I taught them in the temple, having first obtained mine errand from the Lord.

J 2-109

7. And I [Enos] said: Lord, how is it done?

8. And he said unto me: Because of thy faith in Christ, whom thou hast never before heard nor seen.

10. And while I was thus struggling in the spirit, behold, the voice of the Lord came into my mind again, saying: I will visit thy brethren according to their diligence in keeping my commandments.

Es 1-126

12. ---for behold he [Mosiah I] being warned of the Lord that he should flee out of the land of Nephi---

O 1-130

7. And the Lord said unto Mosiah [II]: Let them go up, for many shall believe on their words, and they shall have eternal life;

Mo 28-190

20. ---Behold, thus saith the Lord, and thus hath he commanded me [Abinadi], saying, Go forth, and say unto this people, thus saith

the Lord—Wo be unto this people, for I have seen their abominations,
Mo 11-157

14. And it came to pass that after he [Alma I] had poured out his whole soul to God, the voice of the Lord came to him, saying:
Mo 26-185

24. And it came to pass that the word of the Lord came unto Alma [II], and Alma informed the messengers of Moroni, that the armies of the Lamanites were marching round about in the wilderness,
A 43-802

2. And the voice of the Lord came to Ammon, saying: Thou shalt not go up to the land of Nephi, for behold, the king will seek thy life;
A 20-247

2. ---and it came to pass as he was thus pondering in his heart, behold, a voice came unto him saying:

6. Behold, thou art Nephi [Nephi II] and I am God. Behold, I declare it unto thee in the presence of mine angels, that ye shall have power over this people, and shall smite the earth with famine, and with pestilence, and destruction, according to the wickedness of this people.
H 10-383

5. ---Behold, I, Samuel, a Lamanite, do speak the words of the Lord which he doth put into my heart;
H 13-390

15. And it came to pass that Nephi [III]—having been visited by angels and also the voice of the Lord, therefore having seen angels, and being eye-witness, and having had power given unto him that he might know concerning the ministry of Christ,
3N 7-414

12. And it came to pass that he [Nephi III] cried mightily unto the Lord, all the day; and behold, the voice of the Lord came unto him, saying:

13. Lift up your head and be of good cheer; for behold, the time is at hand, and on this night shall the sign be given,
3N 1-400

3. *WITNESSES OF GOD'S "WORD."* (God has had many witnesses. Doubters should note the testimony of these witnesses. See this chapter, Part I, Section I, Unit 2.) 13. Behold, my brethren, he that prophesieth, let him prophesy to the understanding of men; for the Spirit speaketh the truth and lieth not. ---But behold, we are not witnesses alone in these things; for God also spake them unto prophets of old.
J 4-114

21. And also that ye may believe the gospel of Jesus Christ, which ye shall have among you; and also that the Jews, the covenant people of the Lord, [you] shall have other witness besides him

whom they saw and heard, that Jesus, whom they slew, was the very Christ and the very God. Mn 3-465

14. ---And I will show unto them that fight against my word and against my people, who are of the house of Israel, that I am God, and that I covenanted with Abraham that I would remember his seed forever. 2N 29-101

14. [The assistance of God, acts as a witness for him.] Year, and the Lord said also that: After ye have arrived in the promised land, ye shall know that I, the Lord, am God; and that I, the Lord, did deliver you from destruction; yea, that I did bring you out of the land of Jerusalem [and you shall witness it]. 1N 17-35

III. ANGELS

1. *THE "ANGELS" ARE MESSENGERS.* (For "Angels" of the Devil, see Chapter XVI, Part I, Section I, Unit I.) 3. Angels speak by the power of the Holy Ghost; wherefore, they speak the words of Christ. 2N 32-105

30. And they are as the angels of God, and if they shall pray unto the Father in the name of Jesus they can show themselves unto whatsoever man it seemeth them good. 3N 28-454

29. And because he hath done this, my beloved brethren, have miracles ceased? Behold I say unto you, Nay; neither have angels ceased to minister unto the children of men. M 7-514

2. *THERE WERE THOSE IN THE PAST WHO QUESTIONED THE APPEARANCE OF ANGELS.* 5. ---What is that thou hast testified? Hast thou seen any angel? Why do not angels appear unto us? Behold are not this people as good as thy people? A 21-249

19. Is it not as easy at this time for the Lord to send his angel to declare these glad tidings unto us as unto our children, or as after the time of his coming? A 39-294

3. *THOSE WHO SAW "ANGELS."* (Those who received the "Word" of God through the visitation of angels were: Lehi I, Laman and Lemuel, Nephi I, Jacob, King Benjamin, Alma II and the sons of Mosiah I, Amulek, Samuel, Nephi II, Nephi III, and others.) 8. And being thus overcome with the Spirit, he [Lehi] was carried away in a vision, even that he saw the heavens open,

and he thought he saw God sitting upon his throne, surrounded with numberless concourses of angels in the attitude of singing and praising their God. 1N 1-2

10. [Nephi speaks to Laman and Lemuel.] How is it that ye have forgotten that ye have seen an angel of the Lord? 1N 10-12

14. And it came to pass that I [Nephi I] saw the heavens open; and an angel came down and stood before me; and he said unto me: Nephi, what beholdest thou? 1N 11-18

5. ---for I [Jacob] truly had seen angels, and they had ministered unto me. And also, I had heard the voice of the Lord speaking unto me in very word, from time to time; wherefore, I could not be shaken. J 7-123

2. And the things which I [King Benjamin] shall tell you are made known unto me by an angel from God. And he said unto me: Awake, and I awoke, and behold he stood before me. Mo 3-140

11. And as I said unto you, as they [Alma, and the sons of Mosiah] were going about rebelling against God, behold, the angel of the Lord appeared unto them; and he descended as it were in a cloud; and he spake as it were with a voice of thunder, which caused the earth to shake upon which they stood; Mo 27-187

18. And now Alma [II] and those that were with him fell again to the earth, for great was their astonishment for with their own eyes they had beheld an angel of the Lord; and his voice was as thunder, which shook the earth. Mo 27-188

14. ---and it came to pass while Alma was thus weighed down with sorrow, behold an angel of the Lord appeared unto him, saying: A 8-214

7. As I was journeying to see a very near kindred, behold an angel of the Lord appeared unto me and said: Amulek, return to thine own house, for thou shalt feed a prophet of the Lord;

9. And the angel said unto me he is a holy man; wherefore I know he is a holy man because it was said by an angel of God. A 10-219

7. And behold, an angel of the Lord hath declared it unto me, and he did bring glad tidings to my soul. And behold, I [Samuel, the Lamanite] was sent unto you to declare it unto you also, that ye might have glad tidings; but behold ye would not receive me. H 13-390

37. And it came to pass that this man did cry unto the multitude, that they might turn and look. And behold, there was power given unto them that they did turn and look; and they did behold the faces of Nephi [II] and Lehi.

39. Now the man's name was Aminadab, and Aminadab said unto them: They do converse with the angels of God. H 5-371

15. And it came to pass that Nephi [III], having been visited by angels and also the voice of the Lord--- 8N 7-414

24. For behold, angels are declaring it unto many at this time in our land; and this is for the purpose of preparing the hearts of the children of men to receive his word at the time of his coming in his glory.

25. And now we only wait to hear the joyful news declared unto us by the mouth of angels, of his coming; for the time cometh, we know not how soon. A 13-230

34. And behold, many did declare unto the people that they had seen angels and had conversed with them; and thus they had told them things of God, and of his righteousness. A 19-246

48. And now, when they heard this they cast up their eyes as if to behold from whence the voice came; and behold, they saw the heavens open; and angels came down out of heaven and ministered unto them. H 6-372

14. And angels did appear unto men, wise men, and did declare unto them glad tidings of great joy; thus in this year the scriptures began to be fulfilled. H 16-398

24. ---and they saw the heavens open, and they saw angels descending out of heaven as it were in the midst of fire; and they came down and encircled those little ones about, and they were encircled about with fire; and the angels did minister unto them. 8N 17-433

14. ---and angels did come down out of heaven and did minister unto them.

15. And it came to pass that while the angels were ministering unto the disciples, behold, Jesus came and stood in the midst and ministered unto them. 8N 19-437

IV. CHRIST'S DISCIPLES ON THE WESTERN HEMISPHERE

1. NAMES OF CHRIST'S DISCIPLES ON THE WESTERN HEMISPHERE. (*From among the people of Nephi, Christ chose twelve disciples, three of whom were especially honored. These last three are known by the term "The Three Nephites." See this Chapter, Part III, Miracle XII.*) 12. Ye are my dis-

ciples; and ye are a light unto this people, who are a remnant of the house of Joseph.

3N 15-429

4. And it came to pass that on the morrow, when the multitude was gathered together, behold, Nephi and his brother whom he had raised from the dead, whose name was Timothy, and also his son, whose name was Jonas, and also Mathoni, and Mathonihah, his brother, and Kumen, and Kumenonhi, and Jeremiah, and Shemnon, and Jonas, and Zedekiah, and Isaiah—now these were the names of the disciples whom Jesus had chosen—and it came to pass that they went forth and stood in the midst of the multitude.

3N 19-437

11. And it came to pass that Nephi went down into the water and was baptized.

12. And he came up out of the water and began to baptize. And he baptized all those whom Jesus had chosen.

CHART 20

THE DISCIPLES OF CHRIST ON THE WESTERN HEMISPHERE

And others who saw God or his Angels
either directly or indirectly.

Christ's Disciples on the Western Hemisphere

Nephi III, Timothy, Jonas, Mathoni, Mathonihah, Kumen, Kumenonhi, Jeremiah, Shemnon, Jonas, Zedekiah, Isaiah

Ancient Leaders who saw God in person

The brother of Jared, Emer, Nephi I, Jacob, Nephi III, Mormon, and Moroni II.

Ancient Leaders who saw God in Dreams, and Visions

Omer, Ether, Lehi I, Nephi I, King Lamani, and Alma II

Ancient Leaders who received the "Word" of God by Revelation

Ether, Lehi I, Nephi I, Jacob, Enos, Mosiah I, Mosiah II, Abinadi, Alma I, Alma II, Ammon, Samuel (the Lamanite), Nephi II, Nephi III, and others

Ancient Leaders who saw "Angels"

Lehi I, Laman and Lemuel, Nephi I, Jacob, Sam, King Benjamin, Alma II and the sons of Mosiah I, Amulek, Samuel, Nephi II, Nephi III, and others

Many witnessed the Advent of Christ on the Western Hemisphere

See Chapter XV, Part I, Section I, Unit 2.

13. And it came to pass when they were all baptized and had come up out of the water, the Holy Ghost did fall upon them, and they were filled with the Holy Ghost and with fire.

14. And behold, they were encircled about as if it were by fire; and it came down from heaven, and the multitude did witness it, and did bear record.

3N 19-437

19. And I write also unto the remnant of this people, who shall also be judged by the twelve whom Jesus chose in this land; and they shall be judged by the other twelve whom Jesus chose in the land of Jerusalem.

Mn 3-465

13. And behold, the heavens were opened, and they were caught up into heaven, and saw and heard unspeakable things.

14. And it was forbidden them that they should utter; neither was it given unto them power that they could utter the things which they saw and heard;

15. And whether they were in the body or out of the body, they could not tell; for it did seem unto them like a transfiguration of them, that they were changed from this body of flesh into an immortal state, that they could behold the things of God.

17. And now, whether they were mortal or immortal, from the day of their transfiguration, I know not;

18. But this much I know, according to the record which hath been given—they did go forth upon the face of the land, and did minister unto all the people, uniting as many to the church as would believe in their preaching; baptizing them, and as many as were baptized did receive the Holy Ghost.

19. And they were cast into prison by them who did not belong to the church. And the prisons could not hold them, for they were rent in twain.

20. And they were cast down into the earth; but they did smite the earth with the word of God, insomuch that by his power they were delivered out of the depths of the earth; and therefore they could not dig pits sufficient to hold them.

21. And thrice they were cast into a furnace and received no harm.

22. And twice were they cast into a den of wild beasts; and behold they did play with the beasts as a child with a suckling lamb, and received no harm.

23. And it came to pass that thus they did go forth among all the people of Nephi, and did preach the gospel of Christ unto all people upon the face of the land; and they were converted unto the Lord, and were united unto the church of Christ, and thus the people of that generation were blessed, according to the word of Jesus.

3N 28-425

2. THE "THREE NEPHITES" ARE DESIGNATED. (*Three of the disciples were allowed continuous life on the earth.*)

1. And it came to pass---he [Jesus] spake unto his disciples, one by one, saying unto them: What is it that ye desire of me, after that I am gone to the Father?

2. And they all spake, save it were three, saying: We desire that after we have lived unto the age of man, that our ministry, wherein thou hast called us, may have an end, that we may speedily come unto thee in thy kingdom.

3. And he said unto them: Blessed are ye because ye desired this thing of me; therefore, after that ye are seventy and two years old ye shall come unto me in my kingdom; and with me ye shall find rest.

4. And when he had spoken unto them, he turned himself unto the three, and said unto them: What will ye that I should do unto you, when I am gone unto the Father?

5. And they sorrowed in their hearts, for they durst not speak unto him the thing which they desired.

6. And he said unto them: Behold, I know your thoughts, and ye have desired the thing which John, my beloved, who was with me in my ministry, before that I was lifted up by the Jews, desired of me.

7. Therefore, more blessed are ye, for ye shall never taste of death; but ye shall live to behold all the doings of the Father unto the children of men, even until all things shall be fulfilled according to the will of the Father, when I shall come in my glory with the powers of heaven.

8. And ye shall never endure the pains of death; but when I shall come in my glory ye shall be changed in the twinkling of an eye from mortality to immortality; and then shall ye be blessed in the kingdom of my Father.

9. And again, ye shall not have pain while ye shall dwell in the flesh, neither sorrow save it be for the sins of the world; and all this will I do because of the thing which ye have desired of me, for ye have desired that ye might bring the souls of men unto me, while the world shall stand.

10. And for this cause ye shall have fulness of joy; and ye shall sit down in the kingdom of my Father; yea, your joy shall be full, even as the Father hath given me fulness of joy; and ye shall be even as I am, and I am even as the Father; and the Father and I are one;

12. And it came to pass that when Jesus had spoken these words, he touched every one of them with his finger save it were the three who were to tarry, and then he departed.

24. And now I, Mormon, make an end of speaking concerning these things for a time.

25. Behold, I was about to write the names of those who were never to taste of death, but the Lord forbade; therefore I write them not, for they are hid from the world. [Their names are hidden?]

26. But behold, I have seen them, and they have ministered unto me.

27. And behold they will be among the Gentiles, and the Gentiles shall know them not.

28. They will also be among the Jews, and the Jews shall know them not.

29. And it shall come to pass, when the Lord seeth fit in his wisdom that they shall minister unto all the scattered tribes of Israel, and unto all nations, kindreds, tongues and people, and shall bring out of them unto Jesus many souls, that their desire may be fulfilled, and also because of the convincing power of God which is in them.

30. And they are as the angels of God, and if they shall pray unto the Father in the name of Jesus they can show themselves unto whatsoever man it seemeth them good.

31. Therefore, great and marvelous works shall be wrought by them, before the great and coming day when all people must surely stand before the judgment seat of Christ;

36. And now behold, as I spake concerning those whom the Lord hath chosen, yea, even three who were caught up into the heavens, that I knew not whether they were cleansed from mortality to immortality—

37. But behold, since I wrote, I have inquired of the Lord, and he hath made it manifest unto me that there must needs be a change wrought upon their bodies, or else it needs be that they must taste of death;

38. Therefore, that they might not taste of death there was a change wrought upon their bodies, that they might not suffer pain nor sorrow save it were for the sins of the world.

39. Now this change was not equal to that which shall take place at the last day; but there was a change wrought upon them insomuch that Satan could have no power over them, that he could not tempt them; and they were sanctified in the flesh, that they were holy, and that the powers of the earth could not hold them.

40. And in this state they were to remain until the judgment day of Christ; and at that day they were to receive a greater change, and to be received into the kingdom of the Father to go no more out, but to dwell with God eternally in the heavens. 3N 28-452

14. ---even a hundred years had passed away, and the disciples of Jesus, whom he had chosen, had all gone to the paradise of God,

save it were the three who should tarry; and there were other disciples in their stead; 4N 1-457

13. But wickedness did prevail upon the face of the whole land, insomuch that the Lord did take away his beloved disciples, and the work of miracles and of healing did cease because of the iniquity of the people. Mn 1-460

10. And [now] there are none that do know the true God save it be the disciples of Jesus, who did tarry in the land until the wickedness of the people was so great that the Lord would not suffer them to remain with the people; and whether they be upon the face of the land no man knoweth.

11. But behold, my father and I have seen them, and they have ministered unto us. Mn 8-472

V. SEERS

(*"A seer is a revelator and a prophet combined."*) 15. And the king said that a seer is greater than a prophet.

16. And Ammon said that a seer is a revelator and a prophet also; and a gift which is greater can no man have, except he should possess the power of God, which no man can; yet a man may have great power given him from God.

17. But a seer can know of things which are past, and also of things which are to come, and by them shall all things be revealed,

18. Thus God has provided a means that man, through faith, might work mighty miracles; therefore he becometh a great benefit to his fellow beings. Mo 8-151

VI. PROPHETS

1. *JAREDITE PROPHETS.* (For *"False Prophets"* see Chapter XVI, Part I, Section I, Unit III.) 23. And also in the reign of Shule there came prophets among the people, who were sent from the Lord, prophesying that the wickedness and idolatry of the people was bringing a curse upon the land, and they should be destroyed if they did not repent.

24. And it came to pass that the people did revile against the prophets, and did mock them. E 7-490

1. And there came also in the days of Com many prophets, and prophesied of the destruction of that great people except they should

repent, and turn unto the Lord, and forsake their murders and wickedness.

E 11-498

5. And it came to pass that the brother of Shiblom caused that all the prophets who prophesied of the destruction of the people should be put to death;

6. And there was great calamity in all the land, for they had testified that a great curse should come upon the land, and also upon the people, and that there should be a great destruction among them, such an one as never had been upon the face of the earth, and their bones should become as heaps of earth upon the face of the land except they should repent of their wickedness.

12. And it came to pass that in the days of Etham there came many prophets, and prophesied again unto the people; yea, they did prophesy that the Lord would utterly destroy them from off the face of the earth except they repented of their iniquities.

13. And it came to pass that the people hardened their hearts, and would not hearken unto their words; and the prophets mourned and withdrew from among the people.

E 11-499

13. And I was about to write more, but I am forbidden; but great and marvelous were the prophecies of Ether; but they esteemed him as naught, and cast him out;

E 13-504

2. *NEPHITE PROPHETS.* (See Chapter II, Part II, for the names of many prophets. Prophets were holy men, teachers, and priests. For "False Prophets" see Chapter XVI, Part I, Section I, Unit 3.) 19. [Prophets were given positions of importance.] Now it was the custom among all the Nephites to appoint for their chief captains [over the armies,] (save it were in their times of wickedness) some one that had the spirit of revelation and also prophesy; therefore, this Gidgiddoni was a great prophet among them, as also was the chief judge.

3N 3-405

20. And the man said unto him [Amulek to Alma II]; I am a Nephite, and I know that thou art a holy prophet of God, for thou art the man whom an angel said in a vision: Thou shalt receive.

A 8-215

26. And a prophet of the Lord have they slain; yea, a chosen man of God, who told them of their wickedness and abominations, and prophesied of many things which are to come, yea, even the coming of Christ.

28. Therefore, who wondereth that they are in bondage, and that they are smitten with sore afflictions?

Mo 7-149

10. And it came to pass that the prophets of the Lord did threaten the people of Nephi, according to the word of God, that

if they did not keep the commandments, but should fall into transgression, they should be destroyed from off the face of the land.

11. Wherefore, the prophets, and the priests, and the teachers, did labor diligently, exhorting with all long-suffering the people to diligence; teaching the law of Moses, and the intent for which it was given; persuading them to look forward unto the Messiah, and believe in him to come as though he already has. And after this manner did they teach them. Jm 1-128

10. ---if ye slay me [Abinadi, the prophet] ye will shed innocent blood, and this shall also stand as a testimony against you at the last day.

13. And it came to pass that they took him and bound him, and scourged his skin with faggots, yea, even unto death.

14. And now when the flames began to scorch him, he cried unto them, saying:

CHART 21

*OUTSTANDING PROPHETS OF THE BOOK OF MORMON

JAREDITE PROPHETS

Brother of Jared
Ether

NEPHITE PROPHETS

Lehi (I)
Nephi (I)
King Benjamin
Mosiah (II)
Abinadi
Alma (II)
Ammon
Nephi (II)
Nephi (III)
Mormon
Moroni (II)

LAMANITE PROPHETS

Samuel

*See Chart 26 for the names of the ancient "Old World" prophets.

Note: Many prophets are mentioned other than those above listed, but they are not identified by name.

15. Behold, even as ye have done unto me, so shall it come to pass that thy seed shall cause that many shall suffer even the pains of death by fire;
Mo 17-167

2. [Concerning Nephi II] Behold, now we will know of a surety whether this man be a prophet and God hath commanded him to prophesy such marvelous things unto us. Behold, we do not believe that he hath; yea, we do not believe that he is a prophet; nevertheless, if this thing which he has said concerning the chief judge be true, that he be dead, then will we believe that the other words which he has spoken are true.

3. And it came to pass that they ran in their might, and came in unto the judgment-seat; and behold, the chief judge had fallen to the earth, and did lie in his blood.
H 9-381

6. Behold, thou art Nephi [Nephi II], and I am God. Behold, I declare it unto thee in the presence of mine angels, that ye shall have power over this people, and shall smite the earth with famine, and with pestilence, and destruction, according to the wickedness of this people.

11. And now behold, I command you, that ye shall go and declare unto this people, that thus saith the Lord God, who is the Almighty: Except ye repent ye shall be smitten, even unto destruction.
H 10-384

2. And it came to pass that in this year there was one Samuel, a Lamanite, came into the land of Zarahemla, and began to preach unto the people.

3. But behold, the voice of the Lord came unto him [to Samuel], that he should return again, and prophesy unto the people [of the Nephites] whatsoever things should come into his heart.
H 13-389

3. *PROPHETS OF OLD.* (See Chart 26, Chapter XVII, Part IV, Section II.) 10. ---my father, Lehi, took the records which were engraven upon the plates of brass, and he did search them from the beginning.

11. And he beheld that they did contain the five books of Moses,

13. And also the prophecies of the holy prophets, from the beginning, even down to the commencement of the reign of Zedekiah; and also many prophecies which have been spoken by the mouth of Jeremiah.
1N 6-10

40. ---Behold, He loved our fathers, and He covenanted with them, yea, even Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob; and he remembered the covenants which he had made; wherefore, he did bring them out of the land of Egypt.
1N 17-37

10. And the God of our fathers, who were led out of Egypt, --- yea, the God of Abraham and of Isaac, and the God of Jacob, yieldeth himself, according to the words of the angel, as a man, into the hands of wicked men, to be lifted up, according to the words of Zenock, and to be crucified, according to the words of Neum, and to be buried in a sepulchre, according to the words of Zenos, which he spake concerning the three days of darkness, which should be a sign given of his death unto those who should inhabit the isles of the sea, more especially given unto those who are of the house of Israel.

12. And all these things must surely come, saith the prophet Zenos. 1N 19-42

12. ---Do you believe those scriptures which have been written by them of old?

13. Behold, if ye do, ye must believe what Zenos said: for, behold he said: Thou hast turned away thy judgments because of thy Son.

14. Now behold, my brethren, I would ask if ye have read the scriptures? If ye have, how can ye disbelieve on the Son of God?

15. For it is not written that Zenos alone spake of these things, but Zenock also spake of these things—

18. But behold, this is not all; these are not the only ones who have spoken concerning the Son of God.

19. Behold, he was spoken of by Moses;

A 33-280

16. And now behold, Moses did not only testify of these things, but also all the holy prophets, from his days even to the days of Abraham.

17. Yea, and behold, Abraham saw of his coming, and was filled with gladness and did rejoice.

18. Yea, and behold I say unto you, that Abraham not only knew of these things, but there were many before the days of Abraham who were called by the order of God; yea, even after the order of his Son: and this that it should be shown unto the people, a great many thousand years before His coming, that even redemption should come unto them. H 8-378

33. ---Yea, and even all the prophets who have prophesied ever since the world began—have they not spoken more or less concerning these things?

34. Have they not said that God himself should come down among the children of men, and take upon him the form of man, and go forth in mighty power---

Mo 13-162

VII. PRIESTS, ELDERS, AND TEACHERS

1. *THE PEOPLE HEARD THE WORD OF GOD THROUGH THE MEDIA OF PRIESTS, ELDERS, AND TEACHERS.* (For "Priestcraft," see Chapter XVI, Part I, Section I, Unit 4.)

26. And when the priests left their labor to impart the word of God unto the people, the people also left their labors to hear the word of God. And when the priest had imparted unto them the word of God they all returned again diligently unto their labors; and the priest, not esteeming himself above his hearers, for the preacher was no better than the hearer, neither was the teacher any better than the learner; and thus they were all equal, and they did all labor, every man according to his strength.

A 1-197

18. For I, Jacob, and my brother Joseph had been consecrated priests and teachers of this people, by the hand of Nephi.

19. And we did magnify our office unto the Lord, taking upon us the responsibility, answering the sins of the people upon our own heads if we did not teach them the word of God with all diligence;

J 1-109

18. And it came to pass that Alma, having authority from God, ordained priests; even one priest to every fifty of their number did he ordain to preach unto them, and to teach them concerning the things pertaining to the kingdom of God.

Mo 18-169

1. And now it came to pass that after Alma had made an end of speaking unto the people of the church, which was established in the city of Zarahemla, he ordained priests and elders, by laying on his hands according to the order of God, to preside and watch over the church.

A 6-210

5. And when the multitude had eaten and were filled, he [Christ] said unto the disciples: Behold there shall one be ordained among you, and to him will I give power that he shall break bread and bless it and give it unto the people of my church,

3N 18-434

1. And now I speak concerning baptism. Behold, elders, priests, and teachers were baptized; and they were not baptized save they brought forth fruit meet that they were worthy of it.

M 6-511

29. And we [Ammon and his brethren] have entered into their houses and taught them, and we have taught them in their streets; yea, and we have taught them upon their hills; and we have also entered into their temples and their synagogues and taught them; and we have been cast out, and mocked, and spit upon, and smote upon our cheeks; and we have been stoned, and taken and bound with strong cords, and cast into prison; and through the power and wisdom of God we have been delivered again.

A 26-263

6. And now, my beloved son [Mormon to Moroni], notwithstanding their hardness, let us labor diligently; for if we should cease to labor, we should be brought under condemnation; for we have a labor to perform whilst in this tabernacle of clay, that we many conquer the enemy of all righteousness, and rest our souls in the kingdom of God.

M 9-518

34. ---for whoso receiveth not the words of Jesus and the words of those whom he hath sent receiveth not him; and therefore he will not receive them at the last day;

3N 28-454

2. *THE PRIESTHOOD.* 1. ---And I would that ye should remember that the Lord God ordained priests, after his holy order, which was after the order of his Son, to teach these things unto the people.

2. And those priests were ordained after the order of his Son, in a manner that thereby the people might know in what manner to look forward to his Son for redemption.

3. And this is the manner after which they were ordained—being called and prepared from the foundation of the world according to the foreknowledge of God, on account of their exceeding faith and good works; in the first place being left to choose good or evil; therefore they having chosen good, and exercising exceeding great faith, are called with a holy calling, yea, with that holy calling which was prepared with, and according to a preparatory redemption for such.

4. And thus they have been called to this holy calling on account of their faith, ---

5. ---thus this holy calling being prepared from the foundation of the world for such as would not harden their hearts,

8. Now they were ordained after this manner—being called with a holy calling, and ordained with a holy ordinance, and taking upon them the high priesthood of the holy order, which calling, and ordinance, and high priesthood, is without beginning or end—

11. Therefore they were called after this holy order, and were sanctified, and their garments were washed white through the blood of the Lamb.

12. Now they, after being sanctified by the Holy Ghost, having their garments made white, being pure and spotless before God, could not look upon sin save it were with abhorrence; and they were many, exceeding great many, who were made pure and entered into the rest of the Lord their God.

13. And now, my brethren, I would that ye should humble yourselves before God, and bring forth fruit meet for repentance, that ye may also enter into that rest.

14. Yea, humble yourselves even as the people in the days of Melchizedek, who was also a high priest after this same order which I have spoken, who also took upon him the high priesthood forever.

15. And it was this same Melchizedek to whom Abraham paid tithes; yea, even our father Abraham paid tithes of one-tenth part of all he possessed.

17. Now this Melchizedek was a king over the land of Salem; and his people had waxed strong in iniquity and abomination; yea, they had all gone astray; they were full of all manner of wickedness;

18. But Melchizedek having exercised mighty faith, and received the office of the high priesthood according to the holy order of God, did preach repentance unto his people. And behold, they did repent; and Melchizedek did establish peace in the land in his days; therefore he was called the prince of peace, for he was the king of Salem; and he did reign under his father.

19. Now, there were many before him and also there were many afterwards, but none were greater; therefore, of him they have more particularly made mention.

A 13-228

18. Yea, and behold I say unto you, that Abraham not only knew of these things, but there were many before the days of Abraham who were called by the order of God; yea, even after the order of his Son; and this that it should be shown unto the people, a great many thousand years before his coming, that even redemption should come unto them.

H 8-379

7. Behold, I give unto you [Nephi II] power, that whatsoever ye shall seal on earth shall be sealed in heaven; and whatsoever ye shall loose on earth shall be loosed in heaven; and thus shall ye have power among this people.

H 10-384

2. And he [Christ to his disciples] called them by name, saying: Ye shall call on the Father in my name, in mighty prayer; and after ye have done this ye shall have power that to him upon whom ye shall lay your hands, ye shall give the Holy Ghost; and in my name shall ye give it, for thus do mine apostles.

M 2-510

(*Ordination Ceremony.*) 1. The manner which the disciples, who were called the elders of the church, ordained priests and teachers—

2. After they had prayed unto the Father in the name of Christ, they laid their hands upon them, and said:

3. In the name of Jesus Christ I ordain you to be a priest, (or, if he be a teacher) I ordain you to be a teacher, to preach repentance and remission of sins through Jesus Christ, by the endurance of faith on his name to the end. Amen.

4. And after this manner did they ordain priests and teachers, according to the gifts and callings of God unto men; and they ordained them by the power of the Holy Ghost, which was in them.

M 3-510

PART II

EIGHT OUTSTANDING CHARACTERS OF THE BOOK OF MORMON

The author has selected a group of outstanding leaders among the ancient people of the *Book of Mormon*. This chapter presents the works of a few of them.

I. EIGHT OUTSTANDING NEPHITE LEADERS

(*Nephi I, King Benjamin, Mosiah II, Alma II, Moroni I, Nephi II, Nephi III, and Mormon.*) (*Other outstanding leaders are listed in Part III, and Part IV of this chapter.*)

1. **NEPHI I.** 17. And it came to pass that I, Nephi, did cause my people to be industrious, and to labor with their hands.

18. And it came to pass that they would that I should be their king. But I, Nephi, was desirous that they should have no king; nevertheless, I did for them according to that which was in my power.

2N 5-61

2. **KING BENJAMIN.** 13. ---But behold, king Benjamin gathered together his armies, and he did stand against them [the Lamanites]; and he did fight with the strength of his own arm, with the sword of Laban.

17. For behold, king Benjamin was a holy man, and he did reign over his people in righteousness;

18. Wherefore, with the help of these, king Benjamin, by laboring with all the might of his body and the faculty of his whole soul, and also the prophets, did once more establish peace in the land.

WoMn 1-138

3. **MOSIAH II.** 40. And they did wax strong in love towards Mosiah [II]; yea, they did esteem him more than any other man; for they did not look upon him as a tyrant who was seeking for gain, yea, for that lucre which doth corrupt the soul; for he had not exacted riches of them, neither had he delighted in the shedding of blood; but he had established peace in the land, and he had granted unto his people that they should be delivered from all manner of bondage; therefore they did esteem him yea, exceedingly, beyond measure.

Mo 29-194

4. *ALMA II.* (See this chapter, Part III, Section I, *Miracle III.*) 3. I, Alma, having been consecrated by my father, Alma, to be a high priest over the church of God, he having power and authority from God to do these things.

1. Now it came to pass that Alma began to deliver the word of God unto the people, first in the land of Zarahemla, and from thence throughout all the land. A 5-205

18. And when Alma had done this he departed out of the land of Zarahemla, as if to go into the land of Melek. And it came to pass that he was never heard of more; as to his death or burial we know not of.

19. Behold, this we know, that he was a righteous man; and the saying went abroad in the church that he was taken up by the Spirit, or buried by the hand of the Lord, even as Moses. A 45-308

5. *MORONI I.* 36. Behold, I am Moroni, your chief captain. I seek not for power, but to pull it down. I seek not for honor of the world, but for the glory of my God, and the freedom and welfare of my country. A 60-352

11. And Moroni was a strong and a mighty man; he was a man of a perfect understanding; yea, a man that did not delight in bloodshed; a man whose soul did joy in the liberty and the freedom of his country, and his brethren from bondage and slavery;

12. Yea, a man whose heart did swell with thanksgiving to his God, for the many privileges and blessings which he bestowed upon his people; a man who did labor exceedingly for the welfare and safety of his people.

13. Yea, and he was a man who was firm in the faith of Christ, and he had sworn with an oath to defend his people, his rights, and his country, and his religion even to the loss of his blood.

17. Yea, verily, verily I say unto you, if all men had been, and were, and ever would be, like unto Moroni, behold, the very powers of hell would have been shaken forever; yea, the devil would never have power over the hearts of the children of men.

18. Behold, he was a man like unto Ammon, the son of Mosiah, yea, and even the other sons of Mosiah, yea, and also Alma and his sons, for they were all men of God. A 48-317

6. *NEPHI II.* 5. And now, because thou hast done this with such unwearyingness, behold, I will bless thee forever; and I will make thee mighty in word and in deed, in faith and in works; yea, even that all things shall be done unto thee according to thy word, for thou shalt not ask that which is contrary to my will.

6. Behold, thou art Nephi, and I am God. Behold, I declare it unto thee in the presence of mine angels, that ye shall have power

over this people, and shall smite the earth with famine, and with pestilence, and destruction, according to the wickedness of this people.

7. Behold, I give unto you power, that whatsoever ye shall seal on earth shall be sealed in heaven; and whatsoever ye shall loose on earth shall be loosed in heaven; and thus shall ye have power among this people.

8. And thus, if ye shall say unto this temple it shall be rent in twain, it shall be done.

11. And now behold, I command you, that ye shall go and declare unto this people, that thus saith the Lord God, who is the Almighty: Except ye repent ye shall be smitten, even unto destruction.

H 10-384

7. *NEPHI III.* 15. And it came to pass that Nephi—having been visited by angels and also the voice of the Lord, therefore having seen angels, and being eye-witness, and having had power given unto him that he might know concerning the ministry of Christ, and also being eye-witness to their quick return from righteousness unto their wickedness and abominations;

16. Therefore, being grieved for the hardness of their hearts and the blindness of their minds—went forth among them in that same year, and began to testify, boldly, repentance and remission of sins through faith on the Lord Jesus Christ.

3N 7-414

17. And he did minister many things unto them; and all of them cannot be written, and a part of them would not suffice, therefore they are not written in this book. And Nephi did minister with power and with great authority.

18. And it came to pass that they were angry with him, even because he had greater power than they, for it were not possible that they could disbelieve his words, for so great was his faith on the Lord Jesus Christ that angels did minister unto him daily.

19. And in the name of Jesus did he cast out devils and unclean spirits; and even his brother did he raise from the dead, after he had been stoned and suffered death by the people.

20. And the people saw it, and did witness of it, and were angry with him because of his power; and he did also do many more miracles, in the sight of the people, in the name of Jesus.

3N 7-414

8. *MORMON.* 2. And about the time that Ammaron hid up the records unto the Lord, he came unto me, ---[and] said unto me: I perceive that thou art a sober child, and art quick to observe;

3. Therefore, when ye are about twenty and four years old I would that ye should remember the things that ye have observed

concerning this people; and when ye are of that age go to the land Antum, unto a hill which shall be called Shim; and there have I deposited unto the Lord all the sacred engravings concerning this people.

4. And behold, ye shall take the plates of Nephi unto yourself, and the remainder shall ye leave in the place where they are; and ye shall engrave on the plates of Nephi all the things that ye have observed concerning this people.

Mn 1-460

1. And it came to pass in that same year there began to be a war again between the Nephites and the Lamanites. And notwithstanding I being young, was large in stature; therefore the people of Nephi appointed me that I should be their leader, or the leader of their armies.

2. Therefore it came to pass that in my sixteenth year I did go forth at the head of an army of the Nephites, against the Lamanites; therefore three hundred and twenty and six years had passed away.

Mn 2-461

PART III

MIRACLES

The God of the ancient people was a God of miracles. (Although a few miracles are given in the following pages, many more are to be found throughout the *Book*.)

I. MIRACLES ARE A MANIFESTATION OF FAITH

(See Chapter XIV, Part I, "Faith." See Chapter XVI, Part IV, Section IV, Unit I, "Doubters.") 12. For if there be no faith among the children of men God can do no miracle among them; wherefore, he showed not himself until after their faith.

13. Behold, it was the faith of Alma and Amulek that caused the prison to tumble to the earth.

14. Behold, it was the faith of Nephi and Lehi that wrought the change upon the Lamanites, that they were baptized with fire and with the Holy Ghost.

15. Behold, it was the faith of Ammon and his brethren which wrought so great a miracle among the Lamanites.

16. Yea, and even all they who wrought miracles wrought them by faith, even those who were before Christ and also those who were after.

17. And it was by faith that the three disciples obtained a promise that they should not taste of death; and they obtained not the promise until after their faith.

18. And neither at any time hath any wrought miracles until after their faith; wherefore they first believed in the Son of God.

E 12-501

7. And again I speak unto you who deny the revelations of God, and say that they are done away, that there are no revelations, nor prophecies, nor gifts, nor healing, nor speaking with tongues, and the interpretation of tongues;

8. Behold I say unto you, he that denieth these things knoweth not the gospel of Christ; yea, he has not read the scriptures; if so, he does not understand them.

9. For do we not read that God is the same yesterday, today, and forever, and in him there is no variableness neither shadow of changing?

10. And now, if ye have imagined up unto yourselves a god who doth vary, and in whom there is shadow of changing, then have ye imagined up unto yourselves a god who is not a God of miracles.

11. But behold, I will show unto you a God of miracles, even the God of Abraham, and the God of Isaac, and the God of Jacob; and it is the same God who created the heavens and the earth, and all things that in them are.

15. And now, O all ye that have imagined up unto yourselves a god who can do no miracles, I would ask of you, have all these things passed, of which I have spoken? Has the end come yet? Behold I say unto you, Nay; and God has not ceased to be a God of miracles.

18. And who shall say that Jesus Christ did not do many mighty miracles? And there were many mighty miracles wrought by the hands of the apostles.

19. And if there were miracles wrought then, why has God ceased to be a God of miracles and yet be an unchangeable Being? And behold, I say unto you he changeth not; if so he would cease to be God; and he ceaseth not to be God, and is a God of miracles.

20. And the reason why he ceaseth to do miracles among the children of men is because that they dwindle in unbelief, and depart from the right way, and know not the God in whom they should trust.

21. Behold, I say unto you that whoso believeth in Christ, doubting nothing, whatsoever he shall ask the Father in the name of Christ it shall be granted him; and this promise is unto all, even unto the ends of the earth.

24. And these signs shall follow them that believe—in my name shall they cast out devils; they shall speak with new tongues; they shall take up serpents; and if they drink any deadly thing it shall not hurt them; they shall lay hands on the sick and they shall recover;

25. And whosoever shall believe in my name, doubting nothing, unto him will I confirm all my words, even unto the ends of the earth.

Mn 9-476

27. Wherefore, my beloved brethren, have miracles ceased because Christ hath ascended into heaven, and hath sat down on the right hand of God, to claim of the Father his rights of mercy which he hath upon the children of men?

M 7-514

MIRACLE I.

THE LIGHTED STONES OF THE JAREDITES. (See Chapter XI Part I, Section VI, Unit I. See Chapter IV, Part I). 3. ---

O Lord, look upon me in pity, and turn away thine anger from this thy people, and suffer not that they shall go forth across this raging deep in darkness; but behold these things which I have molten out of the rock.

4. And I know, O Lord, that thou hast all power, and can do whatsoever thou wilt for the benefit of man. Therefore, touch these stones, O Lord, with thy finger and prepare them that they may shine in the darkness---that we may have light while we shall cross the sea. E 3-483

2. ---[And] it came to pass after the Lord had prepared the stones which the brother of Jared had carried up into the mount, the brother of Jared came down out of the mount, and he did put forth the stones into the vessels which were prepared, one in each end thereof; and behold, they did give light unto the vessels.

3. And thus the Lord caused stones to shine in darkness, to give light unto men, women, and children, that they might not cross the great waters in darkness. E 6-487

MIRACLE II.

THE MIRACLE OF THE BALL OR COMPASS OF LEHI.

10. And it came to pass that as my father [as Lehi leaves Jerusalem for the promised land] arose in the morning, and went forth to the tent door, to his great astonishment he beheld upon the ground a round ball of curious workmanship; and it was of fine brass. And within the ball were two spindles; and the one pointed the way whither we should go into the wilderness. 1N 10-31

38. And now, my son, I have somewhat to say concerning the thing which our fathers call a ball, or director—or our fathers called it Liahona, which is, being interpreted, a compass; and the Lord prepared it.

39. And behold, there cannot any man work after the manner of so curious a workmanship. And behold, it was prepared to show unto our fathers the course which they should travel in the wilderness.

40. And it did work for them according to their faith in God; therefore, if they had faith to believe that God could cause that those spindles should point the way they should go, behold, it was done; therefore they had this miracle, and also many other miracles wrought by the power of God, day by day. A 37-291

MIRACLE III.

THE MIRACLE OF ALMA II AND AMULEK IN PRISON.

(For the miracle of the conversion of Alma, see this Chapter, Part IV, Section VII, Unit 1, and see Chapter XVI, Part IV, Section IV,

Unit 2.) 3. And they were also angry with Alma and Amulek; and because they [Alma and Amulek] had testified so plainly against their wickedness, they sought to put them away privily.

4. But it came to pass that they [the people of Ammonihah] did not; but they took them and bound them with strong cords, and took them before the chief judge of the land.

24. And the chief judge stood before them, and smote them--- and said unto them: If ye have the power of God deliver yourselves from [your persecutions]---

26. And Alma cried saying: How long shall we suffer these great afflictions, O Lord? O Lord, give us strength according to our faith which is in Christ, even unto deliverance. And they broke the cords with which they were bound; and when the people saw this, they began to flee, for the fear of destruction had come upon them.

27. And it came to pass that so great was their fear that they fell to the earth, and did not obtain the outer door of the prison; and the earth shook mightily, and the walls of the prison were rent in twain, so that they fell to the earth; and the chief judge, and the lawyers, and priests, and teachers, who smote upon Alma and Amulek, were slain by the fall thereof.

28. And Alma and Amulek came forth out of the prison, and they were not hurt; for the Lord had granted unto them power, according to their faith which was in Christ.

29. Now the people having heard a great noise came running together by multitudes to know the cause of it; and when they saw Alma and Amulek coming forth out of the prison, and the walls thereof had fallen to the earth, they were struck with great fear, and fled from the presence of Alma and Amulek even as a goat fleeth with her young from two lions; and thus they did flee from the presence of Alma and Amulek.

A 14-282

MIRACLE IV.

THE MIRACLE OF ALMA II AND ZEEZROM. 3. And also Zeezrom lay sick at Sidom, with a burning fever, which was caused by the great tribulations of his mind on account of his wickedness, for he supposed that they [Alma and Amulek] had been slain because of his iniquity.

4. Now, when he heard that Alma and Amulek were in the land of Sidom, his heart began to take courage; and he sent a message immediately unto them, desiring them to come unto him.

5. And it came to pass that they went immediately, obeying the message which he had sent unto them; and they went in unto the house unto Zeezrom; and they found him upon his bed, sick, being

very low with a burning fever; and his mind also was exceeding sore because of his iniquities; and when he saw them he stretched forth his hand, and besought them that they would heal him.

6. And it came to pass that Alma said unto him, taking him by the hand: Believest thou in the power of Christ unto salvation?

7. And he answered and said: Yea, I believe all the words that thou hast taught.

8. And Alma said: If thou believest in the redemption of Christ thou canst be healed.

9. And he said: Yea, I believe according to thy words.

10. And then Alma cried unto the Lord, saying: O Lord our God, have mercy on this man, and heal him according to his faith which is in Christ.

11. And when Alma had said these words, Zeezrom leaped upon his feet, and began to walk; and this was done to the great astonishment of all the people; and the knowledge of this went forth throughout all the land of Sidom.

12. And Alma baptized Zeezrom unto the Lord; and he began from that time forth to preach unto the people.

A 15-233

MIRACLE V.

THE MIRACLE OF AMMON AS HE ATTENDED THE FLOCKS OF THE KING OF THE LAMANITES. (For this miracle, see Chapter V, Part I, Section I, Unit 2. The following quotation portrays Ammon's happiness after his work among the Lamanites.) 12. Yea, I know that I am nothing; as to my strength I am weak; therefore I will not boast of myself, but I will boast of my God, for in his strength I can do all things; yea, behold, many mighty miracles we have wrought in this land, for which we will praise his name forever.

36. Now if this is boasting, even so will I boast; for this is my life and my light, my joy and my salvation, and my redemption from everlasting wo. Yea, blessed is the name of my God, who has been mindful of this people, who are a branch of the tree of Israel.

A 26-261

MIRACLE VI.

THE MIRACLE OF AARON AND THE KING OF THE LAMANITES. 17. ---[The king of the Lamanites] did prostrate himself upon the earth, and cried mightily, saying:

18. O God, Aaron hath told me that there is a God; and if there is a God, and if thou art God, wilt thou make thyself known unto

me, and I will give away all my sins to know thee, and that I may be raised from the dead, and be saved at the last day. And now when the king had said these words, he was struck as if he were dead.

19. And it came to pass that his servants ran and told the queen all that had happened unto the king. And she came in unto the king; and when she saw him lay as if he were dead, and also Aaron and his brethren standing as though they had been the cause of his fall, she was angry with them, and commanded that her servants, or the servants of the king, should take them and slay them.

20. Now the servants had seen the cause of the king's fall, therefore they durst not lay their hands on Aaron and his brethren; and they plead with the queen saying: Why commandest thou that we should slay these men, when behold one of them is mightier than us all? Therefore we shall fall before them.

21. Now when the queen saw the fear of the servants she also began to fear exceedingly, lest there should some evil come upon her. And she commanded her servants that they should go and call the people, that they might slay Aaron and his brethren.

22. Now when Aaron saw the determination of the queen, he, also knowing the hardness of the hearts of the people, feared lest that a multitude should assemble themselves together, and there should be a great contention and a disturbance among them; therefore he put forth his hand and raised the king from the earth, and said unto him: Stand. And he stood upon his feet, receiving his strength.

23. Now this was done in the presence of the queen and many of the servants. And when they saw it they greatly marveled, and began to fear. And the king stood forth, and began to minister unto them. And he did minister unto them, insomuch that his whole household were converted unto the Lord.

24. Now there was a multitude gathered together because of the commandment of the queen, and there began to be great murmurings among them because of Aaron and his brethren.

25. But the king stood forth among them and administered unto them. And they were pacified towards Aaron and those who were with him.

26. And it came to pass that when the king saw that the people were pacified, he caused that Aaron and his brethren should stand forth in the midst of the multitude, and that they should preach the word unto them.

A 22-258

MIRACLE VII.

THE MIRACLE OF THE 2,000 STRIPLINGS OF THE PEOPLE OF AMMON. (See Chapter V, Part I, Section V.) 25. And

it came to pass that there were two hundred, out of my two thousand and sixty, who had fainted because of the loss of blood; nevertheless, according to the goodness of God, and to our great astonishment, and also the foes of our whole army, there was not one soul of them who did perish; yea, and neither was there one soul among them who had not received many wounds.

26. And now, their preservation was astonishing to our whole army, yea, that they should be spared while there was a thousand of our brethren who were slain. And we do justly ascribe it to the miraculous power of God,

A 57-843

MIRACLE VIII.

THE MIRACLE OF NEPHI II AND LEHI II (BROTHERS) IN PRISON AMONG THE LAMANITES.

22. And after they had been cast into prison many days without food, behold, they [the Lamanites] went forth into the prison to take them that they might slay them.

23. And it came to pass that Nephi and Lehi were encircled about as if by fire, even insomuch that they durst not lay their hands upon them for fear lest they should be burned. Nevertheless, Nephi and Lehi were not burned; and they were as standing in the midst of fire and were not burned.

24. And when they saw that they were encircled about with a pillar of fire, and that it burned them not, their hearts did take courage.

25. For they saw that the Lamanites durst not lay their hands upon them; neither durst they come near unto them, but stood as if they were struck dumb with amazement.

26. And it came to pass that Nephi and Lehi did stand forth and began to speak unto them, saying: Fear not, for behold, it is God that has shown unto you this marvelous thing, in the which is shown unto you that ye cannot lay your hands on us to slay us.

27. And behold, when they had said these words, the earth shook exceedingly, and the walls of the prison did shake as if they were about to tumble to the earth; but behold, they did not fall. And behold, they that were in the prison were Lamanites and Nephites who were dissenters.

28. And it came to pass that they were overshadowed with a cloud of darkness, and an awful solemn fear came upon them.

29. And it came to pass that there came a voice as if it were above the cloud of darkness, saying: Repent ye, repent ye, and seek no more to destroy my servants whom I have sent unto you to declare good tidings.

30. And it came to pass when they heard this voice, and beheld that it was not a voice of thunder, neither was it a voice of a great tumultuous noise, but behold, it was a still voice of perfect mildness, as if it had been a whisper, and it did pierce even to the very soul—

34. And it came to pass that the Lamanites could not flee because of the cloud of darkness which did overshadow them; yea, and also they were immovable because of the fear which did come upon them.

35. Now there was one among them who was a Nephite by birth, who had once belonged to the church of God but had dissented from them.

36. And it came to pass that he turned him about, and behold, he saw through the cloud of darkness the faces of Nephi and Lehi; and behold, they did shine exceedingly, even as the faces of angels. And he beheld that they did lift their eyes to heaven; and they were in the attitude as if talking or lifting their voices to some being whom they beheld.

37. And it came to pass that this man did cry unto the multitude, that they might turn and look. And behold, there was power given unto them that they did turn and look; and they did behold the faces of Nephi and Lehi.

38. And they said unto the man: Behold, what do all these things mean, and who is it with whom these men do converse?

39. Now the man's name was Aminadab. And Aminadab said unto them: They do converse with the angels of God.

40. And it came to pass that the Lamanites said unto him: What shall we do, that this cloud of darkness may be removed from overshadowing us?

41. And Aminadab said unto them: You must repent, and cry unto the voice, even until ye shall have faith in Christ, who was taught unto you by Alma, and Amulek, and Zeezrom; and when ye shall do this, the cloud of darkness shall be removed from overshadowing you.

42. And it came to pass that they all did begin to cry unto the voice of him who had shaken the earth; yea, they did cry even until the cloud of darkness was dispersed.

43. And it came to pass that when they cast their eyes about, and saw that the cloud of darkness was dispersed from overshadowing them, behold, they saw that they were encircled about, yea every soul, by a pillar of fire.

44. And Nephi and Lehi were in the midst of them; yea, they were encircled about; yea, they were as if in the midst of a flaming fire, yet it did harm them not, neither did it take hold upon the walls of the prison; and they were filled with that joy which is unspeakable and full of glory.

45. And behold, the Holy Spirit of God did come down from heaven, and did enter into their hearts, and they were filled as if with fire, and they could speak forth marvelous words.

46. And it came to pass that there came a voice unto them, yea, a pleasant voice, as if it were a whisper, saying:

47. Peace, peace be unto you, because of your faith in my Well Beloved, who was from the foundation of the world.

48. And now, when they heard this they cast up their eyes as if to behold from whence the voice came; and behold, they saw the heavens open; and angels came down out of heaven and ministered unto them.

49. And there were about three hundred souls who saw and heard these things; and they were bidden to go forth and marvel not, neither should they doubt.

H 5-370

MIRACLE IX.

THE MIRACLE OF THE PROPHECY AND THE ESCAPE—OF SAMUEL, THE LAMANITE. (See this Chapter, Part IV, Section IX, for the prophecy.) 6. But the more part of them did not believe in the words of Samuel; therefore when they [the Nephites] saw that they could not hit him with their stones and their arrows, they cried unto their captains, saying: Take this fellow and bind him, for behold he hath a devil; and because of the power of the devil which is in him we cannot hit him with our stones and our arrows; therefore take him and bind him, and away with him.

7. And as they went forth to lay their hands on him, behold, he did cast himself down from the wall and did flee out of their lands---

H 16-397

MIRACLE X.

MIRACLE OF NEPHI III. 19. And in the name of Jesus did he cast out devils and unclean spirits; and even his brother did he [Nephi III] raise from the dead, after he had been stoned and suffered death by the people.

20. And the people saw it, and did witness of it, and were angry with him because of his power; and he did also do many more miracles, in the sight of the people, in the name of Jesus.

8N 7-414

MIRACLE XI.

THE MIRACLES OF JESUS CHRIST. (See Chapter XII, Part III, and see this chapter, Part I, Sections I, II, and III, etc.)

7. ---and he [Christ] said unto Nephi [III]: Bring forth the record which ye have kept.

8. And when Nephi had brought forth the records, and laid them before him, he cast his eyes upon them and said:

9. Verily I say unto you, I commanded my servant Samuel, the Lamanite, that he should testify unto this people, that at the day that the Father should glorify his name in me that there were many saints who should arise from the dead, and should appear unto many, and should minister unto them. And he said unto them: Was it not so?

10. And his disciples answered him and said: Yea, Lord, Samuel did prophesy according to thy words, and they were all fulfilled.

11. And Jesus said unto them: How be it that ye have not written this thing, that many saints did arise and appear unto many and did minister unto them?

12. And it came to pass that Nephi remembered that this thing had not been written.

13. And it came to pass that Jesus commanded that it should be written; therefore it was written according as he commanded.

3N 23-445

6. And he said unto them: Behold, my bowels are filled with compassion towards you.

7. Have ye any that are sick among you? Bring them hither. Have ye any that are lame, or blind, or halt, or maimed, or leprous, or that are withered, or that are deaf, or that are afflicted in any manner? Bring them hither and I will heal them, for I have compassion upon you; my bowels are filled with mercy.

3N 17-482

9. And it came to pass that when he had thus spoken, all the multitude, with one accord, did go forth with their sick and their afflicted, and their lame, and with their blind, and with their dumb, and with all them that were afflicted in any manner; and he did heal them every one as they were brought forth unto him.

10. And they did all, both they who had been healed and they who were whole, bow down at his feet, and did worship him; and as many as could come for the multitude did kiss his feet, insomuch that they did bathe his feet with their tears.

3N 17-483

33. And the multitude did hear and do bear record; and their hearts were open and they did understand in their hearts the words which he prayed.

34. Nevertheless, so great and marvelous were the words which he prayed that they cannot be written, neither can they be uttered by man.

35. And it came to pass that when Jesus had made an end of praying he came again to the disciples, and said unto them: So great faith have I never seen among all the Jews; wherefore I could not show unto them so great miracles, because of their unbelief.

3N 19-489

16. Behold, it came to pass on the morrow that the multitude gathered themselves together, and they both saw and heard these children; yea, even babes did open their mouths and utter marvelous things; and the things which they did utter were forbidden that ---any man write them.

3N 26-449

MIRACLE XII.

THE MIRACLES OF THE THREE NEPHITES WHO WERE DISCIPLES OF CHRIST. (These take place about 200 A.D. See this chapter, Part I, Section IV.) 30. Therefore they [the Nephites] did exercise power and authority over the disciples of Jesus who did tarry with them, and they did cast them into prison; but by the power of the word of God, which was in them, the prisons were rent in twain, and they went forth doing mighty miracles among them.

31. Nevertheless, and notwithstanding all these miracles, the people did harden their hearts, and did seek to kill them, even as the Jews at Jerusalem sought to kill Jesus, according to his word.

32. And they did cast them into furnaces of fire, and they came forth receiving no harm.

33. And they also cast them into dens of wild beasts, and they did play with the wild beasts even as a child with a lamb; and they did come forth from among them, receiving no harm.

34. Nevertheless, the people did harden their hearts, for they were led by many priests and false prophets to build up many churches, and to do all manner of iniquity.

4N 1-458

20. And they were cast down into the earth; but they did smite the earth with the word of God, insomuch that by his power they were delivered out of the depths of the earth; and therefore they could not dig pits sufficient to hold them.

3N 28-458

MIRACLE XIII.

MISCELLANEOUS MIRACLES. (*Many other miracles are mentioned in the Book of Mormon, of which the two following are examples.*) 30. For the brother of Jared said unto the mountain Zerin, Remove—and it was removed. And if he had not had faith it would not have moved; wherefore thou workest after men have faith. E 12-502

2. I am Amulek; I am the son of Giddonah, who was the son of Ishmael, who was a descendant of Aminadi; and it was that same Aminadi who interpreted the writing which was upon the wall of the temple, which was written by the finger of God. A 10-219

PART IV

VISIONS, PROPHECIES, AND SERMONS OF SOME OUTSTANDING TEACHERS

Some of the works of Ether, Lehi (I), Nephi (I), Benjamin, Abinadi, Alma (II), Nephi (II), and Samuel (the Lamanite). (For "Ammon" see the "People of Ammon," Chapter V, Part I, and see this chapter, Part III, Miracle V.) (For the sermons of Mormon and Moroni (II) see much of the content of Chapter XVII, and the "Conclusion.")

3. Behold, I have declared the former things from the beginning; and they went forth out of my mouth, and I showed them.

4. And I did it because I knew that thou art obstinate and thy neck is an iron sinew, and thy brow brass;

5. And I have even from the beginning declared to thee; before it came to pass I showed them thee; and I showed them for fear lest thou shouldst say—Mine idol hath done them, and my graven image, and my molten image hath commanded them.

7. ---even before the day when thou heardest them---they were declared unto thee, lest thou shouldst say—Behold I knew them.

1N 20-43

I. PROPHECIES OF ETHER

(*Ether, the great prophet of the Jaredites prophesied of the coming of Christ.*) 2. For behold, they rejected all the words of Ether; for he truly told them of all things, from the beginning of man; and that after the waters had receded from off the face of this land it became a choice land above all other lands, a chosen land of the Lord; wherefore the Lord would have that all men should serve him who dwell upon the face thereof;

3. And that it was the place of the New Jerusalem, which should come down out of heaven, and the holy sanctuary of the Lord.

9. And there shall be a new heaven and a new earth; and they shall be like unto the old save the old have passed away, and all things have become new.

10. And then cometh the New Jerusalem; and blessed are they who dwell therein, for it is they whose garments are white through the blood of the Lamb; and they are they who are numbered among the remnant of the seed of Joseph, who were of the house of Israel.

6. And that a New Jerusalem should be built up upon this land, unto the remnant of the seed of Joseph, for which things there has been a type.

7. For as Joseph brought his father down into the land of Egypt, even so he died there; wherefore, the Lord brought a remnant of the seed of Joseph out of the land of Jerusalem, that he might be merciful unto the seed of Joseph that they should perish not, even as he was merciful unto the father of Joseph that he should perish not.

8. Wherefore, the remnant of the house of Joseph shall be built upon this land; and it shall be a land of their inheritance; and they shall build up a holy city unto the Lord, like unto the Jerusalem of old; and they shall no more be confounded, until the end come when the earth shall pass away.

11. And then also cometh the Jerusalem of old; and the inhabitants thereof, blessed are they for they have been washed in the blood of the Lamb; and they are they who were scattered and gathered in from the four quarters of the earth, and from the north countries, and are partakers of the fulfilling of the covenant which God made with their father, Abraham.

12. And when these things come, bringeth to pass the scripture which saith, there are they who were first, who shall be last; and there are they who were last, who shall be first.

E 13-503

II. PROPHECIES OF LEHI

(The visions and prophecies of Lehi in which he prophesied of the destruction of Jerusalem and the coming of Christ.) 6. And it came to pass as he prayed unto the Lord, there came a pillar of fire, and dwelt upon a rock before him;

9. And it came to pass that he [Lehi has a vision] saw one descending out of the midst of heaven, and he beheld that his luster was above that of the sun at noon-day.

10. And he also saw twelve others following him, and their brightness did exceed that of the stars in the firmament.

11. And they came down and went forth upon the face of the earth; and the first came and stood before my father, and gave unto him a book, and bade him that he should read.

12. And it came to pass that as he read, he was filled with the Spirit of the Lord.

13. And he read, saying: Wo, wo, unto Jerusalem, for I have seen thine abominations! Yes, and many things did my father read concerning Jerusalem—

1N 1-2

2. For behold, it came to pass after my father had made an end of speaking the words of his dream, and also of exhorting them [his sons] to all diligence, he spake unto them concerning the Jews—

3. That after they should be destroyed, even that great city Jerusalem, and many be carried away captive into Babylon, according to the own due time of the Lord, they should return again, yea, even be brought back out of captivity; and after they should be brought back out of captivity they should possess again the land of their inheritance.

4. Yea, even six hundred years from the time that my father left Jerusalem, a prophet would the Lord God raise up among the Jews—even a Messiah, or, in other words, a Savior of the world.

5. And he also spake concerning the prophets, how great a number had testified of these things, concerning this Messiah, of whom he had spoken, or this Redeemer of the world.

7. And he spake also concerning a prophet who should come before the Messiah, to prepare the way of the Lord—

8. Yea, even he should go forth and cry in the wilderness: Prepare ye the way of the Lord,

9. And my father [Lehi] said he should baptize in Bethabara, beyond Jordan;

10. And after he had baptized the Messiah with water, he should behold and bear record that he had baptized the Lamb of God, who should take away the sins of the world.

11. And it came to pass---he spake---concerning the dwindling of the Jews in unbelief. And after they had slain the Messiah, who should come, and after he had been slain he should rise from the dead, and should make himself manifest, by the Holy Ghost, unto the Gentiles.

12. Yea, even my father spake much concerning the Gentiles, and also concerning the house of Israel, that they should be compared like unto an olive-tree, whose branches should be broken off and should be scattered upon all the face of the earth.

14. And after the house of Israel should be scattered they should be gathered together again; or, in fine, after the Gentiles had received the fulness of the Gospel, the natural branches of the olive-tree, or the remnants of the house of Israel, should be grafted in, or come to the knowledge of the true Messiah, their Lord and their Redeemer.

15. And after this manner of language did my father prophesy and speak unto my brethren, and also many more things which I do not write in this book; for I have written as many of them as were expedient for me in mine other book.

III. THE VISION OF LEHI, AND NEPHI'S REVELATION OF THE SAME VISION

1. *LEHI'S VISION.* 10. And it came to pass that I beheld a tree, whose fruit was desirable to make one happy. [The Tree of Life.]

11. And it came to pass that I did go forth and partake of the fruit thereof; and I beheld that it was most sweet, above all that I ever before tasted. Yea, and I beheld that the fruit thereof was white, to exceed all the whiteness that I had ever seen.

12. And as I partook of the fruit thereof it filled my soul with exceeding great joy; wherefore, I began to be desirous that my family should partake of it also; for I knew that it was desirable above all other fruit.

13. And as I cast my eyes round about, that perhaps I might discover my family also, I beheld a river of water; and it ran along, and it was near the tree of which I was partaking the fruit.

14. And I looked to behold from whence it came; and I saw the head thereof a little way off; and at the head thereof I beheld your mother, Sariah, and Sam, and Nephi; and they stood as if they knew not whither they should go.

15. And it came to pass that I beckoned unto them;

16. And it came to pass that they did come unto me and partake of the fruit also.

17. And it came to pass that I was desirous that Laman and Lemuel should come and partake of the fruit also; wherefore, I cast mine eyes towards the head of the river, that perhaps I might see them.

18. And it came to pass that I saw them, but they would not come unto me and partake of the fruit.

19. And I beheld a rod of iron, and it extended along the bank of the river, and led to the tree by which I stood.

20. And I also beheld a straight and narrow path, which came along by the rod of iron, even to the tree by which I stood; and it also led by the head of the fountain, unto a large and spacious field, as if it had been a world.

21. And I saw numberless concourses of people, many of whom were pressing forward, that they might obtain the path which led unto the tree by which I stood.

23. And it came to pass that there arose a mist of darkness; yea, even an exceeding great mist of darkness, insomuch that they who had commenced in the path did lose their way, that they wandered off and were lost.

24. And it came to pass that I beheld others pressing forward, and they came forth and caught hold of the end of the rod of iron; and they did press forward through the mist of darkness, clinging to

the rod of iron, even until they did come forth and partake of the fruit of the tree.

25. And after they had partaken of the fruit of the tree they did cast their eyes about as if they were ashamed.

26. And I also cast my eyes round about, and beheld, on the other side of the river of water, a great and spacious building; and it stood as it were in the air, high above the earth.

27. And it was filled with people, both old and young, both male and female; and their manner of dress was exceeding fine; and they were in the attitude of mocking and pointing their fingers towards those who had come at and were partaking of the fruit.

28. And after they had tasted of the fruit they were ashamed, because of those that were scoffing at them; and they fell away into forbidden paths and were lost.

29. And now I, Nephi, do not speak all the words of my father.

1N 8-18

2. LEHI'S VISION WAS REVEALED TO NEPHI I. 1. For it came to pass after I had desired to know the things that my father had seen, and believing that the Lord was able to make them known unto me, as I sat pondering in mine heart I was caught away in the Spirit of the Lord, yea, into an exceeding high mountain, which I never had before set my foot.

8. And it came to pass that the Spirit said unto me: Look! And I looked and beheld a tree; and it was like unto the tree which my father had seen; and the beauty thereof was far beyond, yea, exceeding of all beauty; and the whiteness thereof did exceed the whiteness of the driven snow.

9. And it came to pass after I had seen the tree, I said unto the Spirit : I behold thou hast shown unto me the tree which is precious above all.

10. And he said unto me: What desireth thou?

11. And I said unto him: To know the interpretation thereof—

13. And it came to pass that I looked and beheld the great city of Jerusalem, and also other cities. And I beheld the city of Nazareth; and in the city of Nazareth I beheld a virgin,

18. And he [the Spirit] said unto me: Behold, the virgin whom thou seest is the mother of the Son of God, after the manner of the flesh.

20. And I looked and beheld the virgin again, bearing a child in her arms.

21. And the angel said unto me: Behold the Lamb of God, yea, even the Son of the Eternal Father! Knowest thou the meaning of the tree which thy father saw?

22. And I answered him, saying: Yea, it is the love of God, which sheddeth itself abroad in the hearts of the children of men; wherefore, it is the most desirable above all things.

25. And it came to pass that I beheld that the rod of iron, which my father had seen, was the word of God, which led to the fountain of living waters, or to the tree of life; which waters are a representation of the love of God; and I also beheld that the tree of life was a representation of the love of God.

31. ---And I looked, and beheld the Lamb of God that he was taken by the people; yea, the Son of the everlasting God was judged of the world;

33. And I, Nephi, saw that he was lifted up upon the cross and slain for the sins of the world.

36. And it came to pass that I saw and bear record, that the great and spacious building was the pride of the world; and it fell, and the fall thereof was exceeding great---
1N 11-17

(*Nephi explained his father's dream to his brothers.*) 21. ---[They said] What meaneth the tree which he saw?

22. And I said unto them: It was a representation of the tree of life.

23. And they said unto me: What meaneth the rod of iron which our father saw, that led to the tree?

24. And I said unto them that it was the word of God; and whoso would hearken unto the word of God, and would hold fast unto it, they would never perish; neither could the temptations and the fiery darts of the adversary overpower them unto blindness, to lead them away to destruction.

26. And they said unto me: What meaneth the river of water which our father saw?

27. And I said unto them that the water which my father saw was filthiness; and so much was his mind swallowed up in other things that he beheld not the filthiness of the water.

28. And I said unto them that it was an awful gulf, which separated the wicked from the tree of life, and also from the saints of God.

29. And I said unto them that it was a representation of that awful hell, which the angel said unto me was prepared for the wicked.
1N 15-29

IV. PROPHECIES OF NEPHI I.

(*See Chapter I, Part III, for the great prophecy of Nephi I. Another great prophecy of Nephi appears in various sections throughout this volume. Space does not permit a complete repetition of this prophecy here, but it is recommended to the reader. See the Book of Mormon, 2N 25-89 to 2N 33-106.*)

V. PROPHECY AND SERMON OF KING BENJAMIN.

(King Benjamin was a noble character. His sermon, repeated herewith, was one of the finest of the sermons of the ancient teachers of the Book of Mormon.)

9. ---My brethren, all ye that have assembled yourselves together, you that can hear my words which I shall speak unto you this day; for I have not commanded you to come up hither to trifle with the words which I shall speak, but that you should hearken unto me, and open your ears that ye may hear, and your hearts that ye may understand, and your minds that the mysteries of God may be unfolded to your view.

10. I have not commanded you to come up hither that ye should fear me, or that ye should think that I of myself am more than a mortal man.

11. But I am like as yourselves, subject to all manner of infirmities in body and mind; yet I have been chosen by this people, and consecrated by my father, and was suffered by the hand of the Lord that I should be a ruler and a king over this people; and have been kept and preserved by his matchless power, to serve you with all the might, mind and strength which the Lord hath granted unto me.

12. I say unto you that as I have been suffered to spend my days in your service, even up to this time, and have not sought gold nor silver nor any manner of riches of you;

13. Neither have I suffered that ye should be confined in dungeons, nor that ye should make slaves one of another, nor that ye should murder, or plunder, or steal, or commit adultery; nor even have suffered that ye should commit any manner of wickedness, and have taught you that ye should keep the commandments of the Lord, in all things which he hath commanded you—

14. And even I, myself, have labored with mine own hands that I might serve you, and that ye should not be laden with taxes, and that there should nothing come upon you which was grievous to be borne—and of all these things which I have spoken, ye yourselves are witnesses this day.

15. Yet, my brethren, I have not done these things that I might boast, neither do I tell these things that thereby I might accuse you; but I tell you these things that ye may know that I can answer a clear conscience before God this day.

17. And behold, I tell you these things that ye may learn wisdom; that ye may learn that when ye are in the service of your fellow beings ye are only in the service of your God.

18. Behold, ye have called me your king; and if I, when ye call your king, do labor to serve you, then ought not ye to labor to serve one another?

19. And behold also, if I, whom ye call your king, who has spent his days in your service, and yet has been in the service of

God, do merit any thanks from you, O how you ought to thank your heavenly King!

21. I say unto you that if ye should serve him who has created you from the beginning, and is preserving you from day to day, by lending you breath, that ye may live and move and do according to your own will, and even supporting you from one moment to another—I say, if ye should serve him with all your whole souls yet ye would be unprofitable servants.

22. And behold, all that he requires of you is to keep his commandments; and he has promised you that if ye would keep his commandments ye should prosper in the land;

23. And now, in the first place, he hath created you, and granted unto you your lives, for which ye are indebted unto him.

24. And secondly, he doth require that ye should do as he hath commanded you; for which if ye do, he doth immediately bless you; and therefore he hath paid you. And ye are still indebted unto him, and are, and will be, forever and ever; therefore, of what have ye to boast?

25. And now I ask, can ye say aught of yourselves? I answer you, Nay. Ye cannot say that ye are even as much as the dust of the earth; yet ye were created of the dust of the earth; but behold, it belongeth to him who created you.

26. And I, even I, who ye call your king, am no better than ye yourselves are; for I am also of the dust. And ye behold that I am old, and am about to yield up this mortal frame to its mother earth.

28. I say unto you that I have caused that ye should assemble yourselves together that I might rid my garments of your blood, at this period of time when I am about to go down to my grave, that I might go down in peace, and my immortal spirit may join the choirs above in singing the praises of a just God.

29. And moreover, I say unto you that I have caused that ye should assemble yourselves together, that I might declare unto you that I can no longer be your teacher nor your king;

30. For even at this time, my whole frame doth tremble exceedingly while attempting to speak unto you; but the Lord God doth support me, and hath suffered me that I should speak unto you, and hath commanded me that I should declare unto you this day, that my son Mosiah is a king and a ruler over you.

31. And now, my brethren, I would that ye should do as ye have hitherto done. As ye have kept my commandments, and also the commandments of my father, and have prospered, and have been kept from falling into the hands of your enemies, even so if ye shall keep the commandments of my son, or the commandments of God which shall be delivered unto you by him, ye shall prosper in the land, and your enemies shall have no power over you.

32. But, O my people, beware lest there shall arise contentions among you, and ye list to obey the evil spirit, which was spoken of by my father Mosiah.

33. For behold, there is a wo pronounced upon him who listeth to obey that spirit; for if he listeth to obey him, and remaineth and dieth in his sins, the same drinketh damnation to his own soul; for he receiveth for his wages an everlasting punishment, having transgressed the law of God contrary to his own knowledge.

34. I say unto you, that there are not any among you, except it be your little children that have not been taught concerning these things, but what knowest that ye are eternally indebted to your heavenly Father, to render to him all that you have and are; and also have been taught concerning the records which contain the prophecies which have been spoken by the holy prophets, even down to the time our father, Lehi, left Jerusalem;

35. And also, all that has been spoken by our fathers until now.
Mo 2-136

4. ---My friends and my brethren, my kindred and my people, I would again call your attention, that ye may hear and understand the remainder of my words which I shall speak unto you.

9. Believe in God; believe that he is, and that he created all things, both in heaven and in earth; believe that he has all wisdom, and all power, both in heaven and in earth; believe that man doth not comprehend all the things which the Lord can comprehend.

10. And again, believe that ye must repent of your sins and forsake them, and humble yourselves before God;

12. ---and ye shall grow in the knowledge of the glory of him that created you, or in the knowledge of that which is just and true.

13. And ye will not have a mind to injure one another, but to live peaceably, and to render to every man according to that which is his due.

15. But ye will teach them [the children] to walk in the ways of truth and soberness; ye will teach them to love one another, and to serve one another.

16. And also, ye yourselves will succor those that stand in need of your succor; ---and ye will not suffer that the beggar putteth up his petition to you in vain, and turn him out to perish.

19. For behold, are we not all beggars? Do we not all depend upon the same Being, even God, for all the substance which we have,

20. And behold, even at this time, ye have been calling on his name, and begging for a remission of your sins, and has he suffered that ye have begged in vain? Nay; he has poured out his Spirit upon you, and has caused that your hearts should be filled with joy,

21. And now, if God, who has created you, on whom you are dependent for your lives and for all that ye have and are, doth grant unto you whatsoever ye ask that is right, in faith, believing that ye

shall receive, O then, how ye ought to impart of the substance that ye have one to another.

22. And if ye judge the man who putteth up his petition to you for your substance that he perish not, and condemn him, how much more just will be your condemnation for withholding your substance, which doth not belong to you but to God, to whom also your life belongeth; and yet ye put up no petition, nor repent of the thing which thou hast done.

23. I say unto you, wo be unto that man, for his substance shall perish with him; and now, I say these things unto those who are rich as pertaining to the things of this world.

28. And I would that ye should remember, that whosoever among you borroweth of his neighbor should return the thing that he borroweth, according as he doth agree, or else thou shalt commit sin; and perhaps thou shalt cause thy neighbor to commit sin also.

29. And finally, I cannot tell you all the things whereby ye may commit sin; for there are divers ways and means, even so many that I cannot number them.

30. But this much I can tell you, that if ye do not watch yourselves, and your thoughts, and your words, and your deeds, and observe the commandments of God, and continue in the faith of what ye have heard concerning the coming of our Lord, even unto the end of your lives, ye must perish. And now O man, remember and perish not.

Mo 4-142

(Then Benjamin prophesies [124 B. C.] of the coming of Christ and continues:)

10. And now it shall come to pass, that whosoever shall not take upon him the name of Christ must be called by some other name; therefore, he findeth himself on the left hand of God.

11. And I would that ye should remember also, that this is the name that I said I should give unto you that never should be blotted out, except it be through transgression;

12. I say unto you, I would that ye should remember to retain the name written always in your hearts---

13. For how knoweth a man the master whom he has not served, and who is a stranger unto him, and is far from the thoughts and intents of his heart?

15. Therefore, I would that ye should be steadfast and immovable, always abounding in good works, that Christ, the Lord God Omnipotent, may seal you his, that you may be brought to heaven, that ye may have everlasting salvation and eternal life, through the wisdom, and power, and justice, and mercy of him who created all things, in heaven and in earth, who is God above all. Amen.

Mo 5-146

VI. PROPHECIES OF ABINADI

(Abinadi prophesied to the wicked people of King Noah that they would be destroyed. An account of that destruction is given here.)

20. And it came to pass that there was a man among them whose name was Abinadi; and he went forth among them, and began to prophesy, saying: Behold, thus saith the Lord, and thus hath he commanded me, saying, Go forth, and say unto this people, thus saith the Lord—Wo be unto this people, for I have seen their abominations, and their wickedness, and their whoredoms; and except they repent I will visit them in mine anger. Mo 11-157

9. ---[Abinadi is taken before the king] Behold, we have brought a man before thee who has prophesied evil concerning thy people, and saith that God will destroy them.

10. And he also prophesied evil concerning thy life, and saith that thy life shall be as a garment in a furnace of fire.

11. And again, he saith that thou shalt be as a stalk, even as a dry stalk of the field, which is run over by the beasts and trodden under foot.

12. And again, he saith thou shalt be as the blossoms of a thistle, which, when it is fully ripe, if the wind bloweth, it is driven forth upon the face of the land. And he pretendeth the Lord hath spoken it. And he saith all this shall come upon thee except thou repent, and this because of thine iniquities.

13. And now, O king, what great evil hast thou done, or what great sins have thy people committed, that we should be condemned of God or judged of this man?

14. And now, O king, behold, we are guiltless, and thou, O king, hast not sinned; therefore, this man has lied concerning you, and he has prophesied in vain.

15. And behold, we are strong, we shall not come into bondage, or be taken captive by our enemies; Mo 12-159

(The fulfillment of Abinadi's prophecy.) 19. Now they [the men of King Noah who fled before the Lamanites], had sworn in their hearts that they would return to the land of Nephi, and if their wives and their children were slain,--- that they would seek revenge, and also perish with them.

20. And the king [Noah] commanded them that they should not return; and they were angry with the king, and caused that he should suffer, even unto death by fire. Mo 19-171

3. [Now there were] many battles---in which---[the wicked priests of King Noah] were driven out and slain.

4. And among the Lamanites who were slain were almost all of the seed of---the priests of Noah, and they were slain by the hands of the Nephites;

5. And the remainder [of the priests], having fled into the east wilderness, caused [that] many of the Lamanites should perish by fire because of their belief---

6. For many---began to disbelieve the traditions of their fathers, and to believe in the Lord,---

7. And it came to pass that those---[the remnant of the wicked priests] caused that they should be put to death, yea, all those that believed these things.

8. Now this martyrdom caused---contention in the wilderness; and the Lamanites began to hunt the seed of---[the wicked priests] and began to slay them;

9. ---Thus the words of Abinadi were brought to pass.

11. And now Abinadi was the first that suffered death by fire [See Chapter XV, Part I, Section VI, Unit 2, for information concerning Abinadi's death.] because of his belief in God;

12. And he [had] said unto the priests of Noah that their seed should cause many to be put to death, in the like manner as he was, that they should be scattered abroad and slain, even as a sheep having no shepherd is driven and slain by wild beasts; and now behold, these words were verified, for they were driven by the Lamanites, and they were hunted, and were smitten. A 25-259

VII. VISIONS AND PROPHECIES OF ALMA II.

1. *THE CONVERSION OF ALMA.* (*See this chapter, Part II, Unit 4.*) 1. My son [Alma II speaks to his son, Helaman], give your ear to my words; for I swear unto you, that inasmuch as ye shall keep the commandments of God ye shall prosper in the land.

5. ---but God has, by the mouth of his holy angel, made these things known unto me, not of any worthiness of myself;

6. For I went about with the sons of Mosiah, seeking to destroy the church of God; but behold, God sent his holy angel to stop us by the way.

7. And behold, he spake unto us, as it were the voice of thunder, and the whole earth did tremble beneath our feet; and we all fell to the earth, for the fear of the Lord came upon us.

8. But behold, the voice said unto me: Arise. And I arose and stood up, and beheld the angel.

9. And he said unto me: If thou wilt of thyself be destroyed, seek no more to destroy the church of God.

10. And it came to pass that I fell to the earth; and it was for the space of three days and three nights that I could not open my mouth, neither had I the use of my limbs.

13. Yea, I did remember all my sins and iniquities, for which I was tormented with the pains of hell; yea, I saw that I had rebelled against my God, and that I had not kept his holy commandments.

14. Yea, and I had murdered many of his children, or rather led them away unto destruction; yea, and in fine so great had been my iniquities, that the very thought of coming into the presence of my God did rack my soul with inexpressible horror.

15. Oh, thought I, that I could be banished and become extinct both soul and body, that I might not be brought to stand in the presence of my God, to be judged of my deeds.

17. And it came to pass that as I was thus racked with torment, while I was harrowed up by the memory of my many sins, behold, I remembered also to have heard my father prophesy unto the people concerning the coming of one Jesus Christ, a Son of God, to atone for the sins of the world.

18. Now, as my mind caught hold upon this thought, I cried within my heart: O Jesus, thou Son of God, have mercy on me, who am in the gall of bitterness, and am encircled about by the everlasting chains of death.

19. And now, behold, when I thought this, I could remember my pains no more; yea, I was harrowed up by the memory of my sins no more.

20. And oh, what joy, and what marvelous light I did behold; yea, my soul was filled with joy as exceeding as was my pain!

22. Yea, methought I saw, even as our father Lehi saw, God sitting upon his throne, surrounded with numberless concourses of angels, in the attitude of singing and praising their God; yea, and my soul did long to be there.

23. But behold, my limbs did receive their strength again, and I stood upon my feet, and did manifest unto the people that I had been born of God.

24. Yea, and from that time even until now, I have labored without ceasing, that I might bring souls unto repentance; that I might bring them to taste of the exceeding joy of which I did taste; that they might also be born of God, and be filled with the Holy Ghost.

A 36-286

2. THE PROPHECIES OF ALMA II AND AMULEK CONCERNING AMMONIHAH. (*They prophesied that the city of Ammonihah would be destroyed because of iniquity.*) 8. And it came to pass that when Alma had come to the city of Ammonihah he began to preach the word of God unto them.

9. Now Satan had gotten great hold upon the hearts of the people of the city of Ammonihah; therefore they would not hearken unto the words of Alma.

10. Nevertheless Alma labored much in the spirit, wrestling with God in mighty prayer, that he would pour out his Spirit upon the people who were in the city; that he would also grant that he might baptize them unto repentance.

11. Nevertheless, they hardened their hearts, saying unto him: Behold, we know that thou art Alma; and we know that thou art high priest over the church which thou hast established in many parts of the land, according to your tradition; and we are not of thy church, and we do not believe in such foolish traditions.

12. And now we know that because we are not of thy church we know that thou hast no power over us; and thou hast delivered up the judgment-seat unto Nephiah; therefore thou art not the chief judge over us.

A 8-214

18. [Alma prophesies.] But behold, I say unto you that if ye persist in your wickedness that your days shall not be prolonged in the land, for the Lamanites shall be sent upon you; and if ye repent not they shall come in a time when you know not, and ye shall be visited with utter destruction; and it shall be according to the fierce anger of the Lord.

A 9-217

13. Now---the people---withstood all his words, and reviled him, and spit upon him, and caused that he should be cast out of their city---[Alma leaves the city, but is commanded to return.]

14. ---behold an angel of the Lord appeared unto him saying:

16. And behold, I am sent to command thee that thou return to the city of Ammonihah, and preach again unto the people of the city; ---Yea, say unto them, except they repent the Lord God will destroy them.

29. ---Go; and also say unto my servant Amulek, go forth and prophesy unto this people---

A 8-215

(*Alma's prophecy is fulfilled.*) 2. But they [the Lamanites] took their armies and went over in the borders of the land of Zarahemla, and fell upon the people who were in the land of Ammonihah and destroyed them.

A 25-259

2. For behold, the armies of the Lamanites had come in upon the wilderness side, into the borders of the land, even into the city of Ammonihah, and began to slay the people and destroy the city.

9. ---and thus ended the eleventh year of the judges, the Lamanites having been driven out of the land, and the people of Ammonihah were destroyed; yea, every living soul of the Ammonihahites was destroyed, and also their great city, which they said God could not destroy, because of its greatness.

10. But behold, in one day it was left desolate; and the carcases were mangled by dogs and wild beasts of the wilderness.

11. Nevertheless, after many days their dead bodies were heaped up upon the face of the earth, and they were covered with a shallow covering. And now so great was the ecene thereof that the people did not go in to possess the land of Ammonihah for many years. And it was called Desolation of Nehors; for they were of the profession of Nehor, who were slain; and their lands remained desolate.

A 16-235

3. *ALMA'S (ALMA II) SERMON TO HIS SON.* 33. Preach unto them [the people] repentence, and faith on the Lord Jesus Christ; teach them to humble themselves and to be meek and lowly in heart; teach them to withstand every temptation of the devil, with their faith on the Lord Jesus Christ.

34. Teach them to never be weary of good works, but to be meek and lowly in heart; for such shall find rest to their souls.

35. O, remember, my son, and learn wisdom in thy youth; yea, learn in thy youth to keep the commandments of God.

36. Yea, and cry unto God for all thy support; yea, let all thy doings be unto the Lord, and whithersoever thou goest let it be in the Lord; yea, let thy thoughts be directed unto the Lord---

37. Counsel with the Lord in all thy doings, and he will direct thee for good; yea, when thou liest down at night lie down unto the Lord, that he may watch over you in your sleep; and when thou risest in the morning let thy heart be full of thanks unto God; and if ye do these things, ye shall be lifted up at the last day

A 37-291

VIII. PROPHECIES OF NEPHI II.

(*Prophecies of Nephi II to the Judges of Zarahemla.*) 10. And behold, now it came to pass that it was upon a tower, which was in the garden of Nephi, which was by the highway which led to the chief market, which was in the city of Zarahemla; therefore, Nephi had bowed himself upon the tower which was in his garden, which tower was also near unto the garden gate by which led the highway.

11. And it came to pass that there were certain men passing by and saw Nephi as he was pouring out his soul unto God upon the tower; and they ran and told the people what they had seen, and the people came together in multitudes that they might know the cause of so great mourning for the wickedness of the people.

12. And now, when Nephi arose he beheld the multitudes of people who had gathered together.

13. And it came to pass that he opened his mouth and said unto them: Behold, why have ye gathered yourselves together? That I may tell you of your iniquities?

14. Yea, because I have got upon my tower that I might pour out my soul unto my God, because of the exceeding sorrow of my heart, which is because of your iniquities!

21. But behold, it is to get gain, to be praised of men, yea, and that ye might get gold and silver. And ye have set your hearts upon the riches and the vain things of this world, for the which ye do murder and plunder, and steal, and bear false witness against your neighbor, and do all manner of iniquity.

22. And for this cause wo shall come unto you except ye shall repent. For if ye will not repent, behold, this great city, and also all those great cities which are round about, which are in the land of our possession, shall be taken away that ye shall have no place in them; for behold, the Lord will not grant unto you strength, as he has hitherto done, to withstand against your enemies.

29. Behold now, I do not say that these things shall be, of myself, because it is not of myself that I know these things; but behold I know that these things are true because the Lord God has made them known unto me, therefore I testify that they shall be. H 7-377

1. And now it came to pass that when Nephi had said these words, behold, there were men who were judges, who also belonged to the secret band of Gadianton, and they were angry, and they cried out against him, saying unto the people: Why do ye not seize upon this man and bring him forth, that he may be condemned according to the crime which he has done?

2. Why seest thou this man, and hearest him revile against this people and against our law?

7. And it came to pass that thus they did stir up the people to anger against Nephi, and raised contentions among them;---[but] there were some who did cry out: Let this man alone, for he is a good man, and those things which he saith will surely come to pass except we repent;

9. Yea, and behold, if he had not been a prophet he could not have testified concerning these things.

11. Therefore he was constrained to speak more unto them saying: Behold, my brethren, have ye not read that God gave power unto one man, even Moses, to smite upon the waters of the Red Sea, and they parted hither and thither, ---

12. And now behold, if God gave unto this man such power, then why should ye dispute among yourselves, and say that he hath given unto me no power whereby I may know concerning the judgments that shall come upon you except ye repent?

27. Yea, behold it is now even at your doors; yea, go ye in unto the judgment-seat, and search; and behold, your judge is murdered, and he lieth in his blood; and he hath been murdered by his brother, who seeketh to sit in the judgment-seat.

28. And behold, they both belong to your secret band, whose author is Gadianton and the evil one who seeketh to destroy the souls of men. H 8-378

1. Behold, now it came to pass that when Nephi had spoken these words, certain men who were among them ran to the judg-

ment-seat; yea, even there were five who went, and they said among themselves, as they went:

2. Behold, now we will know of a surety whether this man be a prophet and God hath commanded him to prophesy such marvelous things unto us. Behold, we do not believe that he hath; yea, we do not believe that he is a prophet; nevertheless, if this thing which he has said concerning the chief judge be true, that he be dead, then will we believe that the other words which he has spoken are true.

3. And it came to pass that they ran in their might, and came in unto the judgment-seat; and behold, the chief judge had fallen to the earth, and did lie in his blood.

4. And now behold, when they saw this they were astonished exceedingly, insomuch that they fell to the earth; for they had not believed the words which Nephi had spoken concerning the chief judge.

5. But now, when they saw they believed, and fear came upon them lest all the judgments which Nephi had spoken should come upon the people; therefore they did quake, and had fallen to the earth.

7. And behold the people did gather themselves together unto the place of the judgment-seat—and behold, to their astonishment they saw those five men who had fallen to the earth.

9. And it came to pass that they laid hold of them, and bound them and cast them into prison. And there was a proclamation sent abroad that the judge was slain, and that the murderers had been taken and were cast into prison.

10. And it came to pass that on the morrow the people did assemble themselves together to mourn and to fast, at the burial of the great chief judge who had been slain.

11. And thus also those judges who were at the garden of Nephi, and heard his words, were also gathered together at the burial.

12. And it came to pass that they inquired among the people, saying: Where are the five who were sent to inquire concerning the chief judge whether he was dead? And they answered and said: Concerning the five whom ye say ye have sent, we know not; but there are five who are the murderers, whom we have cast into prison.

13. And it came to pass that the judges desired that they should be brought; and they were the five who were sent; and behold the judges inquired of them to know concerning the matter, and they told them all that they had done, saying:

14. We ran and came to the place of the judgment, and when we saw all things even as Nephi had testified, we were astonished, insomuch that we fell to the earth; and when we were recovered from our astonishment, behold they cast us into prison.

15. Now, as for the murder of this man, we know not who has done it; and only this much we know, we ran and came according

as ye desired, and behold he was dead, according to the words of Nephi.

16. And now it came to pass that the judges did expound the matter unto the people, and did cry out against Nephi, saying: Behold, we know that this Nephi must have agreed with some one to slay the judge, and then he might declare it unto us, that he might convert us unto his faith, that he might raise himself to be a great man, chosen of God, and a prophet.

19. Nevertheless, they caused that Nephi should be taken and bound and brought before the multitude, and they began to question him in divers ways that they might cross him, that they might accuse him to death—

20. Saying unto him: Thou art confederate; who is this man that hath done this murder? Now tell us, and acknowledge thy fault; saying, Behold here is money; and also we will grant unto thee thy life if thou will tell us, and acknowledge the agreement which thou hast made with him.

21. But Nephi said unto them: O ye fools, ye uncircumcised of heart, ye blind, and ye stiffnecked people, do ye know how long the Lord your God will suffer you that ye shall go on in this your way of sin?

23. Behold ye say that I have agreed with a man that he should murder Seezoram, our chief judge. But behold, I say unto you, that this is because I have testified unto you that ye might know concerning this thing; yea, even for a witness unto you, that I did know of the wickedness and abominations which are among you.

24. And because I have done this ye say that I have agreed with a man that he should do this thing; yea, because I showed unto you this sign ye are angry with me, and seek to destroy my life.

25. And now behold, I will show unto you another sign, and see if ye will in this thing seek to destroy me.

26. Behold I say unto you: Go to the house of Seantum, who is the brother of Seezoram, and say unto him—

27. Has Nephi, the pretended prophet, who doth prophesy so much evil concerning this people, agreed with thee, in the which ye have murdered Seezoram, who is your brother?

28. And behold, he shall say unto you, Nay.

29. And ye shall say unto him: Have you murdered your brother?

30. And he shall stand with fear, and wist not what to say. And behold, he shall deny unto you; and he shall make as if he were astonished; nevertheless, he shall declare unto you that he is innocent.

31. But behold, ye shall examine him, and ye shall find blood upon the skirts of his cloak.

32. And when ye have seen this, ye shall say: From whence cometh this blood? Do we not know that it is the blood of your brother?

33. And then shall he tremble, and shall look pale, even as if death had come upon him.

34. And then shall ye say: Because of this fear and this paleness which has come upon your face, behold, we know that thou art guilty.

35. And then shall greater fear come upon him; and then shall he confess unto you, and deny no more that he has done this murder.

36. And then shall he say unto you, that I, Nephi, know nothing concerning the matter save it were given unto me by the power of God. And then shall ye know that I am an honest man, and that I am sent unto you from God.

37. And it came to pass that they went and did, even according as Nephi had said unto them. And behold, the words which he had said were true; for according to the words he did deny; and also according to the words he did confess.

38. And he was brought to prove that he himself was the very murderer, insomuch that the five were set at liberty, and also was Nephi.

39. And there were some of the Nephites who believed on the words of Nephi; and there were some also, who believed because of the testimony of the five, for they had been converted while they were in prison.

40. And now there were some among the people, who said that Nephi was a prophet.

41. And there were others who said: Behold, he is a god, for except he was a god he could not know of all things. For behold, he has told us the thoughts of our hearts, and also has told us things; and even he has brought unto our knowledge the true murderer of our chief judge.

H 9-380

IX. PROPHECIES OF SAMUEL, THE LAMANITE

1. *SAMUEL, THE LAMANITE, PROPHECIES OF THE NEPHITE DESTRUCTION.* (*The prophecy took place about 6 B.C., and the fulfillment of this prophecy about 385 A. D. See Chapter IV, Part IV, Section VI.*) 2. And it came to pass that in this year there was one Samuel, a Lamanite, came into the land of Zarahemla, and began to preach unto the people. And it came to pass that he did preach, many days, repentance unto the people, and they did cast him out, and he was about to return to his own land.

3. But behold, the voice of the Lord came unto him, that he should return again, and prophesy unto the people whatsoever things should come into his heart.

4. And it came to pass that they would not suffer that he should enter into the city; therefore he went and got upon the wall thereof,

and stretched forth his hand and cried with a loud voice, and prophesied unto the people whatsoever things the Lord put into his heart.

5. And he said unto them: Behold, I, Samuel, a Lamanite, do speak the words of the Lord which he doth put into my heart; and behold he hath put it into my heart to say unto this people that the sword of justice hangeth over this people; and four hundred years pass not away save the sword of justice falleth upon this people.

7. And behold an angel of the Lord hath declared it unto me.

9. And four hundred years shall not pass away before I will cause that they shall be smitten; yea, I will visit them with the sword and with famine and with pestilence.

10. Yea, I will visit them in my fierce anger, and there shall be those of the fourth generation who shall live, of your enemies, to behold your utter destruction;

11. But if ye will repent and return unto the Lord your God I will turn away mine anger, saith the Lord;

12. Yea, wo unto this great city of Zarahemla;

14. But behold, it is for the righteous' sake that it is spared. But behold, the time cometh, saith the Lord, that when ye shall cast out the righteous from among you, then shall ye be ripe for destruction;

16. Yea, and wo be unto all the cities which are in the land round about, which are possessed by the Nephites, because of the wickedness and abominations which are in them.

20. And the day shall come that they shall hide up their treasures, because they have set their hearts upon riches; and because they have set their hearts upon their riches, I will hide up their treasures when they shall flee before their enemies; because they will not hide them up unto me, cursed be they and also their treasures;

22. Ye do not remember the Lord your God in the things with which he hath blessed you, but ye do always remember your riches, not to thank the Lord your God for them; yea, your hearts are not drawn out unto the Lord, but they do swell with great pride, unto boasting, and unto great swelling, envyings, strifes, malice, persecutions, and murders, and all manner of iniquities.

24. Yea, wo unto this people, because of this time which has arrived, that ye do cast out the prophets, and do mock them, and cast stones at them, and do slay them, and do all manner of iniquity unto them, even as they did of old time.

26. ---yea, you will say that he is a false prophet, and that he is a sinner, and of the devil, because he testifieth that your deeds are evil.

27. But behold, if a man shall come among you and shall say: Do this, and there is no iniquity; do that and ye shall not suffer;

yea, he will say: Walk after the pride of your own hearts; yea, walk after the pride of your eyes, and do whatsoever your heart desireth—and if a man shall come among you and say this, ye will receive him, and say that he is a prophet.

28. Yea, ye will lift him up, and ye will give unto him of your substance; ye will give unto him of your gold, and of your silver, and ye will clothe him with costly apparel; and because he speaketh flattering words unto you, and he saith that all is well, then ye will not find fault with him.

H 13-389

2. SAMUEL PROPHESED OF THE COMING AND CRUCIFIXION OF CHRIST. (*See Shapter XII, Part III.*) 1. And now it came to pass that Samuel, the Lamanite, did prophesy a great many more things which cannot be written.

2. And behold, he said unto them: Behold, I give unto you a sign; for five years more cometh, and behold, then cometh the Son of God to redeem all those who shall believe on his name.

3. And behold, this will I give unto you for a sign at the time of his coming; for behold, there shall be great lights in heaven, insomuch that in the night before he cometh there shall be no darkness---

4. Therefore, there shall be one day and a night and a day, as if it were one day and there were no night; and this shall be unto you for a sign; for ye shall know of the rising of the sun and also of its setting;---and it shall be the night before he is born.

5. And behold, there shall a new star arise, such an one as ye never have beheld; and this also shall be a sign unto you.

14. And behold, again, another sign I give unto you, yea, a sign of his death.

20. But behold, as I said unto you concerning another sign, a sign of his death, behold, in that day that he shall suffer death the sun shall be darkened and refuse to give his light unto you; and also the moon and the stars; and there shall be no light upon the face of the land, even from the time that he shall suffer death, for the space of three days, to the time that he shall rise again from the dead.

25. And many graves shall be opened, and shall yield up many of their dead; and many saints shall appear unto many.

26. And behold, thus hath the angel spoken unto me; for he said unto me that there should be thunderings and lightnings for the space of many hours.

27. And he said unto me that while the thunder and the lightning lasted, and the tempest, that these things should be, and that darkness should cover the face of the whole earth for the space of three days.

H 14-393



CHAPTER XVI

*TRADITIONS OF A "DEVIL," OF A "HELL," AND OF EVIL PRACTICES

"40. For I say unto you that whatsoever
is good cometh from God, and whatso-
ever is evil cometh from the devil."

A 5-207

The tradition of a Devil seems to be as old as the advent of man. The ancient scriptures carried an account of the Evil One, he who tempted the first parents of the human race. The power of the Devil has always been the potential force which opposed the commandments of the Lord and the teachings of Jesus Christ. Ancient mythologies, likewise, give accounts of a God of Evil who had great power among men. There are interesting legends to be found among certain Central American Indians which show that the Evil God (Satan) was actually worshiped by them (because they feared his power) and was given a high place in the pantheon of their gods. The art of witchcraft, priestcraft, and voodoo are other manifestations of devil-worship. The evil influence of the Devil and his followers on the ancient peoples of the *Book of Mormon* is given in the following pages.

The history of civilization is a record which gives evidence of man's continuous struggle between the forces of good and evil. That the will of man is easily tempted and swayed by the subtle words of the Adversary is an accepted theory, but to say that man is unwittingly carried into iniquity and is blindly taken into the fold of the "Lord of the Underworld" is a fallacy. According to the Holy Scriptures, man not only is allowed to choose his own pattern of living but will be punished or exalted according to his choice.

According to the ancient religious teachers of the *Book of Mormon*, the term "Hell" designates a condition rather than a place. They explained that Hell is a state of suffering experienced by the conscience of man (when he reviews his own iniquity) and is, therefore, an inner rather than an outer torment.

*For key to reference symbols, see page 2.

PART I

THE DEVIL AND HIS FORCES OF EVIL

The Devil and his messengers; idols
and false gods; false churches and
wicked organizations.

I. THE DEVIL AND HIS MESSENGERS

1. *THE DEVIL.* 25. ---for there is nothing which is good save it comes from the Lord; and that which is evil cometh from the devil. O 1-131

17. And I, Lehi, according to the things which I have read, must needs suppose that an angel of God, according to that which is written, had fallen from heaven; wherefore, he became a devil, having sought that which was evil before God. 2N 2-54

8. O the wisdom of God, his mercy and grace! For behold, if the flesh should rise no more our spirits must become subject to that angel who fell from before the presence of the Eternal God, and became the devil, to rise no more. 2N 9-67

18. And because he had fallen from heaven, and had become miserable forever, he sought also the misery of all mankind. Wherefore, he said unto Eve, yea, even that old serpent, who is the devil, who is the father of all lies, wherefore he said: Partake of the forbidden fruit, and ye shall not die, but ye shall be as God, knowing good and evil. 2N 2-54

3. ---yea, even that old serpent that did beguile our first parents, which was the cause of their fall; which was the cause of all mankind becoming carnal, sensual, devilish, ---subjecting themselves to the devil. Mo 16-165

11. Suffer not yourself to be led away by any vain or foolish thing; A 39-294

14. And ye will not suffer your children that they---serve the devil, who is the master of sin, or who is the evil spirit which hath been spoken of by our fathers, he being an enemy to all righteousness. Mo 4-148

35. For behold, if ye have procrastinated the day of your repentance even until death, behold, ye have become subjected to the spirit of the devil, and he doth seal you his; therefore, the Spirit of the Lord hath withdrawn from you, and hath no place in you, and the devil hath all power over you; and this is the final state of the wicked.

A 84-288

24. No man can serve two masters; for either he will hate the one and love the other, or else he will hold to the one and despise the other. Ye cannot serve God and Mammon.

8N 13-427

CHART 22

SOME TITLES GIVEN TO THE DEVIL
(in the Book of Mormon)

Satan	The Master of Sin
Lucifer	The Evil Spirit
Mammon	The Destroyer of Souls
The Son of Perdition	The Destroying Angel
The Old Serpent	The Demon
The Father of All Lies	The Fallen Angel
The Great Deceiver	The Enemy of Righteousness

2. *THE DEVIL AND HIS ANGELS.* 53. But behold, the devil hath deceived me; for he appeared unto me in the form of an angel, and said unto me: Go and reclaim this people, for they have all gone astray after an unknown God. And he said unto me: There is no God; yea, and he taught me that which I should say.

A 30-278

37. Behold, we are surrounded by demons, yea, we are encircled about by the angels of him who hath sought to destroy our souls.

H 13-392

9. And our spirits must have become like unto him [the devil], and we become devils, angels to a devil, to be shut out from the presence of our God, and to remain with the father of lies, in misery, like unto himself; yea, to that being who beguiled our first parents, who transformeth himself nigh unto an angel of light, and stirreth up the children of men unto secret combinations of murder and all manner of secret works of darkness.

10. O how great the goodness of our God, who prepareth a way for our escape from the grasp of this awful monster;

2N 9-67

11. O my brethren, hearken unto my word; arouse the faculties of your soul; shake yourselves that ye may awake from the

slumber of death; and loose yourselves from the pains of hell that ye may not become angels to the devil, to be cast into that lake of fire and brimstone which is the second death. J 4-118

16. And assuredly, as the Lord liveth, for the Lord God hath spoken it, and it is his eternal word, which cannot pass away, that they who are righteous shall be righteous still, and they who are filthy shall be filthy still; wherefore, they who are filthy are the devil and his angels; and they shall go away into everlasting fire, prepared for them; and their torment is as a lake of fire and brimstone, whose flame ascendeth up forever and ever and has no end. 2N 9-68

3. *FALSE PROPHETS.* 15. Beware of false prophets, who come to you in sheep's clothing, but inwardly they are ravening wolves.

16. Ye shall know them by their fruits. Do men gather grapes of thorns, or figs of thistles?

17. Even so every good tree bringeth forth good fruit; but a corrupt tree bringeth forth evil fruit.

20. Wherefore, by their fruits ye shall know them. 3N 14-428

22. Many will say to me in that day: Lord, Lord, have we not prophesied in thy name, and in thy name have cast out devils, and in thy name done many wonderful works?

23. And then will I profess unto them: I never knew you; depart from me, ye that work iniquity. 3N 14-428

CHART 23

*OUTSTANDING LEADERS OF INIQUITY

FROM THE BRASS PLATES

The Serpent	—Tempted Eve
Cain	—The first murderer

FROM THE PLATES OF ETHER—JAREDITES

Corihor	—Usurped throne from father
Noah	—Usurped throne from uncle
Jared II	—Usurped throne from father
Akish	—Usurped throne from father-in-law
Heth	—Imposed heavy taxes—lived in wickedness
Riplakish	—Imposed heavy taxes—lived in wickedness

Shiblom	—Had wars, contention, and famine
Ahah	—Practiced iniquity
Ethem	—Practiced iniquity
Shiz	—Led people to destruction
Coriantumr	—Led people to destruction

FROM THE PLATES OF NEPHI—NEPHITES

Laban	—Wicked Jew in Jerusalem
Laman	—Oldest son of Lehi, and leader of revolt from father and brother, Nephi. Later became king of the Lamanites
Lemuel	—Second son of Lehi, joined his brother in revolt, and was a leader of the Lamanites—
Sons of Ishmael	—Joined Laman and Lemuel in revolt from Nephi
Amaleki	—May have been first great Nephite dissenter— (See people of Amaleki)
Sherem	—An anti-Christ
Alma II	—Preached against church—later repented and became righteous
Amlici	—Leader of a civil revolt—wanted a king
Noah	—Wicked king of the people of Zeniff, Limhi
Amulon	—Leader of the wicked priests of King Noah
Nehor	—Dissenter from the church—starter of new religion
Zeezrom	—Wicked lawyer—later repented and became righteous
Antionah	—Wicked ruler of Ammonihah
Korihor	—An anti-Christ
Zoram	—Leader of a dissenting people
Amalikhiah	—A dissenter who joined the Lamanites and brought wars to the Nephites
Jacob	—Zoramite leader
Morianton	—Leader of troublesome Nephites
Kishkumen	—Leader of secret organization
Gadianton	—Leader of secret organization of robbers
Pachus	—Leader of civic revolt
Paanchi	—Leader of civic revolt
Zemnarihah	—Robber chieftain
Jacob	—King of robbers
Zenephi	—Captain of outlaw army

*This chapter, Part IV; See Chapter IV, Part IV, Section IV; and see Chapter VI, Chart 10.

4. *PRIESTCRAFT*. 5. But because of priestcrafts and iniquities, they at Jerusalem will stiffen their necks against him, that he be crucified.

29. He commandeth that there shall be no priestcrafts; for, behold, priestcrafts are that men preach and set themselves up for a

light unto the world, that they may get gain and praise of the world; but they seek not the welfare of Zion.

30. Behold, the Lord hath forbidden this thing;

31. But the laborer in Zion shall labor for Zion; for if they labor for money they shall perish. 2N 26-95

16. Nevertheless, this did not put an end to the spreading of priestcraft through the land; for there were many who loved the vain things of the world, and they went forth preaching false doctrines; and this they did for the sake of riches and honor. A 1-196

34. Nevertheless, the people did harden their hearts, for they were led by many priests and false prophets to build up many churches, and to do all manner of iniquity. 4N 1-458

12. ---Behold, this is the first time that priestcraft has been introduced among this people. And behold, thou art not only guilty of priestcraft, but has endeavored to enforce it by the sword; and were priestcraft to be enforced among this people it would prove their entire destruction. [Alma speaks to Nehor.] A 1-196

5. For he [King Noah] put down all the priests that had been consecrated by his father, and consecrated new ones in their stead, such as were lifted up in the pride of their hearts.

6. Yea, and thus they were supported in their laziness, and in their idolatry, and in their whoredoms, by the taxes which king Noah had put upon his people; thus did the people labor exceedingly to support iniquity.

7. Yea, and they also became idolatrous, because they were deceived by the vain and flattering words of the king and priests; for they did speak flattering things unto them. Mo 11-155

21. [People in iniquity complained of the good priests. This quotation shows the position of the priest vs. the people.] And they [the priests] will, by the cunning and mysterious arts of the evil one, work some great mystery which we do not understand---and thus they will keep us in ignorance---all the days of our lives. H 16-398

II. IDOLS AND FALSE GODS

1. *IDOLS.* 37. Yea, wo unto those that worship idols, for the devil of all devils delighteth in them. 2N 7-69

1. ---[the] Zoramites were perverting the ways of the Lord, and that Zoram, who was their leader, was leading the hearts of the people to bow down to dumb idols, A 81-273

31. And now behold, he [the devil] had got great hold upon the hearts of the Nephites; yea, insomuch that they had become exceedingly wicked; yea, the more part of them had turned out of the way of righteousness,---and did turn unto their own ways, and did build up unto themselves idols of their gold and their silver.

H 6-375

15. Thus they were a very indolent people, many of whom did worship idols, and the curse of God had fallen upon them because of the traditions of their fathers;

A 17-238

8. Their land is also full of idols;

2N 12-74

6. Yea, and thus they were supported in their laziness, and in their idolatry, and in their whoredoms, by the taxes which king Noah had put upon his people; thus did the people labor exceedingly to support iniquity.

7. Yea, and they also became idolatrous, because they were deceived by the vain and flattering words of the king and priests;

Mo 11-156

32. For those who did not belong to their church did indulge themselves in sorceries, and in idolatry---

A 1-197

12. Now they were a lazy and idolatrous people [the Lamanites];

Mo 9-153

14. And they [Lamanites] did also march forward against the city Teancum, and did drive the inhabitants forth out of her, and did take many prisoners both women and children, and did offer them up as sacrifices unto their idol gods.

Mn 4-466

15. ---for this people [the remnant of the Nephites who with the Lamanites shall exist until the time of the Gentiles] shall be scattered, and shall become a dark, a filthy, and a loathsome people, beyond the description of that which ever hath been amongst us, yea, even that which hath been among the Lamanites, and this because of their unbelief and idolatry.

Mn 5-468

2. *FALSE GODS.* 8. ---they worship the work of their own hands, that which their own fingers have made.

2N 12-74

30. But wo unto the rich, who are rich as to the things of the world. For because they are rich they despise the poor, and they persecute the meek, and their hearts are upon their treasures; wherefore, their treasure is their God. And behold, their treasure shall perish with them also.

2N 9-69

19. Lay not up for yourselves treasures upon earth, where moth and rust doth corrupt, and thieves break through and steal;

20. But lay up for yourselves treasures in heaven, where neither moth nor rust doth corrupt; and where thieves do not break through nor steal.

21. For where your treasure is, there will your heart be also.

3N 14-427

32. [Christ prophesies to the people on the Western Hemisphere.] But behold, it sorroweth me because of the fourth generation from this generation [of Nephites], for they are led away captive by him even as was the son of perdition; for they will sell me for silver and for gold, and for that which moth doth corrupt and which thieves can break through and steal. And in that day will I visit them, even in turning their works upon their own heads.

3N 27-451

III. FALSE CHURCHES AND WICKED ORGANIZATIONS

1. *MANY CHURCHES.* (*In the last days will be found many churches—each misleading the people. See Chapter XVI, Part I, Section I, Unit 4, "Priestcrafts."*)

3. For it shall come to pass in that day that the churches which are built up, and not unto the Lord, when the one shall say unto the other: Behold, I, I am the Lord's; and the others shall say: I, I am the Lord's; and thus shall every one say that hath built up churches, and not unto the Lord—

4. And they shall contend one with another; and their priests shall contend one with another, and they shall teach with their learning, and deny the Holy Ghost, which giveth utterance.

5. And they deny the power of God, the Holy One of Israel; and they say unto the people; Hearken unto us, and hear ye our precept; for behold there is no God today, for the Lord and the Redeemer hath done his work, and he hath given his power unto men;

6. [And they shall say] Behold, hearken ye unto my precept; if they shall say there is a miracle wrought by the hand of the Lord, believe it not; for this day he is not a God of miracles; he hath done his work.

7. Yea, and there shall be many which shall say: Eat, drink, and be merry, for tomorrow we die; and it shall be well with us.

8. And there shall also be many which shall say: Eat, drink, and be merry; nevertheless, fear God—he will justify in committing a little sin; yea, lie a little, take the advantage of one because of his words, dig a pit for thy neighbor; there is no harm in this; and do all these things, for tomorrow we die; and if it so be that we are guilty, God will beat us with a few stripes, and at last we shall be saved in the kingdom of God.

9. Yea, and there shall be many which shall teach after this manner, false and vain and foolish doctrine, and shall seek deep to

hide their counsels from the Lord; and their works shall be in the dark.

12. Because of pride, and because of false teachers, and false doctrine, their churches have become corrupted, and their churches are lifted up; because of pride they are puffed up.

13. They rob the poor because of their fine sanctuaries; they rob the poor because of their fine clothing; and they persecute the meek and the poor in heart, because in their pride they are puffed up.

14. They wear stiff necks and high heads; yea, and because of pride, wickedness, and abominations, and whoredoms, they have all gone astray save it be a few,

21. And others will he [the devil] pacify, and lull them away into carnal security, that they will say: All is well in Zion; yea, Zion prospereth, all is well—and thus the devil cheateth their souls and leadeth them away carefully down to hell.

22. And behold, others he flattereth away, and telleth them there is no hell; and he saith unto them: I am no devil, for there is none—and thus he whispereth in their ears, until he grasps them with his awful chains, from whence there is no deliverance.

23. Yea, they are grasped with death, and hell; ---even a lake of fire and brimstone, which is endless torment.

24. Therefore, wo be unto him that is at ease in Zion!

25. Wo be unto him that crieth: All is well!

26. Yea, wo be unto him that hearkeneth unto the precepts of men, and denieth the power of God, and the gift of the Holy Ghost!

27. Yea, wo be unto him that saith: We have received, and we need no more!

28. And in fine, wo unto all those who tremble, and are angry because of the truth of God! For behold, he that is built upon the rock receiveth it with gladness; and he that is built upon a sandy foundation trembleth lest he shall fall. 2N 28-98

23. For the time speedily shall come that all churches which are built up to get gain, and all those who are built up to get power over the flesh, and those who are built up to become popular in the eyes of the world, and those who seek the lusts of the flesh and the things of the world, and to do all manner of iniquity; yea, in fine, all those who belong to the kingdom of the devil are they who need fear, and tremble, and quake; they are those who must be brought low in the dust; they are those who must be consumed as stubble; and this is according to the words of the prophet. 1N 22-48

2. THE "CHURCH" OF THE DEVIL. (*"All ye who are not for me, are against me."* The true church of Christ is the one that follows his teachings in their pure, simple form. Christ prophesied that all churches would become contaminated in the "Last Days." For

the "Church of God," see Chapter XIV, Part I and Part II.)

1. And it came to pass that the angel spake unto me, saying: Look! And I looked and beheld many nations and kingdoms.

2. And the angel said unto me: What beholdest thou? And I said: I behold many nations and kingdoms.

3. And he said unto me: These are the nations and kingdoms of the Gentiles.

4. And it came to pass that I saw among the nations of the Gentiles the foundation of a great church.

5. And the angel said unto me: Behold the foundation of a church which is most abominable above all other churches, which slayeth the saints of God, yea, and tortureth them and bindeth them down, and yoketh them with a yoke of iron, and bringeth them down into captivity.

6. And it came to pass that I beheld this great and abominable church; and I saw the devil that he was the foundation of it.

7. And I also saw gold, and silver, and silks, and scarlets, and fine-twined linen, and all manner of precious clothing; and I saw many harlots.

8. And the angel spake unto me, saying: Behold the gold, and the silver, and the silks, and the scarlets, and the fine-twined linen, and the precious clothing, and the harlots, are the desires of this great and abominable church.

9. And also for the praise of the world do they destroy the saints of God, and bring them down into captivity. 1N 13-22

9. And it came to pass that he said unto me: Look, and behold the great and abominable church, which is the mother of abominations, whose foundation is the devil.

10. And he said unto me: Behold *there are save two churches only; the one is the church of the Lamb of God, and the other is the church of the devil*; wherefore, whoso belongeth not to the church of the Lamb of God belongeth to that great church, which is the mother of abominations; and she is the whore of all the earth.

11. And it came to pass that I looked and beheld the whore of all the earth, and she sat upon many waters; and she had dominion over all the earth, among all the nations, kindreds, tongues, and people.

12. And it came to pass that I beheld the church of the Lamb of God, and its numbers were few, because of the wickedness and abominations of the whore who sat upon many waters;

13. And it came to pass that I beheld that the great mother of abominations did gather together multitudes upon the face of all the earth, among all the nations of the Gentiles, to fight against the Lamb of God.

14. And it came to pass that I, Nephi, beheld the power of the Lamb of God, that it descended upon the saints of the church of

the Lamb, and upon the covenant people of the Lord, who were scattered upon all the face of the earth; and they were armed with righteousness and with the power of God in great glory.

15. And it came to pass that I beheld that the wrath of God was poured out upon the great and abominable church, insomuch that there were wars and rumors of wars among all the nations and kindreds of the earth.

16. And as there began to be wars and rumors of wars among all the nations which belonged to the mother of abominations, the angel spake unto me, saying: Behold, the wrath of God is upon the mother of harlots; and behold, thou seest all these things—

17. And when the day cometh that the wrath of God is poured out upon the mother of harlots, which is the great and abominable church of all the earth, whose foundation is the devil, then, at that day, the work of the Father shall commence, in preparing the way for the fulfilling of his covenants, which he hath made to his people who are of the house of Israel.

1N 14-26

3. And that great pit, which hath been digged for them [the people] by that great and abominable church, which was founded by the devil and his children, that he might lead away the souls of men down to hell—yea, that great pit which hath been digged for the destruction of men shall be filled by those who digged it, unto their utter destruction, saith the Lamb of God; not the destruction of the soul, save it be the casting of it into that hell which hath no end.

1N 14-25

13. And the blood of that great and abominable church, which is the whore of all the earth, shall turn upon their own heads; for they shall war among themselves, and the sword of their own hands shall fall upon their own heads, and they shall be drunken with their own blood.

1N 22-47

3. *SECRET ORGANIZATIONS.* (See Chapter V, Part III, Section VIII. Also see Chapter VI, Part V, Section III.)

22. And there are also secret combinations, even as in times of old, according to the combinations of the devil, for he is the foundation of all these things; yea, the foundation of murder, and works of darkness; yea, and he leadeth them by the neck with a flaxen cord, until he bindeth them with his strong cords forever.

23. For behold, my beloved brethren, I say unto you that the Lord God worketh not in darkness.

2N 26-94

26. ---[These secret oaths and covenants] were put into the heart of Gadianon by that same being who did entice our first parents to partake of the forbidden fruit—

27. Yea, that same being who did plot with Cain, that if he would murder his brother Abel it should not be known unto the

world. And he did plot with Cain and his followers from that time forth.

28. And also it is that same being who put it into the hearts of the people to build a tower sufficiently high that they might get to heaven. And it was that same being who led on the people who came from that tower into this land; who spread the works of darkness and abominations over all the face of the land, until he dragged the people down to an entire destruction, and to an everlasting hell.

29. Yea, it is that same being who put it into the heart of Gadianon to still carry on the work of darkness, and of secret murder; And he has brought it forth from the beginning of man even down to this time.

31. And now behold, he had got great hold upon the hearts of the Nephites; yea, insomuch that they had become exceedingly wicked; yea, the more part of them had turned out of the way of righteousness, and did trample under their feet the commandments of God, and did turn unto their own ways, and did build up unto themselves idols of their gold and their silver. .

H 6-375

30. And behold, it is he who is the author of all sin, and behold, he doth carry on his works of darkness and secret murder, and doth hand down their plots, and their oaths, and their covenants, and their plans of awful wickedness, from generation to generation according as he can get hold upon the hearts of the children of men.

PART II

INIQUITY AND EVIL AMONG MEN

The forces of evil are ever
on the alert to tempt man.

37. O ye workers of iniquity; ye that are puffed up in the vain things of the world, ye that have professed to have known the ways of righteousness nevertheless have gone astray, as sheep having no shepherd, notwithstanding a shepherd hath called after you and is still calling after you, but ye will not hearken unto his voice!

39. And now if ye are not the sheep of the good shepherd, of what fold are ye? Behold, I say unto you, that the devil is your shepherd, and ye are of his fold; and now, who can deny this?

40. For I say unto you that whatsoever is good cometh from God, and whatsoever is evil cometh from the devil. A 5-207

10. And now it shall come to pass, that whosoever shall not take upon him the name of Christ must be called by some other name; therefore, he findeth himself on the left hand of God. Mo 6-146

I. A WARNING AGAINST INIQUITY

1. *THE "NATURAL MAN" IS AN ENEMY OF GOD.*

19. For the natural man is an enemy to God, and has been from the fall of Adam, and will be, forever and ever, unless he yields to the enticings of the Holy Spirit, and putteth off the natural man and becometh a saint through the atonement of Christ the Lord, and becometh as a child, submissive, meek, humble, patient, full of love, willing to submit to all things which the Lord seeth fit to inflict upon him, even as a child doth submit to his father. Mo 3-141

30. But wo unto the rich, who are rich as to the things of the world. For because they are rich they despise the poor, and their hearts are upon their treasures; wherefore, their treasure is their God. And behold, their treasure shall perish with them also.

31. And wo unto the deaf that will not hear; for they shall perish.

32. Wo unto the blind that will not see; for they shall perish also.

33. Wo unto the uncircumcised of heart, for a knowledge of their iniquities shall smite them at the last day.

34. Wo unto the liar, for he shall be thrust down to hell.

35. Wo unto the murderer who deliberately killeth, for he shall die.

36. Wo unto them who commit whoredoms, for they shall be thrust down to hell.

37. Yea, wo unto those that worship idols, for the devil of all devils delighteth in them.

38. And, in fine, wo unto all those who die in their sins; for they shall return to God, and behold his face, and remain in their sins. 2N 9-69

9. Now my son, I [Alma to his son Corianton] would that ye should repent and forsake your sins, and go no more after the lusts of your eyes, but cross yourself in all these things; for except ye do this ye can in nowise inherit the kingdom of God.

11. Suffer not yourself to be led away by any vain or foolish thing; suffer not the devil to lead away your heart again after those wicked harlots. Behold, O my son, how great iniquity ye brought upon the Zoramites; for when they saw your conduct they would not believe in my words.

12. And now the Spirit of the Lord doth say unto me: Command thy children to do good, lest they lead away the hearts of many people to destruction; therefore I command you, my son, in the fear of God, that ye refrain from your iniquities: A 39-294

45. O, my beloved brethren [Jacob, brother of Nephi I, is speaking.], turn away from your sins; shake off the chains of him that would bind you fast; come unto that God who is the rock of your salvation.

48. Behold, if ye were holy I would speak unto you of holiness; but as ye are not holy, and ye look upon me as a teacher, it must needs be expedient that I teach you the consequences of sin 2N 9-70

10. Wherefore, ye shall remember your children, how that ye have grieved their hearts because of the example that ye have set before them; and also, remember that ye may, because of your filthiness, bring your children unto destruction, and their sins be heaped upon your heads at the last day. J 3-112

39. O, my beloved brethren, remember the awfulness in transgressing against the Holy God, and also the awfulness of yielding to the enticings of that cunning one. Remember, to be carnally-minded is death, and to be spiritually-minded is life eternal. 2N 9-69

2. *INIQUITY OF THE PEOPLE OF OLD.* 18. Now they did not sin ignorantly, for they knew the will of God concerning them, for it had been taught unto them; therefore they did wilfully rebel against God. 3N 6-412

19. Now I would that ye should see that they brought upon themselves the curse; and even so doth every man that is cursed bring upon himself his own condemnation. A 3-202

23. And there was nothing save it was exceeding harshness, preaching and prophesying of wars, and contentions, and destructions, and continually reminding them of death, and the duration of eternity, and the judgments and the power of God, and all these things—stirring them up continually to keep them in the fear of the Lord, I say there was nothing short of these things, and exceeding great plainness of speech, would keep them from going speedily to destruction. Es 1-127

30. And thus we can plainly discern, that after a people have been once enlightened by the Spirit of God, and have had great knowledge of things pertaining to righteousness, and then have fallen away into sin and transgression, they become more hardened, and thus their state becomes worse than though they had never known these things. A 24-259

13. And now, ought ye not to tremble and repent of your sins, and remember that only in and through Christ ye can be saved? Mo 16-166

II. PROSPERITY INVITED INIQUITY

(*Men seek after riches and forget God.*) 14. Seek not after riches nor the vain things of this world; for behold, you cannot carry them with you. A 39-294

14. And it came to pass that he placed his heart upon his riches, and he spent his time in riotous living with his wives and his concubines; and so did also his priests spend their time with harlots. Mo 11-156

24. Now when Alma saw this his heart was grieved; for he saw that they were a wicked and a perverse people, yea, he saw that their hearts were set upon gold, and upon silver, and upon all manner of fine goods.

25. Yea, and he also saw that their hearts were lifted up unto great boasting, in their pride. A 31-275

6. And it came to pass in the eighth year of the reign of the judges, that the people of the church began to wax proud, because

of their fine silks, and their fine-twined linen, and because of their many flocks and herds, and their gold and their silver, and all manner of precious things, which they had obtained by their industry; and in all these things were they lifted up in the pride of their eyes, for they began to wear very costly apparel A 4-208

51. And the Spirit saith unto me, yea, crieth unto me with a mighty voice, saying: Go forth and say unto this people—Repent, for except ye repent ye can in nowise inherit the kingdom of heaven.

53. And now my beloved brethren, I say unto you, can ye withstand these sayings; ---yea, will ye still persist in the wearing of costly apparel and setting your hearts upon the vain things of the world, upon your riches? A 5-209

12. And now behold, my brethren, this is the word which I declare unto you, that many of you have begun to search for gold, and for silver, and for all manner of precious ores, in the which this land, which is a land of promise unto you and to your seed, doth abound most plentifully.

13. And the hand of providence hath smiled upon you most pleasingly, that you have obtained many riches; and because some of you have obtained more abundantly than that of your brethren ye are lifted up in the pride of your hearts, and wear stiff necks and high heads because of the costliness of your apparel, and persecute your brethren because ye suppose that ye are better than they. J 2-110

1. And thus we can behold how false, and also the unsteadiness of the hearts of the children of men; yea, we can see that the Lord in his great infinite goodness doth bless and prosper those who put their trust in him.

2. Yea, and we may see at the very time when he doth prosper his people, yea, in the increase of their fields, their flocks and their herds, and in gold, and in silver, and in all manner of precious things of every kind and art; sparing their lives, and delivering them out of the hands of their enemies; softening the hearts of their enemies that they should not declare wars against them; yea, and in fine, doing all things for the welfare and happiness of his people; yea, then is the time that they do harden their hearts, and do forget the Lord their God, and do trample under their feet the Holy One—yea, and this because of their ease, and their exceedingly great prosperity.

3. And thus we see that except the Lord doth chasten his people with many afflictions, yea, except he doth visit them with death and with terror, and with famine and with all manner of pestilence, they will not remember him.

4. O how foolish, and how vain, and how evil, and devilish, and how quick to do iniquity, and how slow to do good, are the

children of men; yea, how quick to hearken unto the words of the evil one, and to set their hearts upon the vain things of the world!

H 12-388

III. SUCCESS INVITED INIQUITY

1. *PRIDE AND BOASTING AFTER SUCCESS IN WAR. (Man is apt to boast of his success and not remember to give the proper credit for his success to God. America, beware!)* 11. See that ye are not lifted up unto pride; yea, see that ye do not boast in your own wisdom, nor of your much strength.

A 38-293

9. And now, because of this great thing which my people, the Nephites, had done, they began to boast in their own strength, and began to swear before the heavens that they would avenge themselves of the blood of their brethren who had been slain by their enemies.

10. And they did swear by the heavens, and also by the throne of God, that they would go up to battle against their enemies, and would cut them off from the face of the land.

Mn 3-464

19. And now, because of this great victory they were lifted up in the pride of their hearts; they did boast in their own strength, saying that their fifty could stand against thousands of the Lamanites; and thus they did boast,

Mo 11-157

13. And because of this their great wickedness, and their boasting in their own strength, they were left in their own strength; therefore they did not prosper, but were afflicted and smitten, and driven before the Lamanites, until they had lost possession of almost all their lands.

H 4-367

7. ---and thus were the affairs of the people of Nephi exceedingly precarious and dangerous, notwithstanding their great victory which they had had over the Lamanites, and their great rejoicing which they had had because of their deliverance by the hand of the Lord.

8. Thus we see how quick the children of men do forget the Lord their God, yea, how quick to do iniquity, and to be led away by the evil one.

A 46-310

5. But behold, the judgments of God will overtake the wicked; and it is by the wicked that the wicked are punished; for it is the wicked that stir up the hearts of the children of men unto bloodshed.

Mn 4-466

14. ---behold the voice of the Lord came unto me saying:

15. Vengeance is mine, and I will repay; and because this people repented not after I had delivered them, behold, they shall be cut off from the face of the earth. Mn 3-463

21. And except they repent and turn to the Lord their God, behold, I will deliver them into the hands of their enemies; yea, and they shall be brought into bondage; and they shall be afflicted by the hand of their enemies. Mo 11-157

2. *PRIDE AND BOASTING OF WORLDLY GOODS.* 5. Yea, how quick to be lifted up in pride; yea, how quick to boast, and do all manner of that which is iniquity; and how slow are they to remember the Lord their God, and to give ear unto his counsels, yea, how slow to walk in wisdom's paths! H 12-388

15. Now the cause of this iniquity of the people was this—Satan had great power, unto the stirring up of the people to do all manner of iniquity, and to the puffing them up with pride, tempting them to seek for power, and authority, and riches, and the vain things of the world. 3N 4-11

36. And I know that ye do walk in the pride of your hearts; and there are none save a few only who do not lift themselves up in the pride of their hearts, unto the wearing of very fine apparel, unto envying, and strifes, and malice, and persecutions, and all manner of iniquities; and your churches, yea, even every one, have become polluted because of the pride of your hearts. Mn 8-475

20. And now, my brethren, I have spoken unto you concerning pride; and those of you which have afflicted your neighbor, and persecuted him because ye were proud in your hearts, of the things which God hath given you, what say ye of it?

21. Do ye not suppose that such things are abominable unto him who created all flesh? And the one being is as precious in his sight as the other. And all flesh is of the dust; and for the selfsame end hath he created them, that they should keep his commandments. J 2-110

3. *THE PRIDE OF THE WORLD.* (*Nephi I had a vision of the world suffering from pride.*) 35. And the multitude of the earth was gathered together; and I beheld that they were in a large and spacious building, ---And the angel of the Lord spake unto me again, saying: Behold the world and the wisdom thereof;

36. And it came to pass that I saw and bear record, that the great and spacious building was the pride of the world; and it fell, and the fall thereof was exceeding great. And the angel of the Lord spake unto me again, saying: Thus shall be the destruction of all nations, kindreds, tongues, and people, that shall fight against the twelve apostles of the Lamb. 1N 11-20

IV. DOGMATISM INVITED INIQUITY

(*See Chapter IX, Part IV.*) 28. O that cunning plan of the evil one! O the vainness, and the frailties, and the foolishness of men! When they are learned they think they are wise, and they hearken not unto the counsel of God, for they set it aside, supposing they know of themselves, wherefore, their wisdom is foolishness and it profiteth them not. And they shall perish. 2N 9-69

19. Behold, He was spoken of by Moses; yea, and behold a type was raised up in the wilderness, that whosoever would look upon it might live. And many did look and live.

20. But few understood the meaning of those things, and this because of the hardness of their hearts. But there were many who were so hardened that they would not look, therefore they perished. Now the reason they would not look is because they did not believe that it would heal them. A 33-280

PART III

PUNISHMENT FOR INIQUITY

I. "HELL"

("Hell" is the self-made torture caused when the soul reviews its own guilt. For more information, see Chapter XIII, Part II, Sections II through VI.) 34. But behold, I say unto you, the kingdom of God is not filthy, and there cannot any unclean thing enter into the kingdom of God; wherefore there must needs be a place of filthiness prepared for that which is filthy.

35. And there is a place prepared, yea, even that awful hell.

1N 15-30

27. For every man receiveth wages of him whom he listeth to obey,

26. ---whether it be a good spirit or a bad one.

A 3-202

11. And they that will harden their hearts, to them is given the lesser portion of the word until they know nothing concerning his mysteries; and then they are taken captive by the devil, and led by his will down to destruction. Now this is what is meant by the chains of hell.

A 12-225

29. ---[Do] not choose eternal death,---which giveth the spirit of the devil power to captivate, to bring you down to hell, that he may reign over you in his kingdom.

3N 2-54

13. ---the spirits of the wicked---have no part nor portion of the Spirit of the Lord; For behold, they chose evil works rather than good; therefore the spirit of the devil did enter into them, and take possession of their house---and these shall be cast out into outer darkness; there shall be weeping, and wailing, and gnashing of teeth, and this because of their own iniquity, being led captive by the will of the devil.

A 40-295

24. And thus saith the Lord: They [the words of the gospel] shall stand as a bright testimony against this people, at the judgment day; whereof they shall be judged, every man according to his works, whether they be good, or whether they be evil.

25. And if they be evil they are consigned to an awful view of their own guilt and abominations, which doth cause them to shrink

from the presence of the Lord into a state of misery and endless torment, from whence they can no more return; therefore they have drunk damnation to their own souls.

27. And their torment is as a lake of fire and brimstone, whose flames are unquenchable, and whose smoke ascendeth up forever and ever. Mo 8-141

4. Behold, I say unto you that ye would be more miserable to dwell with a holy and just God, under a consciousness of your filthiness before him, than ye would to dwell with the damned souls in hell.

5. For behold, when ye shall be brought to see your nakedness before God, and also the glory of God, and the holiness of Jesus Christ, it will kindle a flame of unquenchable fire upon you. Mn 9-475

38. Therefore if that man repenteth not, and remaineth and dieth an enemy to God, the demands of divine justice do awaken his immortal soul to a lively sense of his own guilt, which doth cause him to shrink from the presence of the Lord, and doth fill his breast with guilt, and pain, and anguish, which is like an unquenchable fire, whose flame ascendeth up forever and ever.

40. O, all ye old men, and also ye young men, and you little children who can understand my words, for I have spoken plainly unto you that ye might understand, I pray that ye should awake to a remembrance of the awful situation of those that have fallen into transgression. Mo 2-139

II. EARTHLY PUNISHMENT FOR INIQUITY

(*See Chapter VII, Part II, for punishment by means of "War and Invasion."*) 29. For behold, the Lord hath said: I will not succor my people in the day of their transgression; but I will hedge up their ways that they prosper not; and their doings shall be as a stumbling block before them.

30. And again, he saith: If my people shall sow filthiness they shall reap the chaff thereof in the whirlwind; and the effect thereof is poison.

31. And again he saith: If my people shall sow filthiness they shall reap the east wind, which bringeth immediate destruction. Mo 7-149

15. And they that believe not in him shall be destroyed, both by fire, and by tempest, and by earthquakes, and by bloodsheds, and by pestilence, and by famine. And they shall know that the Lord is God, the Holy One of Israel. 2N 6-68

13. Behold the Lord slayeth the wicked to bring forth his righteous purposes. It is better that one man should perish than that a nation should dwindle and perish in unbelief. 1N 4-7

1. **FEAR AND REMORSE.** (*The reprimands of the conscience cause fear, remorse, and other earthly punishment.*) 3. And so great were their afflictions that every soul had cause to mourn; and they believed that it was the judgments of God sent upon them because of their wickedness and their abominations; therefore they were awakened to a remembrance of their duty. A 4-203

13. But behold this my joy was vain, for their sorrowing was not unto repentance, because of the goodness of God; but it was rather the sorrowing of the damned, because the Lord would not always suffer them to take happiness in sin. Mn 2-462

7. ---and with that awful fear of death which fills the breasts of all the wicked, did they await to receive them [the enemy]. Mn 6-470

2. **PESTILENCE.** (*The snake pestilence of the Jaredites.*) 31. And there came forth poisonous serpents also upon the face of the land, and did poison many people. And it came to pass that their flocks began to flee before the poisonous serpents, towards the land southward, which was called by the Nephites "Zarahemla."

32. And it came to pass that there were many of them which did perish by the way; nevertheless, there were some which fled into the land southward.

33. And it came to pass that the Lord did cause the serpents that they should pursue them no more, but that they should hedge up the way that the people could not pass, that whoso should attempt to pass might fall by the poisonous serpents. E 9-495

19. And it came to pass that Lib also did that which was good in the sight of the Lord. And in the days of Lib the poisonous serpents were destroyed. E 10-497

(*Nephite pestilences.*) 6. And it shall come to pass that I will send forth hail among them, and it shall smite them; and they shall also be smitten with the east wind; and insects shall pester their land also, and devour their grain.

7. And they shall be smitten with a great pestilence—and all this will I do because of their iniquities and abominations. Mo 12-158

3. **FAMINE.** (*Famine among the Jaredites.*) 28. And there came prophets in the land again, crying repentance unto them—that they must prepare the way of the Lord or there should come

a curse upon the face of the land; yea, even there should be a great famine, in which they should be destroyed if they did not repent.

30. And it came to pass that there began to be a great dearth upon the land, and the inhabitants began to be destroyed exceedingly fast because of the dearth, for there was no rain upon the face of the earth.

34. ---Now when the people saw that they must perish they began to repent of their iniquities and cry unto the Lord.

35. And it came to pass that then they had humbled themselves sufficiently before the Lord he did send rain upon the face of the earth; and the people began to revive again, and there began to be fruit in the north countries, and in all the countries round about. And the Lord did show forth his power unto them in preserving them from famine. E 9-495

5. And it came to pass that the brother of Shiblom caused that all the prophets who prophesied of the destruction of the people should be put to death;

6. And there was great calamity in all the land, for they had testified that a great curse should come upon the land, and also upon the people, and that there should be a great destruction among them, such as one as never had been upon the face of the earth, and their bones should become as heaps of earth upon the face of the land except they should repent of their wickedness.

7. And they hearkened not unto the voice of the Lord, because of their wicked combinations; wherefore, there began to be wars and contentions in all the land, and also many famines and pestilences, insomuch that there was a great destruction, such as one as never had been known upon the face of the earth; and all this came to pass in the days of Shiblom.

8. And the people began to repent of their iniquity; and inasmuch as they did the Lord did have mercy on them. E 11-499

(*Famine among the Nephites.*) 4. And it shall come to pass that I will smite this my people with sore afflictions, yea, with famine and with pestilence; and I will cause that they shall howl all the day long. Mo 12-158

6. And it shall come to pass that I will send forth hail among them, and it shall smite them; and they shall also be smitten with the east wind; and insects shall pester their land also, and devour their grain. Mo 12-158

17. Therefore, as they were unfaithful they did not prosper nor progress in their journey, but were driven back, and incurred the displeasure of God upon them; and therefore they were smitten with famine and sore afflictions, to stir them up in remembrance of their duty. Mo 1-135

23. But it is by the prayers of the righteous that ye are spared; now therefore, if ye will cast out the righteous from among you then will not the Lord stay his hand; but in his fierce anger he will come out against you; then ye shall be smitten by famine, and by pestilence, and by the sword; and the time is soon at hand except ye repent.

A 10-220

6. ---ye [Nephi] shall have power over this people, and shall smite the earth with famine, and with pestilence, and destruction, according to the wickedness of this people.

H 10-384

4. O Lord, do not suffer that this people shall be destroyed by the sword; but O Lord, rather let there be a famine in the land, to stir them up in remembrance of the Lord their God, and perhaps they will repent and turn unto thee.

5. And so it was done, according to the words of Nephi. And there was a great famine upon the land, among all the people of Nephi. And thus in the seventy and fourth year the famine did continue, and the work of destruction did cease by the sword but became sore by famine.

6. And this work of destruction did also continue in the seventy and fifth year. For the earth was smitten that it was dry, and did not yield forth grain in the season of grain; and the whole earth was smitten, even among the Lamanites as well as among the Nephites, so that they were smitten that they did perish by thousands in the more wicked parts of the land.

7. And it came to pass that the people saw that they were about to perish by famine, and they began to remember the Lord their God; and they began to remember the words of Nephi [II].

8. And the people began to plead with their chief judges and their leaders, that they would say unto Nephi: Behold, we know that thou art a man of God, and therefore cry unto the Lord our God that he turn away from us this famine, lest all the words which thou hast spoken concerning our destruction be fulfilled.

9. ---And it came to pass that when Nephi saw that the people had repented and did humble themselves in sackcloth, he cried again unto the Lord, saying:

10. O Lord, behold this people repenteth;

12. O Lord, wilt thou turn away thine anger, yea, thy fierce anger, and cause that this famine may cease in this land.

13. O Lord, wilt thou hearken unto me, and cause that it may be done according to my words, and send forth rain upon the face of the earth, that she may bring forth her fruit, and her grain in the season of grain. [And this was done.]

18. And behold, the people did rejoice and glorify God, and the whole face of the land was filled with rejoicing; and they did no more seek to destroy Nephi, but they did esteem him as a great

prophet, and a man of God, having great power and authority given unto him from God. H 11-385

4. FIRE. (*The end of the world by fire. See Chapter XII, Part IV, for "Fire and the Holy Ghost." See Chapter VIII, Part I, Section I, for "Fire for Cooking."*) 15. For behold, saith the prophet, the time cometh speedily that Satan shall have no more power over the hearts of the children of men; 1N 22-47

1. For behold, the day cometh that shall burn as an oven; and all the proud, yea, and all that do wickedly, shall be stubble; and the day that cometh shall burn them up, saith the Lord of Hosts, that it shall leave them neither root nor branch. 3N 25-447

3. And he did expound all things, even from the beginning until the time that he should come in his glory—yea, even all things which should come upon the face of the earth, even until the elements should melt with fervent heat, and the earth should be wrapt together as a scroll, and the heavens and the earth should pass away. [Christ was speaking.] 8N 26-448

9. And at my command the heavens are opened and are shut; and at my word the earth shall shake; and at my command the inhabitants thereof shall pass away, even so as by fire. E 4-486

3. And how blessed are they who have labored diligently in his vineyard; and how cursed are they who shall be cast out into their own place! And the world shall be burned with fire. J 6-122

(*Martyrdom by Fire.*) (*Those who suffered death by fire: Abinadi, the prophet; King Noah, the Nephite; the "seed" of Amulon and others who were priests of King Noah; and certain "believers" who were burned because of their belief.*) 10. ---O God, receive my soul.

20. And now, when Abinadi had said these words, he fell, having suffered death by fire; yea, having been put to death because he would not deny the commandments of God, having sealed the truth of his words by his death. Mo 17-167

7. And it came to pass that those rulers who were the remnant of the children of Amulon caused that they should be put to death, yea, all those that believed in these things. [Believed in God.]

9. And behold they are hunted at this day by the Lamanites. Thus the words of Abinadi were brought to pass, which he said concerning the seed of the priests who caused that he should suffer death by fire.

10. For he said unto them: What ye shall do unto me shall be a type of things to come.

11. And now Abinadi was the first that suffered death by fire because of his belief in God; now this is what he meant, that many should suffer death by fire, according as he had suffered.

12. And he said unto the priests of Noah that their seed should cause many to be put to death, in the like manner as he was, . 25-260

8. And they [the people of Ammonihah] brought their wives and children together, and whosoever believed or had been taught to believe in the word of God they caused that they should be cast into the fire; and they also brought forth their records which contained the holy scriptures, and cast them into the fire also, that they might be burned and destroyed by fire.

10. And when Amulek saw the pains of the women and children who were consuming in the fire, he also was pained; and he said unto Alma: How can we witness this awful scene?--- A 14-281

5. *THE LOSS OF POSSESSIONS. (During the time of the Jaredites their possessions were taken from them because of iniquity.)*

1. And now there began to be a great curse upon all the land because of the iniquity of the people, in which, if a man should lay his tool or his sword upon his shelf, or upon the place whither he would keep it, behold, upon the morrow, he could not find it, so great was the curse upon the land.

2. Wherefore every man did cleave unto that which was his own, with his hands, and would not borrow neither would he lend; and every man kept the hilt of his sword in his right hand, in the defense of his property and his own life and of his wives and children. E 14-505

(*Loss of possessions during the time of the Nephites.*) 18. And behold, if a man hide up a treasure in the earth, and the Lord shall say—Let it be accursed, because of the iniquity of him who hath hid it up—behold, it shall be accursed. H 12-388

17. And behold, a curse shall come upon the land, saith the Lord of Hosts, because of the peoples' sake who are upon the land, yea, because of their wickedness and their abominations.

18. And it shall come to pass, saith the Lord of Hosts, yea, our great and true God, that whoso shall hide up treasures in the earth shall find them again no more, because of the great curse of the land, save he be a righteous man and shall hide it up unto the Lord.

20. And the day shall come that they shall hide up their treasures, because they have set their hearts upon riches; and because they have set their hearts upon their riches, I will hide up their treasures when they shall flee before their enemies; because they will not hide them up unto me, cursed be they and also their treasures; H 13-391

21. Behold ye, the people of this great city, and hearken unto my words; yea, hearken unto the words which the Lord saith; for behold, he saith that ye are cursed because of your riches, and also are your riches cursed because ye have set your hearts upon them, and have not hearkened unto the words of him who gave them unto you.

31. And behold, the time cometh that he curseth your riches, that they become slippery, that ye cannot hold them; and in the days of your poverty ye cannot retain them.

34. Behold, we lay a tool here and on the morrow it is gone; and behold, our swords are taken from us in the day we have sought them for battle. [The Lord curses the Land.] H 18-891

18. And these Gadianton robbers, who were among the Lamanites, did infest the land, insomuch that the inhabitants thereof began to hide up their treasures in the earth; and they became slippery, because the Lord had cursed the land, that they could not hold them, nor retain them again. Mn 1-461

PART IV

WICKEDNESS AND CONTENTION AMONG THE NEPHITES

I. CONTENTION IS INIQUITY

29. For verily, verily I [Christ] say unto you, he that hath the spirit of contention is not of me, but is of the devil, who is the father of contention, and he stirreth up the hearts of men to contend with anger, one with another.

30. Behold, this is not my doctrine, to stir up the hearts of men with anger, one against another; but this is my doctrine, that such things should be done away.

28. ---[Therefore] there shall be no disputations among you,
3N 12-422

II. CONTENTION IN JERUSALEM

(Contention and iniquity in Jerusalem caused the destruction of Jerusalem.) (Lehi and his party, after leaving Jerusalem, had contentions among themselves.) 44. Wherefore [because of contentions in Jerusalem], the Lord commanded my father that he should depart into the wilderness; and the Jews also sought to take away his life; yea, and ye [oldest sons of Lehi] also have sought to take away his life; wherefore, ye are murderers in your hearts and ye are like unto them.
1N 17-37

III. CONTENTION ON THE WESTERN HEMISPHERE

(The Nephites, descendants of Lehi, were involved in many contentions within their ranks. See Chapter IV, Parts II and IV. See Chapter V, Part III. See Chapter VI, Part IV, Parts II and III. See Chapter VII, Part II.) 1. And now it came to pass [in Zarahemla] that the persecutions which were inflicted on the church by the unbelievers became so great that the church began to murmur, and complain to their leaders concerning the matter; and they did complain to Alma. And Alma laid the case before their king, Mosiah. And Mosiah consulted with his priests.

2. And it came to pass that king Mosiah sent a proclamation throughout the land round about that there should not any unbeliever persecute any of those who belonged to the church of God.

Mo 27-186

21. Now there was a strict law among the people of the church, that there should not any man, belonging to the church, arise and persecute those that did not belong to the church, and that there should be no persecutions among themselves.

A 1-196

32. ---those who did not belong to their church did indulge themselves in sorceries, and in idolatry or idleness, and in babblings, and in envyings and strife; wearing costly apparel; being lifted up in the pride of their own eyes; lying, thieving, robbing, committing whoredoms, and murdering, and all manner of wickedness;

A 1-197

6. ---[and also] the people of the church began to wax proud,---

8. ---they began to be scornful, one towards another, and they began to persecute those that did not believe according to their own will and pleasure.

9. And thus---there began to be great contentions among the people of the church; yea, there were envyings, and strife, and malice, and persecutions, and pride, even to exceed the pride of those who did not belong to the church of God.

A 4-203

24. Now when Alma saw this his heart was grieved; for he saw that they were a wicked and a perverse people;

25. Yea, and he also saw that their hearts were lifted up unto great boasting, in their pride. [And Alma cried unto God:]

27. Behold, O God, they cry unto thee, and yet their hearts are swallowed up in their pride.

28. Behold, O my God, their costly apparel, ---and all their precious things which they are ornamented with;

A 31-275

24. But they [the people] grew proud, being lifted up in their hearts, because of their exceeding great riches; therefore they grew rich in their own eyes, and would not give heed to---[the word] to walk uprightly before God.

A 46-309

IV. SKEPTICS AN RELIGIOUS DISSENTERS

(See Chapter V, Part III.) 26. ---who can stand against the works of the Lord? Who can deny his sayings? Who will rise up against the almighty power of the Lord? Who will despise the works of the Lord? Who will despise the children of Christ? Behold, all ye who are despisers of the works of the Lord, for ye shall wonder and perish.

27. O then despise not, and wonder not, but hearken unto the words of the Lord, and ask the Father in the name of Jesus for what things soever ye shall stand in need. Doubt not, but be believing, and begin as in times of old, and come unto the Lord with all your hearts, and work out your own salvation with fear and trembling before him.

Mn 9-477

(*Nephine Dissenters.*) 36. Now these dissenters, having the same instruction and the same information of the Nephites, yea, having been instructed in the same knowledge of the Lord, nevertheless, it is strange to relate, not long after their dissensions they became more hardened and impenitent, and more wild, wicked and ferocious than the Lamanites—drinking in with the traditions of the Lamanites; giving way to indolence, and all manner of lasciviousness; yea, entirely forgetting the Lord their God.

A 47-315

16. ---there were many who loved the vain things of the world, and they went forth preaching false doctrines; and this they did for the sake of riches and honor.

A 1-196

(*Advice to all Dissenters.*) 6. And whatsoever thing is good is just and true; wherefore, nothing that is good denieth the Christ, but acknowledgeth that he is.

M 10-520

1. *SHEREM, THE DISSENTER.* 1. And it came to pass---there came a man among the people of Nephi, whose name was Sherem.

2. And it came to pass that he began to preach among the people, and to declare unto them that there should be no Christ. And he preached many things which were flattering unto the people;

4. And he was learned, that he had a perfect knowledge of the language of the people; wherefore, he could use much flattery, ---

13. And it came to pass that he said unto me [Jacob]: Show me a sign by this power of the Holy Ghost, in the which ye know so much.

15. ---[and] the power of the Lord came upon him, insomuch that he fell to the earth.

17. And it came to pass that on the morrow the multitude were gathered together; and he spake plainly unto them and denied the things which he had taught them, and confessed the Christ, ---

20. And it came to pass that when he had said these words he could say no more, and he gave up the ghost.

J 7-123

2. *ALMA, THE DISSENTER.* (*Alma II, and the sons of Mosiah dissented from the church when they were in their youth. Later, they all repented and became great teachers.*) 8. Now the sons

of Mosiah were numbered among the unbelievers; and also one of the sons of Alma was numbered among them, he being called Alma, after his father; nevertheless, he became a very wicked and an idolatrous man. And he was a man of many words and did speak much flattery to the people; therefore he led many of the people to do after the manner of his iniquities.

10. And now it came to pass that while he was going about to destroy the church of God, for he did go about secretly with the sons of Mosiah seeking to destroy the church, and to lead astray the people of the Lord, contrary to the commandments of God, or even the king—

11. And as I said unto you, as they were going about rebelling against God, behold, the angel of the Lord appeared unto them; and he descended as it were in a cloud; and he spake as it were with a voice of thunder, which caused the earth to shake upon which they stood;

12. And so great was their astonishment, that they fell to the earth, and understood not the words which he spake unto them.

13. Nevertheless he cried again, saying: Alma, arise and stand forth, for why persecutest thou the church of God? For the Lord hath said: This is my church, and I will establish it; and nothing shall overthrow it, save it is the transgression of my people.

16. ---And now I say unto thee, Alma, go thy way, and seek to destroy the church no more, ---

17. And now it came to pass that these were the last words which the angel spake unto Alma, and he departed.

18. And now Alma and those that were with him fell again to the earth, for great was their astonishment;

19. And now the astonishment of Alma was so great that he became dumb, that he could not open his mouth; yea, and he became weak, even that he could not move his hands; therefore he was taken by those that were with him, and carried helpless, even until he was laid before his father.

20. And they rehearsed unto his father all that had happened unto them; and his father rejoiced, for he knew that it was the power of God.

21. And he caused that a multitude should be gathered together that they might witness what the Lord had done for his son, and also for those that were with him.

22. And he caused that the priests should assemble themselves together; and they began to fast, and to pray to the Lord their God that he would open the mouth of Alma, that he might speak---

23. And it came to pass after they had fasted and prayed for the space of two days and two nights, the limbs of Alma received their strength, and he stood up and began to speak unto them, bidding them to be of good comfort.

32. ---and those who were with Alma at the time the angel appeared unto them---[and] Alma began from this time forward to teach the people,

Mo 27-187

3. *AMLICI, THE DISSENTER.* 2. Now this Amlici had, by his cunning, drawn away much people after him; even so much that they began to be very powerful; and they began to endeavor to establish Amlici to be a king over the people.

3. Now this was alarming to the people of the church,

4. ---for it was his intent to destroy the church of God.

31. Now---Alma---slew Amlici [in battle] with the sword.

A 2-198

4. *ZEEZROM, THE DISSENTER.* 21. ---Now Zeezrom was a man who was expert in the devices of the devil, that he might destroy that which was good;

22. ---And Zeezrom said unto him [Amulek]: Behold, here are six onties of silver, and all these will I give thee if thou wilt deny the existence of a Supreme Being.

25. And now [Amulek is speaking to Zeezrom] thou hast lied before God unto me. Thou saidst unto me—Behold these six onties, which are of great worth, I will give unto thee—when thou hadst it in thy heart to retain them from me;---and it was thy desire---to destroy me. And now behold, for this great evil thou shalt have thy reward.

A 11-222

3. [Later when] Zeezrom lay sick at Sidom, with a burning fever, which was caused by the great tribulations of his mind on account of his wickedness,

12. ---Alma baptized Zeezrom unto the Lord: and he began from that time forth to preach unto the people. [See Chapter XV, Part III, Miracle IV.]

A 15-238

5. *KORIHOR, THE DISSENTER.* 6. ---there came a man into the land of Zarahemla, and he was Anti-Christ, for he began to preach unto the people against the prophecies which had been spoken by the prophets, concerning the coming of Christ.

12. ---[And his] name was Korihor, ---And after this manner did he preach, saying:

13. O ye that are bound down under a foolish and vain hope, why do ye yoke yourselves with such foolish things? Why do ye look for a Christ? For no man can know of anything which is to come.

18. And thus he did preach unto them, leading away the hearts of many, causing them to lift up their heads in their wickedness.

A 30-269

22. And it came to pass that the high priest said unto him: Why do ye go about perverting the ways of the Lord?

23. ---And Korihor said unto him: Because I do not teach the foolish traditions of your fathers, and because I do not teach this people to bind themselves down under the foolish ordinances and performances which are laid down by ancient priests,

27. And thus ye lead away this people after the foolish traditions of your fathers, and according to your own desires; and ye keep them down, even as it were in bondage, A 30-270

58. ---[And Korihor was cast out] And Korihor did go about from house to house, begging for food for his support.

59. ---and as he went forth---behold, he was run upon and trodden down, even until he was dead. A 30-273

6. *ZORAM, THE DISSENTER.* 1. ---after the end of Korihor, Alma having received tidings that the Zoramites were perverting the ways of the Lord, and that Zoram, who was their leader, was leading the hearts of the people to bow down to dumb idols, his heart again began to sicken because of the iniquity of the people. A 31-273

59. And it came to pass that [here was]---a people who had separated themselves from the Nephites and called themselves Zoramites, being led by a man whose name was Zoram— A 30-273

10. ---and they [the Zoramites] began to mix with the Lamanites and to stir them up also to anger against them [people of Ammon and the Nephites]. [See Chapter V, "Zoramites."] A 35-285

7. *AMALICKIAH, THE DISSENTER.* 3. Now the leader of those who were wroth against their brethren was a large and a strong man; and his name was Amalickiah.

5. And they [the judges] had been led by the flatteries of Amalickiah, that if they would support him and establish him to be their king that he would make them rulers over the people.

9. Yea, and we also see the great wickedness one wicked man may cause to take place among the children of men.

10. Yea, we see that Amalickiah, because he was a man of cunning device and a man of many flattering words, that he led away the hearts of many people

33. And it came to pass that Amalickiah fled with a small number of his men [to the Lamanites], [See Chapter V, Part III, the "people of Amalickiah."] A 46-309

8. *PACHUS, THE DISSENTER.* 8. Now, those who were in favor of kings were those of high birth, and they sought to be kings;

16. For it was his [Moroni I] first care to put an end to such contentions and dissensions among the people;

17. And it came to pass that Moroni commanded that his army should go against those kingmen, A 51-325

6. ---and uniting his [Moroni's] forces with those of Pahoran they became exceeding strong, even stronger than the men of Pachus, who was the king of those dissenters—

8. And behold, Pachus was slain and his men were taken prisoners, A 62-354

9. *PAANCHI, THE DISSENTER.* 7. But behold, Paanchi, and that part of the people that were desirous that he should be their governor, was exceeding wroth; therefore, he was about to flatter away those people to rise up in rebellion against their brethren.

8. And it came to pass as he was about to do this, behold, he was taken, and was tried according to the voice of the people, and condemned unto death; for he had raised up in rebellion and sought to destroy the liberty of the people. H 1-360

10. *KISHKUMEN, GADIANTON, AND VARIOUS OTHER DISSENTERS.* (*For an account of Kishkumen and Gadianton, see Chapter V, Part III, "Gadianton Robbers."*)

11. *NEHOR, THE DISSENTER.* (*The strongest opposing religion to that of the Nephites was the religion of "Nehors."*)

2. And it came to pass that in the first year of the reign of Alma in the judgment seat, there was a man brought before him to be judged, a man who was large, and was noted for his much strength.

15. ---and his name was Nehor;

3. And he had gone about among the people, preaching to them that which he termed to be the word of God, bearing down against the church;

4. And he also testified unto the people that all mankind should be saved at the last day, ---and in the end all men should have eternal life.

5. ---many did believe on his words, even so many that they began to support him and give him money.

6. And he began to be lifted up in the pride of his heart, and to wear very costly apparel, yea, and even began to establish a church after the manner of his preaching.

7. And it came to pass as he was going, to preach to those who believed on his word, he met a man who belonged to the church of God,

8. Now the name of the man was Gideon [who belonged to the church of God].

9. Now, because Gideon withstood him with words of God he was wroth with Gideon, and drew his sword and began to smite him. Now Gideon---was slain by the sword.

10. And the man who slew him was taken by the people of the church,

11. And it came to pass that he stood before Alma and pleaded for himself with much boldness.

12. But Alma said unto him: Behold, this is the first time that priestcraft has been introduced among this people. And behold thou art not only guilty of priestcraft, but hast endeavored to enforce it by the sword; and were priestcraft to be enforced among this people it would prove their entire destruction.

13. And thou hast shed the blood of a righteous man, ---and were we to spare thee, his blood would come upon us for vengeance.

15. ---and they carried him unto the top of the hill Manti, ---and there he suffered an ignominious death. A 1-195

(*The followers of "Nehors."*) 16. Nevertheless, this [the death of Nehor] did not put an end to the spreading of priestcraft through the land; for there were many who loved the vain things of the world, and they went forth preaching false doctrines; and this they did for the sake of riches and honor. A 1-195

15. ---and they repented not of their sins, ---for they were of the profession of Nehor and did not believe in the repentance of their sins. A 15-234

(*An account of Alma and the "Nehors."*) 11. Behold, we know that thou art Alma; and we know that thou art high priest over the church which thou hast established in many parts of the land, according to your tradition; and we are not of thy church, and we do not believe in such foolish traditions. A 8-214

18. And when they [Alma and Amulek] had been cast into prison three days, there came many lawyers, and judges, and priests, and teachers, who were of the profession of Nehor; A 14-232

(*The destruction of Ammonihah, the people of which were of the order of "Nehors."*) 11. Nevertheless, after many days their dead bodies were heaped up upon the face of the earth, and they were covered with a shallow covering. And now so great was the scent thereof that the people did not go in to possess the land of

Ammonihah for many years. And it was called Desolation of Nehors; for they were of the profession of Nehor, who were slain; and their lands remained desolate.

A 16-236

(*The religion of Nehor in the land of Nephi.*) 4. And it came to pass that Aaron came to the city of Jerusalem, and first began to preach to the Amalekites. And he began to preach to them in their synagogues, for they had built synagogues after the order of the Nehors; for many of the Amalekites and the Amulonites were after the order of Nehor.

A 21-249

29. Now, among those [Lamanites] who joined the people of the Lord, there were none who were Amalekites or Amulonites, or who were of the order of Nehor, but they were actual descendants of Laman and Lemuel.

A 24-259

12. *NEPHITE DISSENTERS.* (*Just prior to Christ's appearance on the Western Hemisphere, there were many dissenters.*) 13. But it came to pass in the ninetieth year of the reign of the judges, there were great signs given unto the people, and wonders; and the words of the prophets began to be fulfilled [concerning the birth of Christ].

16. [But the people complained:] Some things they may have guessed right, among so many; but behold, we know that all these great and marvelous works cannot come to pass, of which has been spoken. [The people reviled against the prophets.]

17. And they [the people] began to reason and to contend among themselves, saying:

21. ---they [the religious priests and other leaders] will, by the cunning and the mysterious arts of the evil one, work some great mystery which we cannot understand, which will keep us down to be servants to their words,

H 16-398

6. And they began to rejoice over their brethren, saying: Behold the time is past, and the words of Samuel are not fulfilled;

3N 1-399

1. And it came to pass that thus passed away the ninety and fifth year also, and the people began to forget those signs [of the birth of Christ] and wonders which they had heard, and began to be less and less astonished at a sign or a wonder from heaven, inso-much that they began to be hard in their hearts, and blind in their minds, and began to disbelieve all which they had heard and seen—

3N 2-401

13. *MANY DISSENTERS AMONG THE NEPHITES JUST PRIOR TO THEIR ANNIHILATION.* 45. And it came to pass that when three hundred years had passed away, both the people of Nephi and the Lamanites had become exceeding wicked one like unto another. [300 A.D.]

4N 1-459

V. THE "FALL" OF THE NEPHITES BECAUSE OF INIQUITY

*(The Nephites are annihilated. See Chapter VII, Part II.)
(For more details of Nephite iniquity, see Chapter IV, Part IV,
Section IV, Unit 2.)* 24. And now, in this two hundred and
first year there began to be among them those who were lifted up
in pride,

25. And from that time forth they did have their goods and
their substance no more common among them.

26. And they began to be divided into classes; and they began
to build up churches unto themselves to get gain, and began to
deny the true church of Christ. 4N 1-458

19. And it came to pass that there were sorceries, and witch-
crafts, and magics; and the power of the evil one was wrought
upon all the face of the land, Mn 1-461

10. And it came to pass that the Nephites began to repent of
their iniquity, and began to cry even as had been prophesied by
Samuel the prophet; for behold no man could keep that which
was his own, for the thieves, ---and the magic art, and the witch-
craft which was in the land.

14. And they did not come unto Jesus with broken hearts and
contrite spirits, but they did curse God, and wish to die.

15. ---and I [Mormon] saw that the day of grace was passed
with them, both temporally and spiritually; Mn 2-462

11. And it is impossible for the tongue to describe, or for man
to write a perfect description of the horrible scene of the blood
and carnage which was among the people, both of the Nephites and
of the Lamanites; and every heart was hardened, so that they
delighted in the shedding of blood continually.

12. And there never had been so great wickedness among all
the children of Lehi, nor even among all the house of Israel, ac-
cording to the words of the Lord, as was among this people. Mn 4-466

9. And now, behold, I [Moroni] say no more concerning them, Mn 8-472



CHAPTER XVII

*THE HOUSE OF ISRAEL

"10. And God said unto him, Thy name is Jacob: thy name shall not be called any more Jacob, but Israel shall be thy name: and he called his name Israel."

Genesis 36

The children of Israel (the twelve tribes, descendants of Jacob) are of the covenant-people of the Lord. Through them, the gospel and the Great Atonement have been made possible to the world. The promises of the Lord are with them; and, though they may be scattered and scourged because of their iniquity, in the end they are to be gathered together again from the four parts of the earth to the lands of their inheritance. And this shall be when they are truly repentant, according to the promises of the Lord. Then shall they be prospered.

The Nephites, Lamanites, and Mulekites (important groups of ancient people on the Western Hemisphere) claimed heritage from Israel. The promises given to the house of Israel by the Lord were accepted by them as part of their heritage. Their religious background which was influenced by the teachings on the Brass Plates (the ancient records of Israel which were brought to the Western Hemisphere from Jerusalem by Lehi about 600 years before Christ) made plain to these people—the commandments of the Lord, his promises to the house of Israel, and the great message of Jesus Christ. Besides the Brass Plates which identified the Nephites, Lamanites, and Mulekites with the seed of Jacob, the ancient prophets and teachers of the Western Hemisphere were advised, through revelation, that their people were of the house of Israel. But still more important, Christ said, during his visit to them, "25. And behold, ye are the children of the prophets; and ye are of the house of Israel; and ye are of the covenant which the Father made with your Fathers, saying unto Abraham: And in thy seed shall all the kindreds of the earth be blessed."

3N 20-440

*For key to reference symbols, see page 2.

PART I

THE HOUSE OF ISRAEL AND THE JEWS

7. But behold, thus saith the Lord God: When the day cometh that they shall believe in me, that I am Christ, then have I covenanted with their fathers that they shall be restored in the flesh, upon the earth, unto the lands of their inheritance.

8. And it shall come to pass that they shall be gathered in from their long dispersion, from the isles of the sea, and from the four parts of the earth; and the nations of the Gentiles shall be great in the eyes of me, saith God, in carrying them forth to the lands of their inheritance. 2N 10-71

16. Wherefore, he that fighteth against Zion, both Jew and Gentile, both bond and free, both male and female, shall perish; for they are they who are the whore of all the earth; for they who are not for me are against me saith our God. 2N 11-72

I. A "BRANCH" OF ISRAEL IN JERUSALEM

1. *CHRIST APPEARED TO THE JEWS AND WAS CRUCIFIED.* 8. And now I, Jacob [brother of Nephi], would speak somewhat concerning these words. For behold, the Lord has shown me that those who were at Jerusalem, from whence we came, have been slain and carried away captive [to Babylon].

9. Nevertheless, the Lord has shown unto me that they should return again. And he also has shown unto me that the Lord God, the Holy One of Israel, should manifest himself unto them in the flesh; and after he should manifest himself they should scourge him and crucify him, according to the words of the angel who spake it unto me. 2N 6-63

11. ---[and Lehi] spake unto my brethren concerning the Gospel which should be preached among the Jews, and also concerning the dwindling of the Jews in unbelief. 1N 10-16

14. But behold, the Jews were a stiffnecked people; and they despised the words of plainness, and killed the prophets, and sought for things that they could not understand. Wherefore, because of their blindness, which blindness came by looking beyond the mark, they must needs fall; for God hath taken away his plainness from

them, and delivered unto them many things which they cannot understand, because they desired it. And because they desired it God hath done it, that they may stumble. 4-114

3. Wherefore, as I said unto you, it must needs be expedient that Christ—for in the last night the angel spake unto me that this should be his name—should come among the Jews, among those who are the more wicked part of the world; and they shall crucify him—for thus it behooves our God, and there is none other nation on earth that would crucify their God.

4. For should the mighty miracles be wrought among other nations they would repent, and know that he be their God.

5. But because of priestcrafts and iniquities, they at Jerusalem will stiffen their necks against him, that he be crucified. 2N 10-71

2. *THE SCATTERING OF THE JEWS.* 13. And as for those who are at Jerusalem, saith the prophet, they shall be scourged by all people, because they crucify the God of Israel, and turn their hearts aside, rejecting signs and wonders, and the power and glory of the God of Israel.

14. And because they turn their hearts aside, saith the prophet, and have despised the Holy One of Israel, they shall wander in the flesh, and perish, and become a hiss and a by-word, and be hated among all nations. 1N 19-42

6. Wherefore, because of their iniquities, destructions, famines, pestilences, and bloodshed shall come upon them; and they who shall not be destroyed shall be scattered among all nations. 2N 10-71

3. *THE JEWS WHO ACCEPT CHRIST WILL BE RESTORED TO JERUSALEM.* 11. ---the Lord will be merciful unto them,

that when they shall come to the knowledge of their Redeemer, they shall be gathered together again to the lands of their inheritance. 2N 6-63

16. ---[For] after they have been scattered, and the Lord God hath scourged them by other nations for the space of many generations, yea, even down from generation to generation until they shall be persuaded to believe in Christ, the Son of God, and the atonement, which is infinite for all mankind—and when that day shall come that they shall believe in Christ, and worship the Father in his name, with pure hearts and clean hands, and look not forward any more for another Messiah, then, at that time, the day will come that it must needs be expedient that they should believe these things. 2N 25-91

2. ---[Christ has spoken to all Israel and] to the Jews, by the mouth of his holy prophets, even from the beginning down,

from generation to generation, until the time comes that they shall be restored to the true church and fold of God; when they shall be gathered home to the lands of their inheritance, and shall be established in all their lands of promise. 2N 9-66

17. And the Lord will set his hand again the second time to restore his people from their lost and fallen state. Wherefore, he will proceed to do a marvelous work and a wonder among the children of men.

18. Wherefore, he shall bring forth his words unto them which words shall judge them at the last day, for they shall be given them for the purpose of convincing them of the true Messiah, who was rejected by them; and unto the convincing of them that they need not look forward any more for a Messiah to come, for there should not any come, save it should be a false Messiah which should deceive the people; for there is save one Messiah spoken of by the prophets, and that Messiah is he who should be rejected of the Jews. 2N 25-91

14. And behold, they [the words of the Lord] shall go unto the unbelieving of the Jews; and for this intent shall they go—that they may be persuaded that Jesus is the Christ, the Son of the living God; that the Father may bring about, through his most Beloved, his great and eternal purpose, in restoring the Jews, or all the house of Israel, to the land of their inheritance, which the Lord their God hath given them, unto the fulfilling of his covenant; Mn 5-468

2. And the day that he shall set his hand again the second time to recover his people, is the day, yea, even the last time, that the servants of the Lord shall go forth in his power, to nourish and prune his vineyard; and after that the end soon cometh. J 6-122

II. A "BRANCH" OF ISRAEL ON THE WESTERN HEMISPHERE

1. *AN ANCIENT PROPHET SPEAKS DIRECTLY TO THE REMNANTS OF THAT "BRANCH."* (*The descendants of the Nephites and Lamanites who are now in existence among the American Indians.*) 3. Behold, I [Moroni] would exhort you that when ye [the remnants of Israel on the Western Hemisphere] shall read these things, if it be wisdom in God that ye should read them, that ye would remember how merciful the Lord hath been unto the children of men, from the creation of Adam even down until the time that ye shall receive these things, and ponder it in your hearts.

4. And when ye shall receive these things, I would exhort you that ye would ask God, the Eternal Father, in the name of Christ,

if these things are not true; and if ye shall ask with a sincere heart, with real intent, having faith in Christ, he will manifest the truth of it unto you, by the power of the Holy Ghost.

5. And by the power of the Holy Ghost ye may know the truth of all things. M 10-520

27. And I exhort you to remember these things; for the time speedily cometh that ye shall know that I lie not, for ye shall see me at the bar of God; and the Lord God will say unto you: Did I not declare my words unto you, which were written by this man, like as one crying from the dead, yea, even as one speaking out of the dust?

28. I declare these things unto the fulfilling of the prophecies.

29. And God shall show unto you, that that which I have written is true. M 10-521

2. THE SOURCE OF THE "BRANCH" OF ISRAEL ON THE WESTERN HEMISPHERE. (*These people came out from Jerusalem, about 600 B.C. See Chapter X, Part I, Section V.*)

25. And behold, ye are the children of the prophets; and ye are of the house of Israel; and ye are of the covenant which the Father made with your fathers, saying unto Abraham: And in thy seed shall all the kindreds of the earth be blessed. 3N 20-440

4. For behold, [Lehi is speaking] thou art the fruit of my loins; and I am a descendant of Joseph who was carried captive into Egypt. And great were the covenants of the Lord which he made unto Joseph.

5. Wherefore, Joseph truly saw our day, And he obtained a promise of the Lord, that out of the fruit of his loins the Lord God would raise up a righteous branch unto the house of Israel; ---a branch which was to be broken off, nevertheless, to be remembered in the covenants of the Lord that the Messiah should be made manifest unto them in the latter days, in the spirit of power, unto the bringing of them out of darkness unto light---yea, out of hidden darkness and out of captivity unto freedom. 2N 3-55

27. And now who knoweth but what the remnant of the seed of Joseph, which shall perish as his garment, are those who have dissented from us? Yea, and even it shall be ourselves if we do not stand fast in the faith of Christ. A 46-811

20. ---I have reason to bless my God and my Savior Jesus Christ, that he brought our fathers out of the land of Jerusalem.

21. Surely he hath blessed the house of Jacob, and hath been merciful unto the seed of Joseph. 3N 5-410

3. *THE "BRANCH" WAS PLANTED IN THE WESTERN HEMISPHERE.* 13. And behold, this is the land of your inheritance; and the Father hath given it unto you.

14. And not at any time hath the Father given me commandment that I should tell it unto your brethren at Jerusalem.

16. This much did the Father command me, that I should tell unto them:

17. That other sheep I have which are not of this fold; them also I must bring, and they shall hear my voice; and there shall be one fold, and one shepherd.

18. And now, because of stiffneckedness and unbelief they [those at Jerusalem] understood not my word; therefore I was commanded to say no more of the Father concerning this thing unto them.

3N 15-429

19. But, verily, I say unto you that the Father hath commanded me, and I tell it unto you, that ye were separated from among them [those at Jerusalem] because of their iniquity; therefore it is because of their iniquity that they know not of you.

20. And verily, I say unto you again that the other tribes hath the Father separated from them; and it is because of their iniquity that they know not of them.

21. And verily I say unto you, that ye are they of whom I said: Other sheep I have which are not of this fold; them also I must bring, and they shall hear my voice; and there shall be one fold, and one shepherd.

22. And they understood me not, for they supposed it had been the Gentiles; for they understood not that the Gentiles should be converted through their preaching.

23. And they understood me not that I said they shall hear my voice; and they understood me not that the Gentiles should not at any time hear my voice—that I should not manifest myself unto them save it were by the Holy Ghost.

24. But behold, ye have both heard my voice, and seen me; and ye are my sheep, and ye are numbered among those whom the Father hath given me.

3N 15-430

53. And behold how great the covenants of the Lord, and how great his condescensions unto the children of men; and because of his greatness, and his grace and mercy, he has promised unto us that our seed shall not utterly be destroyed, according to the flesh, but that he would preserve them; and in future generations they shall become a righteous branch unto the house of Israel.

2N 10-71

4. CHRIST APPEARED TO THE "BRANCH" ON THE WESTERN HEMISPHERE. (See Chapter XII, Part III.)

35. ---So great faith [as you have] have I never seen among all the Jews; wherefore I could not show unto them so great miracles, because of their unbelief. [Christ was speaking to the Nephites.]

3N 19-439

16. [For] I came unto my own, and my own received me not. And the scriptures concerning my coming are fulfilled.

3N 9-418

36. Verily I say unto you [Christ was speaking to the Nephites in the Promised Land], there are none of them [at Jerusalem] that have seen so great things as ye have seen; neither have they heard so great things as ye have heard.

3N 19-439

5. THE SCATTERING AND RESTORATION OF THE "BRANCH" ON THE WESTERN HEMISPHERE. (See Chapter IV, Part V, Section VI. See this chapter, Parts II, III, and IV.) (The Gentiles shall scatter the "Branch" and shall assist in its restoration. Many of the prophecies of Isaiah were directed to the Western Hemisphere.)

8. ---they [the Gentiles] have come forth upon the face of this land, and have scattered my people who are of the house of Israel; and my people who are of the house of Israel have been cast out from among them, and have been trodden under feet by them;

9. And [this] because of the mercies of the Father unto the Gentiles and also the judgments of the Father upon my people who are of the house of Israel,

3N 16-431

7. ---[and] the time cometh that after all the house of Israel have been scattered and confounded, that the Lord God will raise up a mighty nation among the Gentiles, yea, even upon the face of this land; and by them shall our seed be scattered.

1N 22-47

11. Yea, he [the Lord] will bring other nations unto them [the "Branch"—the Lamanites], ---and he will take away from them [the Lamanites] the lands of their possessions, and he will cause them to be scattered and smitten.

12. Yea, as one generation passeth to another there shall be bloodsheds, and great visitations among them;

2N 1-51

14. ---after the Gentiles had received the fulness of the Gospel, the natural branches of the olive-tree, or the remnants of the house of Israel, should be grafted in, or come to the knowledge of the true Messiah, their Lord and their Redeemer.

1N 10-17

22. And it is by faith that my fathers have obtained the promise that these things should come unto their brethren through the Gentiles; [See 3N 16-430 verse 4.]

E 12-501

22. Thus saith the Lord God: Behold, I will lift up mine hand to the Gentiles, and set up my standard to the people; and they shall bring thy sons in their arms, and thy daughters shall be carried upon their shoulders.

1N 21-46

8. And after our seed is scattered the Lord God will proceed to do a marvelous work among the Gentiles, which shall be of great worth unto our seed; wherefore, it is likened unto their being nourished by the Gentiles and being carried in their arms and upon their shoulders.

9. And it shall also be of worth unto the Gentiles; and not only unto the Gentiles but unto all the house of Israel, unto the making known of the covenants of the Father of heaven unto Abraham, saying: In thy seed shall all the kindreds of the earth be blessed.

1N 22-47

19. Wherefore, I will consecrate this land unto thy seed, and them who shall be numbered among thy seed, forever, for the land of their inheritance; for it [the Western Hemisphere] is a choice land, saith God unto me, above all other lands, wherefore I will have all men that dwell thereon that they shall worship me, saith God.

2N 10-72

22. And--- this people [Israel] will I establish in this land, unto the fulfilling of the covenant which I made with your father Jacob; and it shall be a New Jerusalem. And the powers of heaven shall be in the midst of this people; yea, even I will be in the midst of you.

3N 20-440

6. And that a New Jerusalem should be built up upon this land, unto the remnant of the seed of Joseph, for which things there has been a type.

7. For as Joseph brought his father down into the land of Egypt, ---wherefore, the Lord brought a remnant of the seed of Joseph out of the land of Jerusalem, that he might be merciful unto the seed of Joseph that they should perish not, even as he was merciful unto the father of Joseph that he should perish not.

8. Wherefore, the remnant of the house of Joseph shall be built upon this land; and it shall be a land of their inheritance; and they shall build up a holy city unto the Lord, like unto the Jerusalem of old; and they shall no more be confounded, until the end come when the earth shall pass away.

E 13-503

24. And as surely as the Lord liveth, will he gather in from the four quarters of the earth all the remnants of the seed of Jacob, who are scattered abroad upon all the face of the earth.

25. ---[And they shall know] of the covenant that he hath covenanted with them.

26. And then shall they know their Redeemer, who is Jesus Christ, the Son of God; and then shall they be gathered in from

the four quarters of the earth unto their own lands, from whence they have been dispersed; yea, as the Lord liveth so shall it be. Amen.

3N 6-410

(*The "Branch" shall overcome the Gentiles, should the Gentiles forget the Gospel and God.*) 6. And blessed are the Gentiles, because of their belief in me, in and of the Holy Ghost, which witnesses unto them of me and of the Father.

7. Behold, because of their belief in me, saith the Father, and because of the unbelief of you, O house of Israel, in the latter day shall the truth come unto the Gentiles, that the fulness of these things shall be made known unto them.

8. But wo, saith the Father, unto the unbelieving of the Gentiles—

10. ---At that day when the Gentiles shall sin against my gospel, and shall be lifted up in the pride of their hearts above all nations, and above all the people of the whole earth, ---behold, saith the Father, I will bring the fulness of my gospel from among them.

11. And then will I remember my covenant which I have made unto my people, O house of Israel, and I will bring my gospel unto them.

12. And I will show unto thee, O house of Israel, that the Gentiles shall not have power over you; but I will remember my covenant unto you, O house of Israel, and ye shall come unto the knowledge of the fulness of my gospel.

15. But if they will not turn unto me, and hearken unto my voice, [speaking of the Gentiles], ---I will suffer my people, O house of Israel, that they shall go through among them [the Gentiles], and shall tread them down, and they shall be as salt that hath lost its savor, which is thenceforth good for nothing but to be cast out, and to be trodden under foot of my people, O house of Israel.

3N 16-430

15. And I say unto you, that if the Gentiles do not repent after the blessing which they shall receive, after they have scattered my people—

16. Then shall ye, who are a remnant of the house of Jacob, go forth among them; and ye shall be in the midst of them who shall be many; and ye shall be among them as a lion among the beasts of the forest, and as a young lion among the flocks of sheep, who, if he goeth through both treadeth down and teareth in pieces, and none can deliver.

17. Thy hand shall be lifted up---[against] thine adversaries, and all thine enemies shall be cut off.

18. And I will gather my people together as a man gathereth his sheaves into the floor.

19. For I will make my people with whom the Father hath covenanted, yea, I will make thy horn iron, and I will make thy hoofs brass. And thou shalt beat in pieces many people;

20. And it shall come to pass, saith the Father, that the sword of my justice shall hang over them at that day; and except they repent it shall fall upon them, saith the Father, yea, even upon all the nations of the Gentiles.

21. And it shall come to pass that I will establish my people,
O house of Israel. 3N 20-439

12. ---[But] blessed are the Gentiles [who shall bring forth the gospel], they of whom the prophet has written; for behold, if it so be that they shall repent and fight not against Zion, and do not unite themselves to that great and abominable church, they shall be saved.

13. Wherefore, they that fight against Zion and the covenant people of the Lord shall lick up the dust of their feet; and the people of the Lord shall not be ashamed. For the people of the Lord are they who wait for him; for they still wait for the coming of the Messiah.

14. And behold, according to the words of the prophet, the Messiah will set himself again the second time to recover them; wherefore, he will manifest himself unto them in power and great glory, unto the destruction of their enemies, when that day cometh when they shall believe in him; and none will he destroy that believe in him.

15. And they that believe not in him shall be destroyed, both by fire, and by tempest, and by earthquakes, and by bloodsheds, and by pestilence, and by famine. And they shall know that the Lord is God, the Holy One of Israel. 2N 6-63

III. OTHER "BRANCHES" OF ISRAEL IN THE WORLD

1. And verily, verily, I [Christ] say unto you that I have other sheep, which are not of this land [the land of promise in the Western Hemisphere], neither of the land of Jerusalem, neither in any parts of that land round about whither I have been to minister.

2. For they of whom I speak are they who have not as yet heard my voice; neither have I at any time manifested myself unto them. 3N 16-430

4. But now I go unto the Father, and also to show myself unto the lost tribes of Israel, for they are not lost unto the Father, for he knoweth whither he hath taken them. 3N 17-432

15. Neither at any time hath the Father given me [Christ] commandment that I should tell unto them [those in Jerusalem] concerning the other tribes of the house of Israel, whom the Father hath led away out of the land.

16. This much did the Father command me, that I should tell unto them:

17. That other sheep I have which are not of this fold; them also I must bring, and they shall hear my voice; and there shall be one fold, and one shepherd.

3N 15-429

4. And behold, there are many who are already lost from the knowledge of those who are at Jerusalem. Yea, the more part of all the tribes have been led away; and they are scattered to and fro upon the isles of the sea; and whither they are none of us knoweth, save that we know that they have been led away.

5. And since they have been led away, these things have been prophesied concerning them, and also concerning all those who shall hereafter be scattered and be confounded, because of the Holy One of Israel; for against him will they harden their hearts; wherefore, they shall be scattered among all nations and shall be hated of all men.

1N 22-46

15. Nevertheless, when that day cometh, saith the prophet, that they no more turn aside their hearts against the Holy One of Israel, then will he remember the covenants which he made to their fathers.

16. Yea, then will he remember the isles of the sea; yea, and all the people who are of the house of Israel, will I gather in, saith the Lord, according to the words of the prophet Zenos, from the four quarters of the earth.

17. Yea, and all the earth shall see the salvation of the Lord, saith the prophet; every nation, kindred, tongue and people shall be blessed.

19. Wherefore, I speak unto all the house of Israel, if it so be that they should obtain these things.

1N 19-42

IV. THE "GENTILES" MAY BECOME AS OF THE HOUSE OF ISRAEL

1. And it shall come to pass, that if the Gentiles shall hearken unto the Lamb of God in that day that he shall manifest himself unto them in word, and also in power, in very deed, unto the taking away of their stumbling blocks—

2. And harden not their hearts against the Lamb of God, they shall be numbered among the seed of thy father; yea, they shall be

numbered among the house of Israel; and they shall be a blessed people upon the promised land forever; they shall be no more brought down into captivity; and the house of Israel shall no more be confounded.

1N 14-25

2. For behold, I say unto you that as many of the Gentiles as will repent are the covenant people of the Lord; and as many of the Jews as will not repent shall be cast off; for the Lord covenanteth with none save it be with them that repent and believe in his Son, who is the Holy One of Israel.

2N 30-102

20. For it shall come to pass, saith the Father, that at that day whosoever will not repent and come unto my Beloved Son, them will I cut off from among my people, O house of Israel;

21. And I will execute vengeance and fury upon them, even as upon the heathen, such as they have not heard.

22. But if they will repent and hearken unto my words, and harden not their hearts, I will establish my church among them, and they shall come in unto the covenant and be numbered among this remnant of Jacob, unto whom I have given this land for their inheritance [land on the Western Hemisphere];

23. And they shall assist my people, the remnant of Jacob, and also as many of the house of Israel as shall come, that they may build a city, which shall be called the New Jerusalem.

24. And then shall they assist my people that they may be gathered in, who are scattered upon all the face of the land, in unto the New Jerusalem.

25. And then shall the power of heaven come down among them; and I also will be in the midst.

3N 21-444

18. Wherefore, my beloved brethren, thus saith our God: I will afflict thy seed by the hand of the Gentiles; nevertheless, I will soften the hearts of the Gentiles, that they shall be like unto a father to them; wherefore, the Gentiles shall be blessed and numbered among the house of Israel.

2N 10-72

1. Hearken, O ye Gentiles, and hear the words of Jesus Christ, the Son of the living God, which he hath commanded me that I should speak concerning you, for, behold he commandeth me that I [Mormon] should write, saying:

2. Turn, all ye Gentiles, from your wicked ways; and repent of your evil doings, of your lyings and deceivings, and of your whoredoms, and of your secret abominations, and your idolatries, and of your murders, and your priestcrafts, and your envyings, and your strifes, and from all your wickedness and abominations, and come unto me, and be baptized in my name, that ye may receive a remission of your sins, and be filled with the Holy Ghost, that ye may be numbered with my people who are of the house of Israel.

3N 30-455

PART II

PROPHECIES OF ISAIAH

I. THE ANCIENT BRASS PLATES CONTAINED PROPHECIES OF ISAIAH

(*See Chapter II, Part I, Section II. See Chart 24.*) 5. And now, the words which I shall read are they which Isaiah spake concerning all the house of Israel; wherefore, they may be likened unto you, for ye are of the house of Israel. And there are many things which have been spoken by Isaiah which may be likened unto you, because ye are of the house of Israel. [Jacob, brother of Nephi, is speaking unto the people.] 2N 6-62

19. Wherefore, he [Lehi] said that the plates of brass should never perish; neither should they be dimmed any more by time.

18. [And] that these plates of brass should go forth unto all nations, kindreds, tongues, and people who were of his seed. 1N 5-10

22. Now it came to pass that I, Nephi, did teach my brethren these things; and it came to pass that I did read many things to them, which were engraven upon the plates of brass, that they might know concerning the doings of the Lord in other lands, among people of old. 1N 19-43

30. Wherefore, my brethren, I would that ye should consider that the things which have been written upon the plates of brass are true; and they testify that a man must be obedient to the commandments of God. 1N 22-49

II. THE NEPHITE TEACHERS QUOTED ISAIAH

1. *NEPHI I. QUOTED ISAIAH.* 2. And now I, Nephi, write more of the words of Isaiah, for my soul delighteth in his words. 2N 2-73

1. And now it came to pass that after I, Nephi, had read these things which were engraven upon the plates of brass, my brethren came unto me and said unto me: What meaneth these things which ye have read? 1N 22-46

1. Now I, Nephi, do speak somewhat concerning the words which I have written, which have been spoken by the mouth of Isaiah. For behold, Isaiah spake many things which were hard for many of my people to understand; for they know not concerning the manner of prophesying among the Jews.

4. Wherefore, hearken, O my people, which are of the house of Israel, and give ear unto my words; for because the words of Isaiah are not plain unto you, nevertheless they are plain unto all those that are filled with the spirit of prophecy. But I give unto you a prophecy, according to the spirit which is in me; wherefore I shall prophesy according to the plainness which hath been with me from the time that I came out from Jerusalem with my father [Lehi]; for behold, my soul delighteth in plainness unto my people, that they may learn.

5. Yea, and my soul delighteth in the words of Isaiah, for I came out from Jerusalem, and mine eyes hath beheld the things of the Jews, and I know that the Jews do understand the things of the prophets, and there is none other people that understand the things which were spoken unto the Jews like unto them.

6. But behold I, Nephi, have not taught my children after the manner of the Jews; but behold, I, of myself, have dwelt at Jerusalem, wherefore I know concerning the region round about;

7. But behold, I proceed with mine own prophecy, according to my plainness; in the which I know that no man can err; nevertheless, in the days that the prophecies of Isaiah shall be fulfilled men shall know of a surety, at the times when they shall come to pass.

2N 25-29

2. JACOB, BROTHER OF NEPHI 1, QUOTED ISAIAH.

6. And now, these are the words [words by Isaiah to the house of Israel]: Thus saith the Lord God: Behold, I will lift up mine hand to the Gentiles, and set up my standard to the people; and they shall bring thy sons in their arms, and thy daughters shall be carried upon their shoulders. [etc.]

2N 6-62

3. ABINADI QUOTED ISAIAH.

1. Yea, even doth not Isaiah say: He [Christ] is despised and rejected of men; a man of sorrows, and acquainted with grief; and we hid as it were our face from him; he was despised, and we esteemed him not.

4. Surely he has borne our griefs, and carried our sorrows; yet we did esteem him stricken, smitten of God and afflicted. Mo 14-162

III. A FEW PROPHECIES OF ISAIAH

(Quoted from the Book of Mormon—from ancient teachings on the Brass Plates.) 12. I am he; yea, I am he that comforteth you.

Behold, who are thou, that thou shouldst be afraid of man, who shall die, ---

13. And forgeteth the Lord thy maker, that hath stretched forth the heavens, and laid the foundations of the earth, 2N 8-65

14. But, behold, Zion hath said; The Lord hath forsaken me, and my Lord hath forgotten me—but he will show that he hath not.

16. Behold, I have graven thee upon the palms of my hands; --- 1N 21-45

7. For a small moment have I forsaken thee, but with great mercies will I gather thee. 3N 22-44

36. And then shall be brought to pass that which is written: Awake, awake again, and put on thy strength, O Zion; put on thy beautiful garments, O Jerusalem, the holy city, for henceforth there shall no more come into thee the uncircumcised and the unclean. 3N 20-44

CHART 24

*TEACHINGS OF ISAIAH

Some of the references in the *Book of Mormon* to the teachings of Isaiah. (The quotations from Isaiah were taken by the ancient teachers from the Brass Plates which were brought from Jerusalem about 600 years B.C.)

1N 15-29	v. 20	2N 14-76	2N 24-87
1N 19-43	v. 23	2N 15-77	2N 25-89
1N 20-43		2N 16-78	2N 26-92
1N 21-44		2N 17-79	2N 27-95
1N 22-46		2N 18-80	2N 28-98
2N 6-62		2N 20-82	2N 29-100
2N 7-64		2N 21-85	2N 30-102
2N 8-65		2N 22-86	2N 31-103
2N 12-74		2N 23-86	Mo 14-162
3N 22-444		3N 20-439	Mn 8-473

*Read Sidney B. Sperry, "Our Book of Mormon," Chapter XIV, for a discussion of the "Isaiah Problem" in the *Book of Mormon*.

PART III

THE HOUSE OF ISRAEL COMPARED TO AN OLIVE TREE

12. Behold, I say unto, that the house of Israel was compared unto an olive tree, by the Spirit of the Lord which was in our fathers; and behold are we not broken off from the house of Israel, and are we not a branch of the house of Israel? [Nephi was speaking of the teachings of his father, Lehi.]

13. ---in the latter days, when our seed shall have dwindled in unbelief---after the Messiah shall [have been]---manifested in body to the children of men, then shall the fulness of the gospel come unto the Gentiles, and from the Gentiles unto the remnant of our seed---[and this is what] our fathers meaneth concerning the grafting in of the natural branches through fulness of the Gentiles---

14. And at that day shall the remnant of our seed know that they are of the house of Israel,---

15. Yea, at that day, will they not receive the strength and nourishment from the true vine? Yea, will they not come unto the true fold of God?

16. Behold, I say unto you, Yea; they shall be remembered again among the house of Israel; they shall be grafted in, being a natural branch of the olive-tree, into the true olive-tree. 1N 15-28

7. For the vineyard of the Lord of Hosts is the house of Israel, and the men of Judah his pleasant plant; 2N 15-77

18. Wherefore, our father hath not spoken of our seed alone, but also of all the house of Israel, pointing to the covenant which should be fulfilled in the latter days; which covenant the Lord made to our father Abraham, saying: In thy seed shall all the kindreds of the earth be blessed. 1N 15-28

2. In that day shall the branch of the Lord be beautiful and glorious; the fruit of the earth excellent and comely to them that are escaped of Israel. 2N 14-76

12. And [then shall He]---assemble---the outcasts of Israel, and gather together the dispersed of Judah from the four corners of the earth. 2N 21-85

2. And the day that he shall set his hand again the second time to recover his people, is the day, yea, even the last time, that the servants of the Lord shall go forth in his power, to nourish and prune his vineyard; and after that the end soon cometh. J 6-122

CHART 25

THE STORY OF THE OLIVE TREE

A parable of the Olive Tree comparing it to the house of Israel—showing the growth, decay, and restoration of Israel. (See the *Book of Mormon*, J 5-115).

QUOTATIONS FROM THE BOOK OF MORMON	*INTERPRETATIONS OF THESE QUOTATIONS
1. Behold, my brethren, do ye not remember to have read the words of the prophet Zenos, which he spake unto the house of Israel, saying:	
2. Hearken, O ye house of Israel,	The children of Israel—the Descendants of Jacob—from the time of their origin, until the time of Moses.
3. For behold, thus saith the Lord, I will liken thee, O house of Israel, like unto a tame olive-tree, which a man took and nourished in his vineyard; and it grew, and waxed old, and began to decay.	
4. And it came to pass that the master of the vineyard went forth, and he saw that his olive-tree began to decay; and he said: I will prune it, and dig about it, and nourish it, that perhaps it may shoot forth young and tender branches, and it perish not.	The Lord, through Moses, brought the Children of Israel out of bondage in Egypt, chastised them during the Exodus, and brought them to the "Promised Land."
5. And it came to pass that he pruned it, and digged about it, and nourished it according to his word.	The Lord, through Moses, gave the Children of Israel the "word"—the Ten Commandments and other laws.
6. And it came to pass that after many days it began to put forth somewhat a little, young and tender branches; but behold, the main top thereof began to perish.	The separation of Israel from Judah. A few righteous men and movements were in evidence in the next 400 years, but much iniquity abounded.
7. And it came to pass that the master of the vineyard saw it, and he said unto his servant: It grieveth me that I should lose this tree; wherefore, go and pluck the branches from a wild olive-tree, and bring them hither unto me; and we will pluck off those main branches which are beginning to wither away, and we will cast them into the fire that they may be burned.	The Assyrian and other invasions brought much foreign blood into the land of "Promise." The Children of Israel were chastised. The "Ten" Tribes of Israel were carried off into captivity.
8. And behold, saith the Lord of the vineyard, I take away many of these young and tender branches, and I will graft them whithersoever I will; and it mattereth not that if it so be that the root of this tree will perish, I may preserve the fruit thereof unto myself; wherefore, I will take these young and tender branches, and I will graft them whithersoever I will.	Over a period of about 250 years (c. 720-590 B. C.), the Ten Tribes scattered and found new lands, and other "Branches" of the house of Israel were guided away to new "Promised Lands." In the last movement, could be placed the migrations of Lehi and Mulek to the Western Hemisphere (600 and 590 B. C. approximately).

*The author's interpretations are presented for consideration here. These interpretations are not "official" (the reader has the privilege of his own interpretations).

QUOTATIONS FROM
THE BOOK OF MORMON

*INTERPRETATIONS OF THESE
QUOTATIONS

9. Take thou the branches of the wild olive-tree, and graft them in, in the stead thereof; and these which I have plucked off I will cast into the fire and burn them, that they may not cumber the ground of my vineyard.

10. And it came to pass that the servant of the Lord of the vineyard did according to the word of the Lord of the vineyard, and grafted in the branches of the wild olive-tree.

11. And the Lord of the vineyard caused that it should be digged about, and pruned, and nourished, saying unto his servant: It grieveth me that I should lose this tree; wherefore, that perhaps I might preserve the roots thereof that they perish not, that I might preserve them unto myself, I have done this thing.

12. Wherefore, go thy way; watch the tree, and nourish it, according to my words.

13. And these will I place in the nethermost part of my vineyard, whithersoever I will, it mattereth not unto thee; and I do it that I may preserve unto myself the natural branches of the tree; and also, that I may lay up fruit thereof against the season, unto myself; for it grieveth me that I should lose this tree and the fruit thereof.

14. And it came to pass that the Lord of the vineyard went his way, and hid the natural branches of the tame olive-tree in the nethermost parts of the vineyard, some in one and some in another, according to his will and pleasure.

15. And it came to pass that a long time passed away, and the Lord of the vineyard said unto his servant: Come, let us go down into the vineyard, that we may labor in the vineyard.

16. And it came to pass that the Lord of the vineyard, and also the servant, went down into the vineyard to labor. And it came to pass that the servant said unto his master: Behold, look here; behold the tree.

17. And it came to pass that the Lord of the vineyard looked and beheld the tree in the which the wild olive branches had been grafted; and it had sprung forth and begun to bear fruit. And he beheld that it was good; and the fruit thereof was like unto the natural fruit.

Foreign elements capture and carry into captivity the children of Israel: the fall of Jerusalem, the Babylonian captivity, etc.

The advent of Christ in the "Old World."

The apostles of Christ preached to the Gentiles. (The Bible carries this history.)

Those of the "transplanted" tribes (tribes of Lehi, Mulek, and others) were planted in new "Promised Lands." They all kept records. These records would come forth in the "last days" to strengthen the testimony of the Lord. (Such a record is the Book of Mormon.) Therefore, by transplanting the righteous tribes, the Lord preserved his record and his testimony.

The Gentiles had accepted the gospel of Christ.

*The author's interpretations are presented for consideration here. These interpretations are not "official" (the reader has the privilege of his own interpretations).

QUOTATIONS FROM THE BOOK OF MORMON

*INTERPRETATIONS OF THESE QUOTATIONS

18. And he said unto the servant: Behold, the branches of the wild tree have taken hold of the moisture of the root thereof, that the root thereof hath brought forth much strength; and because of the much strength of the root thereof the wild branches have brought forth tame fruit. Now, if we had not grafted in these branches, the tree thereof would have perished. And now, behold, I shall lay up much fruit, which the tree thereof hath brought forth; and the fruit thereof I shall lay up against the season, unto mine own self.

The Gentiles had accepted Christianity and had become "believers." The Gentiles preserved the "fruit" or the word in the Bible.

THE SCENE SHIFTED TO THE WESTERN HEMISPHERE

19. And it came to pass that the Lord of the vineyard said unto the servant: Come, let us go to the nethermost part of the vineyard, and behold if the natural branches of the tree—

20. And it came to pass that they went forth whither the master had hid the natural branches of the tree, and he said unto the servant: Behold these; and he beheld the first that it had brought forth much fruit; and he beheld also that it was good. And he said unto the servant: Take of the fruit thereof, and lay it up against the season, that I may preserve it unto mine own self; for behold, said he, this long time have I nourished it, and it hath brought forth much fruit.

The "branches" of the tribes of Israel who had been transplanted were, at this time, leading righteous lives in their new "Promised Lands." The "fruit layed up" was a record of these scattered peoples (kept by themselves). Such records would come forth in due time "unto mine own self," to strengthen the testimony of the Lord. (The records of two of these peoples [the people of Mulek and the people of Lehi] were preserved and came forth later as the *Book of Mormon*.)

21. And it came to pass that the servant said unto his master: How comest thou hither to plant this tree, or this branch of the tree? For behold, it was the poorest spot in all the land of the vineyard.

23. And it came to pass that the Lord of the vineyard said unto his servant: Look hither; behold I have planted another branch of the tree also; and thou knowest that this spot of ground was poorer than the first. But, behold the tree. I have nourished it this long time, and—[both] hath brought forth much fruit; therefore, gather it, and lay it up against the season, that I may preserve it unto mine own self.

24. And it came to pass that the Lord of the vineyard said again unto his servant: Look hither, and behold another branch also, which I have planted; behold that I have nourished it also, and it hath brought forth fruit.

25. And he said unto the servant: Look hither and behold the last. Behold, this have I planted in a good spot of ground; and I have nourished it this long time, and only a part of the tree hath brought forth tame fruit, and the other part of the tree hath brought forth wild fruit; behold, I have nourished this tree like unto the others.

Three suggested interpretations:

1. The migrations of the various tribes of Israel (possibly those who came to the Western Hemisphere).

2. The migrations of the people of Mulek and the people of Lehi to the Western Hemisphere (the other branches mentioned may have been parts of these two).

3. The migrations of the people of Mulek, the migrations of the people of Lehi, the migrations of the Spanish Conquest, and the migrations of Europeans to the North American Continent. (If this last translation be accepted, it might change the interpretations of the next two sections immediately below.)

*The author's interpretations are presented for consideration here. These interpretations are not "official" (the reader has the privilege of his own interpretations).

**QUOTATIONS FROM
THE BOOK OF MORMON**

***INTERPRETATIONS OF THESE
QUOTATIONS**

26. And it came to pass that the Lord of the vineyard said unto the servant: Pluck off the branches that have not brought forth good fruit, and cast them into the fire.

27. But behold, the servant said unto him: Let us prune it, and dig about it, and nourish it a little longer, that perhaps it may bring forth good fruit unto thee, that thou canst lay it up against the season.

The advent of Christ—his appearance on the Western Hemisphere.

28. And it came to pass that the Lord of the vineyard and the servant of the Lord of the vineyard did nourish all the fruit of the vineyard.

The gospel of Christ as presented to the Western Hemisphere and recorded in the Book of Mormon.

**EVENTS BELOW ARE CONCERNED WITH
OLD WORLD HISTORY**

29. And it came to pass that a long time had passed away, and the Lord of the vineyard said unto his servant: Come, let us go down into the vineyard, that we may labor again in the vineyard. For behold, the time draweth near, and the end soon cometh; wherefore, I must lay up fruit against the season, unto mine own self.

30. And it came to pass that the Lord of the vineyard and the servant went down into the vineyard; and they came to the tree whose natural branches had been broken off, and the wild branches had been grafted in; and behold all sorts of fruit did cumber the tree.

31. And it came to pass that the Lord of the vineyard did taste of the fruit, every sort according to its number. And the Lord of the vineyard said: Behold, this long time have we nourished this tree, and I have laid up unto myself against the season much fruit.

32. But behold, this time it hath brought forth much fruit, and there is none of it which is good. And behold, there are all kinds of bad fruit; and it profiteth me nothing, notwithstanding all our labor; and now it grieveth me that I should lose this tree.

33. And the Lord of the vineyard said unto the servant: What shall we do unto the tree, that I may preserve again good fruit thereof unto mine own self?

The Jews and Israel were scattered abroad amongst all the nations, and were persecuted, because they rejected and crucified their Christ.

34. And the servant said unto his master: Behold, because thou didst graft in the branches of the wild olive-tree they have nourished the roots, that they are alive and they have not perished; wherefore thou beholdest that they are yet good.

The "Spirit" of the Lord was upon the Gentiles (known as Christians), who preserved and taught the teachings of the ancient prophets (The Bible), and who believed in and taught the message of Christ.

*The author's interpretations are presented for consideration here. These interpretations are not "official" (the reader has the privilege of his own interpretations).

QUOTATIONS FROM THE BOOK OF MORMON

*INTERPRETATIONS OF THESE QUOTATIONS

35. And it came to pass that the Lord of the vineyard said unto his servant: The tree profiteth me nothing, and the roots thereof profit me nothing so long as it shall bring forth evil fruit.

36. Nevertheless, I know that the roots are good, and for mine own purpose I have preserved them; and because of their much strength they have hitherto brought forth, from the wild branches, good fruit.

37. But behold, the wild branches have grown and have overrun the roots thereof; and because that the wild branches have overcome the roots thereof it hath brought forth much evil fruit; and because that it hath brought forth so much evil fruit thou beholdest that it beginneth to perish; and it will soon become ripened, that it may be cast into the fire, except we should do something for it to preserve it.

The "Tree" was the House of Israel, and the "Roots" were their ancient traditions together with the teachings of the ancient prophets. The scattered "Jews" remained in their "chosen" ignorance of Christ.

The "Jews" who denied and crucified their Christ, were scattered. The Gentiles had so altered the "Word" of the Lord, that they also fell into transgression. The Gentiles persecuted the Jews and fell into disrepute.

EVENTS BELOW ARE CONCERNED WITH THE WESTERN HEMISPHERE

38. And it came to pass that the Lord of the vineyard said unto his servant: Let us go down into the nethermost parts of the vineyard, and behold if the natural branches have also brought forth evil fruit.

39. And it came to pass that they went down into the nethermost parts of the vineyard. And it came to pass that they beheld that the fruit of the natural branches had become corrupt also; yea, the first and the second and also the last; and they had all become corrupt.

The branches of the Tribes of Israel, who had been carried to a new promised land (the people of Lehi, Mulek, and others), had also fallen into iniquity.

40. And the wild fruit of the last had overcome that part of the tree which brought forth good fruit, even that the branch had withered away and died.

The once righteous Nephites had become corrupted, and due to their wickedness, they were forsaken by the Lord and were annihilated by their enemies, the Lamanites (c. 385 A.D.). The entire land was a scene of wickedness and bloodshed.

41. And it came to pass that the Lord of the vineyard wept, and said unto the servant: What could I have done more for my vineyard?

42. Behold, I knew that all the fruit of the vineyard, save it were these, had become corrupted. And now these which have once brought forth good fruit have also become corrupted; and now all the trees of my vineyard are good for nothing save it be to be hewn down and cast into the fire.

At one time the Nephites were known by the Lord as the most righteous branch of Israel that had ever dwelt upon the earth.

43. And behold this last one, whose branch hath withered away, I did plant in a good spot of ground; yea, even that which was choice unto me above all other parts of the land of my vineyard.

The Nephites?

*The author's interpretations are presented for consideration here. These interpretations are not "official" (the reader has the privilege of his own interpretations).

44. And thou beheldest that I also cut down that which cumbered this spot of ground, that I might plant this tree in the stead thereof.

45. And thou beheldest that a part thereof brought forth good fruit, and a part thereof brought forth wild fruit; and because I plucked not the branches thereof and cast them into the fire, behold, they have overcome the good branch that it hath withered away.

The land had been cleared for the arrival of Lehi and Mulek. The former inhabitants, the Jaredites, through contention and civil war, had all been destroyed (except one, Coriantumr, who lived to see the arrival of the new people).

The part that had brought forth good fruit—the Nephites.

The part that had brought forth wild fruit—the Lamanites.

EVENTS BELOW ARE CONCERNED WITH THE ENTIRE WORLD

46. And now, behold, notwithstanding all the care which we have taken of my vineyard, the trees thereof have become corrupted, that they bring forth no good fruit; and these I had hoped to preserve, to have laid up fruit thereof against the season, unto mine own self. But, behold, they have become like unto the wild olive-tree, and they are of no worth but to be hewn down and cast into the fire; and it grieveth me that I should lose them.

47. But what could I have done more in my vineyard? Have I slackened mine hand, that I have not nourished it? Nay, I have nourished it, and I have digged about it, and I have pruned it, and I have dunged it; and I have stretched forth mine hand almost all the day long, and the end draweth nigh. And it grieveth me that I should hew down all the trees of my vineyard, and cast them into the fire that they should be burned. Who is it that has corrupted my vineyard?

The "Dark Ages" of the entire world (beginning on the Western Hemisphere at about 385 A. D.). Because of ignorance, superstition, and witchcraft, the ways of the Lord had been cast aside and his teachings had been perverted. The religion of the world was like a hollow shell compared to the real religion of Christ. The "Primitive Savages" were only slightly less enlightened than were those who could be called "Educated Savages."

48. And it came to pass that the servant said unto his master: Is it not the loftiness of thy vineyard—have not the branches thereof overcome the roots which are good? And because the branches have overcome the roots thereof, behold they grew faster than the strength of the roots, taking strength unto themselves. Behold, I say, is not this the cause that the trees of thy vineyard have become corrupted?

49. And it came to pass that the Lord of the vineyard said unto the servant: Let us go to and hew down the trees of the vineyard and cast them into the fire, that they shall not cumber the ground of my vineyard, for I have done all. What could I have done more for my vineyard?

50. But, behold, the servant said unto the Lord of the vineyard: Spare it a little longer.

PRIDE—is the loftiness spoken of here. The world suffered (or should it be said—the world is suffering) from pride and from selfishness. The aim of the world became a seeking after material riches and public honor. Coupled with these and with success in war, came the sinful boasting of personal (or group) prowess. God was forgotten.

*The author's interpretations are presented for consideration here. These interpretations are not "official" (the reader has the privilege of his own interpretations).

QUOTATIONS FROM THE BOOK OF MORMON

*INTERPRETATIONS OF THESE QUOTATIONS

51. And the Lord said: Yea, I will spare it a little longer, for it grieveth me that I should lose the trees of my vineyard.

52. Wherefore, let us take of the branches of these which I have planted in the nethermost parts of my vineyard, and let us graft them into the tree from whence they came; and let us pluck from the tree those branches whose fruit is most bitter, and graft in the natural branches of the tree in the stead thereof.

53. And this will I do that the tree may not perish, that, perhaps, I may preserve unto myself the roots thereof for mine own purpose.

54. And, behold, the roots of the natural branches of the tree which I planted whithersoever I would are yet alive; wherefore, that I may preserve them also for mine own purpose, I will take of the branches of this tree, and I will graft them in unto them. Yea, I will graft in unto them the branches of their mother tree, that I may preserve the roots also unto mine own self, that when they shall be sufficiently strong perhaps they may bring forth good fruit unto me, and I may yet have glory in the fruit of my vineyard.

55. And it came to pass that they took from the natural tree which had become wild, and grafted in unto the natural trees, which also had become wild.

56. And they also took of the natural trees which had become wild, and grafted into their mother tree.

57. And the Lord of the vineyard said unto the servant: Pluck not the wild branches from the trees, save it be those which are most bitter; and in them ye shall graft according to that which I have said.

58. And we will nourish again the trees of the vineyard, and we will trim up the branches thereof; and we will pluck from the trees those branches which are ripened, that must perish, and cast them into the fire.

59. And this I do that, perhaps, the roots thereof may take strength because of their goodness; and because of the change of the branches, that the good may overcome the evil.

60. And because that I have preserved the natural branches and the roots thereof, and that I have grafted in the natural branches again into their mother tree, and have preserved the roots of their mother tree, that, perhaps, the trees of my vineyard may bring forth again good fruit; and that I may have joy again in the fruit of my vineyard, and, perhaps, that I may rejoice exceedingly that I have preserved the roots and the branches of the first fruit—

The "Words" of the Lord shall be had among the various tribes of Israel. These "Words" shall be interchanged, to strengthen the testimony of the Lord. "For behold, I shall speak unto the Jews and they shall write it; and I shall also speak unto the Nephites and they shall write it; and I shall also speak unto all nations of the earth and they shall write it. And it shall come to pass that the Jews shall have the words of the Nephites, and the Nephites shall have the words of the Jews; and the Nephites and the Jews shall have the words of the lost tribes of Israel; and the lost tribes of Israel shall have the words of the Nephites and the Jews." 2N 29-101 v12

(By the "Words" of the Jews was meant the Bible; by the "Words" of the Nephites was meant the Book of Mormon; the "Words" of the other tribes of Israel have not as yet been identified as such.)

"14. ---and behold, according to the words of the prophet, the Messiah will set himself again the second time [in Spirit] to recover them [house of Israel];" 2N 6-62

The "Word" of the Lord will be given the house of Israel to nourish it and restore it. The "Word" is the Bible, the Book of Mormon, and other works.

*The author's interpretations are presented for consideration here. These interpretations are not "official" (the reader has the privilege of his own interpretations).

QUOTATIONS FROM THE BOOK OF MORMON

*INTERPRETATIONS OF THESE QUOTATIONS

61. Wherefore, go to, and call servants, that we may labor diligently with our might in the vineyard, that we may prepare the way, that I may bring forth again the natural fruit, which natural fruit is good and the most precious above all other fruit.

62. Wherefore, let us go to and labor with our might this last time, for behold the end draweth nigh, and this is for the last time that I shall prune my vineyard.

63. Graft in the branches; begin at the last that they may be first, and that the first may be last, and dig about the trees, both old and young, the first and the last; and the last and the first, that all may be nourished once again for the last time.

64. Wherefore, dig about them, and prune them, and dung them once more, for the last time, for the end draweth nigh. And if it be so that these last grafts shall grow, and bring forth the natural fruit, then shall ye prepare the way for them, that they may grow.

65. And as they begin to grow ye shall clear away the branches which bring forth bitter fruit, according to the strength of the good and the size thereof; and ye shall not clear away the bad thereof all at once, lest the roots thereof should be too strong for the graft, and the graft thereof shall perish, and I lose the trees of my vineyard.

66. For it grieveth me that I should lose the trees of my vineyard; wherefore ye shall clear away the bad according as the good shall grow, that the root and the top may be equal in strength, until the good shall overcome the bad, and the bad be hewn down and cast into the fire, that they cumber not the ground of my vineyard; and thus will I sweep away the bad out of my vineyard.

67. And the branches of the natural tree will I graft in again into the natural tree;

68. And the branches of the natural tree will I graft into the natural branches of the tree; and thus will I bring them together again, that they shall bring forth the natural fruit, and they shall be one.

69. And the bad shall be cast away, yea, even out of all the land of my vineyard; for behold, only this once will I prune my vineyard.

By the power of God, Joseph Smith was given and allowed to translate the ancient records of the Nephites. The translation was known as the "Book of Mormon."

"42. And the time cometh that he [the Lord] shall manifest himself unto all nations, both unto the Jews and also unto the Gentiles; and after he has manifested himself unto the Jews [the Bible and its teachings] and also unto the Gentiles [the Gentiles receive the Bible from the Jews], then he shall manifest himself unto the Gentiles [the Book of Mormon and other writings—given to the Gentiles, because the Jews disinherited their Christ], and also unto the Jews [the Jews receive the Book of Mormon and other writings from the Gentiles], and the last shall be first, and the first shall be last."

1N 13-25

The Jews start to return to Jerusalem. The descendants of Lehi (Nephites and Lamanites who are among the peoples known as "Indians" of the American Continents) begin to know that they are descendants of the house of Israel.

The fulfillment of the "covenant" is begun and the Lord "makes way" for his people. As the Jews gradually accept Christ, the barriers against them will gradually be lifted, and they will gradually be allowed to return to Jerusalem.

All nations, peoples, or organizations who try to retard these covenants of the Lord (above listed) shall fall by the sword and by other means—because "I shall remember my people, saith the Lord."

"14. And every nation which shall war against thee, O house of Israel, shall be turned one against another, and they shall fall into the pit which they digged to ensnare the people of the Lord."

1N 22-46

"14. And it shall come to pass that my people, which are of the house of Israel, shall be gathered home unto the lands of their possessions; and my word also shall be gathered into one."

2N 29-101

*The author's interpretations are presented for consideration here. These interpretations are not "official" (the reader has the privilege of his own interpretations).

QUOTATIONS FROM
THE BOOK OF MORMON

*INTERPRETATIONS OF THESE
QUOTATIONS

70. And it came to pass that the Lord of the vineyard sent his servant; and the servant went and did as the Lord had commanded him, and brought other servants; and they were few.

71. And the Lord of the vineyard said unto them: Go to, and labor in the vineyard, with your might. For behold, this is the last time that I shall nourish my vineyard; for the end is nigh at hand, and the season speedily cometh; and if ye labor with your might with me ye shall have joy in the fruit which I shall lay up unto myself against the time which will soon come.

72. And it came to pass that the servants did go and labor with their might; and the Lord of the vineyard labored also with them; and they did obey the commandments of the Lord of the vineyard in all things.

73. And there began to be the natural fruit again in the vineyard; and the natural branches began to grow and thrive exceedingly; and the wild branches began to be plucked off and to be cast away; and they did keep the root and the top thereof equal according to the strength thereof.

74. And thus they labored, with all diligence, according to the commandments of the Lord of the vineyard, even until the bad had been cast away out of the vineyard, and the Lord had preserved unto himself that the trees had become again the natural fruit; and they became like unto one body; and the fruits were equal; and the Lord of the vineyard had preserved unto himself the natural fruit, which was most precious unto him from the beginning.

75. And it came to pass that when the Lord of the vineyard saw that his fruit was good, and that his vineyard was no more corrupt, he called up his servants, and said unto them: Behold, for this last time have we nourished my vineyard; and thou beholdest that I have done according to my will; and I have preserved the natural fruit, that it is good, even like as it was in the beginning. And blessed art thou; for because ye have been diligent in laboring with me in my vineyard, and have kept my commandments, and have brought unto me again the natural fruit, that my vineyard is no more corrupted, and the bad is cast away, behold ye shall have joy with me because of the fruit of my vineyard.

Missionaries shall go out to assist in spreading this "Word," but in comparison to the vast population of the world, they shall be few in number.

"14. ---after the Gentiles had received the fulness of the Gospel, the natural branches of the olive-tree, or the remnants of the house of Israel, should be grafted in, or come to the knowledge of the true Messiah, their Lord and their Redeemer." 1N 10-17

The people of the Lord are redeemed—the Jews have accepted the Christ, they have again been given refuge in Jerusalem. Jerusalem prospers, and "there shall no more come into thee the uncircumcised and the unclean."

The descendants of Lehi (descendants of the Nephites and the Lamanites who are among the "Indians" of the Americas) shall also come into the self-assurance of their heritage as being children of the house of Israel; and they shall re-inherit their land (prophecies state that if the Gentiles fall into iniquity, these native peoples will over-power and disperse the Gentiles).

Others of the house of Israel will come to a knowledge of the covenant, and will acknowledge the Lord.

The "Servants" of the Lord—are his prophets and teachers, who throughout history have preached his "Word."

*The author's interpretations are presented for consideration here. These interpretations are not "official" (the reader has the privilege of his own interpretations).

QUOTATIONS FROM
THE BOOK OF MORMON

*INTERPRETATIONS OF THESE
QUOTATIONS

76. For behold, for a long time will I lay up of the fruit of my vineyard unto mine own self against the season, which speedily cometh; and for the last time have I nourished my vineyard, and pruned it, and dug about it, and dunged it; wherefore I will lay up unto mine own self of the fruit, for a long time, according to that which I have spoken.

And for a long time there will be peace upon the whole earth (a thousand years of peace has been mentioned by some prophets).

77. And when the time cometh that evil fruit shall again come into my vineyard, then will I cause the good and the bad to be gathered; and the good will I preserve unto myself, and the bad will I cast away into its own place. And then cometh the season and the end; and my vineyard will I cause to be burned with fire.

When evil appears again, the patience of the Lord will be short, and the end of the world will come by fire.

*The author's interpretations are presented for consideration here. These interpretations are not "official" (the reader has the privilege of his own interpretations).

PART IV

THE BIBLE, THE BOOK OF MORMON, AND OTHER RECORDS OF ISRAEL

The religious records of the house of Israel were preserved that the people of the world might have a "gospel."

I. THE BIBLE

(*Nephi prophesies of the coming of the Bible.*) 20. And it came to pass that I, Nephi, beheld that they did prosper in the land; and I beheld a book [the Bible], and it was carried forth among them [the Lamanites of the last days who were descendants of Israel],

21. And the angel said unto me: Knowest thou the meaning of the Book?

22. And I said unto him: I know not.

23. And he said: Behold it proceedeth out of the mouth of a Jew. And I, Nephi, beheld it; and he said unto me: The book [the Bible] that thou beholdest is a record of the Jews, which contains the covenants of the Lord, which he hath made unto the house of Israel; and it also containeth many of the prophecies of the holy prophets; and it is a record like unto the engravings which are upon the plates of brass [see Chapter II, Part I, Section II] save there are not so many; nevertheless, they contain the covenants of the Lord, which he hath made unto the house of Israel; wherefore, they are of great worth unto the Gentiles.

24. And the angel of the Lord said unto me: Thou hast beheld that the book proceedeth forth from the mouth of a Jew; and when it proceeded forth from the mouth of a Jew it contained the plainness of the gospel of the Lord, of whom the twelve apostles bear record; and they bear record according to the truth which is in the Lamb of God.

25. Wherefore, these things go forth from the Jews in purity unto the Gentiles, according to the truth which is in God.

26. And after they go forth by the hand of the twelve apostles of the Lamb, from the Jews unto the Gentiles, thou seest the foundation of a great and abominable church, which is most abominable above all other churches; for behold, they have taken away from the gospel of the Lamb many parts which are plain and

most precious; and also many covenants of the Lord have they taken away.

27. And all this have they done that they might pervert the right ways of the Lord, that they might blind the eyes and harden the hearts of the children of men.

29. And after these plain and precious things were taken away it goeth forth unto all the nations of the Gentiles; 1N 13-23

38. And it came to pass that I beheld the remnant of the seed of my brethren, and also the book [the Bible] of the Lamb of God, which had proceeded forth from the mouth of the Jew, that it came forth from the Gentiles, unto the remnant of the seed of my brethren. [The Spaniards brought the Bible to the Indians.] 1N 13-24

II. CORRELATIONS BETWEEN THE BIBLE AND THE BOOK OF MORMON

1. *THE BIBLE vs. THE BOOK OF MORMON.* (*The prophecies of the Book of Mormon.*) 1. ---at the day [the last days] when I shall proceed to do a marvelous work among them [the Gentiles and the house of Israel], that I may remember my covenants which I have made unto the children of men, that I may set my hand again the second time [through additions to the gospel in the form of the *Book of Mormon*?] to recover my people, which are of the house of Israel;

2. And also, that I may remember the promises which I have made unto thee, Nephi [I], and also unto thy father [Lehi], that I would remember your seed; and that the words of your seed [the *Book of Mormon*] should proceed forth out of my mouth unto your seed [the Lamanites in the last days—who were descendants of the house of Israel]; and my word [the *Book of Mormon*] shall hiss forth unto the ends of the earth, for a standard unto my people, which are of the house of Israel;

3. And because my words [the *Book of Mormon*] shall hiss forth—many of the Gentiles shall say: A Bible! A Bible! We have got a Bible, and there cannot be any more Bible.

4. But thus saith the Lord God: O fools, they shall have a Bible; and it shall proceed forth from the Jews, mine ancient covenant people. And what thank they the Jews, for the Bible which they received from them? Yea, what do the Gentiles mean? Do they remember the travels, and the labors, and the pains of the Jews, and their diligence unto me, in bringing forth salvation unto the Gentiles?

5. O ye Gentiles, have ye remembered the Jews, mine ancient covenant people? Nay; but ye have cursed them, and have hated them, and have not sought to recover them. But behold, I will re-

turn all these things upon your own heads; for I the Lord have not forgotten my people.

6. Thou fool, that shall say: A Bible, we have got a Bible, and we need no more Bible. Have ye obtained a Bible save it were by the Jews?

7. Know ye not that there are more nations than one? Know ye not that I, the Lord your God, have created all men, and that I remember those who are upon the isles of the sea; and that I rule in the heavens above and in the earth beneath; and I bring forth my word [the gospel—the *Bible* and the *Book of Mormon*, etc.] unto the children of men, yea, even upon all the nations of the earth?

8. Wherefore murmur ye, because that ye shall receive more of my word [the *Book of Mormon*]? Know ye not that the testimony of two nations is a witness unto you that I am God, that I remember one nation like unto another? Wherefore, I speak the same words unto one nation like unto another. And when the two nations shall run together the testimony of the two nations shall run together also [the records of the house of Israel of the Old World which are known as the *Bible*, and the records of the house of Israel of the New World which are known as the *Book of Mormon*].

9. And I do this that I may prove unto many that I am the same yesterday, today, and forever; and that I speak forth my words according to mine own pleasure. And because that I have spoken one word [the *Bible*] ye need not suppose that I cannot speak another [the *Book of Mormon*]; for my work is not yet finished; neither shall it be until the end of man, neither from that time henceforth and forever.

2N 29-101

2. THE BOOK OF MORMON AND OTHER WRITINGS OF ISRAEL SHALL ESTABLISH THE TRUTH OF THE BIBLE.

10. Wherefore, because that ye have a Bible ye need not suppose that it contains all my words; neither need ye suppose that I have not caused more to be written.

11. For I command all men, both in the east and in the west, and in the north, and in the south, and in the islands of the sea, that they shall write the words which I speak unto them; for out of the books which shall be written I will judge the world, every man according to their works, according to that which is written.

12. For behold, I shall speak unto the Jews and they shall write it; and I shall also speak unto the Nephites and they shall write it; and I shall also speak unto the other tribes of the house of Israel, which I have led away, and they shall write it; and I shall also speak unto all nations of the earth and they shall write it.

2N 29-101

12. Wherefore, the fruit of thy loins shall write [the records of the Nephites—the *Book of Mormon*]; and the fruit of the loins of

Judah shall write [the *Bible*]; and that which shall be written by the fruit of thy loins, and also that which shall be written by the fruit of the loins of Judah, shall grow together, unto the confounding of false doctrines and laying down of contentions, and establishing peace among the fruit of thy loins, [the Lamanites] and bringing them to the knowledge of their fathers in the latter days, and also to the knowledge of my covenants, saith the Lord. 2N 3-56

13. And it shall come to pass that the Jews shall have the words of the Nephites, and the Nephites shall have the words of the Jews; and the Nephites and the Jews shall have the words of the lost tribes of Israel; and the lost tribes of Israel shall have the words of the Nephites and the Jews. [The descendants of the Nephites are numbered among the "Lamanites" who in turn are numbered among the American Indians.]

14. And it shall come to pass that my people, which are of the house of Israel, shall be gathered home unto the lands of their possessions; and my word also shall be gathered in one. And I will show unto them that fight against my word and against my people, who are of the house of Israel, that I am God, and that I covenanted with Abraham that I would remember his seed forever. 2N 29-101

III. THE BOOK OF MORMON

1. PROPHECIES CONCERNING THE COMING FORTH OF THE BOOK OF MORMON.

1. And verily I say unto you, I give unto you a sign, that ye may know the time when these things shall be about to take place—that I shall gather in, from their long dispersion, my people, O house of Israel, and shall establish again among them my Zion;

2. And behold, this is the thing which I will give unto you for a sign—for verily I say unto you that when these things which I declare unto you, and which I shall declare unto you hereafter of myself, and by the power of the Holy Ghost which shall be given unto you of the Father, shall be made known unto the Gentiles that they may know concerning this people who are a remnant of the house of Jacob [the Lamanites—who are to be found among the American Indians],

7. And when these things come to pass that thy seed [the Lamanites] shall begin to know these things—it shall be a sign unto them, that they may know that the work of the Father hath already commenced unto the fulfilling of the covenant which he hath made unto the people who are of the house of Israel. 3N 21-442

14. But behold, I prophecy unto you concerning the last days; concerning the days when the Lord God shall bring these things forth unto the children of men.

15. After my seed [Nephites] and the seed of my brethren [Lamanites] shall have dwindled in unbelief, and [they—the Nephites and Lamanites both become Lamanites] shall have been smitten by the Gentiles [the Spanish Conquest and the United States conquest of the Indians]; yea, after the Lord God shall have camped against them round about, and shall have laid siege against them with a mount, and raised forts against them; and after they shall have been brought down low in the dust, even that they are not, yet the words of the righteous shall be written, and the prayers of the faithful shall be heard, and all those who have dwindled in unbelief shall not be forgotten.

16. For those who shall be destroyed [the Nephites] shall speak unto them [the Lamanites in the last days] out of the ground, and their speech shall be low out of the dust, 2N 26-93

35. For, behold, saith the Lamb: I will manifest myself unto thy seed [the Nephites], that they shall write many things which I shall minister unto them, which shall be plain and precious; and after thy seed [the Nephites], shall be destroyed and dwindle in unbelief, and also the seed of thy brethren [the Lamanites], behold these things shall be hid up, to come forth unto the Gentiles, by the gift and power of the Lamb. 1N 13-24

26. And no one need say they [the writings of the ancient Nephites—the *Book of Mormon*] shall not come, for they surely shall, for the Lord hath spoken it; for out of the earth shall they come, by the hand of the Lord, and none can stay it; and it shall come in a day when it shall be said that miracles are done away; and it shall come even as if one should speak from the dead.

29. Yea, it shall come in a day when there shall be heard of fires, and tempests, and vapors of smoke in foreign lands [atom bombs?]

30. And there shall also be heard of wars, rumors of wars, and earthquakes in divers places. Mn 8-473

(*The ancient writings of the Nephites, known today as the Book of Mormon, shall be brought first to the Gentiles.*) 4. And I command you that ye shall write these sayings after I [Christ] am gone, that if it so be that my people at Jerusalem, they who have seen me and been with me in my ministry, do not ask the father in my name, that they may receive a knowledge of you [the Nephites] ---that these sayings which ye shall write [the records of the Nephites] shall be kept and shall be manifested unto the Gentiles [in the *Book of Mormon*],--- 3N 16-480

33. Wherefore saith the Lamb of God: I will be merciful unto the Gentiles,

34. ---and after I have visited in judgment and smitten--- [the remnant of the Nephites to be known in the last days as the

Lamanites] by the hand of the Gentiles [the various conquests of the American Indians]. ---I will be merciful to the Gentiles in that day insomuch that I will bring forth unto them, much of my gospel [the *Book of Mormon*] that shall be plain and precious---

37. And blessed are they who shall seek to bring forth my Zion at that day, for they shall have the gift and the power of the Holy Ghost; and if they endure unto the end they shall be lifted up at the last day, ---yea, whoso shall publish peace; yea, tidings of great joy, how beautiful upon the mountains shall they be.

1N 13-24

7. Behold, because of their belief in me, saith the Father, and because of the unbelief of you, O house of Israel, in the latter day shall the truth come unto the Gentiles, that the fulness of these things shall be made known unto them [by way of the *Book of Mormon*].

9. And [this] because of the mercies of the Father unto the Gentiles, and also the judgments of the Father upon my people who are of the house of Israel,

3N 16-431

(*The Book of Mormon shall be carried back to the ancestors of the original ancient writers of that Book.*) 3. And now, I would prophesy somewhat more concerning the Jews and the Gentiles. For after the book [the records of the ancient Nephites which is the *Book of Mormon*] of which I have spoken shall come forth, and be [translated and] written unto the Gentiles, ---there shall be many which shall believe the words which are written; and they [the Gentiles in the last days] shall carry them forth unto the remnant of our seed [the Lamanites].

4. And then shall the remnant of our seed know concerning us, how that we came out from Jerusalem, and that they are descendants of the Jews.

5. And the gospel of Jesus Christ shall be declared among them; wherefore, they shall be restored unto the knowledge of their fathers, and also to the knowledge of Jesus Christ, which was had among their fathers.

6. And then shall they rejoice; for they shall know that it is a blessing unto them from the hand of God; and their scales of darkness shall begin to fall from their eyes; and many generations shall not pass away among them, save they shall be a white and delightful people.

7. And it shall come to pass that the Jews which are scattered also shall begin to believe in Christ; and they shall begin to gather in upon the face of the land; and as many as shall believe in Christ shall also become a delightful people.

8. And it shall come to pass that the Lord God shall commence his work among all nations, kindred, tongues, and people, to bring about the restoration of his people upon the earth.

2N 30-102

2. THE SEALED AND THE UNSEALED RECORDS. (*Part of the ancient records remained sealed and were not translated into the Book of Mormon. See Chart 2. See Chapter II, Part I, Section I.*) 8. Wherefore, because of the things which are sealed up, the things which are sealed shall not be delivered---

10. ---For the book shall be sealed by the power of God, and the revelation which was sealed shall be kept in the book until the own due time of the Lord, that they may come forth; for behold they reveal all things from the foundation of the world unto the end thereof.

11. And the day cometh that the words of the book which were sealed shall be read upon the house tops; and they shall be read by the power of Christ; and all things shall be revealed unto the children of men which ever have been among the children of men, and which ever will be even unto the end of the earth. 2N 27-96

1. And now I, Moroni, have written the words which were commanded me, according to my memory; and I have told you the things which I have sealed up; therefore touch them not in order that ye may translate; for that thing is forbidden you, except by and by it shall be wisdom in God. E 5-487

3. WORDS FROM THE ANCIENT PROPHETS TO THE TRANSLATOR OF THEIR RECORDS. (*See Appendix A, Part I.*) 6. And it shall come to pass that the Lord God shall bring forth unto you [the world in the last days] the words of a book, and they shall be the words of them which have slumbered.

9. But the book shall be delivered unto a man [Joseph Smith, Jr.], and he shall deliver the words of the book, which are the words of those who have slumbered in the dust, and he shall deliver these words unto another [the scribes—Martin Harris and Oliver Cowdery];

10. But the words which are sealed he shall not deliver, neither shall he deliver the book. For the book shall be sealed by the power of God, and the revelation which was sealed shall be kept in the book until the own due time of the Lord.

12. Wherefore, at that day when the book shall be delivered unto the man of whom I have spoken, the book shall be hid from the eyes of the world, ---save it be that three witnesses shall behold it,

15. But behold, it shall come to pass that the Lord God shall say unto him to whom he shall deliver the book: Take these words which are not sealed and deliver them to another, that he may show them unto the learned [Doctor Anton?], saying: Read this, I pray thee. And the learned shall say: Bring hither the book, and I will read them.

16. And now, because of the glory of the world and to get gain will they say this, and not for the glory of God.

17. And the man shall say: I cannot bring the book, for it is sealed.

18. Then shall the learned say: I cannot read it.

19. Wherefore it shall come to pass, that the Lord God will deliver again the book and the words thereof to him that is not learned [Joseph Smith, Jr.]; and the man that is not learned shall say: I am not learned.

20. Then shall the Lord God say unto him: The learned shall not read them, for they have rejected them, and I am able to do mine own work; wherefore thou shalt read the words which I shall give unto thee.

21. Touch not the things which are sealed, for I will bring them forth in mine own due time; for I will show unto the children of men that I am able to do mine own work.

22. Wherefore, when thou hast read the words which I have commanded thee, and obtained the witnesses which I have promised unto thee, then shalt thou seal up the book again, and hide it up unto me, that I may preserve the words which thou hast not read, until I shall see fit in mine own wisdom to reveal all things unto the children of men.

2N 27-96

10. And in that day there shall be a root of Jesse, which shall stand for an ensign of the people; to it shall the Gentiles seek; and his rest shall be glorious.

2N 21-85

8. And when that day shall come, it shall come to pass that kings shall shut their mouths; for that which had not been told them shall they see; and that which they had not heard shall they consider.

9. For in that day, for my sake shall the Father work a work, which shall be a great and a marvelous work [the *Book of Mormon*] among them; and there shall be among them those who will not believe it, although a man [Joseph Smith, Jr.] shall declare it unto them.

10. But behold, the life of my servant [Joseph Smith, Jr.] shall be in my hand; therefore they shall not hurt him, although he shall be marred because of them. Yet I will heal him, for I will show unto them [the people of the world] that my wisdom is greater than the cunning of the devil.

11. Therefore it shall come to pass that whosoever will not believe in my words, who am Jesus Christ, which the Father shall cause him [Joseph Smith, Jr.] to bring forth unto the Gentiles, and shall give unto him power that he shall bring them forth unto the Gentiles, (it shall be done even as Moses said) they shall be cut off from among my people who are of the covenant.

8N 21-448

23. ---Yea, behold I [Moroni I] say unto you, that those saints who have gone before me, who have possessed this land, shall cry, yea, even from the dust will they cry unto the Lord; and as the Lord liveth he will remember the covenant which he hath made with them.

24. And he knoweth their prayers, that they were in behalf of their brethren.

25. And behold, their prayers were also in behalf of him [Joseph Smith, Jr.] that the Lord should suffer to bring these things forth.

Mn 8-478

(It is interesting to note certain parallelisms between the references of Lehi I, to his son, Joseph, and those that could have been made to Joseph Smith, Jr.) 1. And now I speak unto you, Joseph, my last-born.

2. And may the Lord consecrate also unto thee this land, which is a most precious land, for thine inheritance and the inheritance of thy seed---

4. For behold, thou art the fruit of my loins; and I am a descendant of Joseph who was carried captive into Egypt. And great were the covenants of the Lord which he made unto Joseph.

5. Wherefore, Joseph truly saw our day. And he obtained a promise of the Lord, that out of the fruit of his loins the Lord God would raise up a righteous branch unto the house of Israel; ---but a branch which was to be broken off, nevertheless, to be remembered in the covenants of the Lord that the Messiah should be made manifest unto them in the latter days, in the spirit of power, unto the bringing of them out of darkness unto light---yea, out of hidden darkness and out of captivity unto freedom.

7. Yea, Joseph truly said: Thus saith the Lord unto me: A choice seer will I raise up out of the fruit of thy loins; and he shall be esteemed highly among the fruit of thy loins. And unto him will I give commandment that he shall do a work for the fruit of thy loins, his brethren, which shall be of great worth unto them, even to the bringing of them to the knowledge of the covenants which I have made with thy fathers.

8. And I will give unto him a commandment that he shall do none other work, save the work which I shall command him. And I will make him great in mine eyes; for he shall do my work.

9. And he shall be great like unto Moses, whom I have said I would raise up unto you, to deliver my people, O house of Israel.

11. But a seer will I raise up out of the fruit of thy loins; and unto him will I give power to bring forth my word unto the seed of thy loins---and not to the bringing forth of my word only, saith the Lord, but to the convincing them of my word, which shall have already gone forth among them.

12. Wherefore, the fruit of thy loins shall write; and the loins of Judah shall write; and that which shall be written by the

fruit of thy loins, and also that which shall be written by the fruit of the loins of Judah, shall grow together, unto the confounding of false doctrines---and bringing them to the knowledge of their fathers in the latter days, and also to the knowledge of my covenant, saith the Lord.

13. And out of weakness he shall be made strong, in that day when my work shall commence among all my people, unto the restoring thee, O house of Israel, saith the Lord.

14. And thus prophesied Joseph, saying: Behold, that seer will the Lord bless; and they that seek to destroy him shall be confounded; for this promise, which I have obtained of the Lord, of the fruit my loins, shall be fulfilled. Behold, I am sure of the fulfilling of this promise;

15. And his name shall be called after me [Joseph]; and it shall be after the name of his father. And he shall be like unto me; for the thing, which the Lord shall bring forth by his hand, by the power of the Lord shall bring my people unto salvation.

18. And the Lord said unto me also: I will raise up unto the fruit of thy loins; and I will make for him a spokesman. And I, behold, I will give unto him that he shall write the writing of the fruit of thy loins, unto the fruit of thy loins; and the spokesman of thy loins shall declare it.

22. And now, behold, my son Joseph, after this manner did my father of old prophesy.

23. Wherefore, because of this covenant thou art blessed; for thy seed shall not be destroyed, for they shall hearken unto the words of the book.

24. And there shall rise up one mightily among them who shall do much good, both in word and in deed, being an instrument in the hands of God, with exceeding faith, to work mighty wonders, and do that thing which is great in the sight of God, unto the bringing to pass much restoration unto the house of Israel, and unto the seed of thy brethren.

25. ---Remember the words of thy dying father. Amen. 2N 3-55

4. WITNESSES SHALL ESTABLISH THE AUTHENTICITY OF THE ANCIENT RECORDS AND CONSEQUENTLY, THE BOOK OF MORMON. (*See Appendix A, Part II.*) 2. And behold, ye [the translator of the ancient records—Joseph Smith, Jr.] may be privileged that ye may show the plates unto those who shall assist to bring forth this work;

3. And unto three shall they [the ancient records] be shown by the power of God; wherefore they shall know of a surety that these things are true.

E 5-487

12. ---the book [the ancient records] shall be hid from the eyes of the world, that the eyes of none shall behold it save it be that

three witnesses shall behold it, by the power of God, besides him to whom the book shall be delivered; and they shall testify to the truth of the book and the things therein.

13. And there is none other which shall view it, save it be a few according to the will of God, to bear testimony of his word unto the children of men; for the Lord God hath said that the words of the faithful should speak as if it were from the dead.

14. Wherefore, the Lord God will proceed to bring forth the words of the book; and in the mouth of as many witnesses as seemeth him good will he establish his word; and wo be unto him that rejecteth the word of God! 2N 27-96

4. And in the mouth of three witnesses shall these things be established; and the testimony of three, and this work, in the which shall be shown forth the power of God and also his word, of which the Father, and the Son, and the Holy Ghost bear record—and all this shall stand as a testimony against the world at the last day. E 5-487

5. WORDS FROM THE PROPHETS OF OLD TO THOSE WHO WOULD CRITICIZE THE RECORDS OF THE LORD.

(A warning from the ancient writers to those who would hold lightly the message of the Lord which is given in their records.)

21. And he that shall breathe out wrath and strifes against the work of the Lord, and against the covenant people of the Lord who are the house of Israel, and shall say: We will destroy the work of the Lord, and the Lord will not remember his covenant which he hath made unto the house of Israel—the same is in danger to be hewn down and cast into the fire; [Hitler was burned to death?]

22. For the eternal purposes of the Lord shall roll on, until all his promise shall be fulfilled. Mn 8-473

29. And I will remember the covenant which I have made with my people; and I have covenanted with them that I would gather them together in mine own due time, ---unto---the land of Jerusalem, 3N 20-440

27. And wo unto them that seek deep to hide their counsel from the Lord! And their works are in the dark; and they say: Who seeth us, and who knoweth us? And they also say: Surely, your turning of things upside down shall be esteemed as the potter's clay. But behold, I will show unto them, saith the Lord of hosts, that I know all their works. For shall the work say of him that made it, he made me not? Or shall the thing framed say of him that framed it, he had not understanding?

28. But behold, saith the Lord of Hosts: I will show unto the children of men that it is yet a very little while and Lebanon shall be turned into a fruitful field; and the fruitful field shall be esteemed as a forest. 2N 27-97

4. And when ye shall see these sayings coming forth among you, then ye need not any longer spurn at the doings of the Lord, for the sword of his justice is in his right hand; and behold, at that day, if ye shall spurn at his doings he will cause that it shall soon overtake you.

5. Wo unto him that spurneth at the doings of the Lord; yea, wo unto him that shall deny the Christ and his works!

6. Yea, wo unto him that shall deny the revelations of the Lord, and that shall say the Lord no longer worketh by revelation, or by prophecy, or by gifts, or by tongues, or by healings, or by the power of the Holy Ghost!

8. Yea, and ye need not any longer hiss, nor spurn, nor make game of the Jews, nor any of the remnant of the house of Israel; for behold, the Lord remembereth his covenant unto them, and he will do unto them according to that which he hath sworn.

9. Therefore ye need not suppose that ye can turn the right hand of the Lord unto the left, that he may not execute judgment unto the fulfilling of the covenant which he hath made unto the house of Israel.

3N 29-455

16. Some things they [the holy records—the Book of Mormon] may have guessed right [the critics will say], among so many; but behold, we know that all these great and marvelous works cannot come to pass, of which has been spoken.

H 16-398

23. And I said unto him: Lord, the Gentiles will mock at these things, because of our weakness in writing; for Lord thou hast made us mighty in word by faith, but thou hast not made us mighty in writing; for thou hast made all this people that they could speak much, because of the Holy Ghost which thou hast given them;

25. Thou hast also made our words powerful and great, even that we cannot write them; wherefore, when we write we behold our weakness, and stumble because of the placing of our words; and I fear lest the Gentiles shall mock at our words.

26. And when I had said this, the Lord spake unto me, saying: Fools mock, but they shall mourn; and my grace is sufficient for the meek, that they shall take no advantage of your weakness;

28. Behold, I will show unto the Gentiles their weakness, and I will show unto them that faith, hope and charity bringeth unto me—the fountain of all righteousness.

36. And it came to pass that I prayed unto the Lord that he would give unto the Gentiles grace, that they might have harity.

37. And it came to pass that the Lord said unto me: If they have not charity it mattereth not unto thee, thou hast been faithful; wherefore, thy garments shall be made clean. And because thou hast seen thy weakness thou shalt be made strong, even unto the sitting down in the place which I have prepared in the mansions of my father.

E 13-502

IV. OTHER RECORDS

(Other records will come forth which will testify to the mission of Jesus Christ, and which will reinforce the testimony of the Bible and the Book of Mormon.) 17. There is nothing which is secret save it shall be made manifest in the light; and there is nothing which is sealed upon the earth save it shall be loosed. 2N 30-103

1. *THE RECORDS OF THE LOST TRIBES OF ISRAEL TO BE MADE MANIFEST.* 12. ---I shall also speak unto the other tribes of the house of Israel, which I have led away, and they shall write it; and I shall also speak unto all nations of the earth and they shall write it.

14. ---and my word---shall be gathered in one. 2N 29-101

2. *THE SEALED RECORDS OF THE JAREDITES.* *(These are not to be revealed to the world, unless the world "proves" itself. See Chapter II, Part I.)* 1. And the Lord commanded the brother of Jared--- [to] write the things which he had seen; and they were forbidden to come unto the children of men until after that he should be lifted upon the cross; E 4-485

27. And the Lord said unto him: Write these things and seal them up; and I will show them in mine own due time unto the children of men. E 3-485

6. For the Lord said unto me [Moroni I]: They shall not go forth unto the Gentiles until the day that they shall repent of their iniquity, and become clean before the Lord. E 4-485

3. *THE REVELATIONS OF JOHN.* *(Certain revelations of John were to be withheld until the last days.)* 15. Behold, when ye shall rend that veil of unbelief which doth cause you to remain in your awful state of wickedness, and hardness of heart, and blindness of mind, then shall the great and marvelous things which have been hid up from the foundation of the world from you—yea, when ye shall call upon the Father in my name, with a broken heart and a contrite spirit, then shall ye know that the Father hath remembered the covenant which he made unto your fathers, O house of Israel.

16. And then shall my revelations which I have caused to be written by my servant John be unfolded in the eyes of all the people. Remember, when ye see these things, ye shall know that the time is at hand that they shall be made manifest in very deed. E 4-486

4. OTHER NEPHITE WRITINGS TO COME FORTH.

15. But behold, there are many books and many records of every kind, and they have been kept chiefly by the Nephites.

16. And they have been handed down from one generation to another--- H 3-364

9. But behold there are records which do contain all the proceedings of this people; and a shorter but true account was given by Nephi. 3N 5-409

5. *OTHER WRITINGS OF THE GENTILES.* 39. And after it [the *Bible*] had come forth unto them I beheld other books, which came forth by the power of the Lamb, from the Gentiles unto them [the Lamanites] unto the convincing of the Gentiles and the remnant of the seed of my brethren, and also the Jews who were scattered upon the face of the earth, that the records of the prophets and the twelve apostles of the Lamb are true. 1N 13-25

V. THE RECORDS SHALL BECOME AS ONE— THE WORD OF GOD UNIFIED

1. *ALL THE RECORDS OF THE LORD WILL BECOME ONE RECORD.* (*The Jews who were the first receivers of revelation and the Gentiles who were the second receivers of revelation, will have records which correlate. The Bible will go from the Jew to the Gentile, the Book of Mormon will go from the Gentile to the Jew—the first shall be last, and the last shall be first. See Isaiah.*)

12. And when these things come, bringeth to pass the scripture which saith, there are they who were first, who shall be last; and there are they who were last, who shall be first. E 13-504

42. And the time cometh that he [Christ] shall manifest himself unto all nations, both unto the Jews and also unto the Gentiles; and after he has manifested himself unto the Jews and also unto the Gentiles, then he shall manifest himself unto the Gentiles and also unto the Jews, and the last shall be first, and the first shall be last. 1N 13-25

40. And the angel spake unto me [Nephi I] saying: These last records [the *Book of Mormon*, etc.] which thou hast seen among the Gentiles shall establish the truth of the first [the *Bible*] which are of the twelve apostles of the Lamb, and shall make known the plain and precious things which have been taken away---

41. ---wherefore they both [the last and the first] shall be established in one, for there is one God and one shepherd over all the earth. 1N 13-25

CHART 26

*ANCIENT LEADERS WHOSE NAMES APPEAR IN THE BIBLE AND IN THE BOOK OF MORMON

<i>Ancient Men</i>	<i>Ancient Prophets</i>
Adam	Abraham
Abel	Isaac
Cain	Jacob
Cherubim & Flaming Sword	Joseph
Jesse	Moses
Melchizedek	Elijah
Noah	Isaiah
David	Jeremiah
Solomon	Samuel
Zedekiah	Malachi
<i>Ancient Women</i>	(Christ gives to the Nephites the words of God to Malachi)
Eve—wife of Adam	
Sarah—wife of Abraham	
Mary—mother of Christ	

*Ancient Prophets listed on the Brass Plates but not included in the Bible:
Neum, Ezias, Zenos, Zenock.

The Brass Plates which were brought from Jerusalem contained ancient scripture. (See Chapter II, Part I, Section II.)

2. THE “LAST” AND THE “FIRST” ARE BOTH RECORDS OF ISRAEL. (“*The Book of Mormon records came from the house of Israel on the Western Hemisphere—the Bible records came from the house of Israel on the Eastern Hemisphere.*”) 17. --- [the coming forth of the records from the Western Hemisphere by way of the house of Israel through the seed of Lehi] will not come to pass until after they [the seed of Lehi] are scattered by the Gentiles; ---[and the records—the *Book of Mormon*] shall come by way of the Gentiles, that the Lord may show his power unto the Gentiles, for the very cause that he shall be rejected of the Jews, 1N 15-29

14. And after the house of Israel should be scattered they should be gathered together again; or, in fine, after the Gentiles had received the fulness of the Gospel, the natural branches of the olive-tree, or the remnants of the house of Israel, should be grafted in, or come to the knowledge of the true Messiah, their Lord and their Redeemer. 1N 10-17

8. Therefore repent, and be baptized in the name of Jesus, and lay hold upon the gospel of Christ, which shall be set before you, not only in this record [the *Book of Mormon*], but also in the record [the *Bible*] which shall come unto the Gentiles from the Jews, which record shall come from the Gentiles unto you [the house of Israel on the Western Hemisphere—the Lamanites].

9. For behold, this is written for the intent that ye may believe that; and if ye believe that ye will believe this also; Mn 7-471

6. And now, if I have no authority for these things, judge ye; for ye shall know that I have authority when ye shall see me, and we shall stand before God at the last day. Amen. E 5-487



*CONCLUSION

1. And now I, Mormon, make a record of the things which I have both seen and heard, and call it the *Book of Mormon*. Mn 1-460

11. And behold, I do make the record on plates which I have made with my own hands. 3N 5-409

13. And now there are many records kept of the proceedings of this people, by many of this people, which are particular and very large, concerning them.

15. ---[Yeah] there are many books and many records of every kind, and they have been kept chiefly by the Nephites. H 3-364

9. ---behold there are records which do contain all the proceedings of this people; ---a shorter but true account was given by Nephi [I].

10. Therefore I have made my record of these things according to the record of Nephi, which was engraven on the plates which were called the plates of Nephi. 3N 5-409

14. But behold, a hundredth part of the proceedings of this people, yea, the account of the Lamanites and of the Nephites, and their wars, and contentions, and dissensions, and their preaching, and their prophecies, and their shipping and their building of ships, and their building of temples, and of synagogues and their sanctuaries, and their righteousness, and their wickedness, and their murders, and their robbings, and their plunderings, and all manner of abominations and whoredoms, cannot be contained in this work. H 3-364

8. And there had many things transpired which, in the eyes of some, would be great and marvelous; nevertheless, they cannot all be written in this book; 3N 5-409

6. And now there cannot be written in this book even a hundredth part of the things which Jesus did truly teach unto the people;

*For key to reference symbols, see page 2.

8. And these things have I written, which are a lesser part of the things which he taught the people; and I have written them to the intent that they may be brought again unto this people [the Lamanites], from the Gentiles, according to the words which Jesus hath spoken.

8N 26-448

16. And they have been handed down from one generation to another by the Nephites, even until they have fallen into transgression and have been murdered, plundered, and hunted, and driven forth, and slain, and scattered upon the face of the earth, and mixed with the Lamanites until they are no more called Nephites, becoming wicked, and wild, and ferocious, yea, even becoming Lamanites.

H 3-364

4. O how foolish, and how vain, and how evil, and devilish, and how quick to do iniquity, and how slow to do good, are the children of men; yea, how quick to hearken unto the words of the evil one, and to set their hearts upon the vain things of the world!

5. Yea, how quick to be lifted up in pride; yea, how quick to boast, and do all manner of that which is iniquity; and how slow are they to remember the Lord their God, and to give ear unto his counsels, yea, how slow to walk in wisdom's paths!

1. And thus we can behold how false---[are] the hearts of the children of men; yea, we can see that the Lord in his great infinite goodness doth bless and prosper those who put their trust in him.

2. Yea, and we may see at the very time when he doth prosper his people---doing all things for the welfare and happiness of his people; yea, then is the time that they do harden their hearts, and do forget the Lord their God---yea, and this because of their ease, and their exceedingly great prosperity.

3. And thus we see that except the Lord doth chasten his people with many afflictions, yea, except he doth visit them with death and with terror, and with famine and with all manner of pestilence, they will not remember him.

H 12-888

20. And these things doth the Spirit manifest unto me; therefore I write unto you all. And for this cause I write unto you, that ye may know that ye must all stand before the judgment-seat of Christ, yea, every soul who belongs to the whole human family of Adam; and ye must stand to be judged of your works, whether they be good or evil;

21. And also that ye may believe the gospel of Jesus Christ, which ye shall have among you; and also that the Jews, the covenant people of the Lord, shall have other witnesses besides him whom they saw and heard, that Jesus, whom they slew, was the very Christ and the very God.

Mn 3-465

9. And when they [the descendants of the house of Israel—especially those on the Western Hemisphere] shall have received

this, which is expedient that they should have first, to try their faith, and if it shall so be that they shall believe these things, then shall the greater things be made manifest unto them. 3N 26-448

16. ---Remember, when ye see these things, ye shall know that the time is at hand that they shall be made manifest in very deed. E 4-486

26. ---[For] behold, all things are written by the Father; therefore, out of the books which shall be written shall the world be judged. 3N 27-451

9. ---I have told you this that ye may learn wisdom, that ye may learn---that there is no other way or means whereby man can be saved, only in and through Christ. Behold, he is the life and the light of the world. Behold, he is the word of truth and righteousness. A 38-292

22. And I would that I could persuade all ye ends of the earth to repent and prepare to stand before the judgment-seat of Christ. Mn 3-465

12. And behold, I am called Mormon, being called after the land of Mormon, ---

13. Behold, I am a disciple of Jesus Christ, the Son of God. I have been called of him to declare his word among his people, that they might have everlasting life. 3N 5-409

12. Therefore I, Mormon, do write the things which have been commanded me of the Lord. And now I, Mormon, make an end of my sayings,— 3N 26-448

34. And now I bid unto all, farewell. I soon go to rest in the paradise of God, until my spirit and body shall again reunite, and I am brought forth triumphant through the air, to meet you before the pleasing bar of the great Jehovah, the Eternal Judge of both quick and dead. Amen. M 10-522

T H E E N D

APPENDIX A

THE BOOK OF MORMON

PART I

THE ORIGIN OF THE BOOK OF MORMON

A brief history of Joseph Smith, and
his translation of the *Book of Mormon*.

Joseph Smith, translator of the *Book of Mormon* and founder of the Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints, was born December 23, 1805, in Sharon, Windsor County, Vermont. He was about ten years of age when his family settled in Palmyra, New York. It was in Palmyra at the age of fourteen that Joseph Smith received a divine revelation that marked the beginning of a number of such incidents which contributed to his singular religious life—a life which was tragically terminated some twenty-four years later, when he was killed at the hands of a mob, June 27, 1844. His death as a martyr ended a life later to receive world-wide recognition.

The *Book of Mormon* was translated from some ancient Nephite records (plates of ore) by this Joseph Smith (known as the "Prophet"). He received the plates on September 22, 1827, and started the first translation on April 12, 1828, with Martin Harris as scribe. Mr. Harris asked permission to show the manuscript to his wife. When permission was granted, he took the manuscript to his home. While it was in his possession, the manuscript was either lost, stolen, or destroyed, and was never returned to Joseph Smith. Because of this unhappy incident, the work of translation ceased. In the following spring, April 7, 1829, Joseph Smith again began to translate from the ancient records—this time with Oliver Cowdery as scribe. The part of the translation which had been lost was not re-translated. However, included in the new translation (and in the records from which the translation was made) was a parallel account of some of the events of the first translation. (See Chapter II, "Small Plates and Large Plates of Nephi" and Charts 3 and 4.) The work of translation was finally completed sometime in the late summer or early fall of 1829 (the exact date is not recorded), and the ancient records were then returned to the heavenly messenger. The *Book of Mormon* was first published in March, 1830.

The following is an account by Joseph Smith concerning the

divine origin of the ancient plates and his part in the translation of these records. He tells of his vision (September 21, 1823) and the task assigned to him by an angel of the Lord:

"While I was thus in the act of calling upon God I discovered a light appearing in my room, which continued to increase until the room was lighter than at noonday, when immediately a personage appeared at my bedside, standing in the air, for his feet did not touch the floor. ---

Not only was his robe exceedingly white, but his whole person was glorious beyond description, and his countenance truly like lightning. The room was exceedingly light, but not so very bright as immediately around his person. When I first looked upon him, I was afraid; but the fear soon left me.

He called me by name, and said unto me that he was a messenger sent from the presence of God to me, and that his name was Moroni; that God had a work for me to do; and that my name should be had for good and evil among all nations, kindreds, and tongues, or that it should be both good and evil spoken of among all people.

He said there was a book deposited, written upon gold plates, giving an account of the former inhabitants of this continent, and the source from whence they sprang. He also said that the fulness of the everlasting Gospel was contained in it, as delivered by the Savior to the ancient inhabitants;

Also, that there were two stones in silver bows—and these stones, fastened to a breastplate, constituted what is called the Urim and Thummim—deposited with the plates; and the possession and use of these stones were what constituted *Seers* in ancient or former times; and that God had prepared them for the purpose of translating the book. ---"

Joseph Smith was visited three more times that night by the messenger who repeated the same message. The following morning the messenger again visited him and advised him to tell his father.

"I obeyed; I returned to my father in the field, and rehearsed the whole matter to him. He replied to me that it was God, and told me to go and do as commanded by the messenger. I left the field, and went to the place where the messenger had told me the plates were deposited; and owing to the distinctness of the vision which I had had concerning it, I knew the place the instant that I arrived there.

Convenient to the village of Manchester, Ontario County, New York, stands a hill of considerable size, and the most elevated of any in the neighborhood. On the west side of this hill, not far from the top, under a stone of considerable size, lay the plates, deposited in a stone box. This stone was thick

and rounding in the middle on the upper side, and thinner towards the edges, so that the middle part of it was visible above the ground, but the edge all around was covered with earth.

Having removed the earth, I obtained a lever, which I got fixed under the edge of the stone, and with a little exertion raised it up. I looked in, and there indeed did I behold the plates, the Urim and Thummim, and the breastplate, as stated by the messenger. The box in which they lay was formed by laying stones together in some kind of cement. In the bottom of the box were laid two stones crossways of the box, and on these stones lay the plates and the other things with them.

I made an attempt to take them out, but was forbidden by the messenger, and was again informed that the time for bringing them forth had not yet arrived, neither would it, until four years from that time; but he told me that I should come to that place precisely in one year from that time, and that he would meet with me, and that I should continue to do so until the time should come for obtaining the plates. ---

At length the time arrived for obtaining the plates, the Urim and Thummim, and the breastplate. On the twenty-second of September, one thousand eight hundred and twenty-seven, having gone as usual at the end of another year to the place where they were deposited, the same heavenly messenger delivered them up to me with this charge: That I should be responsible for them; that if I should let them go carelessly, or through any neglect of mine, I should be cut off; but that if I should use all my endeavors to preserve them, until he, the messenger, should call for them, they should be protected. ---"

(The above statements, and the testimonies which follow, are excerpts from the account which tells of the divine origin of the plates from which the *Book of Mormon* was translated. For the complete record, see *Pearl of Great Price*, pages 50-54, and the *History of the Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints*, Volume 1, Chapters 1 to 6 inclusive.)

PART II

WITNESSES OF THE BOOK OF MORMON

To authenticate the *Book of Mormon* and to protect it from abuse and criticism, three witnesses of the ancient records (from which the *Book of Mormon* was translated) signed a testimony to the effect that they had seen these plates. Later, eight other witnesses signed a similar testimony. These testimonies, which now appear in the introduction of the *Book of Mormon*, are given here for the information of the reader. It is interesting to note that the lives of the three witnesses formed a striking parallel. Although all three left the church (two were excommunicated), none of them refuted their testimonies at any time, and all of them on their death beds reiterated their original testimonies. Two of the witnesses came back into the church, but one (David Whitmer) never regained church membership. On many occasions he could easily have denied his testimony since he was publicly invited to do so, but he never did. He even published statements to the effect that certain parties had misrepresented him and had falsely accused him of denying his testimony.

The ancient historians (whose records were translated under the title of "The Book of Mormon" by Joseph Smith) had something to say regarding the witnesses of their writings:

"And unto three shall they [the ancient records] be shown by the power of God; wherefore they shall know of a surety that these things are true."
E 5-487 v. 8

"---three witnesses shall behold it [the book], by the power of God, beside him to whom the book shall be delivered; and they shall testify to the truth of the book and the things therein."
2N 27-69 v. 12

"And in mouth of three witnesses shall these things be established; ---and all this shall stand as a testimony against the world at the last day."
E 5-487 v. 4

THE TESTIMONY OF THE THREE WITNESSES IS AS FOLLOWS:

BE IT KNOWN unto all nations, kindreds, tongues, and people, unto whom this work shall come: That we, through the grace of God, the Father, and our Lord Jesus Christ, have seen the plates which contain this record, which is a record of the people of Nephi, and also of the Lamanites, their brethren, and also of the people of Jared, who came from the tower of which hath been spoken. And we also know that they have been translated by the gift and power of God, for his voice hath declared it unto us; wherefore we know of a surety that the work is true. And we also testify that we have seen the engravings which are upon the plates; and they have been shown unto us by the power of God, and not of man. And we declare with words of soberness, that an angel of God came down from heaven, and he brought and laid before our eyes, that we beheld and saw the plates, and the engravings thereon; and we know that it is by the grace of God the Father, and our Lord Jesus Christ, that we beheld and bear record that these things are true. And it is marvelous in our eyes. Nevertheless, the voice of the Lord commanded us that we should bear record of it; wherefore, to be obedient unto the commandments of God, we bear testimony of these things. And we know that if we are faithful in Christ, we shall rid our garments of the blood of all men, and be found spotless before the judgment-seat of Christ, and shall dwell with him eternally in the heavens. And the honor be to the Father, and to the Son, and to the Holy Ghost, which is one God. Amen.

OLIVER COWDERY
DAVID WHITMER
MARTIN HARRIS

THE TESTIMONY OF THE EIGHT WITNESSES IS AS FOLLOWS:

BE IT KNOWN unto all nations, kindreds, tongues, and people, unto whom this work shall come: That Joseph Smith, Jun., the translator of this work, has shown unto us the plates of which hath been spoken, which have the appearance of gold; and as many of the leaves as the said Smith has translated we did handle with our hands; and we also saw the engravings thereon, all of which has the appearance of ancient work, and of curious workmanship. And this we bear record with words of soberness, that the said Smith has shown unto us, for we have seen and hefted, and know of a surety that the said Smith has got the plates of which we have spoken. And we give our names unto the world, to witness unto the world that which we have seen. And we lie not, God bearing witness of it.

CHRISTIAN WHITMER
JACOB WHITMER
PETER WHITMER, JUN.
JOHN WHITMER

HIRAM PAGE
JOSEPH SMITH, SEN.
HYRUM SMITH
SAMUEL H. SMITH

APPENDIX B

*STATEMENTS BY THE AUTHOR

PART I

A STATEMENT BY THE AUTHOR CONCERNING THE ORIGIN OF THIS VOLUME

In the spring of 1944 I became interested in a study of archæology. Due to some challenging discoveries made in connection with my study of archæology, I was attracted to certain phases of the field which seemed to correlate with data found in the *Book of Mormon*. In order to make my correlations the more accurate, it became necessary that I make a careful analysis of the contents of the *Book of Mormon*.

When I had completed my analysis of the *Book of Mormon*, I realized that, in addition to its archæological value the analysis could be useful to others who were engaged in similar research. Indeed, my material was so arranged that it could assist those who desired information concerning certain phases of the *Book of Mormon* and it could, therefore, be used as a reference guide for that *Book*. These impressions coupled with the reasons listed below in the "survey" influenced me to organize my material into this present volume, "*The Book of Mormon Guide Book*."

I had upon many occasions discussed the *Book of Mormon* with members of the Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints (the church which uses the *Book of Mormon* as one of its sources of doctrine) and with others who were not members of that Church. The impression resulting from these discussions was that the *Book of Mormon* is neither as thoroughly understood nor as widely known as it should be. The following conclusions are the result of my survey:

1. Many members of the Church neglect their opportunity to read and to study the *Book of Mormon*. As a result, many are not versed as to its content and cannot discuss the *Book* intelligently.
2. Many complain that the *Book of Mormon* is "hard to read."

*See Appendix D for a statement by the author concerning the correlation of the *Book of Mormon* lands and the lands of the Western Hemisphere.

3. Many of those who teach the *Book* in Sunday School or in other church organizations neglect certain parts of the *Book* and consequently some of the information is "lost."

4. Many know the "gospel" of the *Book of Mormon* from hearsay, but have not felt the challenge to seek out the information for themselves.

5. Many passive members of the Church could be re-awakened to the teachings and mission of Jesus Christ, if they could have his teachings and doctrines arranged in a more simplified form.

6. Many people who are not members of the Church could acquire an appreciation of the *Book of Mormon* if the material contained therein was made more accessible.

7. Many people involved in research might become interested in the *Book of Mormon* as a source of reference if the material therein were presented in a scientific manner.

The author makes no claim that the research contained in this volume is conclusive nor that the arrangement of the *Book of Mormon* contents presented here is complete. Time will undoubtedly add much, in the way of additional findings, to this present edition. The maps presented here (such as Map 3) will especially be subject to change. The author will welcome suggestions and contributions which will tend to improve the accuracy of this work, since a better understanding of the *Book of Mormon* is the outstanding aim of this volume. The author wishes to thank those who have already assisted either directly or indirectly in the execution of this book.

It is hoped that this volume will challenge and excite the interest of many to commence a serious study of one of the greatest books of the Western Hemisphere, the *Book of Mormon*.

*April, 1947.

(*Printer's Note:* It was the desire of the author to have this book printed during the Centennial year of 1947, which commemorated the 100th anniversary of the arrival of the "Mormon" pioneers into Great Salt Lake Valley. The manuscript was brought to us in April, 1947, but due to a back-log of orders and other scheduled work, we were unable to print and deliver this book before November, 1948.)

PART II

THE AMERICAN INDIAN — SALUTED AS THE FIRST AMERICAN

The American Indian is certainly without honor in his own homeland. He belongs to a race which not only has been subjected to prolonged abuse, but which is still neglected and deprived of the rights of citizenship. Few countries on the Western Hemisphere provide a plan for the improvement of the status of the "First Americans." It is a disgrace that such a country as the United States of America, with its progressive outlook, free educational system, and generous acceptance into its ranks of all other peoples still withholds from the American Indian his rights of citizenship. Much civic work is needed to bring about a correction of this condition.

One cannot study the archæology of the American Indian without acquiring a deep sympathy for the people who made that archæology possible. One cannot study the *Book of Mormon* without looking at and re-evaluating the Indian race. The author, therefore, has long had a deep sympathy for and a desire to give assistance to these descendants of a once great culture.

That the work of this volume might not only help to awaken the public to a consciousness of the status of the Indian race, but that it might bring about a more tangible assistance to that race is the hope of the author. In line with this objective, the author has set up a trust fund into which a large part of the profit from the sale of this book will go. (Upon her death, ninety percent of the net profit will be placed in this fund.) This fund is to be allocated for free medical services and supplies for the Indians of Guatemala. Guatemala has been chosen in this instance because of its large Indian population, and because of its great need for health and sanitation clinics. The author also wishes to promote the suggestion that others might find joy and satisfaction by making similar bequests.

APPENDIX C

THE GEOGRAPHY OF THE BOOK OF MORMON LANDS

The topography of the land, the migrations of the people, and the locations of sites as found in the *Book of Mormon*.

For those who may wish to make a careful study of the topography of the lands of the *Book of Mormon*, *all the quotations* from the *Book* concerning this subject have been arranged in the following pages *in their original order of sequence*. This arrangement has been followed carefully so that the research worker may have an accurate reference available—should he be interested in tracing the movements of the ancient peoples of the *Book of Mormon*, or be interesting in re-checking the locations of any of the sites given on the maps in this volume (see Chapter III, and Appendix D). The author feels that this material will be of value also to the casual reader who may have an interest in the field of archæology.

So that the information may be understood more easily, the author has grouped the quotations under headings. This has been done to lessen the confusion of so much heterogeneous material. The order of the quotations, however, has been maintained in the same sequence as found in the *Book of Mormon*. In Part I, the landmarks found in the *Book of Mormon* are classified; in Part II, the migrations of the ancient peoples from the "Old World" are traced; in Part III, the migrations of the ancient peoples about the Western Hemisphere are followed; in Part IV, the movements of the ancient peoples to northern locations on the Western Hemisphere are listed; and in Part V, an account of the volcanic destruction which took place on the Western Hemisphere at the time of Christ's appearance there is given. (A discussion of the possible correlation between the lands of the *Book of Mormon* and the lands of the Western Hemisphere is presented by the author in Appendix D.)

PART I

OUTSTANDING LANDMARKS AND IDENTIFYING CHARACTERISTICS OF THE BOOK OF MORMON LANDS

I. THE NARROW STRIP OF WILDERNESS (Between Nephi and Zarahemla)

(The narrow strip of wilderness running from east to west may have been either narrow from north to south, or from east to west—the Book of Mormon does not distinguish which.)

27. [The Lamanites' land of *Nephi*] was bordering even to the sea, on the east and on the west, and which was divided from the land of *Zarahemla* by a narrow strip of wilderness, which ran from the sea east even to the sea west, and round about on the borders of the seashore, and the borders of the wilderness which was on the north by the land of *Zarahemla*, through the borders of *Manti*, by the head of the river *Sidon*, running from the east towards the west—and thus were the Lamanites and the Nephites divided.

A 22-258

8. And the land of *Nephi* did run in a straight course from the east sea to the west.

11. And thus he [Moroni] cut off all the strongholds of the Lamanites in the east wilderness, yea, and also on the west, fortifying the line between the Nephites and the Lamanites, between the land of *Zarahemla* and the land of *Nephi*, from the west sea, running by the head of the river *Sidon*—the Nephites possessing all the land *northward*---

A 50-821

II. THE RIVER SIDON

(The waters of Mormon, and the waters of Sebus may have been rivers, however, they may have been lakes. The River Sidon is the only river on the Western Hemisphere given a definite name. The Book of Mormon tells of many rivers in the land Northward, but gives no names.)

15. ---the hill *Amnihu*, which was east of the river *Sidon*, which ran by the land of *Zarahemla*,

A 2-199

26. And it came to pass that the people of *Nephi* [Nephites] took their tents, and departed out of the valley of *Gideon* towards their city, which was the city of *Zarahemla*.

27. And behold, as they were crossing the river *Sidon*, the Lamanites---came upon them---

34. ---he cleared the ground---throwing the bodies of the Lamanites who had been slain into the waters of *Sidon*,

A 2-200

3. And now as many of the Lamanites---who had been slain upon the bank of the river *Sidon* were cast into the waters of *Sidon*; and behold their bones are in the depths of the sea, and they are many. A 3-201

4. ---and many were baptized in the waters of *Sidon* A 4-208

7. ---and he [Alma] departed from them, yea, from the church which was in the city of *Zarahemla*, and went over upon the east of the river *Sidon*, into the valley of *Gideon*, there having been a city built, A 6-210

3. ---Alma departed from thence [*Zarahemla*] and took his journey over into the land of *Melek*, on the west of the river *Sidon*.

6. ---Behold, the Lamanites will cross the river *Sidon* in the south wilderness, away up beyond the borders of the land of *Manti*. And behold there shall ye meet them, on the east of the river *Sidon*,

7. And it came to pass that *Zoram* and his sons crossed over the river *Sidon* [from *Zarahemla*], with their armies, and marched away beyond the borders of *Manti* into the south wilderness, which was on the east side of the river *Sidon*. A 16-235

27. ---[the land of *Nephi*] was divided from the land of *Zarahemla* by a narrow strip of wilderness, which ran---through the borders of *Manti*, by the head of the river *Sidon*, running from the east towards the west---

29. ---the Nephites had taken possession of all the northern parts of the land [of the Lamanites] bordering on the wilderness, at the head of the river *Sidon*, from the east to the west, round about on the wilderness side. A 22-253

22. Behold, now it came to pass that they [the Lamanites] durst not come against the Nephites in the borders of *Jershon*; therefore they departed out of the land of *Antionum* into the wilderness, and took their journey round about in the wilderness, away by the head of the river *Sidon*, that they might come into the land of *Manti* and take possession of the land; A 43-302

39. And it came to pass that the Lamanites became frightened---even until they began to flee towards the river *Sidon*.

40. ---and they [the Lamanites] crossed the waters of *Sidon*. And *Lehi* retained his armies upon the bank of the river *Sidon* that they should not cross.

41. ---*Moroni* and his army met the Lamanites in the valley, on the other side of the river *Sidon*, and began to fall on them and slay them. A 43-304

22. And it came to pass that they did cast their dead into the waters of *Sidon*, and they have gone forth and are buried in the depths of the sea. A 44-307

11. And thus he [*Moroni*] cut off all the strongholds of the Lamanites in the east wilderness; yea, and also on the west, fortifying the line between the Nephites and the Lamanites, between the land of *Zarahemla* and the land of *Nephi*, from the west sea, running by the head of the river *Sidon*--- A 50-821

25. Neither durst they [the Lamanites] march down against the city of *Zarahemla* [from the southwest section of the land of the Nephites]; neither durst they cross the head of *Sidon*, over to the city of *Nephihah*. A 56-339

III. THE WILDERNESS OF HERMOUNTS

(*This wilderness is north and west of the land of Zarahemla.*)

36. And they [the Lamanites] fled before the Nephites towards the wilderness which was west and north, away beyond the borders of the land [of *Zarahemla*];

37. ---they were scattered on the west, and on the north, until they had reached the wilderness, which was called *Hermounts*; and it was that part of the wilderness which was infested by wild and ravenous beasts. A 2-200

IV. THE NARROW NECK OF LAND (Between Bountiful and Desolation)

(For an analysis of "the narrow neck of land" see Appendix D, Map VI.)

32. And now, it was only the distance of a day and a half's journey for a Nephite, on the line *Bountiful* and the land *Desolation*, from the east to the west sea; and thus the land of *Nephi* and the land of *Zarahemla* were *nearly surrounded by water*, [Does it mean Desolation and Bountiful instead of Nephi and Zarahemla?] there being a small neck of land between the land *northward* and the land *southward*. A 22-254

34. And it came to pass that they did not head them [stop the people of Morianton] until they had come to the borders of the land *Desolation*; and there they did head them, by the narrow pass which led by the sea into the land *northward*, yea, by the sea, on the west and on the east. A 50-323

9. And he [Moroni] also sent orders unto him [Teancum] that he should fortify the land Bountiful, and secure the *narrow pass* which led into the land *northward*, lest the Lamanites should obtain that point and should have power to harass them on every side. A 52-328

5. And it came to pass that Hagoth, he being an exceedingly curious man, therefore he went forth and built him an exceedingly large ship, on the borders of the land *Bountiful*, by the land *Desolation*, and launched it forth into the west sea, by the narrow neck which led into the land *northward*. A 63-358

7. And there [in the southern part of the land Bountiful] they did fortify against the Lamanites, from the west sea, even unto the east; it being a day's journey for a Nephite, *on the line* which they had fortified and stationed their armies to defend their north country. H 4-367

23. And the land which was appointed [the people were gathered by Lachoneus] was the land of *Zarahemla* and the land *Bountiful*, yea, to the line which was between the land *Bountiful* and the land *Desolation*. 8N 3-405

29. And the Lamanites did give unto us [Nephites] the land *northward*, yea, even [south] to the narrow passage which led into the land *southward* [from Desolation]. And we did give unto the Lamanites all the land *southward* [Bountiful, Zarahemla, etc.] Mn 2-463

5. And it came to pass that I did cause my people that they should gather themselves together at the land *Desolation*, to a city which was in the borders, by the narrow pass which led into the land *southward*.

6. And there we did place our armies, that we might stop the armies of the Lamanites---therefore we did fortify against them with all our force. Mn 3-464

20. And they [the Jaredites had] built a great city by the narrow neck game. And the whole face of the land *northward* was covered by inhabitants.

21. And they did preserve the land *southward* for a wilderness, to get of land, by the place where the sea divides the land. E 10-497

V. THE HILL SHIM

(The Hill Shim was north of the narrow neck of land.)

3. ---when ye [Mormon] are about twenty and four years old---go to the land *Antum*, unto a hill which shall be called *Shim*; and there have I [Ammaron] deposited unto the Lord all the sacred engravings concerning this people. Mn 1-460

23. And now I, Mormon, seeing that the Lamanites were about to overthrow the land, therefore I did go to the hill *Shim*, and did take up all the records which Ammaron had hid up unto the Lord. Mn 4-467

3. ---wherefore Omer [the Jaredite] departed out of the land with his family, and traveled many days, and came over and passed by the hill *Shim*, and came by the place where the Nephites were destroyed [Cumorah], and thence eastward--- by the seashore. E 9-493

VI. THE HILL CUMORAH, IN THE LAND OF CUMORAH
(Known to the Jaredites as the Hill Ramah)

(The Hill Cumorah was the scene of the last great war of the Nephites.)

2. And I, Mormon, ---desired of him [the enemy leader] that he would grant unto us that we might gather together our people unto the land of *Cumorah*, by a hill which was called *Cumorah*, and there we would give them battle. Mn 6-469

2. And now it came to pass that after the great and tremendous battle at *Cumorah*, behold, the Nephites who had escaped into the country southward were hunted by the Lamanites, until they were all destroyed. Mn 8-472

3. ---[and Omer, the Jaredite] came over and passed by the hill *Shim*, and came over by the place where the Nephites were destroyed and from thence eastward, E 9-493

11. And it came to pass that the army of Coriantumr [the Jaredite] did pitch their tents by the hill *Ramah*; and it was that same hill [Cumorah] where my father Mormon did hide up the records unto the Lord, which were sacred. E 15-508

VII. THE LARGE LAND DIVISIONS OF
THE BOOK OF MORMON
(Listed from south to north)

1. *THE LAND OF FIRST INHERITANCE.* *(The point of arrival of the people of Lehi on the promised land, the Western Hemisphere.)*

28. ---and they [the Lamanites] were spread--- in the west in the land of *Nephi*, in the place of their fathers' *first inheritance*, and thus bordering along the seashore. A 22-253

2. *THE LAND OF NEPHI.* *(This name was given to the land by the followers of Nephi. They continued to call it this title even after they left it. What the Lamanites called the land after they*

had possessed it is a question, but it is mentioned in the Book of Mormon as the land of Nephi-Lehi. It was possibly east of the land of First Inheritance and probably extended farther north.)

32. ---thus the land of *Nephi* [was] ---nearly surrounded by water [?] A 22-254

8. And the land of *Nephi* did run in a straight course from the east sea to the west. A 50-321

27. ---[Now the land of *Nephi*] was bordering even to the sea, on the east and on the west, and---was divided from the land of *Zarahemla* by a narrow strip of wilderness, ---which was on the north by the land of *Zarahemla*, A 22-258

3. **THE LAND OF ZARAHEMLA.** (*The land of Zarahemla was north of a narrow strip of wilderness which separated Zarahemla from Nephi. It was south of the land of Bountiful. It had an east and west sea coast.*)

32. ---thus the land---of *Zarahemla* [was] nearly surrounded by water, [?] A 22-254

9. And it came to pass that when Moroni had driven all the Lamanites out of the east wilderness, which was north of the lands of their own possessions [the land of *Nephi*], he caused that the inhabitants who were in the land of *Zarahemla* and in the land round about should go forth into the east wilderness, even to the borders by the seashore, and possess the land. A 50-321

22. ---Helaman did march---to the support of the people in the borders of the land on the south by the west sea. A 53-333

7. ---Moroni caused that his armies should go forth---and drove all the Lamanites---into their own lands [the land of *Nephi*], which were south of the land of *Zarahemla*. A 50-321

29. ---the Nephites had taken possession of all the northern parts of the land---on the north, even until they came to the land which they called *Bountiful*. A 22-258

23. ---[The Lamanites came up from the south and] did not tarry in the land of *Zarahemla*, but---did march forth with a large army, even towards the city of *Bountiful*; [to] obtain the north parts of the land. H 1-361

4. **THE LAND OF BOUNTIFUL.** (*The land of Bountiful was north of Zarahemla and possibly east, and was south of land of Desolation.*)

22. ---we will give up the land of *Jershon* [in northeastern *Zarahemla*], which is on the east by the sea, which joins the land of *Bountiful*, which is on the south of the land of *Bountiful*; A 27-265

5. ---they [the Lamanites] succeeded in obtaining possession of the land of *Zarahemla*; yea, and also all the lands, even unto the land which was near the land *Bountiful*.

8. ---[And thus the Lamanites] had obtained all the possession of the Nephites which was in the land *southward*. H 4-367

7. And there [the land of *Bountiful*] they [the Nephites] did fortify against the Lamanites, from the west sea, even unto the east; it being a day's journey for a Nephite, on the line which they had fortified H 4-367

30. And it [Bountiful] bordered upon the land which they called *Desolation*, it being so far northward that it came into the land which had been peopled and destroyed,

31. ---Thus the land on the northward was called *Desolation*, and the land on the southward was called *Bountiful*, it being the wilderness which is filled with all manner of wild animals of every kind, a part of which had come from the land *northward* for food.

32. And now, it was only the distance of a day and a half's journey for a Nephite, on the line *Bountiful* and the land *Desolation*, from the east to the west sea---there being a small neck of land between the land northward and the land southward.

A 22-254

5. *THE LAND OF DESOLATION.* (*The land of Desolation was north of the land of Bountiful, and was the southern part of the land Northward.*)

31. ---Thus the land on the northward was called *Desolation*, and the land on the southward was called *Bountiful*,

32. And now, it was only the distance of a day and a half's journey for a Nephite, on the line *Bountiful* and the land *Desolation*, from the east to the west sea;---there being a small neck of land between the land northward and the land southward.

A 22-254

30. ---*Desolation*---being so far northward that it came into the land which had been peopled and been destroyed,

A 22-254

6. ---[Now the land northward was called *Desolation* but] no part of the land was desolate, save it were for timber; but because of the greatness of the destruction of the people who had before inhabited the land it was called desolate.

H 3-364

6. *THE LAND OF MORON.* (*The land of Moron was a land of the Jaredite Kingdom.*)

6. Now the land of *Moron*, where the king dwelt, was near the land which is called *Desolation* by the Nephites.

E 7-489

7. *THE LAND NORTHWARD.* (*The land Northward was the title given all the land north of Bountiful. This title was used also to designate the lands settled far to the north by ocean colonizations. It was specifically used to designate the land immediately north of the land of Desolation. The land north of Desolation also was called the land far northward.*)

30. ---[The land of *Desolation*] being so far northward that it came into the land [Northward] which had been peopled and destroyed,

A 22-254

30. ---[The land Northward] being the place of their [the people of Zarahemla or Mulek] first landing.

31. And they came from there up into the south wilderness

A 22-254

29. ---the land which was northward, which was covered with large bodies of water,

A 50-323

10. ---timber was exceeding scarce in the land *northward*,

H 3-364

3. ---an exceeding great many [Nephites] who departed out of the land of Zarahemla, and went forth unto the land *northward* to inherit the land.

4. And they did travel to an exceeding great distance, insomuch that they came to large bodies of water and many rivers.

5. Yea, and even they did spread forth into all parts of the land, into

whatever parts it had not been rendered desolate and without timber, because of the many inhabitants who had before inherited the land.

9. And the people who were in the land *northward* did dwell in tents, and houses of cement, and they did suffer whatsoever tree should spring up upon the face of the land that it should grow up, that in time they might have timber to build their houses,

10. And it came to pass as timber was exceeding scarce in the land *northward*, they did send forth much by the way of shipping. H 3-363

8. *THE LAND OF MULEK AND THE LAND OF LEHI.* (*The great northern and southern divisions of the lands of the Book of Mormon. The divisions occurred at "the narrow neck of land" which separated the land of Bountiful and the land of Desolation. The land of Mulek contained the land of Desolation, the land Northward, and the land Far-Northward; the land of Lehi contained the land of Bountiful, the land of Zarahemla, the land of Nephi, and the land of First Inheritance. Some have taken this division to be the northern and southern continents of the Western Hemisphere. Others see this division as designating a smaller area.*)

10. Now the land south was called *Lehi*, and the land north was called *Mulek*, which was after the son of Zedekiah; for the Lord did bring Mulek into the land north, and Lehi into the land south.

12. They did raise grain in abundance, both in the north and in the south; and they did flourish exceedingly, both in the north and in the south.

11. And behold, there was all manner of gold in both these lands, and of silver, and of precious ore of every kind; and there were also curious workmen, who did work all kinds of ore and did refine it; H 6-373

VIII. THE OCEANS OR SEAS

(*There was an east coast and a west coast to most of the Book of Mormon lands. In addition there was a south sea and a north sea. The north sea is not mentioned until after the Nephites have migrated to the land northward.*)

28. ---[The land of] *first inheritance*---bordering along by the seashore. A 22-258

8. And the land of *Nephi* did run in a straight course from the east sea to the west. A 50-821

9. ---the land of *Zarahemla* [went] into the east---even to the borders by the seashore, A 50-821

22. ---thus the land---of *Zarahemla* [was] nearly surrounded by water, A 22-254

22. ---on the east by the sea, which joins the land of *Bountiful*; A 27-265

32. And now, it was only the distance of a day and a half's journey for a Nephite, on the line *Bountiful* and the land *Desolation*, from the east to the west sea; A 22-254

3. ---Now the city of *Teancum* lay in the borders by the seashore; and it was also near the city of *Desolation*. Mn 4-466

8. And it came to pass that they [the Nephites] did multiply and spread, and did go forth from the land southward to the land northward, and did spread insomuch that they began to cover the face of the whole earth, from the *sea south* to the *sea north*, from the *sea west* to the *sea east*. [This expression—the sea of the east, west, north and south—may have been a figure of speech, similar to the "four corners of the earth."] H 3-864

PART II

MIGRATIONS FROM THE OLD WORLD TO THE LAND OF PROMISE—THE WESTERN HEMISPHERE

I. JAREDITE MIGRATION FROM THE VALLEY OF NIMROD TO THE WESTERN HEMISPHERE (c. 2700 B.C.)

(See Chapter IV, Part I, "*The Jaredites*," and see Chart I.)

1. And it came to pass that Jared and his brother, and their families, and also the friends of Jared and his brother and their families, went down into the valley which was northward, (and the name of the valley was *Nimrod*, being called after the mighty hunter) with their flocks which they had gathered together, male and female, of every kind.

5. And it came to pass that the Lord commanded them that they should go forth into the wilderness, yea, into that quarter where there never had man been. And it came to pass that the Lord did go before them, and did talk with them as he stood in a cloud, and gave directions whither they should travel.

6. And it came to pass that they did travel in the wilderness, and did build barges, in which they did *cross many waters*, being directed continually by the hand of the Lord.

13. ---it came to pass that the Lord did bring Jared and his brethren forth even to that great sea which divideth the lands. ---and they called the place *Moriancumer*; and they dwelt in tents, ---upon the seashore for the space of four years.

16. And the Lord said: Go to work and build, after the manner of barges which ye have hitherto built.

17. And they were built after a manner that they were exceedingly tight, even that they would hold water like unto a dish---and the top thereof was tight like unto a dish; and the length thereof was the length of a tree; and the door thereof when it was shut, was tight like unto a dish. E 2-480

4. And it came to pass that when they had prepared all manner of food, that thereby they might subsist upon the water, and also food for their flocks and herds, and whatsoever beast or animal or fowl that they should carry them---and it came to pass that when they had done all these things they got aboard of their vessels or barges, and *set forth into the sea*, commending themselves unto the Lord their God. E 6-487

4. ---[And they had light in their vessels. See Chapter IV, Part I, Section II.] E 3-488

5. And it came to pass that the Lord God caused that there should be a furious wind blow upon the face of the *waters*, towards the promised land; and thus they were tossed upon the waves of the sea before the wind.

7. And it came to pass that when they were buried in the deep there was no water that could hurt them, their vessels being tight like unto the ark of Noah;

11. And thus they were driven forth, three hundred and forty and four days upon the water.

12. And they did land upon the shore of the *promised land*.

13. And it came to pass that they went forth upon the face of the land, and began to till the earth. E 6-487

II. MIGRATIONS FROM JERUSALEM TO THE WESTERN HEMISPHERE

1. *UNDER THE LEADERSHIP OF LEHI.* (*A group left Jerusalem and migrated to the promised land—the Western Hemisphere. About 600 B.C.*)

4. For it came to pass in the commencement of the first year of the reign of Zedekiah, king of Judah, (my father, Lehi, having dwelt at *Jerusalem* in all his days); and in that same year there came many prophets, prophesying unto the people that they must repent, or the great city *Jerusalem* must be destroyed.

IN 1-1

2. And it came to pass that the Lord commanded my father, even in a dream, that he should take his family and depart into the wilderness.

3. And it came to pass that he was obedient unto the word of the Lord, wherefore he did as the Lord commanded him.

4. And it came to pass that he *departed into the wilderness*. And he left his house, and the land of his inheritance, and his gold, and his silver, and his precious things, and took nothing with him, save it were his family, and provisions, and tents, and departed into the wilderness.

5. And he came down by the borders near the shore of the *Red Sea*; and he traveled in the wilderness in the borders which are nearer the *Red Sea*; and he did travel in the wilderness with his family,

6. And it came to pass that when he had traveled three days in the wilderness, he pitched his tent in a valley by the side of a river of water.

8. And it came to pass that he called the name of the river, *Laman*, and it emptied into the *Red Sea*; and the valley was in the borders near the mouth thereof.

IN 2-4

10. And it came to pass that as my father arose in the morning, and went forth to the tent door, to his great astonishment he beheld upon the ground a round ball of curious workmanship; and it was of fine brass. And within the ball were two spindles; and the one pointed the way whither we should go into the wilderness.

IN 16-31

6. Now, all these things were said and done as my father dwelt in a tent in the *valley* which he called *Lemuel*.

12. And it came to pass that we did take our tents and depart into the wilderness, across the river *Laman*.

13. And it came to pass that we traveled for the space of four days, nearly a south-southeast direction, and we did pitch our tents again; and we did call the name of the *place Shazer*.

14. ---And we did go forth again in the wilderness, following the same direction, keeping in the most fertile parts of the wilderness, which were in the *borders near the Red Sea*.

15. And it came to pass that we did travel for the space of many days, slaying food by the way, with our bows and arrows and our stones and our slings.

16. And we did follow the directions of the ball, which led us in the more fertile parts of the wilderness.

17. And after we had traveled for the space of many days, we did pitch our tents for the space of a time, that we might again rest ourselves and obtain food for our families.

33. And it came to pass that we did again take our journey, traveling nearly the same course as in the beginning; and after we had traveled for the space of many days we did pitch our tents again, that we might tarry for the space of a time.

IN 16-31

1. And it came to pass we did again take our journey in the wilder-

ness; and we did travel *nearly eastward from that time forth*. And we did travel and wade through much affliction in the wilderness;

4. And we did sojourn for the space of many years, yea, even eight years in the wilderness.

5. And we did come to the land which we called *Bountiful*, because of its much fruit and also wild honey; and all these things were prepared of the Lord that we might not perish. And we beheld the *sea*, which we called *Irreantum*, which, being interpreted, is many waters.

8. And it came to pass that the Lord spake unto me, saying: Thou shalt construct a ship, after the manner which I shall show thee, that I may carry thy people across these waters. IN 17-34

8. And it came to pass after we had all gone down into the ship, and had taken with us our provisions and things which had been commanded us, *we did put forth into the sea* and were driven forth before the wind towards the promised land.

21. ---behold, I took the compass, and it did work whither I desired it. IN 18-39

22. And it came to pass that I, Nephi, did guide the ship, that we sailed again towards the promised land.

23. And it came to pass that after we had sailed for the space of many days *we did arrive at the promised land*; and we went forth upon the land, and did pitch our tents; and we did call it the promised land.

24. And it came to pass that we did begin to till the earth, and we began to plant seeds; yea, we did put all our seeds into the earth, which we had brought from the land of Jerusalem. And it came to pass that they did grow exceedingly; wherefore, we were blessed in abundance. IN 18-40

20. ---we have been driven out of the land of our inheritance; but we have been led to a better land, for the Lord has made the sea our path, and *we are upon an isle of the sea*.

21. But great are the promises of the Lord unto them who are upon the isles of the sea; wherefore as it says isles, there must needs be more than this, and they are inhabited also by our brethren.

22. For behold, the Lord God has led away from time to time from the house of Israel, according to his will and pleasure. And now behold, the Lord remembereth all them who have been broken off, wherefore he remembereth us also. 2N 10-72

2. UNDER THE LEADERSHIP OF MULEK. (*Under the leadership of Mulek or his associates, a group left Jerusalem about 588 B.C.*) (See Chapter IV, Part III, "The People of Zarahemla." Also see Map I.)

15. Behold, it came to pass that Mosiah discovered that the people of Zarahemla came out from *Jerusalem* at the time that Zedekiah, king of Judah, was carried away captive into Babylon.

16. And they journeyed in the wilderness, and were brought by the hand of the Lord across the *great waters*, into the land where Mosiah discovered them; [in Zarahemla] O 1-180

30. ---[But they had landed to the north] it being so far northward that it came into the land which had been peopled and been destroyed---it being the *place of their first landing*.

31. And they came from there up into the south wilderness [to Zarahemla]. A 22-254

PART III

MIGRATIONS OF THE PEOPLES ON THE LAND OF PROMISE

I. MIGRATIONS BETWEEN ZARAHOMLA AND NEPHI (c. 580-77 B.C.)

MIGRATION 1. FROM THE LAND OF FIRST INHERITANCE TO THE LAND OF NEPHI. (*The people of Lehi separated into two groups, the Nephites and the Lamanites. The Nephites fled the land of First Inheritance from their brethren, the Lamanites, and settled a land which they called "Nephi."*)

4. Now I do not write--all the words which they [Nephi's brothers] murmured against me. But it sufficeth me to say, that they did seek to take away my life.

5. And it came to pass that the Lord did warn me, that I, Nephi, should depart from them and flee into the wilderness, and all those who would go with me.

7. And we did take our tents and whatsoever things were possible for us, and did journey in the wilderness for the space of many days. And after we had journeyed for the space of many days we did pitch our tents.

2N 5-60

8. And my people would that we should call the name of the place *Nephi*; wherefore, we did call it Nephi.

11. And the Lord was with us; and we did prosper exceedingly;

2N 5-60

26. ---the time passed away with us, and also our lives passed away like as it were unto a dream, we being a lonesome and a solemn people, wanderers, cast out from *Jerusalem*, born in tribulation, in a wilderness, and hated of our brethren, which caused wars and contentions; wherefore, we did mourn out our days.

J 7-125

MIGRATION 2. NEPHI TO ZARAHOMLA. (*The first migration from Nephi to Zarahemla. A righteous group under the direction of Mosiah I left the land of Nephi, and the iniquity therein, and migrated to Zarahemla where they found the Mulekites. About 279 B.C.*)

12. ---Behold, I will speak unto you somewhat concerning Mosiah [I], ---for behold, he being warned of the Lord that he should flee out of the land of Nephi, and as many as would hearken unto the voice of the Lord should also depart out of the land with him, into the wilderness--

13. ---and they were *led* by the power of his arm, *through the wilderness*, until they came down into the land which is called the land of *Zarahemla*.

14. And they discovered a people, who were called the people of Zarahemla [Mulekites].

19. And it came to pass that the people of Zarahemla, and of Mosiah, did unite together; and Mosiah was appointed to be their king [and they all became Nephites]. O 1-180

MIGRATION 3. ZARAHEMLA TO NEPHI. (Some Nephites returned to repossess the land of Nephi, now held by the Lamanites. Three generations passed away, the descendants of this group returned to Zarahemla. See Chapter V, Part II. About 200-130 B.C.)

27. And now I would speak somewhat concerning a certain number who went up into the wilderness to return to the land of *Nephi*; for there was a large number who were desirous to possess the land of their inheritance.

28. Wherefore, they went up into the wilderness; [and there was] contention among them; and they were all slain, save fifty, in the wilderness, and they returned again to the land of *Zarahemla*. O 1-181

3. And yet, I [Zeniff] being over-zealous to inherit the land of our fathers, collected as many as were desirous to go up to possess the land, and started again. Mo 9-152

6. And I went in unto the king [of the Lamanites] and he covenanted with me that I might possess the land of *Lehi-Nephi*, and the land of *Shilom*. Mo 9-152

21. ---king Laman, who having entered into a treaty with king Zeniff, and having yielded up into his hands the possessions of a part of the land, or even the city of *Lehi-Nephi*, and the city of *Shilom*; and the land round about— Mo 7-149

14. ---away on the south of the land of *Shilom*, when my people were watering and feeding their flocks, and tilling their lands, a numerous host of Lamanites came upon them--- Mo 10-153

15. Yea, and it came to pass that they fled, all that were not overtaken, even into the city of *Nephi*, and did call upon me for protection. Mo 10-153

7. But I had sent my spies out round about the [Lamanites'] land of *Shemlon*, that I might discover their preparations, that I might guard against them,

8. And it came to pass that they came up upon the north of the land of *Shilom*, with their numerous hosts,

9. And it came to pass that I caused that the women and children of my people should be hid in the wilderness; Mo 10-154

12. ---[Noah follows Zeniff as king] And it came to pass that he [King Noah] built a tower near the temple, yea, a very high tower, even so high that he could stand upon the top thereof and overlook the land of *Shilom*, and also the land of *Shemlon*, which was possessed by the Lamanites; and he could even look over all the land round about.

13. And it came to pass that he caused many buildings to be built in the land *Shilom*; and he caused a great tower to be built on the hill north of the land *Shilom*, which had been a resort— Mo 11-156

6. ---the king [Limhi follows King Noah upon the tower] cast his eyes round about towards the land of *Shemlon*, and behold, the army of the Lamanites were within the borders of the land. Mo 19-170

7. ---and they [the Lamanites] went up [from *Shemlon*] to destroy the people of Limhi. Mo 20-172

MIGRATION 4. ZARAHEMLA TO NEPHI. (*A searching party of Nephites left Zarahemla to find the people of Zeniff—Noah—Limhi in the land of Nephi. About 121 B.C.*)

1. ---he [King Mosiah] was desirous to know concerning the people who went up to dwell in the land of *Lehi-Nephi*, or in the city of *Lehi-Nephi*;

2. And it came to pass that king Mosiah granted that sixteen of their strong men might go up to the land of *Lehi-Nephi*, to inquire concerning their brethren. Mo 7-147

4. And now, they knew not the course they should travel in the wilderness to go up to the land of *Lehi-Nephi*; therefore they wandered many days in the wilderness, even *forty days* did they wander.

5. And when they had wandered forty days they came to a hill, which is north of the land of *Shilom*, and there they pitched their tents.

6. And Ammon took three of his brethren, ---and they went down into the land of *Nephi*. Mo 7-147

13. ---[the leader said to Limhi] I---have come up out of the land of *Zarahemla*, to inquire concerning our brethren, whom *Zeniff* brought up out of that land [to *Nephi*]. Mo 7-148

16. And now, king Limhi commanded his guards---that they should go to the hill which was north of *Shilom*--- Mo 7-148

MIGRATION 5. NEPHI TO ZARAHEMLA. (*The people of Limhi fled from the captivity of the Lamanites and went down to Zarahemla.*)

11. And it came to pass that the people of king Limhi did depart by night into the wilderness with their flocks and their herds, and they went round about the land of *Shilom* in the wilderness, and bent their course towards the land of *Zarahemla*, being led by Ammon [who had come up from *Zarahemla* to find them]---

13. And after being many days in the wilderness they arrived in the land of *Zarahemla*, and joined Mosiah's people, and became his subjects. Mo 22-177

MIGRATION 6. NEPHI TO ZARAHEMLA. (*A group of Nephites under Alma all of whom had once belonged to the people of Zeniff—Noah arrived in Zarahemla. About 145-123 B.C.*)

4. And it came to pass that as many as did believe him [Alma] did go forth [from the land of *Nephi*] to a place which was called *Mormon*, having received its name from the king [from what king?], being in the borders of the land having been infested, by times or at seasons, by wild beasts.

5. Now, there was in *Mormon* a fountain of pure water, there being near the water a thicket of small trees, where he did hide himself---

30. And now it came to pass that all this was done in *Mormon*, yea, by the waters of *Mormon*, in the forest that was near the *waters of Mormon*; Mo 18-168

34. And it came to pass that Alma and the people of the Lord were apprised of the coming of the king's army [to destroy them]; therefore they took their tents and their families and departed into the wilderness. Mo 18-170

3. And they fled *eight days'* journey into the wilderness [from *Mormon*].

4. And they came to a land, yea, even a very beautiful and pleasant land, a land of pure water.

5. And they pitched their tents, and began to till the ground, and began to build buildings;

19. And it came to pass that they began to prosper exceedingly in the land; and they called the land *Helam*.

20. And it came to pass that they did multiply and prosper exceedingly in the land of *Helam*; and they built a city, which they called the city of *Helam*.
Mo 23-178

20. [About 20 years later, being harassed by the Lamanites] And Alma and his people departed into the wilderness; and when they had traveled *all day* they pitched their tents in a valley, and they called the valley *Alma*, because he led their way in the wilderness.

24. And it came to pass that they departed out of the valley, and took their journey into the wilderness.

25. And after they had been in the wilderness *twelve days* they arrived in the land of *Zarahemla*; and king Mosiah did also receive them with joy.
Mo 24-182

MIGRATION 7. NEPHI TO AMULON. (A group of wicked priests under Amulon left the land of Nephi during the time of King Noah and settled a new land.)

23. ---his priests had fled from them farther into the wilderness [from Nephi].
Mo 19-171

31. And behold, they [the Lamanites] had found those priests of king Noah in a place which they called *Amulon*;

35. And Amulon and his brethren did join the Lamanites, and they were traveling in the wilderness in search of the land of *Nephi* when they discovered the land of *Helam*,
Mo 23-180

29. ---and the Lamanites took possession of the land of *Helam* Mo 23-179

1. ---the king of the Lamanites---appointed teachers [of these priests] over his people, yea, even over the people who were in the land of *Shemlon*, and in the land of *Shilom*, and in the land of *Amulon*.

2. For the Lamanites had taken possession of all these lands; Mo 24-180

MIGRATION 8. ZARAHEMPLA TO NEPHI. (A group of Nephites—Ammon, Aaron, Muloki, and Ammah, sons of Mosiah II—went from Zarahemla to the land of Nephi to preach to the Lamanites.)

8. And thus they departed into the wilderness with their numbers which they had selected, to go up to the land of *Nephi*, to preach the word of God unto the Lamanites.
A 17-237

(Ammon in the land of Ishmael—a part of the land of Nephi.)

19. And Ammon went to the land of *Ishmael*, the land being called after the sons of Ishmael who also became Lamanites.
A 17-238

26. And after he [Ammon became a servant to the king] had been in the service of the king three days; as he was with the Lamanitish servants going forth with their flocks to the place of water, which was called the water of *Sebus*, and all the Lamanites drive their flocks hither, that they may have water—
A 17-239

1. ---king Lamoni desired that Ammon should go with him to the land of *Nephi*,

2. And the voice of the Lord came to Ammon, saying: Thou shalt not go up to the land of *Nephi*, for behold, the king will seek thy life; but thou shalt go to the land of *Middoni*; for behold, thy brother Aaron, and also Muloki and Ammah are in prison. A 20-247

7. And he [King Lamoni] said unto Ammon: Come, I will go with thee down to the land of *Middoni*, and there I will plead with the king that he will cast thy brethren out of prison. A 20-247

18. And it came to pass that Ammon and Lamoni returned from the land of *Middoni* to the land of *Ishmael*, which was the land of their inheritance. A 22-251

(The brothers of Ammon in the Land of Nephi.)

1. Now when Ammon and his brethren separated themselves in the borders of the land of the Lamanites, behold Aaron took his journey towards the land which was called by the Lamanites, *Jerusalem*, calling it after the land of their fathers' nativity; and it was away joining the borders of Mormon.

2. Now the Lamanites and the Amalekites and the people of Amulon had built a great city, which was called *Jerusalem*. A 21-249

11. Therefore, when he saw that they would not hear his words, he departed out of their synagogue [at Jerusalem], and came over to a village which was called *Ani-Anti*, and there he found Muloki preaching the word unto them;

12. ---they departed and came over into the land of *Middoni* A 21-250

1. ---[And] after he [Aaron] departed from the land of *Middoni* he was led by the Spirit to the land of *Nephi*, even to the house of the king which was over all the land, save it were the land of *Ishmael*; A 22-251

13. And these are the names of the cities of the Lamanites which were converted unto the Lord:

9. The people of the Lamanites who were in the land of *Ishmael*;

10. ---in the land of *Middoni*;

11. ---in the city of *Nephi*---

12. ---in the land of *Shilom*, and who were in the land of *Shemlon*, and in the city of *Lemuel*, and in the city of *Shimnilom*. A 23-255

1. And it came to pass that the Amalekites and the Amulonites and the Lamanites who were in the land of *Amulon*, and also in the land of *Helam*, and who were in the land of *Jerusalem*, and in fine, in all the land round about, ---had not been converted--- A 1-256

MIGRATION 9. NEPHI TO ZARAHÉMLA. (*Ammon and his brothers led the converted Lamanites back to Zarahemla.*)

5. Now when Ammon and his brethren---saw the preparations of the Lamanites to destroy their brethren, they came forth to the land of *Midian*, and there Ammon met all his brethren; and from thence they came to the land of *Ishmael* that they might hold a council with Lamoni [the King] and also with his brother Anti-Nephi-Lehi, A 24-257

5. Let us gather together this people of the Lord, and let us go down to the land of *Zarahemla*---

14. [and they did this]---and came into the wilderness which divided the land of *Nephi* from the land of *Zarahemla*, and came over near the borders of the land.

15. And it came to pass that Ammon said unto them: Behold, I and my brethren will go forth into the land of *Zarahemla*, and ye shall remain here until we return; A 27-264

1. And now it came to pass that as Alma was journeying from the land of *Gideon* southward, away to the land of *Manti*, behold, to his astonishment, he met with the sons [Ammon and his brethren] of Mosiah journeying towards the land of *Zarahemla*.
A 17-237

21. And it came to pass that the chief judge [of *Zarahemla*] sent a proclamation throughout all the land, desiring the voice of the people concerning the admitting their brethren, who were the people of Anti-Nephi-Lehi [the converted Lamanites—also called the people of Ammon].

22. And it came to pass that the voice of the people came saying: Behold, ye will give up the land of *Jershon*, which is on the east by the sea, which joins the land *Bountiful*, which is on the south of the land *Bountiful*; and this land *Jershon* is the land which we will give unto our brethren for an inheritance.

23. And behold, we will set our armies between the land *Jershon* and the land *Nephi*, that we may protect our brethren in the land *Jershon*;
A 27-285

II. VARIOUS MOVEMENTS OF THE PEOPLE IN THE LAND OF ZARAHEMLA AND TO THE NORTH

(Due to increase in population, internal congestion, and invasion from without, the Nephites had spread over much land, and were tending to move to the land north of Zarahemla, to the land of Bountiful, and other northern parts. See Part IV of this Appendix C for additional information of the land northward.)

6. ---and the people [of *Zarahemla*] began to be very numerous, and began to scatter abroad upon the face of the earth, yea, on the north and on the south, on the east and on the west, *building large cities and villages in all quarters of the land*.

7. And the Lord did visit them and prosper them, and they became a large and wealthy people.
Mo 27-187

27. ---[Now the land of *Nephi*] was bordering even to the sea, on the east and on the west, and which was divided from the land of *Zarahemla* by a narrow strip of wilderness, which ran from the sea east even to the sea west; and round about on the borders of the seashore, and the borders of the wilderness which was on the north by the land of *Zarahemla*, through the borders of *Manti*, by the head of the river *Sidon*, running from the east towards the west—and thus were the Lamanites and the Nephites divided.

28. Now, the more idle part of the Lamanites lived in the wilderness, and dwelt in tents; and they were spread through the wilderness on the west, in the land of *Nephi*; yea, and also on the west of the land of *Zarahemla*, in the borders by the seashore, and on the west in the land of *Nephi*, in the place of their fathers' *first inheritance*, and thus bordering along by the seashore.

29. And also there were many Lamanites on the east by the seashore, whither the Nephites had driven them. And thus the Nephites were nearly surrounded by the Lamanites; nevertheless the Nephites had taken possession of all the northern parts of the land bordering on the wilderness, at the head of the river *Sidon*, from the east to the west, round about on the wilderness side; on the north, even until they came to the land which they called *Bountiful*.

30. And it bordered upon the land which they called *Desolation*, it being so far northward that it came into the land which had been peopled and been destroyed, of whose bones we have spoken, which was discovered by the people of *Zarahemla*, it being the place of their *first landing*.

31. And they [the people of Zarahemla—Mulekites] came from there up into the south wilderness. Thus the land on the northward was called *Desolation*, and the land on the southward was called *Bountiful*, it being the wilderness which is filled with all manner of wild animals of every kind, a part of which had come from the land northward for food.

32. And now, it was only the distance of a day and a half's journey for a Nephite, on the line *Bountiful* and the land *Desolation*, from the east to the west sea; and thus the land of *Nephi* and the land of *Zarahemla* were nearly surrounded by water, there being a small neck of land between the land northward and the land southward.

33. And it came to pass that the Nephites had inhabited the land of *Bountiful*, even from the east unto the west sea, and thus the Nephites in their wisdom, with their guards and their armies, had hemmed in the Lamanites on the south, that thereby they should have no more possession on the north, that they might not overrun the land northward.

34. Therefore the Lamanites could have no more possessions only in the land of *Nephi*, and the wilderness round about. A 22-258

MOVEMENT 1. THE AGITATION OF NEHOR AND KORIHOR. (*Two dissenters caused a movement among the Nephites.*)

15. And it came to pass that they took him [out of Zarahemla]; and his name was Nehor; and they carried him upon the top of the hill *Manti*, A 1-196

19. Now this man [Korihor] went over to the land of *Jershon* also, to preach---

21. ---And he came over into the land of *Gideon*, and began to preach--- A 30-270

MOVEMENT 2. CIVIL STRIFE BETWEEN THE AMLICITES AND THE NEPHITES.

15. And it came to pass that the Amlicites came upon the hill *Amnihu*; which was east of the *river Sidon*, which ran by the land of *Zarahemla*, and there they began to make war with the Nephites. A 2-199

20. And it came to pass that when Alma could pursue the Amlicites no longer he caused that his people should pitch their tents in the valley of *Gideon*, the valley being called after that *Gideon* who was slain by the hand of Nehor with the sword; and in this valley the Nephites did pitch their tents for the night. A 2-199

24. Behold, we [Nephite Scouts] followed the camp of the Amlicites, and to our great astonishment, in the land of *Minon*, above the land of *Zarahemla*, in the course of the land of *Nephi*, we saw a numerous host of Lamanites; A 2-199

26. And it came to pass that the people of Nephi took their tents, and departed out of the valley of *Gideon* towards their city, which was the city of *Zarahemla*.

27. And behold, as they were crossing the *river Sidon*, the Lamanites and the Amlicites, being as numerous almost, as it were, as the sands of the sea, came upon them to destroy them. A 2-200

34. And thus he [Alma II] cleared the ground, or rather the bank, which was on the west of the *river Sidon*, throwing the bodies of the Lamanites who had been slain into the waters of *Sidon*, that thereby his people might have room to cross and contend with the Lamanites and the Amlicites on the west side of the *river Sidon*. [?]

35. And it came to pass that when they had all crossed the *river Sidon* that the Lamanites and the Amlicites began to flee---

36. And they fled before the Nephites towards the wilderness which was west and north, away beyond the borders of the land; and the Nephites did pursue them with their might, and did slay them.

37. Yea, they were met on every hand, and slain and driven, until they were scattered on the west, and on the north, until they had reached the wilderness which was called *Hermounts*; and it was that part of the wilderness which was infested by wild and ravenous beasts.

38. And it came to pass that many died--and their bones have been found, and have been heaped up on the earth. A 2-200

3. And now as many of the Lamanites and the Amlicites who had been slain upon the bank of the river *Sidon* were cast into the waters of *Sidon*; and behold their bones are in the depths of the sea, and they are many. A 3-201

MOVEMENT 3. ALMA II WENT THROUGHOUT THE LAND TO PREACH.

4. And they began to establish the church more fully; yea, and many were baptized in the waters of *Sidon*--- A 4-203

7. ---he [Alma] departed from them, yea, from the church which was in the city of *Zarahemla*, and went over upon the east of the river *Sidon*, into the valley of *Gideon*, there having been a city built, which was called the city of *Gideon*, A 6-210

1. ---he [Alma] returned to his own house at *Zarahemla* to rest himself from the labors which he had performed.

3. And it came to pass in the commencement of the tenth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi, that Alma departed from thence and took his journey over into the land of *Melek*, on the west of the river *Sidon*, on the west by the borders of the wilderness.

4. And he began to teach the people in the land of *Melek*.

6. So that when he had finished his work at *Melek* he departed thence, and traveled three days' journey on the north of the land of *Melek*; and he came to a city which was called *Ammonihah*. A 8-214

13. Now when the people [of *Ammonihah*] had said this, ---and caused that he should be cast out of their city, he departed thence and took his journey towards the city which was called *Aaron*, A 8-214

1. And again, I, Alma, having been commanded of God that I should take Amulek and go forth and preach again unto this people, or the people who were in the city of *Ammonihah*, A 9-216

1. And it came to pass that Alma and Amulek were commanded to depart out of that city [Ammonihah]; and they departed, and came out even into the land of *Sidom*; and behold, there they found all the people who had departed out of the land of *Ammonihah*, A 15-233

18. ---Alma having seen all these things, therefore he took Amulek and came [from Sidom] over to the land of *Zarahemla*, and took him to his own house, A 15-234

6. Therefore he took Ammon,---with him, and also Amulek and Zeezrom, who were at *Melek* [and went to *Antionum*]; A 31-274

3. Now the Zoramites had gathered themselves together in a land which they called *Antionum*, which was east of the land of *Zarahemla*, which lay nearly bordering upon the seashore, which was south of the land of *Jershon*, which also bordered upon the wilderness south, which wilderness was full of Lamanites. A 31-274

4. Now, as Alma was teaching and speaking unto the people upon the hill *Onidah* [in Antionum], there came a great multitude unto him,

A 32-277

1. Now it came to pass that after Amulek had made an end of those words, they [Alma and Amulek] withdrew themselves from the multitude and came over in to the land of *Jershon*.

A 35-284

13. And the people of Ammon [converted Lamanites who possessed the land of *Jershon*] departed out of the land of *Jershon*, and came over into the land of *Melek*, and gave place in the land of *Jershon* for the armies [of the Nephites]---

A 35-285

3. [Alma chastises his son.] And this is not all my son. Thou didst do that which was grievous unto me; for thou didst forsake the ministry, and did go over into the land of *Siron* [from Antionum], among the borders of the Lamanites,

A 39-393

14. And Alma---returned to the land of *Zarahemla*,

A 35-285

18. And when Alma had done this he departed out of the land of *Zarahemla*, as if to go into the land of *Melek*. And it came to pass that he was never heard of more.

A 45-308

MOVEMENT 4. THE LAMANITE INVASIONS.

2. For behold, the armies of the Lamanites had come in upon the wilderness side, into the borders of the---city of *Ammonihah*, and began to slay the people---

2. ---and also [destroyed] some around the borders of *Noah*,

6. ---And Alma returned and said unto them [Nephite army] Behold, the Lamanites will cross the *river Sidon* in the south wilderness, away up beyond the borders of the land of *Manti*. And behold there shall ye meet them, on the east of the *river Sidon*, and there the Lord will deliver unto thee thy brethren who have been taken captive by the Lamanites.

7. And it came to pass that---[they, the Nephites, went from *Zarahemla*] crossed over the *river Sidon*, with their armies, and marched away beyond the borders of *Manti* into the south wilderness, which was on the east side of the *river Sidon*.

A 16-235

22. Behold, now it came to pass that they [the Lamanites] durst not come against the Nephites in the borders of *Jershon*; [from the land of Antionum where they had been] therefore they [had] departed out of the land of *Antionum* into the wilderness, and took their journey round about in the wilderness, away by the head of the *river Sidon*, that they might come into the land of *Manti* and take possession of the land; for they did not suppose that the armies of Moroni would know whither they had gone.

A 43-802

25. Now Moroni, leaving a part of his army in the land of *Jershon*, ---took the remaining part of his army and marched over into the land of *Manti*.

27. And it came to pass that Moroni caused that his army should be secreted in the valley which was near the bank of the *river Sidon*, which was on the west of the *river Sidon* in the wilderness.

31. Therefore, he divided his army and brought a part over into the valley, and concealed [part of] them on the east, and on the south of the hill *Riplah*;

32. And the remainder he concealed in the west valley, on the west of the *river Sidon*, and so down into the borders of the land *Manti*.

34. And it came to pass that the Lamanites came up on the north of the hill, where a part of the army of Moroni was concealed.

35. And as the Lamanites had passed the hill *Riplah*, and came into the valley, and began to cross the *river Sidon*, the army which was con-

sealed on the south of the hill, which was led by a man whose name was Lehi, and he led his army forth and encircled the Lamanites about---

A 43-308

39. And it came to pass that the Lamanites became frightened, because of the great destruction among them, even until they began to flee towards the river *Sidon*.

40. And they were pursued by Lehi and his men; and they were driven by Lehi into the waters of *Sidon*, and they crossed the waters of *Sidon*. And Lehi retained his armies upon the bank of the river *Sidon* that they should not cross.

41. And it came to pass that Moroni and his army met the Lamanites in the valley, on the other side of the river *Sidon*, and began to fall upon them and to slay them.

42. And the Lamanites did flee again before them, towards the land of *Manti*; and they were met again by the armies of Moroni.

52. Therefore the armies of Moroni encircled them about, yea, even on both sides of the river, for behold, on the east were the men of Lehi.

53. Therefore when---[the Lamanites] saw the men of Lehi on the east of the river *Sidon*, and the armies of Moroni on the west of the river *Sidon*, that they were encircled about by the Nephites, they were struck with terror.

A 43-305

22. And it came to pass that they did cast their dead into the waters of *Sidon*, and they have gone forth and are buried in the depths of the sea.

A 45-307

MOVEMENT 5. EXPANSION OF THE NEPHITES. (*About 71 B. C.*)

7. And it came to pass that Moroni caused that his armies should go forth into the east wilderness; yea, and they went forth and drove all the Lamanites who were in the east wilderness [of Siron, etc.] into their own lands, which were south of the land of *Zarahemla*.

8. And the land of *Nephi* did run in a straight course from the east sea to the west.

9. And it came to pass that when Moroni had driven all the Lamanites out of the east wilderness, which was north of the lands of their own possessions, he caused that the inhabitants who were in the land of *Zarahemla* and in the land round about should go forth into the east wilderness, even to the borders by the seashore, and possess the land.

10. And he also placed armies on the south, in the borders of their possessions, and caused them to erect *fortifications* that they might secure their armies and their people from the hands of their enemies.

11. And thus he cut off all the strongholds of the Lamanites in the east wilderness, yea, and also on the west, fortifying the line between the Nephites and the Lamanites, between the land of *Zarahemla* and the land of *Nephi*, from the west sea, running by the head of the river *Sidon*—the Nephites possessing all the land northward, yea, even all the land which was northward of the land *Bountiful* according to their pleasure. A 50-321

13. ---[They built] the city of *Moroni*; and it was by the east sea; and it was on the south by the line of the possessions of the Lamanites.

14. And they also began a foundation for a city between the city of *Moroni* and the city of *Aaron*, joining the borders of Aaron and *Moroni*; and they called the name of the city, or the land, *Nephihah*.

15. And they also began in that same year to build many cities on the north, one in a particular manner which they called *Lehi*, which was in the north by the borders of the seashore.

A 50-322

25. ---a contention---took place among them concerning the land of *Lehi*, and the land of *Morianton*, which joined upon the borders of Lehi; both of which were on the borders by the seashore.

26. For behold, the people who possessed the land of *Morianton* did claim a part of the land of *Lehi*;

A 50-322

28. And it came to pass that when the people of *Morianton*, ---found that the people of *Lehi* had fled to the camp of Moroni, they were exceedingly fearful---

29. Therefore, Morianton put it into their hearts that they should flee to the land which was *northward*, which was covered with large bodies of water, and take possession of the land which was northward.

A 50-323

32. Now behold, the people who were in the land *Bountiful*, [?] or rather *Moroni*, feared that they would hearken to the words of Morianton and unite with his people, and thus he would obtain possession of those parts of the land, which would lay a foundation for serious consequences---

33. Therefore Moroni sent an army, with their camp, to head the people of *Morianton*,

34. And it came to pass that they did not head them until they had come to the borders of the land *Desolation*; and there they did head them, *by the narrow pass which led by the sea into the land northward*, yea, by the sea, on the west and on the east.

A 50-323

MOVEMENT 6. CIVIL WAR MOVEMENT CAUSED BY THE "KINGMEN."

3. And it came to pass that Moroni took a small number of men, according to the desire of Pahoran, and gave Lehi and Teancum command over the remainder of his army, and took his march towards the land of *Gideon* [from the north]

A 62-354

6. ---[Moroni] came to the land of *Gideon*; and uniting his forces with those of Pahoran they became exceeding strong, even stronger than the men of Pachus, who was the king of those dissenters---

7. And it came to pass that Moroni and Pahoran went down with their armies into the land of *Zarahemla*, and went forth against the city, and did meet the men of Pachus, insomuch that they did come to battle.

A 62-354

MOVEMENT 7. INVASIONS OF THE GADIANTON ROBBERS.

23. And the land which was appointed was the land of *Zarahemla* and the land *Bountiful*, yea, to the line which was between the land *Bountiful* and the land *Desolation*.

24. And there were a great many thousand people who were called Nephites, who did gather themselves---Now Lachoneus did cause that they should gather themselves to gether in the land southward, because of the great curse which was upon the *land northward*.

25. And they did fortify themselves against their enemies; and they did dwell in one land, and in one body---

3N 3-405

12. Therefore, Jacob [king of the robbers] seeing that their enemies were more numerous than they, he being the king of the band, therefore he commanded his people that they should take their flight into the *northernmost* part of the land, and there build up unto themselves a kingdom.

3N 7-413

III. LAMANITE INVASIONS INTO ZARAHOMLA (c. 71 B.C. to 25 B.C.)

INVASION 1. INVASIONS INTO EASTERN ZARAHOMLA.

13. And it came to pass also that the armies of the Lamanites came down out of the land of *Nephi*, to battle against his [King Benjamin's] people. Mn 1-183

1. ---Amalickiah [Nephite Dissenter] and those who had fled with him into the wilderness [from Zarahemla]; for behold, he had taken those who went with him, and went up in the land of *Nephi* among the Lamanites, and did stir up the Lamanites, to anger against the people of Nephi--- to go to battle against the Nephites.

3. And now it came to pass that the king was wroth because of their disobedience; therefore he gave Amalickiah the command of that part of the army which was obedient

5. ---and he [Amalickiah] sought to gain favor of those who were not obedient; therefore he went forward to the place which was called *Onidah*, ---to the place of arms---for thither had all the Lamanites fled;

7. And it came to pass that they had gathered themselves together upon the top of the mount which was called *Antipas*, in preparation to battle.

35. ---and thus by his fraud, ---he [Amalickiah] obtained the kingdom [of the Lamanites]. A 37-313

1. And now---the armies of the Lamanites [directed by Amalickiah] were seen approaching towards the land of *Ammonihah*.

2. ---[the Nephites] had cast up dirt round about to shield them [in the land of Ammonihah].

12. Therefore they [the Lamanites] retreated into the wilderness, and took their camp and marched towards the land of *Noah*, supposing that to be the next best place for them to come against the Nephites [but it too was fortified]. A 49-319

23. ---And it came to pass that Amalickiah [moved on and] took possession of the city [*Moroni*],

24. And those who fled out of the city of *Moroni* came to the city of *Nephihah*; and also the people of the city of *Lehi* gathered themselves together,

25. ---Amalickiah would not suffer the Lamanites to go against the city of *Nephihah* to battle, but kept them down by the seashore,

26. And thus he [Amalickiah] went on, taking possession of many cities, the city of *Nephihah* [?], and the city of *Lehi*, and the city of *Morianton*, and the city of *Omner*, and the city of *Gid*, and the city of *Mulek*, all of which were on the east borders by the seashore.

28. And it came to pass that they marched to the borders of the land *Bountiful*, driving the Nephites before them and slaying many.

31. But behold he met with a disappointment by being repulsed by Teancum [Nephi leader] and his men,

32. ---And it came to pass that Teancum and his men did pitch their tents in the borders of the land *Bountiful*; and Amalickiah did pitch his tents in the borders on the beach by the seashore,

35. And he [Teancum went by night and killed Amalickiah and] returned again privily to his own camp, ---and told them [his men] all the things that he had done. A 51-327

2. And now, when the Lamanites saw this they were affrighted; ---and retreated with all their army into the city of *Mulek*, A 52-327

9. And he [Moroni] sent orders unto him [Teancum] that he should fortify the land *Bountiful*, and secure the narrow pass which led into the land northward, A 52-328

16. And it came to pass that Teancum had received orders to make an attack upon the city of *Mulek*, and retake it if it were possible.

20. ---[the Nephites] sent embassies to the army of the Lamanites, --- desiring him [the Lamanite leader] that he would come out with his armies to meet them upon the *plains* between the two cities.

22. ---Moroni and his army, by night, marched in the wilderness on the west of the city *Mulek*;

23. ---[and] he [Teancum] began to retreat down by the seashore, northward [to decoy the Lamanites and assist Moroni]

27. And it came to pass that the Lamanites did pursue Teancum until they came near the city *Bountiful*,

26. And thus Moroni had obtained possession of the city *Mulek* with his army, A 52-329

7. Now the Nephites were guarded [prisoners] in the city of *Gid*;

24. ---[and Moroni] took possession of the city, A 55-335

33. And now it came to pass that it was expedient for Moroni to make preparations to attack the city of *Morianton*; A 55-337

18. And it came to pass that [the Nephites] ---pursued their march towards the land of *Nephihah*. And it came to pass that when they had come to the city of *Nephihah* they did pitch their tents in the *plains of Nephihah*, which is near the city of *Nephihah*. A 62-355

25. ---[And the Lamanites] fled into the land of *Moroni*, which was in the borders by the seashore.

26. Thus had Moroni and Pahoran obtained the possession of the city of *Nephihah* without the loss of one soul; A 62-355

30. ---therefore Moroni went forth from the land of *Nephihah* to the land of *Lehi*. A 62-356

32. And it came to pass that Moroni and his army did pursue them [the Lamanites] ---until they came to the land of *Moroni*. A 62-356

34. ---[they, the Nephites] did encamp with their armies round about in the borders of the land of *Moroni*,

38. ---and they [the Nephites] did drive them [the Lamanites] out of the land; and they did flee, even that they did not return at that time against the Nephites. A 62-356

INVASION 2. INVASIONS INTO SOUTHWESTERN ZARAH-HEMLA.

11. And he [Moroni]---said---behold, the Lamanites are upon us in the borders of the land by the west sea;

13. And thus he [Amalickiah---the Lamanite leader] was endeavoring to harass the Nephites--- A 52-323

8. And now it came to pass that the armies of the Lamanites, on the west sea, south, ---had gained some ground over the Nephites, yea, insomuch that they had obtained possession of a number of their cities in that part of the land. A 53-381

9. ---I, Helaman [a Nephite], did march---to the city of *Judea*, [from Zarahemla] to assist--- A 56-338

13. And now these are the cities of which the Lamanites have obtained possession by the shedding of the blood of so many of our valiant men:

14. The land of *Manti*, or the city of *Manti*, and the city of *Zeezrom*, and the city of *Cumoni*, and the city of *Antiparah*.

15. And these are the cities which they possessed when I arrived at the city of *Judea* A 56-338

18. And now it came to pass that when the Lamanites saw that-- [the Nephites] had received a greater strength to [the]---army, they were compelled---not to come against the city of *Judea*,

25. Neither durst they march down against the city of *Zarahemla*; neither durst they cross the head of *Sidon*, over to the city of *Nephihah*.

A 56-339

30. ---therefore Antipus [Nephite leader] ordered that I should march forth---to a neighboring city,

31. And we were to march near the city of *Antiparah*, as if we were going to the city beyond, in the borders by the seashore.

36. [And after this they were pursued for three days northward.]

A 56-339

57. ---we sent them [the Lamanite prisoners] to the land of *Zarahemla*, ---and took our march back to the city of *Judea*.

A 56-341

3. ---we began to make preparations to go against the city of *Antiparah*.

4. ---But the people of *Antiparah* did leave the city, and fled---and thus the city of *Antiparah* fell into our hands.

A 57-341

7. And it came to pass that it was our desire to wage a battle with the army which was placed to protect the city *Cumeni*.

12. ---therefore they [the Lamanites] yielded up the city unto our hands;

11. ---we [took] those provisions---to *Judea*, and our prisoners to the land of *Zarahemla* [and apparently they, the Nephites later retook the city of *Zeezrom*, but such is not mentioned].

A 57-342

22. ---therefore [the Lamanites] were driven back to the city of *Manti*.

23. And we retained our city *Cumeni*,

A 57-343

1. And behold, now it came to pass that our next object was to obtain the city of *Manti*;

14. ---when the Lamanites saw that we were in the borders by the wilderness which was near the city,

28. And thus it came to pass, that by this stratagem we did take possession of the city of *Manti* without the shedding of blood.

31. And those cities which had been taken by the Lamanites, all of them are at this period of time in our possession [about 63 B.C.]; and our fathers and our women and our children are returning to their homes,

A 58-344

INVASION 3. INVASIONS INTO CENTRAL ZARAHEMPLA.

18. And it came to pass that because of so much contention and so much difficulty in the government, that they had not kept sufficient guards in the land of *Zarahemla*; for they had supposed that the Lamanites durst not come into the heart of their lands to attack that great city *Zarahemla*.

H 1-361

19. But it came to pass that Coriantumr [Lamanite leader] did march forth at the head of his numerous host, and came upon the inhabitants of the city [Zarahemla],

20. ---[and] did cut down the watch by the entrance of the city, and did march forth with his whole army into the city,

23. And now he [the Lamanite] did not tarry in the land of *Zarahemla*, but he did march forth with a large army, even towards the city of *Bountiful*; for it was his determination to go forth and cut his way through with the sword, that he might obtain the north parts of the land.

29. ---[But the Nephites] did head them [the Lamanites] before they came to the land *Bountiful*, and gave unto them battle, insomuch that they [the Lamanites] began to retreat back towards the land of *Zarahemla*.

32. ---and the Lamanites did yield themselves into the hands of the Nephites.

H 1-361

INVASION 4. ANOTHER INVASION INTO ZARAHEMLA.
(Fifteen years later than the above invasion, the Lamanites again take possession of Zarahemla.)

5. And in the fifty and seventh year they did come down against the Nephites to battle, and they did commence the work of death; yea, inso-much that in the fifty and eighth year of the reign of the judges they succeeded in obtaining possession of the land of *Zarahemla*; yea, and also all the lands, even unto the land which was near the land *Bountiful*.

H 4-366

6. And the Nephites and the armies of Moronihah were driven even into the land of *Bountiful*;

7. And there they did fortify against the Lamanites, from the *west sea*, even unto the *east*; it being a day's journey for a Nephite, on the line which they had fortified and stationed their armies to defend their north country.

10. ---in the sixty and first year of the reign of the judges, they [the Nephites] succeeded in regaining even the half of all their possessions.

16. ---even until they had regained the one-half of their property and the one-half of all their lands.

19. Therefore they did abandon their design to obtain the remainder of their lands, for so numerous were the Lamanites that it became impossible---[This great "push" northward took place in about 30 B.C. and forced the Nephite culture to a new northern location.]

H 4-367

14. ---[And Helaman and others went south] to teach the word of God among all the people of Nephi, beginning at the city of *Bountiful*;

15. And from thenceforth to the city of *Gid*; and from the city of *Gid* to the city of *Mulek*;

16. And even from one city to another, until they had gone forth among all the people of Nephi who were in the land southward; and from thence into the land of *Zarahemla*, among the Lamanites [who now possessed the land].

H 5-370

4. And it came to pass that many of the Lamanites did come down into the land of *Zarahemla*, and did declare unto the people of the Nephites the manner of their conversion,

6. And it came to pass that many of the Lamanites did go into the land northward;

7. And behold, there was peace in all the land,

10. Now the land south was called *Lehi*, and the land north was called *Mulek*, which was after the son of Zedekiah; for the Lord did bring *Mulek* into the land north, and *Lehi* into the land south.

12. They did raise grain in abundance, both in the north and in the south;

H 6-373

PART IV

THE LAND NORTHWARD

10. Now [all] the land south [of "the narrow neck of land"] was called Lehi, and [all] the land north [of "the narrow neck of land"] was called Mulek, H 6-373

8. And it came to pass that they did multiply and spread, and did go forth from the land southward to the land northward, and did spread insomuch that they began to cover the face of the whole earth, from the sea south to the sea north, from the sea west to the sea east. H 8-364

I. THE LAND NORTHWARD AT THE TIME OF THE JAREDITES

(Though it is difficult to trace the topography of the land during the time of the Jaredite culture, what information can be found is included here. Length of culture—about 2700 B.C. to 585 B.C.)

12. And they [the Jaredites] did land upon the shore of the *promised land*.

13. And it came to pass that they went forth upon the face of the land, and began to till the earth. E 6-488

4. ---[And he, Corihor,] went over and dwelt in the land of *Nehor*; ---[and] drew away many people after him.

5. And when he had gathered together an army he came up unto the land of *Moron*, where the king dwelt, and took him captive,

6. Now the land of *Moron*, where the king dwelt, was near the land which is called *Desolation* by the Nephites. E 7-489

9. Wherefore, he [Shule] came to the hill *Ephraim*, and he did molten out of the hill, and made swords out of steel for those whom he had drawn away with him; and after he had armed them with swords he returned to the city *Nehor*, and gave battle unto his brother Corihor, E 7-490

20. And the country was divided; and there were two kingdoms, the *kingdom of Shule*, and the *kingdom of Cohor*, the son of Noah. E 7-490

2. And Jared [II—son of Omer] rebelled against his father, and came and dwelt in the land of *Heth*. And it came to pass that he did flatter many people, because of his cunning words, until he had gained the half of the kingdom. E 8-491

3. And the Lord warned Omer in a dream that he should depart out of the land; wherefore Omer departed out of the land with his family, and traveled many days, and came over and passed by the hill of *Shim*, and came over by the place where the Nephites were destroyed, and from thence eastward, and came to a place which was called *Ablom*, by the seashore, and there he pitched his tent, E 9-493

31. ---And it came to pass that their [the Jaredites'] flocks began to flee before the poisonous serpents, towards the land southward, which was called by the Nephites *Zarahemla*.

32. And it came to pass that there were many of them which did perish

by the way; nevertheless, there were some which fled into the land *southward*. E 9-495

19. And it came to pass that Lib also did that which was good in the sight of the Lord. And in the days of Lib the poisonous serpents were destroyed. Wherefore they [the Jaredites] did go into the land *southward*, to hunt for the people of the land, for the land was covered with animals of the forest. And Lib also himself became a great hunter.

20. And they built a great city by the narrow neck of land, by the place where the sea divides the land.

21. And they did preserve the land *southward* for a wilderness, to get game. And the whole face of the land *northward* was covered with inhabitants. E 10-497

27. And it came to pass that Coriantumr was exceedingly angry with Shared, and he went against him with his armies to battle; and they did meet in great anger, and they did meet in the valley of *Gilgal*; and the battle became exceeding sore.

28. And it came to pass that Shared fought against him for the space of three days. And it came to pass that Coriantumr beat him, and did pursue him until he came to the plains of *Heshlon*.

29. And it came to pass that Shared gave him battle again upon the plains; and behold, he did beat Coriantumr, and drove him back again to the valley of *Gilgal*. E 18-505

3. And now, after the space of two years, and after the death of Shared, behold there arose the brother of Shared and he gave battle unto Coriantumr, in which Coriantumr did beat him and did pursue him to the wilderness of *Akish*.

6. And he came forth to the land of *Moron*, and placed himself upon the throne of Coriantumr.

7. And it came to pass that Coriantumr dwelt with his army in the wilderness for the space of two years, in which he did receive great strength to his army. E 14-505

11. And it came to pass that in the first year of Lib, Coriantumr came up unto the land of *Moron*, and gave battle unto Lib.

12. And it came to pass that he fought with Lib, ---nevertheless, the army of Coriantumr did press forward upon Lib, that he [Lib] fled to the borders upon the *seashore*.

13. And it came to pass that Coriantumr pursued him; and Lib gave battle unto him upon the seashore.

14. And it came to pass that Lib did smite the army of Coriantumr, that they fled again to the *wilderness of Akish*.

15. And it came to pass that Lib did pursue him until he came to the plains of *Agosh*. And Coriantumr had taken all the people with him as he fled before Lib-- E 14-506

26. And it came to pass that Shiz did pursue Coriantumr *eastward*, even to the borders of the *seashore*, and there he gave battle unto Shiz for the space of three days.

27. ---the armies of Shiz---began to flee before the armies of Coriantumr; and they fled to the land of *Corihor*,

28. And they pitched their tents in the valley of *Corihor*; and Coriantumr pitched his tents in the valley of *Shurr*. Now the valley of *Shurr* was near the hill *Comnor*; wherefore, Coriantumr did gather his armies together upon the hill *Comnor*, and did sound a trumpet unto the armies of Shiz to invite them forth to battle.

29. And it came to pass that they came forth, but were driven again; and they came the second time, and they were driven again E 14-507

7. And when Coriantumr saw that he was about to fall he fled again before the people of Shiz.

8. And it came to pass that he came to the waters of *Ripliancum*, which, by interpretation, is large, or to exceed all; wherefore, when they came to these waters they pitched their tents; and Shiz also pitched his tents near unto them; and therefore on the morrow they did come to battle.

10. And it came to pass that the armies of Coriantumr did press upon the armies of Shiz that they beat them, that they caused them to flee before them; and they did flee southward, and did pitch their tents in a place which was called *Ogath*.

11. And it came to pass that the army of Coriantumr did pitch their tents by the hill *Ramah*; and it was that same hill where my father Mormon did hide up the records unto the Lord, which were sacred. [the two armies fought together until they were both annihilated—Coriantumr alone was left.] E 15-508

II. MIGRATIONS AND INVASIONS TO THE NORTHERN LANDS

(During the time of the Nephites and the Lamanites)

MIGRATION 1. THE PEOPLE OF MULEK ARRIVED IN THE LAND NORTHWARD. (c. 585 B.C.)

30. ---[They arrived in a] land which they called *Desolation*, it being so far northward that it came into the land which had been peopled and been destroyed, of whose bones we have spoken---it being the place of their first landing.

31. And they came from there up into the south wilderness. Thus the land on the *northward* was called *Desolation*, --- A 22-254

MIGRATION 2. THE LAND NORTHWARD IS DISCOVERED BY NEPHITES. (c. 121 B.C.)

8. [The people of Limhi accidentally discover the land of *Desolation*, they returned to the land of Nephi] having traveled in a land among many waters, ---[which] was also covered with ruins of buildings of every kind, having discovered a land which had been peopled with a people who were as numerous as the hosts of Israel. Mo 8-150

MIGRATION 3. THE NEPHITES MIGRATED NORTHWARD FOR NEW LANDS. (c. 55 B.C.)

5. And it came to pass that Hagoth, he being an exceedingly curious man, therefore he went forth and built him an exceedingly large ship, on the borders of the land *Bountiful*, by the land *Desolation* and launched it forth into the west sea, by the *narrow neck* which led into the land *northward*. A 63-358

(c. 46 B.C.)

3. ---there was much contention---in the which there were an exceeding great many who departed out of the land of *Zarahemla*, and went forth unto the land *northward* to inherit the land.

4. And they did travel to an exceeding great distance, insomuch that they came to *large bodies of water* and *many rivers*.

5. Yea, and even they did spread forth into all parts of the land, into

whatever parts it had not been rendered desolate and without timber, because of the many inhabitants who had before inherited the land. H 3-363

6. ---[Now the land northward was called *Desolation* but] no part of the land was desolate, save it were for timber; but because of the greatness of the destruction of the people who had before inhabited the land it was called desolate.

7. And there being but little timber upon the face of the land, nevertheless the people who went forth became exceeding expert in the working of cement; therefore they did build houses of cement, in the which they did dwell.

8. And it came to pass that they did multiply and spread, and did go forth from the land southward to the land northward, and did spread inso-much that they began to cover the face of the whole earth, from the *sea south* to the *sea north*, from the *sea west* to the *sea east*.

9. ---and they did suffer whatsoever tree should spring up upon the face of the land that it should grow up, that in time they might have timber—

10. And it came to pass as timber was exceeding scarce in the land northward, they did send forth much by the way of shipping.

11. And thus they did enable the people in the land *northward* that they might build many cities, both of wood and of cement.

12. And it came to pass that there were many of the people of Ammon, who were Lamanites by birth, did also go forth into this land. H 3-364

5. ---they [the Lamanites] succeeded in obtaining possession of the land of *Zarahemla*; yea, and also all the lands, even unto the land which was near the land *Bountiful*.

10. ---they [the Nephites] succeeded in regaining even the half of all their possessions. [About 30 B.C.] H 4-366

MIGRATION 4. THE NEPHITES ARE PUSHED NORTHWARD BY THE LAMANITES. (322 A.D.—385 A.D.)

3. ---when ye [Mormon] are that age [24] go to the land *Antum*, unto a hill which shall be called *Shim*; and there have I deposited unto the Lord all the sacred engravings concerning this people. Mn 1-460

6. And it came to pass that I, being eleven years old, was carried by my father into the land southward, even to the land of *Zarahemla*. Mn 1-460

1. ---And notwithstanding I [Mormon] being young, was large in stature; therefore the people of Nephi appointed me that I should be their leader, or the leader of their armies.

2. ---it came to pass that in my sixteenth year I did go forth at the head of an army of Nephites, against the Lamanites---

3. ---[The Lamanites did frighten my armies; therefore they would not fight, and they began to retreat towards the north countries.

4. And it came to pass that we did come to the city of *Angola*, and we did take possession of the city, ---[but] the Lamanites did come upon us and did drive us out of the city.

5. And they did also drive us forth out of the land of *David*.

6. And we marched forth and came to the land of *Joshua*, which was in the borders west by the seashore. Mn 2-461

16. And it came to pass that in the three hundred and forty and fifth year the Nephites did begin to flee before the Lamanites; and they were pursued until they came even to the land of *Jashon*, before it was possible to stop them in their retreat.

17. And now, the city of *Jashon* was near the land where Ammaron had deposited the records unto the Lord, that they might not be destroyed.

20. And it came to pass that in this year the people of Nephi again were hunted and driven. And it came to pass that we were driven forth until we had come northward to the land which was called *Shem*.

21. And it came to pass that we did fortify the city of *Shem*, and we did gather in our people as much as it were possible, that perhaps we might save them from destruction.

29. And the Lamanites did give unto us the land northward, yea, even to the narrow passage which led into the land southward. And we did give unto the Lamanites all the land southward. [Great Treaty of 350 A.D.]

Mn 2-462

5. And it came to pass that I did cause my people that they should gather themselves together at the land *Desolation*, to a city which was in the borders, by the *narrow pass* which led into the land *southward*.

6. And there we did place our armies, that we might stop the armies of the Lamanites; that they might not get possession of any of our lands; therefore we did fortify against them with all our force.

7. And it came to pass that in the three hundred and sixty and first year the Lamanites did come *down* to the city of *Desolation*---

Mn 3-464

1. ---the Nephites did go *up* with their armies to battle against the Lamanites, out of the land of *Desolation*.

2. And it came to pass that the armies of the Nephites were driven back again to the land of *Desolation*. And while they were yet weary, a fresh army of the Lamanites did come upon them; and they had a sore battle, insomuch that the Lamanites did take possession of the city *Desolation* and did slay many Nephites,

3. And the remainder did flee and join the inhabitants of the city *Teancum*. Now the city *Teancum* lay in the borders by the seashore; and it was also near the city *Desolation*.

14. And they [the Lamanites] did also march forward against the city *Teancum*, and did drive the inhabitants forth out of her, and did take many prisoners

19. And it came to pass that the Lamanites did come down against the city *Desolation*; and there was an exceedingly sore battle fought in the land *Desolation*, in the which they did beat the Nephites.

20. And they [the Nephites] fled again from before them, and they came to the city *Boaz*; and there they did stand against the Lamanites with exceeding boldness, insomuch that the Lamanites did not beat them until they had come again the second time.

23. And now I, Mormon, seeing that the Lamanites were about to overthrow the land, therefore I did go to the hill *Shim*, and did take up all the records which Ammaron had hid up unto the Lord.

Mn 4-465

3. And it came to pass that the Lamanites did come against us as we had fled to the city of *Jordan*; but behold, they were driven back that they did not take the city at that time.

Mn 5-467

2. And I Mormon, wrote an epistle unto the king of the Lamanites, and desired of him that he would grant unto us that we might gather together our people unto the land of *Cumorah*, by a hill which was called *Cumorah*, and there we could give them battle.

4. And it came to pass that we did march forth to the land of *Cumorah*, and we did pitch our tents around about the hill *Cumorah*; and it was in a land of many waters, rivers, and fountains; and here we had hope to gain advantage over the Lamanites.

5. And when three hundred and eighty and four years had passed away, we had gathered in all the remainder of our people unto the land of *Cumorah*.

Mn 6-469

2. And now it came to pass that after the great and tremendous battle at *Cumorah*, behold, the Nephites who had escaped into the country southward were hunted by the Lamanites, until they were all destroyed.

3. And my father [Mormon] also was killed by them, and I [Moroni] even remain alone to write the sad tale of the destruction of my people.

4. Therefore I will write and hide up the records in the earth; and whither I go it mattereth not.

Mn 8-472

PART V

THE DESTRUCTION OF THE LAND AT THE TIME OF THE GREAT CATAclysm

(The destruction of the land on the Western Hemisphere at the time of the crucifixion of Christ in Jerusalem at about 34 A.D. Most of these cities are not located on Map III, since no information is given as to their comparative locations. That there were many more cities than those listed on Map III, and that the land of Bountiful was more populous than is indicated on that map is suggested by the following information.)

14. And now, whoso readeth, let him understand; he that hath the scriptures, let him search them, and see and behold if all these deaths and destructions---are not unto the fulfilling of the prophecies of many of the holy prophets. 8N 10-420

5. And it came to pass in the thirty and fourth year, in the first month, on the fourth day of the month, there arose a great storm, such an one as never had been known in all the land.

6. And there was also a great and terrible tempest; and there was terrible thunder, insomuch that it did shake the whole earth as if it was about to divide asunder.

7. And there were exceeding sharp lightnings, such as never had been known in all the land.

8. And the city of *Zarahemla* did take fire.

9. And the city of *Moroni* did sink into the depths of the sea, and the inhabitants thereof were drowned.

10. And the earth was carried up upon the city of *Moronihah*, that in the place of the city there became a great mountain.

11. And there was a great and terrible destruction in the land southward.

12. But behold, there was a *more great and terrible* destruction in the land *northward*; for behold, the whole face of the land was changed, because of the tempest and the whirlwinds, and the thunderings and the lightnings, and the exceeding great quaking of the whole earth;

13. And the highways were broken up, and the level roads were spoiled, and many smooth places became rough.

14. And many *great and notable cities were sunk* and many were burned, and many were shaken till the buildings thereof had fallen to the earth, and the inhabitants thereof were slain, and the places were left desolate.

15. And there were some cities which remained; but the damage thereof was exceeding great,

16. And there were some [people] who were carried away in the whirlwind;

17. And thus the face of the whole earth became deformed,

18. And behold, the rocks were rent in twain; they were broken up from the face of the whole earth, 8N 8-415

(Other cities destroyed.)

6. ---the city of *Gilgal* have I caused to be sunk, ---in the depths of the earth;

7. ---the city of *Onihah*---the city of *Mocum*---and the city of *Jerusalem* ---[buried in the depths of the earth] and waters have I caused to come up in the stead thereof.

8. ---the city of *Gadiandi*, and the city of *Gadiomnah*, and the city of *Jacob* and the city of *Gimgimno*, all these have I caused to be sunk, and made hills and valleys in the place thereof;

9. ---that great city *Jacobugath*, which was inhabited by the people of king Jacob, have I caused to be burned with fire---

10. ---the city of *Laman*, and the city of *Josh*, and the city of *Gad*, and the city of *Kishkumen*, have I caused to be burned with fire, and the inhabitants thereof,

12. And many great destructions have I caused to come upon this land, and upon this people, because of their wickedness and their abominations.

3N 9-417

(Christ appeared in the land of Bountiful.)

1. And now it came to pass that there were a great multitude gathered together, of the people of Nephi, round about the temple which was in the land *Bountiful*; [and it was here that Christ appeared to the people]

3N 1-421

(Many cities were re-built after the cataclysm.)

8. Yea, even that great city *Zarahemla* did they cause to be built again.

4N 1-456

APPENDIX D

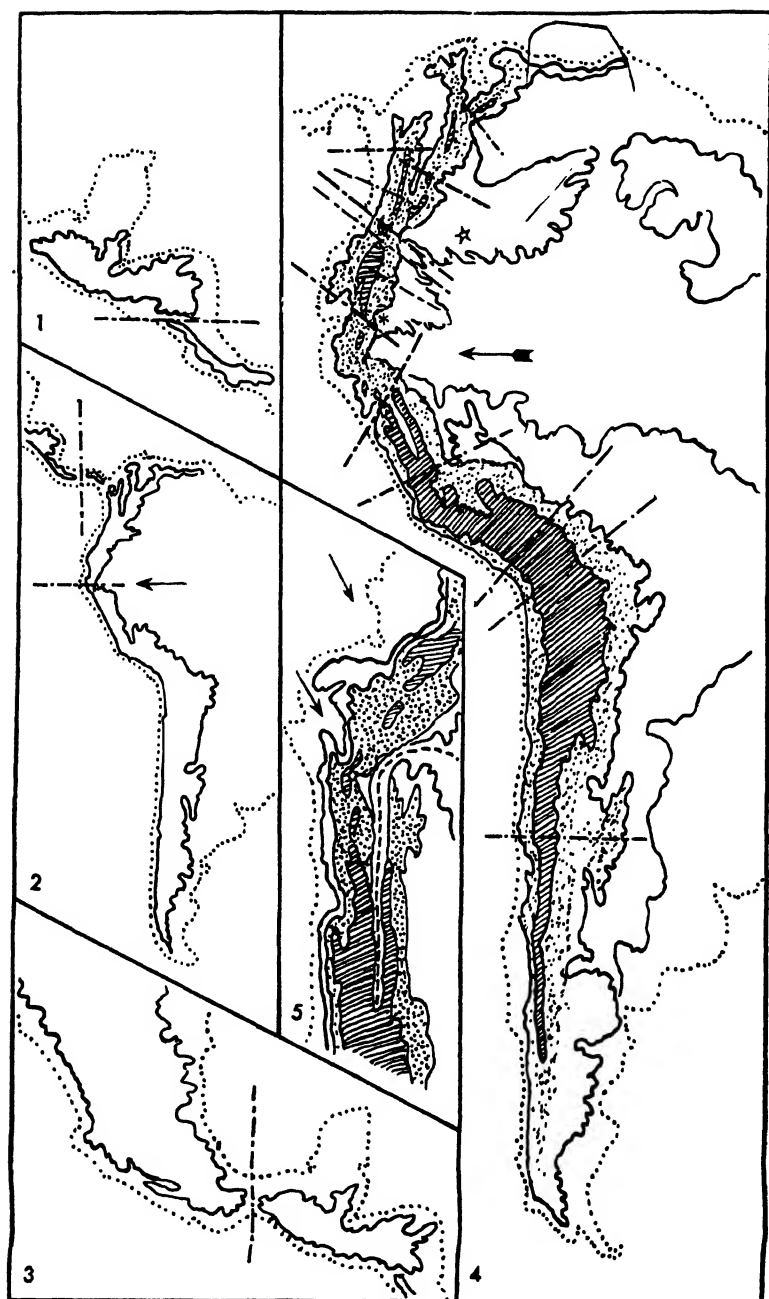
A CORRELATION SURVEY

COMPARING THE LANDS OF THE BOOK OF MORMON AND THE LANDS OF THE WESTERN HEMISPHERE

Map III gives the tentative locations of the sites mentioned in the *Book of Mormon*. Many students may be intrigued by this map and may be tempted to compare it with current topographical maps of the Western Hemisphere. Such a comparison is dangerous (though fascinating) for the investigator may be carried beyond the mark and may be misled into issuing false conclusions. False impressions are difficult to correct since the tendrils of propaganda, which may have already affected a great many people, are never easily traced nor completely eradicated.

Much has been written correlating the *Book of Mormon* lands with various districts of the Western Hemisphere. Many writers have formed definite decisions and have submitted evidence to substantiate their various claims. Some believe that the entire history of the ancient peoples of the *Book of Mormon* was evolved upon the North American Continent (according to this theory—the last great war of the Nephites occurred in the State of New York); other writers believe that the events of the *Book* took place in Central America; there are those who see correlations between northern South America and the *Book of Mormon* lands; and then still others see in the entire Western Hemisphere the setting for the history of those ancient “Americans.” It can be seen that there is a wide variance of opinion, and it can be concluded that a large amount of research will be necessary before definite correlations can be decided upon.

To anyone who might be interested in following a correlation study (comparing the lands of the *Book of Mormon* to those existing today), it might be stated that consulting maps is only a small part of such a study. The lands in question should be visited by the energetic student so that he might study the topography in its actual form. (Maps do not always give the true picture.) The student should also study the geological background of the land, and the archaeological record of the people or the district in question. It should be kept in mind also that the land may have altered in the last 2000 years. Geologists will say that the alteration during that period of time has been so slight as to be negligible. There is the possibility, however, that certain areas subjected to violent volcanic action (the west coast of Central and South America) may have



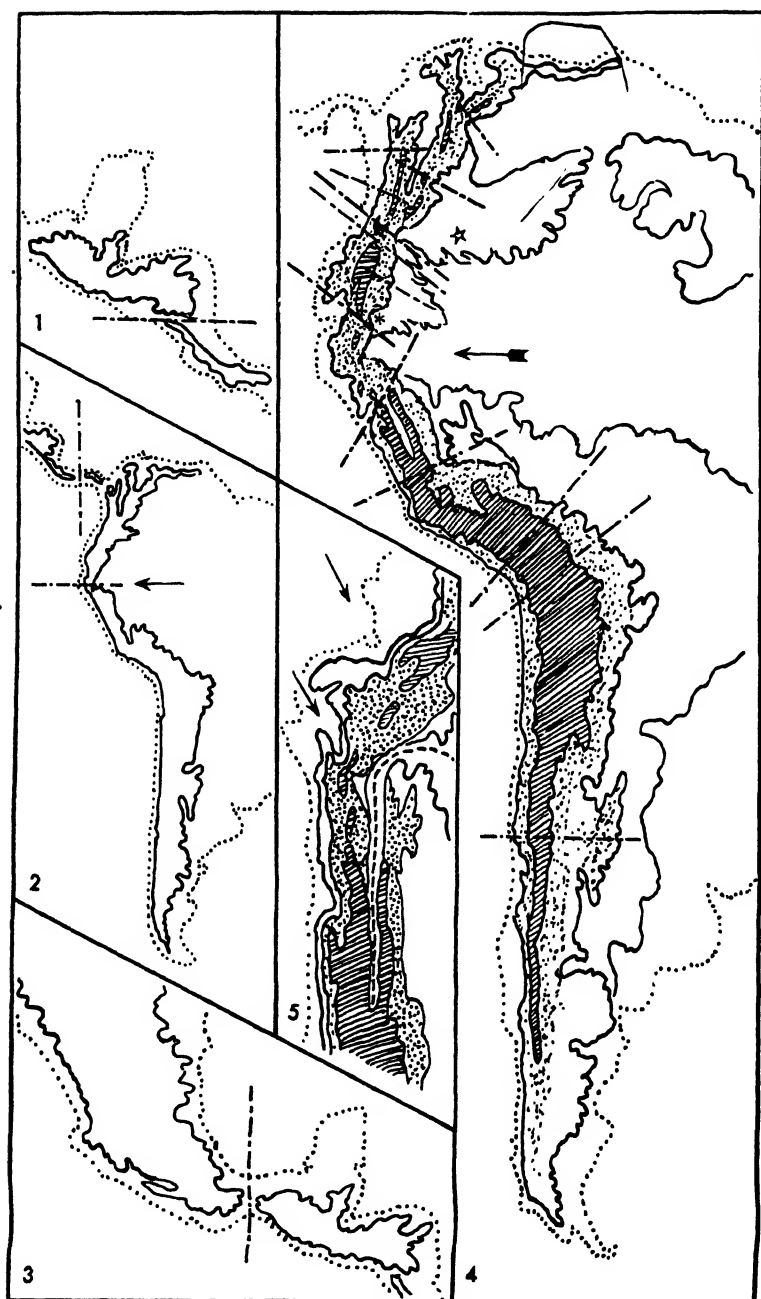
MAP VI

Mormon. The majority of the current writers prefer to place the Isthmus of Tehuantepec as the site of "the narrow neck of land" with Central America as the location for the setting of the *Book of Mormon*. Other writers are convinced that the Isthmus of Panama is that "narrow neck." Below is given a list of references which promote one or the other of these two theories:

"*An Introduction to the Study of the Book of Mormon*," by J. M. Sjodahl; "*The Geography of the Book of Mormon Lands*," by Joel Ricks; "*Approach to the Study of the Book of Mormon Geography*," by J. A. Washburn and J. W. Washburn; "*The Romance of the Book of Mormon*," by Josiah Hickman; "*Cumoram—Where?*" by T. S. Ferguson; "*The Story of the Book of Mormon*," by Florence Pierce; "*The Americas before Columbus*," by Dewey Farnsworth; and "*The Geography of the Book of Mormon*," by M. W. Jakeman. (Note: The last four were published in 1947 or 1948, after the completion of this present volume, "*The Book of Mormon Guide Book*." The last mentioned book is not off the press as yet.)

The author wishes to present an additional theory for the consideration of the research student—that South America may have contained, *within* its borders, the location of the site once known to the ancient peoples of the *Book of Mormon* as "the narrow neck of land." This singular hypothesis (the placing of this landmark within South America) has not been presented by any other writer. This correlation is suggested at this time,* because the author feels that a possible South American setting for the lands of the *Book of Mormon* should not be neglected although present enthusiasm is being exhibited principally in favor of the Central American "theory." The author spent the summer and fall of 1944 in Mexico and Central America and the summer of 1946 in South America, and feels that much is to be said in favor of a South American correlation. Both of these trips were archaeological survey tours; during this time, many ancient sites were visited, and the contents of many museums were studied and photographed. (The student should be aware of the fact that certain of the *Book of Mormon* peoples could have migrated from South America and could have settled in colonies in Central America and Mexico. Such migrations could have taken place during the time of Hagoth and at other times.) At any event, South America and Central America should be considered equally when projecting possible locations for the ancient sites of the *Book of Mormon*.

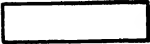


*See page 568.



MAP VI

LEGEND OF MAP VI

POSSIBLE LOCATIONS OF "THE NARROW NECK OF LAND"

- Present coast line of Central America and the west coast of South America.
-  (Areas enclosed in outline) The land which is above sea level as taken from current maps showing land elevations.
-  (Dotted areas) The land which is approximately 5,000 to 10,000 feet above sea level.
-  (Diagonally shaded areas) The land which is 10,000 feet (or higher) above sea level.
- Suggested location areas for the "narrow neck of land." (In Diagram 4, these are accented for northern Peru and southern Ecuador; the other designated areas are Andean passes).
- In Diagram 5—the Marañon River.

DIAGRAMS OF MAP VI

- Diagram 1 "The Narrow Neck" may have been the narrow strip of land of northwestern Nicaragua (Lake Nicaragua and the land bordering the River San Juan are geologically speaking "new").
- Diagram 2 "The Narrow Neck" may have been the Isthmus of Panama. ("The Narrow Neck" may have been in southern Ecuador or near the northern boundary of Peru. See arrow. See Diagram 5.)
- Diagram 3 "The Narrow Neck" may have been the Isthmus of Tehuantepec.
- Diagram 4 Important mountain passes in the Andes. "The Narrow Neck" may have been one of these. The arrow points to the important southern Ecuador—northern Peru area, and to two important passes. See page 566.
- Diagram 5 "The Narrow Neck" may have been in southern Ecuador or northern Peru. This Diagram is an enlarged detail study of the areas marked with an arrow in Diagrams 2 and 4. This Diagram also shows the course of the Marañon River (marked with the broken line).

*IMPORTANT ANDEAN PASSES

(See Map VI, Diagram 4)

-
- | | |
|-------------|---|
| In Colombia | 1. From Bogota, Colombia, to Caracas, Venezuela
(There are three important passes in Venezuela
between these points: Mucuchies, La Negra, and
Zumbador.) |
| | 2. From Medellin to Bucaramanga (or to Bogota) |
| | 3. From Bogota to Sogamoso |
| | 4. From Bogota to Cali |
| | 5. From Pasto to the Amazon Basin |
| In Ecuador | 6. From the vicinity of San Gabriel, Quito and Cay-
ambe to the Amazon |
| | 7. From the vicinity of Riobamba and Baños to the
Amazon |
| | 8. From Sibambe to Quayaquil or to Quito
From Sibambe, El Tambo, and Cuenca to the
Amazon Basin (<i>Above Arrow</i>) |
| In Peru | 9. From Chiclayo to the Amazon Basin via the
Marañon (<i>Below Arrow</i>) |
| | 10. From Lima to Huncayo or to Cerro de Pasco |
| | 11. From Arequipa to Puno or to Cuzco |
| In Chile | 12. From Arica to La Paz, Bolivia |
| | 13. From Santiago to Buenos Aires, Argentina |
-

*The author has had the privilege of visiting (or has been in the vicinity of) most of the areas marked on Map VI.

CHART 27

PLACE NAMES IN NORTHERN PERU AND SOUTHERN ECUADOR WHICH RESEMBLE THE NAMES OF SITES IN THE BOOK OF MORMON

Book of Mormon	Southern Ecuador	Northern Peru
Zarahemla	Caraquiz Cariamanga Zaraguro Zarumilla Zaruma Zaratambu Baraunas Quaranda Macara Catacocha Arenillas Gualaquiza Gualaceo Cajabambo	Tarapota Cajamarca Cajamarquilla Talara Catacaos Cajabamba Caras Carhuas Huaras Huaral Guaracayo Paramonga Cajatambo Querecotillo
Hill Cumorah*	Rio Zamora City of Zamora State of Zamora (There is a hill at the juncture of the Zamora and Paute Rivers.)	
Jershon	Girón, a city	
Moroni, the city	Morona, a river	

*There is a hill in southeastern Colombia called Cumare.

(Note: In the Quechua language common in the Andes in southern Colombia, in all of Ecuador, and in most of Peru—"Zara" means corn. The word "Zaratambu" means "place-where-Indians-stop-to-eat-corn.")

The narrowest section of the Andean chain is to be found in the district of Ecuador. In southern Ecuador is to be found, likewise, some of the most impassable country on the west coast of South America. No railroad nor road traverses the length of southern Ecuador; there are short stretches of road around some communities only. This area, which approximately covers the Andes between La Tina and Jaen in Peru, and El Tambo in Ecuador, will eventually be covered by the Pan-American Highway, but, at the present time, the district compares to southern Nicaragua and southern Panama as one of the problem stretches of that road. Near El Tambo, Ecuador, in the northern part of this district, is to be found the ruins of Ingapirca—the fortress of the Incas which marked the northern extent of their building (their influence and culture reached to Quito, Ecuador, however). Ingapirca stands on a bluff which overlooks the country to the east toward the beginning of the Amazon Basin and toward the west to the lowlands of the Gulf of Guayaquil. (Is it possible that the Incas covered about the same area in their conquests as had the Lamanites five hundred or more years earlier?)

After Map III was finished, the author studied it in connection with Map II and found that these two maps could suggest a South American location for the lands of the *Book of Mormon*. This observation together with information collected on the South American survey tour, prompted the author to add these correlations to those already in existence which compare other sections of the Western Hemisphere to the lands of the *Book of Mormon*.*

The reader will note (compare Maps II, III, and VI) that the prevailing winds along the west coast of South America, the Peruvian (Humbolt) current, and two important Andean passes—all contact the southern coast of Peru in the vicinity of Arequipa (or near Arica, Chile). Much in the way of interesting archaeology is to be found in this triangular area bounded by Arequipa (Peru), Arica (Chile), and La Paz (Bolivia), and its adjacent areas. Could this land be the land of the "First Inheritance" of the ancient Nephite and Lamanite peoples in the *Book of Mormon*? (Other areas in southern Peru are of archaeological importance and could also be compared to the "land of First Inheritance.") See Chart 28 (a possible summary of Maps II, III, and VI) for examples of these theories. Many other theories are possible — such as one that would place "Nephi" in Ecuador; "Zarahemla" in the Popoyan (or Bogota) valley in Colombia; "Bountiful" in Cali (or Sogamoso) in Colombia; and "Desolation" in northern Colombia or in Venezuela. It can be concluded that it is possible to shift a correlation plan either up or down the west coast of South America.

*NOTE: As has been said, any study correlating the topography of the lands of the *Book of Mormon* and the lands of the Western Hemisphere should be approached cautiously, as the variable factors included in such a study are so great. Finally, it is well to again advise the reader to consider the maps and topographic correlations by the author in this volume as being in an "experimental" stage and, therefore, not to fix their evidence as being conclusive.

CHART 28
*A SOUTH AMERICAN CORRELATION
FOR THE LANDS OF THE BOOK OF MORMON

BOOK OF MORMON LANDS	APPROXIMATE CORRELATIONS		
	THEORY ONE	THEORY TWO	THEORY THREE
The Land of First Inheritance	The vicinity of Arica, Chile; Arequipa, Peru, and La Paz, Bolivia	Same as Theory 1, or near Lima, Peru	1. Northern Chile, or 2. Northern Peru, coast.
Land of Nephi	Lake Titicaca to (or north of) Cerro de Pasco (Arequipa to Paramonga on the coast)	Peru north of Arequipa	1. Peru as a whole or 2. Northern Peru, highlands.
Narrow strip of Wilderness between Nephi and Zarahemla	Area north of Cerro de Pasco	Maranon narrows	Southern Ecuador and (or) Maranon narrows
Land of Zarahemla	Paramonga to Lambayeque (The Great wall of Peru 40 miles long 15 feet high follows R. Santa.) Caras or Cajamarca being Zarahemla proper. (Area may have run to Zaraguro, Etc.)	Maranon narrows to Giron, Ecuador, Zaraguro and Zaruma being Zarahemla proper.	El Tambo to Quito, Ecuador. Guaranda or Cajabamba being Zarahemla proper.
River Sidon	Rio Maranon (or Rio Santa)	Rio Jubones, or Rio Piate	Headwaters of Guayas or Pastaza
Wilderness of Hermounts	Northwest coast of Peru to Quayaquil	Gulf of Quayaquil and lowlands of Rios Guayas, Vinces, Daule,	Same as Theory Two
Land of Bountiful	Northern Peru west of Amazon Basin. Moyobamba is a very fertile district. (Legend says ancient cities covered by tropical growth are east of Chachapoyas.)	Giron to El Tambo. Cuenca and Macas being both fertile districts.	Northern Ecuador, Imbabura, Otavalo, etc.
Narrow Neck of Land	The Maranon narrows or Andean passes in Southern Ecuador, such as the pass at Tinejillas (Targui) south of Cuenca.	El Tambo and Ingapirca	Narrow Pass at Tulcan, Colombia
Land of Desolation	Southern and central Ecuador	El Tambo to Quito, Ecuador	Tulcan to San Augustin, Colombia
City of Desolation	Cuenca, Ecuador	Quaranda or Riobamba, Ecuador.	Pasto, Colombia
City of Moron	Near Cuenca, or near Riobamba	Quito, Ecuador. Many wars have been fought on the side of the Mt. Pichincha.	San Augustin, Colombia
The Hill Cumorah, and the Hill Shim	The Acacana, the Nudo de Portete with its famous pass at Tarqui, or other hills in the vicinity as the one near the mouth of R. Zamora	Sangay, Altar, Tunqurahua, Chimborazo, Reventador, Cayambe, etc.	Cara Urcu, Chiles, Pasto, Cumare, Purace
The Land Northward	Ecuador and Colombia	From El Tambo northward	Colombia
Nephite Colonization via ocean migrations (c. 55 B.C.)	To Central America, Mexico, southern United States, and the Pacific Islands.	Same as Theory 1	Same as Theory 1

*The place names on this chart represent a district rather than actual sites. Each place name represents the area from the Pacific Ocean to the Amazon Basin, and therefore, an east-west zone across the country in question.

See Appendix C, Part I, for a description of the above landmarks.

The "Sea North" in the *Book of Mormon* may have been the Caribbean Sea — according to this South American correlation, and Mulek and his party could have arrived on the north coast of South America.

THE INDEX

- Aaron, son of Mosiah, 404-17
 Aaron, Jaredite king, 69; 122-13; 141
 Aaron, king of Lamanites, 153
 Aaron, city, 547-14
 Abel, 443-27
 Abinadi, 116-26; 118-1; 121-9; 422
 Abinadom, 52; 146
 Abiah, 200-Chart 15
 Abolition, 350
 Ablom, Jaredite land, 553-8
 Abominable Church, 18-5; 23-3
 Abraham, 82-30; 219-15; 242-19; 374; 392-16; 500-14
 Abridged Records, Chart 2, 3, and 5 - Mormon and Moroni
 Adam, 111-36; 240-3; 287-5; 323-5; 445-19; 514-20
 Adultery, 201
 Advent of Christ, 298; 299; see "Birth of Christ"
 Adversary, see "Devil"
 Agency, free, see "Probation"
 Agriculture, 208
 Agosh, Plains of (Jaredite Land), 554-15
 Aha, 141; 175
 Ahah, 69; 436, Chart 23
 Akish, son of Kinnor, 131-15; 140; 160; 436, Chart 23
 Akish, Jaredite land, 554-3, 14
 Allegory, see "Mythology"
 Alma, the first, record of, 31; 41; 48; 72; people of, 115; 118; 146; 231-4; 374
 Alma, the second, 52; 122-3; 146; 169-33; 176-16; 374; 397; 403-3; 423; 437, Chart 23; 462
 Alma, land, 119-20; 541-20
 Almighty God, 164-48
 Alpha and Omega, see "God"
 Alphabet, see "Writing"
 Altar, 83-7; 108-4
 Amaleki, son of Abinadom, 52
 Amaleki, brother of Ammon, 146
 Amalekites, 72; 123; leader of, 436, Chart 23
 Amalickiah, 14-10; 127-1; 153; 437, Chart 23; 465-3
 Amalickiahites, 72; 127
 Amaron, son of Omni, 52; 146
 America, 8; 11-11
 American Gospel, see "Book of Mormon"
 American Indian, 25-12; 495-75; 500-2; 514-16; 525; see "Lamanites"
 Amgid, Jaredite king, 141
 Aminadab, 230-2; 383-39
 Amlici, 436, Chart 23; 464-2
 Amlicites, 72; 103-4; 125-1
 Ammah, 541 - migration 8
 Ammaron, 52; 146
 Ammon, descendant of Zarahemla, 35-19; 47-5
 Ammon, son of Mosiah, 105-2; 374; 404-12
 Ammonites, or people of Ammon, 72; 108
 Ammonihah, people of, 122
 Ammonihah, land of, 122-9; 545-6, 13, 1, 1; 546-2; 549-1, 2; destruction of, 123
 Ammonihahites, see people of Ammonihah
 Ammoron, king of Lamanites, 129-8; 153
 Amnigaddah, Jaredite king, 69; 141
 Amnihu, hill, 544-15
 Amnor, spy sent by Alma, 130-21
 Amnor, coin, 218-6
 Amoron, 191-7
 Amos, son of Nephi, 52; 146
 Amos, son of Amos, 52; 146
 Amulek, 122-3; 159-17; 230-2; 403-3; 411-2
 Amulon, 119; 120-32
 Amulon, land of, 120-31; 437, Chart 23; 541-31, 1; 542-11
 Amulon, people of, see "Priests of Noah"
 Anarchy, 143
 Anatomy, 244; 466-2; see "Anthropology"
 Anchor, 276-18
 Ancient, see "Brass Plates" and Records
 Angels, 163-29; 375; 381; 384; 423-6
 Anger, 79-22
 Angola, 193-4; 556-4
 Ani-Anti, land of, 542-11
 Animals, 96-21; 117-3; 207-19; 208-25; 209-18, 19; 243; 252; 445; see "Flocks"
 Anthropology, 239, 240, 244; see "Anatomy"
 Anti-Christ, 464-6
 Anti-Nephi-Lehi, 113-11
 Anti-Nephi-Lehies, 112-17
 Antiomno, 153
 Antion, coin, 218-19
 Anti-Patriotic, 14
 Antionah, 437, Chart 23; BofM 226-20
 Antionum, land of, 175; 188-14; 546, 6, 3; 546-22; 73
 Antiparah, land of, 182; 550-14; 551-31, 3, 4
 Antipas, hill, 549-7
 Anton, Dr., 503-15
 Antum, land of, 556-3
 Apostasy, 461-32, 9; 462-36; 465-59; 466-6
 Apostles, 24-20
 Apparel, 209-6; 254
 Arabia, 88
 Archaeologists, 277
 Archaeology, 253, Chap XI; 227, 278
 Archeantus, 175
 Architecture, 266
 Ark, see "Noah"
 Armies, 78-15; 118-18; 173; 174

(Also consult the index in *The Book of Mormon*)

- Armshields**, see "Armor"
Arms and Weapons, 112-6; 113-11; 174-9; 180-3; see "Weapons"
Armor, 78-15; 177-9; 180-8, 14; 259; 260
Army Leaders, 375
Arrow, see "Weapons"
Artifacts, 254; 255; Chap. XI; 266; 278
Ascension, of Christ, see "Christ"
Ashes, 254-25
Asp, see BofM, 103-14
Ass, see "Animals"
Assembly, 212; 418-9
Assyrian, 487
Astronomy, 236
Atom Bomb, 261-17
Atonement, of Christ, 156-4; 327-7; see "Christ"
Authority, see "Ordination"
Ax, 103-20; see "Weapons"

Babes, see "Miracles of Christ"
Babel, see "Tower, great"
Babylon, 537-15
Ball of Brass, see "Compass"
Banking, 219
Banks of Earth, 266-8
Banner, 168-13
Baptism, 351; 355; 356-13
Baptism Ceremony, 356-23
Bar of God, 4-27
Barges, 71-6; 71-16; see "Ships"; 535
Barley, 250-22
Battles, 181, 182, etc.; 193
Bear, 249-13
Beatitudes, Christ gave the message of the Beatitudes to the Nephites, BofM 424-3
Beasts, see "Animals"
Beds, 111-43
Bees, 70-3; 227
Beggar, 319-19; 421-22; 465-58
Belief, 336- 401-21; 420-9
Bellows, 207-11
Benjamin, Nephite king, 52; 146; 175; 374; 396; 418-9
Bethabara, 354-9
Bible, 20; 22; 27-8; Brass Plates, 42-30; 44-4; 229-10; 489-18; 493-51
Biology, 239; 252; 497
Birth of Christ, 100-6; 298; 299; 300; see "Christ"
Blasphemy, 294-5
Blessing, 142-5; 356; 502-37
Blind, 409-7
Blood, atoning blood of Christ, see "Sacrament"
Bloodshed, 453-15; see "Death," and "Burial," and "Battles"
Boasting, 233; 404-12; 419-24; 449-11
Boaz, 195-20; 557-20
Bodies of Dead, 77-21
Bondage, 116-12; 119-16; 220-22
Book of Ether, 54
Book of Mormon, see "Mormon, Book"
Books, 22; found in Book of Mormon, 53

Books of Moses, see "Moses"
Borrowing, 218; 421-28; 458-2
Bound, 122-4
Botany, 239; 249; 252
Bountiful, land of, 65; 73; 95-15; 305-17; 532; 543-22, 29; 544-31, 32, 33; 547-11; 548-32, 23; 549-28, 32, 9; 550-27; 551-23; 552-5, 6, 14; 553-5; 554-5; 559-1
Bountiful (in Arabia?), 537-5
Bow, 103-20; see "Weapons"
Bracelets, 255-79; see "Jewelry"
Branch of Israel, 472; 474; 480; 486-12
Brass, 42-5; 80-10; see "Metal"
Brass Ball, 85-10; see "Compass"
Brass Plates, 37; 81-3; 156-16; 249; 251-4; 483
Brazen Serpent, see "Serpent" 289
Breastplates, 519; see "Armor"
Brimstone, see "Hell"
Brother of Jared, 70-1, 4; 74-19; sons, 76-20
Bucklers, see "Armor"
Building activity, 247-20; 266; see "Architecture"
Buildings, 303-5
Burdens, 117-3
Burned to Death, 457-20
Burial Customs, 187-19; 205; 428-10
Burnt Offerings, see "Sacrifice"
Bushel, 256-15
Butter, 252-15
Buy, 76-22; 251-50

Cain, 436, Chart 23; 443-27
Calendar, 235
Calf, 249-12
Calling, see "Ordination"
Calno, BofM, 83-9
Camenihah, 175; 188-14
Camp, 79-16
Candle, 256-15
Captain, 174-13; 176-16
Captivity, 109-20; 203-33; see "Prisoners" 189-15; 203-33
Carcass, 123-10; see "Hermounts," and "Ammonihah"
Carchemish, see BofM, 83-9
Carnage, 100-11
Carnal, see "Devil"
Caribbean, 61
Casualties, 186-22
Cataclysm, 16; 237-21; 304-5
Cattle, 96-21; see "Animals"
Celebration, 192-30
Cement, 266-7; 556-11
Cezoram, 132-19; 146; 150-23
Chains, 255-19; 267-13; 288-45
Characters, 374
Chariots, 256-22
Charity, 353-17
Chemish, 52-146
Chickens, see BofM, 419-4
Chiefs, see Chart 19

(Also consult the index in *The Book of Mormon*)

- Chief Judges, 113-21; 122-4; 176-16; 375; 428-9
- Children, 353-11, 12, 19
- Choice Land, 8; 9; 209-28
- Christ, Birth of, 16; 157; 235-6; 283-12; 298; 432; Baptism of, 354; Crucifixion of, 432; 437-5; 472-9; 478-5; Atonement of, 156; 369; 289-12; Appearance on Western Hemisphere, 305; Contact with, 376; Names of, 292; Miracles of, 409; Second Manifestation, 307-14; 474-2; God led his people, 290; 291-3
- Christians, 490-34
- Christa, false, 438-34; 440; 441-23
- Church of the Devil, 441; see "Abominable Church"
- Church of God, 28-38; 344; 423-9; 463-18
- Church of Latterday, 23-10
- Church Members, 347
- Cimeter, 103-20; see "Weapons"
- Circumcision, 357
- Cities, built, see "Architecture"
- Cities, sunk, 16-4; 95-15; 273; 425-2
- Cities, named, 272-7
- Civil War, 171-22
- Civilization, 191-11
- Classes, 198
- Cleansing Ceremony, 350-28
- Climate, 238-40
- Cloak, 255-31
- Closet, 266-6
- Cloth, 76-24; 97-13; 254
- Club, see "Weapons"
- Cockatrice, see BofM, 103-14
- Cohor, Brother of Noah, 140
- Cohor, son of Noah, 76-20; 139-21; 140
- Coins, see "Money"
- Columbus, 18
- Com, I, 69-70; 140
- Com, II, 141
- Combinations, secret, see "Secret Organizations"
- Comforter, see "God"
- Commandments of God, 8; 156-3; 810; 315; 419-31; Ten Commandments, 316
- Communication, 211
- Communism, 14-28
- Connor, hill, 77-28; 554-28
- Compass, 85-38; 165-21; 227; 230-27; 263; 402; see "Liahona"
- Concubines, 116-24; 202-27
- Confession, 357; 462-17
- Confusion of Tongues, 241; see "Tower, great"
- Condemn not the records, 6; 10-17
- Condemnation, 353-22
- Consecration, 358; see "Ordination"
- Construction, 226; see "Architecture"
- Contact with God, 376; 378
- Contentions, 163; 370; 460
- Covenant, 112-18; 485-7; 478-24, 25; 500-14; 505-23; 507-29
- Conversion, 371-4; 423-1
- Converts, 114-17
- Copper, 76-23; 80-10; see "Metal"
- Cords, 122-4; 256-21; 267-16
- Corianton, 96-10
- Coriantor, 69; 141
- Coriantum, son of Amnigaddah, 69; 141
- Coriantum, son of Emer, 70; 140; 141
- Coriantumr, son of Omer, 140
- Coriantumr, last Jaredite, 77-21; 79-32; 80-21; 141; 374; 436, Chart 23
- Coriantumr, Nephite dissenter, 136-15
- Corihor, 138-7; 140-436 - Chart 23
- Corihor, Jaredite land, 77-28; 554-27, 28
- Corn, 250-22
- Corom, 70; 140
- Councils, 214-19
- Counsel, 426-37
- Countries, see "Nations"
- Courts, see "Lawyers and Judges"
- Covenants, 18-22; 113-17; 132-22; 151-28; 189-20; 479-11
- Cowdery, Oliver, 517
- Cow, see "Animals"
- Craft, 125-3
- Creation, 111-36; 233-9; 236-44; 240; 420-9; 499-7
- Creator, see "Creation"; see "God"
- Cries, 79-16; 203-32; 206-2; 111-13; see "Mourning"; 4; 15-22
- Critics of the Lord's work, 507-21
- Cross, 202-30; 286
- Crucifixion, 302
- Cruelty, 469-11
- Culture Heroes, 281
- Cumeni, 184-7; 550-14; 551-7
- Cumons, 227; see "Animals"
- Cumorah, hill, 195-5; 531; 557-2, 4, 5, 2; 554-11
- Cumorah, land of, 100-4; 212-6
- Cunning and subterfuge; see "trickery"; 165-38
- Cup, 256-1
- Cureloms, see "Animals"
- Curse, for disobedience, 8; on land, 14-28; to workers of darkness, 15-31; on Lamanites, 102-21; 104-19; removed, 106-6; 459-31; 469-14
- Curtains, 267-2
- Cush, see BofM, 85-11
- Customs, see each custom listed
- Daggers, see "Weapons"
- Damascus, see BofM, 79-8
- Damnation, see "Hell"
- Dance, 164-9
- Dark, skin, 145-6; see "Lamanites"
- Dark Ages, 492-46
- Darkness, to light, 15-22; vapor of, 16-5; works of, 99-12; 305-20; 505-5; see "Cataclysm"
- Dart, see "Weapons"
- David, of old, 203-15
- David, place, 193-5; 556-5
- Day, 236
- Death, 186-22; 195-7; 205; 276-3; 284-28; 303-25; 408-19; 419-26; 429-19; 430-33; 465-59; Spiritual, 333
- Death by fire, 457-20

(Also consult the index in The Book of Mormon)

- Debtors, see "Borrowing"**
Defence, 15-47; 14-46; 178
Defeat, 192-5
Democracy, guard, 13; 143; 167
Demons, 435-37; see "Devil"
Den, 385-22
Depravity, 190-10
Depression, 458-1
Descendants, see "Seed"; "Fruit of Loins"; "House of Israel"; "Abraham, Jacob and Joseph"
Deseret, 227
Desolation, land of, 66; 533; 543-30; 544-31, 32; 553-30, 31, 8, 5, 3; 557-5, 7, 1, 2, 3, 14, 19; 553-6
Desolation of Nehors, see "Nehors"
Destruction, 14-28; Gentiles, 15-23; 98-23; Nephites, 99-17; at time of Christ, 304; 431-14; 455-7
Devil, 15-25; 131-16; 205-20; 241-28; 240-18; 321-41; 408-19; 433; 434; 444-27, 28, 30; 450-15; 460-29; 469-19; see "Satan"
Dialects, see "Language"
Dictator, 13-17
Directions, 478-26
Director, see "Liahona"; see "Compass"
Dirt, 266-8
Disciples, 17-8; 375; 383; 384; 386
Diseases, 97-22; see "Medicine"
Dish, 71-17
Disintegration, 152
Disputations, see "Contentions"
Dissensions, 152-24; 370
Dissenters, 122; 341; 375; 461; 463
Ditch, 270-3; 269-18
Divorce, 201-32; 204
Doctrines, 311
Doctrines, false, 462-16; 441-12
Dogmatism, 451
Dogs, see "Animals"
Domestic Customs, 207
Doors, 267-6
Dove, 286
Dragons, 249-44, 9
Dreams, 384
Drunkenness, see "Wine"
Dumb, 343-49; 463-19
Dust, voices, 4; return to, see "Death"
Earth, 71-43; 236-44; 266-8
Earthquakes, 16-4; 304-6; 453-15; see "Cataclysm"
East Wind, 453-31
Ecuador, 566
Eden, 240; 322-2
Edom, see BofM, 85-14
Egypt, 242-27; 291
Elam, see BofM, 85-11
Elders, 393
Elements, 457-3
Elephants, see "Animals"
Elijah, 511, Chart 26
Embassies, 214
Emer, 70; 140; 374
Emron, 175
Enemy, 176-25; 419-31
Engraving of Plates, 5; 81-3
Enos, 52; 146; 338-4
Ensign, 168-13; 504-10
Enticings, see "Devil"
Envy, see "Iniquity"
Ephraim, see BofM, 85-13
Ephraim, land of Jaredites, 138-9; 553-9
Epistles, 78-4; 214-1
Equality, see "Democracy" and "Socialism"
Esrom, 140; son of Omer
Eternal Father, 297; see "Unchangeable"
Eternal Head, 325-38
Eternal life, see "Redemption"
Eternity, 98-23
Etham, 69; 141; 437, Chart 23
Ether, prophet and author of plates of Ether, 30; 34; 50-1; 69-2; 77-20; 141; 374; 412; see "Moroni II"
Europeans, 489-24
Eve, 434-18; see "Creation"
Evil One, 433; see "Devil"
Evil, 433; 445; 514-4; see "Iniquity"
Evil-doers, 433; 436, Chart 23
Exchange, see "Money" or "Trade"
Eoxdus, 88; 241
Experiment, 336-27
Eye, 288-44
Ezias, 511, Chart 26
Ezrom, 218-6
Faith, 336; 404-10; 426-33
Fall of Man, 434-18, 3
False hearts, 11-1
Fame, see "Honor"
Families, 212-5
Famine, 453-15; 454-28
Fascism, 170
Fasting, 358; 463-22
Father, Eternal, see "God"
Fatlings, 97-12
Fear, 406-28; 441-28; 454-7
Fever, see "Medicine"
Field, 252-5
Figs, 250-16
Filthiness, 103-20; 104-9
Finger, 402-4
Fire, 122-8; 207; 257-11; 304-6; 309-20; 406-23; 453-15; 457; see "Holy Ghost"
Fire and Brimstone, 436-16
First Inheritance, land of, 73; 531; 537-30; 538; 543-28; of Mulek, 543-30
First Fruits, 309-23
Firstlings, 368-3
Fish, 207-2; 249-10
Fixtures, 266
Flag, 168-13
Flattery 14-10
Fleet, see "Ships"
Flight, see "Pursuit"
Flocks, 97-12; 109-27; 112-14; 114-29; 116-12; 212-3
Flood, 241; 288-25; see "Noah"

(Also consult the index in The Book of Mormon)

- Flora**, see "Plants"
Followers of Christ, see "Church of God"
Food, 248; 249; 252; see "Manna"
Fool, 228-22
Footstool, 287
Forefathers, see "Genealogy"
Foreheads, 126-4
Forest, see "Trees"
Forgiveness, 348-8
Fornication, 201-32
Fortifications and Forts, 129-8; 179; 189-25; 269-8; 13; 552-7; see "Architecture"
Foundation, 288-15
Fountain of Living Waters, 287
Four, 71-13; 78-14
Fowl, 71-16
Freedom, see "Liberty"
Fruit, 240-18; 250-5; 250-21; 287-5; 337-42
Fruits, first, see "First Fruits"
Fruit, good and evil, 436-17
Fruit of Loins, 437-4; 486-2; 499-12; 505-5; 507-23; see "Genealogy"
Fullness of Gospel, see "Salvation"
Furnace, 267-21; 422-10
Furniture, 255
Fury, see "Wrath"
Future Life, see "Resurrection"

Gad, place, 559-10
Gadiandi, city of, 559-8
Gadianton, 427-28; 437, Chart 23
Gadianton Robbers, 68; 72; 131; 133; 135
Gadiomnah, place, 559-8
Game, 76-21
Garden, 274-10
Garden of Eden, see "Creation"
Garments, made white, 17-10; 17-11; 350-28; 213-28
Gate, 267-28; 288-39
Gatherings, 212
Gathering of Israel, see "House of Israel"
Gazelem, 36-23; 227; 265-23
Geba, see BofM, 84-29
Gebim, see BofM, 84-31
Genealogy, Jaredites, 69; Lehi and Nephi, 81; 211
Generations, 16-3; 17-11; 514-16
Gentiles, 170-23; 232; 233-20; 246-15; 11-16; 15-23; 18-3; 19; 20-24; 21-34; 22-42; 22-2; 27; 310; 479-10; 481; 501-33
Geography, 527
Geology, 237
Giants, see "Anthropology"; see "Lib"
Gid, 175; 180-20; 185-20
Gid, city of, 549-26; 550-7; 552-15
Giddianhi, 134-14
Giddonah, father of Amulek, 82-2
Giddonah, priest, 230-2
Gideon, 175; 120-23; 467-9; 548-3; 6
Gideon, land of, 543-1; 544-21, 20, 26; 545-7
Gidgiddonah, 175; 188-13
Gidgiddoni, 134-22; 175
Gifts, 97-21

Gift of Tongues, 225
Gilgah, 76-14
Gilgal, Jaredite land, 554-27, 29
Gilgal, Nephite city, 558-6
Gilead, brother of Shamed who fought the Jaredite, Coriantumr, see BofM, 506-6
Gimgimno, place, 559-8
Girdle, 103-20; 255-8
Glass, 71-1; 255-23; 266
Glory of God, see "God"; 504-16
Goats, see "Animals"
God, 282-18; 282; 283; 286; 290; 294; 295; 435-24; 454-13; 455-35; see "Christ"
Gods, 282-41; 282; 283; false, 439; led people, 71-5
God of Nature, 304-15
Gold, see "Metal"
Gold Plates, 34; 118-14; see "Ether"
Good, 321-11, 12; 427-7
Goodness of God, 4-14
Gospel, 25-26; 28-10; 204-8; 217-20; 246-5; 288-9; 315; 352-40; 452-24; 514-21
Government, 138; 142; 155; 167; 454-13; 460-1
Government, modern, 167
Governor, 176-16; 466-7
Grain, 119-18; 187-2; 249-22; 250-21; 250-22, 9; 252-5; 453-30; see "Food"
Grapes, 250-16; 251; see "Wine"
Grave, 303-25
Great Spirit, 110-2; 177-27; 240-10
Greed, see "Iniquity"
Guards, 117-28; 119-11
Guilty, see "Hell"
Gulf, 417-28

Hagoth, 96-5
Hail, see "Pestilence"; 289-12
Hand of God, 289-9
Hands, laying on of, see "Ordination"
Hanged, 206-28
Happiness, see "Righteous"
Harlots, 18-7; 202-3, 29
Harris, Martin, scribe, 46; 517
Hatred, 102-17
Head-plates, see "Armor"
Head-shields, see "Armor"
Healing, 404-10; 409-7
Hearthom, 70; 141
Heathen, 482-21
Heavens, open, 17-6; 297; 306-3; 307-39; 308-27
Hebrew, 230-33
Helam, 353-14
Helam, land of, 541-19, 20, 35, 29; 542-1
Helaman, son of Benjamin, 223-2
Helaman, son of Alma, 52; 113-9; 146; 175; 230-12
Helaman, son of Helaman, 52; 132-10; 146
Helaman, Book of, 53
Helem, 119-19; 119-35
Hell, 204-18; 433; 441-22, 23; 446-36; 452
Helorum, son of King Benjamin, 223-2

(Also consult the index in *The Book of Mormon*)

- Hem**, brother of Ammon, 108-1
Hermounts, 529; 545-37
Herds, 97-12; see "Flocks"
Heredity, race, 108-9
Heahlon, Jaredite plains, 554-28
Heth, son of Com, 70; 140; 436 Chart 23
Heth, son of Hearthom, 69; 141
Heth, Jaredite land, 553-2
Hide from Lord, 507-27
Hide up Treasure, 219-18; 459-20
Hieroglyphics, 229-20; 223-2
High Priests, 375; 425-11
Highways, see "Roads"
Hills, see "Cumorah," etc., see "Mountains"
Himni, brother of Ammon, 108-1
Hiss, 473-14
Historians, 375; 51; 52
History, repeats self, 12; 214-37
Hoe, 77-25; see "Tools"
Holy Ghost, 308; 406-23; 441-26
Holy God, 325-39
Holy Order of God, see "Priesthood"; see "Melchizedek"
Holy Stand, see "Rameumptom"
Homage, 215-22
Honey, 250-5
Honey Bee, see "Deseret"; see "Bee"
Honor, 438-16
Hope, see "Faith" and "Charity"
Hours, 236
Horses, 96-21; see "Animals"
Houses, 105-2; 272; 266-7; 288-24; see "Architecture"
House of Israel, 25-1; 26-28; 27-2; 41; 88; 157-8; 196-11; 213-5; 242-19; 291-34; 471; 472; 486; 487
Howling, see "Cries"
Huguenots, arrival of, 19
Humility, see "Repentance"
Hunger, see "Famine"
Hunting, 207
Hypocrisy, 359-16

Idleness, see "Lamanites"
Idolatry, 76-23; 108-20
Idols, 368-14; 21; 438; 439-31, 15, 8; 446-37
Images, see "Idols"
Immanuel, 300-14
Immortality, 358-19
Indian, see "American Indian"
Industry, 105-18; 208
Inequality, 98-14
Iniquity, 23-36; 97-23; 210; 433; Chart 23; 436; 441-13, 14; 445; 460; 449
Injustice, vs. Justice, 14-13
Insects, see "Pestilence"
Instruments, 165-24; 259-16; 263
Intellectual, 199
Interpreters, 264; see "Stones, shining"
Invasion, 178-46
Iron, 76-23; see "Metal"
Iron Rod, see "Rod of Iron"

Irreantum, waters, 226-5; 227; 537-5
Isaac, 82-30; 242-19
Isabel, Harlot of Siron, 200, Chart 15
Isaiah, prophet of old, 43-24; 249; 229-1; 412-4; 433
Isaiah, a disciple, 384-4
Ishmael, from Jerusalem, 85-2, 34; 109-19; 163-6; 437, Chart 23
Ishmael, descendant of Aminadi, 82-2
Ishmael, land of, 541-19; 542-18, 1, 9, 5
Ishmaelites, 193-8
Isles of the sea, 537
Israel, see "House of Israel"
Jacob, of old, 13-24; 42-14; 81-14; 82-30; 242-19

Jacob, son of Lehi, 52; 85-7; 146; 374
Jacob, Zoramite, 437, Chart 23
Jacob, robber, 135-9; 437, Chart 23
Jacob, city of, 559-8
Jacob, house of, 82-21; 196-12; 487; 500-2
Jacobites, 193-8
Jacobugath, city, 559-9
Jacom, 76-14
Jared, first Jaredite, 70-33; see "Brother of Jared"
Jared, and his brother, writings of, 30; 32; 34-7; 70; 140; 374; 411-30
Jared, son of Omer, 140; 160; 436, Chart 23
Jaredites, 30; 32; 33; 61; 67; 69; 72; 138; 140; 203-5; 217; 219; 222; 226; 229; 246; 248; 249; 254; 290; 388; 536
Jarom, son of Enos, 52; 146
Jarom, Book of, 53
Jashon, place, 194-16; 556-16, 17
Javelin, 129-34; see "Weapons"
Jealous, 316-13
Jehovah, 515-34
Jeremiah, of old, 391-13
Jeremiah, 384-4
Jerushon, land of, 118-22; 125-2; 543-22, 23; 544-19; 545-3; 546-1, 18, 22, 25
Jerusalem, of old, 60; 73; 82-3; 83-4; 85-9; 97-22; 106-4; 134-11; 163-7; 165-24; 166-25; 242; 413; 472; 536; 537-15
Jerusalem, Lamanite city, 124-4; 542-1, 2, 1; 559-7
Jerusalem, New, 25-23; 412-3, 10, 6; 482-23, 24
Jessee, 504-10
Jesus, see "Christ"
Jewelry, 254; 319-6
Jews, 11-16; 20-24; 22-42; 26-12; 42-12; 72; 83-3; 93-14; 106-4; 163-13; 217-4; 243-4; 244-8; 288-15; 410-31; 413-11; 472; 474-14; 490-29; 495-75; 497-24
John, the Apostle, 24; 509-16
Jonas, a disciple, 384-4
Jonas, a disciple, 384-4
Joneam, 175; 188-14
Jordan, place, 557-8
Jordan, river of old, 242-32
Joseph of old, 13-24; 42-14; 43-2; 81-14, 16, 17, 5; 82-3; 203-25; 413-8
Joseph, son of Lehi, 85-7

(Also consult the index in *The Book of Mormon*)

- Josephites, 193-8
 Joseph Smith, see "Smith, Joseph"
 Josh, 175; 188-14
 Josh, place, 559-10
 Joshua, place, 556-6
 Jot, see BofM, 282-13
 Journey, see "Migrations"
 Judah, 486-12; 505-12; see "Jews"
 Judea, place, 113-9; 550-9, 15; 551-18, 57, 11
 Judges, 17-10; 122-5; 148; 154-22; 155-2; 158; 235-1; 465-5
 Judge, Eternal, 515-34
 Judgment, 98-23; 205-20; 331; 512-6
 Judgment-seat, 98-4; 514-20; 515-22
 Judicial, 58; 508-4; see "Judges"
 Justice, 15-13; see "Law"
- Kib, 70- 138-7; 140
 Kid, 249-12
 Kim, 70; 141
 Kimmor, 160-10
 Kindred, 10-16
 Kingdom, of Gentiles, 18-3; 143
 King-men, 72; 130; 161-8
 King Laman, 116-10
 Kings, (of heaven, 8; 170-19) (wicked, 13-8); 109-20; 144; 162-10; 165-38; 165-7; 170-18; 375; 418-11; 466-8
 Kish, 70-19
 Kishkumen, 132-9; 437, Chart 23
 Kishkumen, place, 559-10
 Knowledge, 221; 232; 420-9; 440-4
 Korihor, 124-59; 124-52; 342-43; 437, Chart 23; 464-6
 Kumen, 384-4
 Kumenonhi, 384-4
- Laban, of Jerusalem of old, 37; 38; 42-16; 83-3, 4; 437, Chart 23
 Labor, 103-14
 Lachoneus, 133-1; 146
 Lachoneus, son of Lachoneus, 146
 Ladders, 267-21
 Lamah, 175; 188-14
 Laman, son of Lehi, 153; 163; 375; see "People of Lehi"; 436, Chart 23
 Laman, king of Lamanites, many such, 153-21
 Laman, city of, 559-10
 Laman, river of in Old World, 536-8
 Lamanites, 27; 25-12; 65; 67; 72; 90-13; 91-36; 38; 101; cursing fell upon, 102-21; 153; 193; 203; 205; 245; 491-40; 500-2
 Lamb of God, 22-2 see "Christ"
 Lamb, 249-12; see "Animals"
 Lamb skin, 261-7
 Lamentation, see "Cries"
 Lamoni, Lamanite king, 109-21; 153; 375
 Land Northward, see "Northward, land of"
 Land of Promise, see "Promised Land"
 Lands of — listed by title
- Language, 93-17, 18; 115-1; 221; 462-4;
 Last Days, 25; 26-1; 27-17; 500-14
 Law of Moses, see "Mosaic Laws"
 Laws, 13-23; 154; 167-26; 172-10; 371-21
 Lawyers, 98-11; 122-5; 150; 159; 429-19; 430-37
 Laying on of Hands; see "Ordination"
 Leaders, 373; 374; 375; 396
 Leah, 218-17; a coin
 Learning, see "Knowledge"
 Lebanon, 507-28
 Legends, see "Mythology"
 Lehi, head of family of Lamanites and Nephites, 52; genealogy of, 81; death of, 8-12; 146; 374
 Lehi, people of, 72, 88; contentions of, 163; 291-20; 413-6; 415; 489-23
 Lehi, records of, 30; 44
 Lehi, son of Zoram, 175
 Lehi, Nephite commander, 175, 180
 Lehi, son of Helaman, 406-22
 Lehi, city of, 547-15, 25; 548-26, 28; 549-24, 26; 550-30
 Lehi, land southward - a large land division, 93-10; 534; 552-10
 Lehi-Nephi, place land and city, 115-6; 117-4; 539-6, 21; 540-1, 2, 4
 Lehonti, 153
 Lemuel, 163; 375; 437, Chart 23; see "People of Lehi"
 Lemuel, valley of in Old World, 536-6
 Lemuel, city of, 542-12
 Lemuelites, 193-8
 Lend, see "Borrow"
 Leopard, 249-12
 Levi, a Jaredite, 70; 140
 Liahona, 85-38; see "Compass"
 Liar, 204-25; 446-34
 Lib, 70; 140; 374
 Liberal, 143
 Liberty, land of, 9-11; uphold, 12; destroy, 14-10; 113-17; 127-10; 161-30; 168- 168-32; 169-30; 869-24
 Light, 294-14; 300-3; see "Stones, Shining"
 Lightnings, 304-6; see "Cataclysm"
 Limnah, 175; 188-14
 Limnah, a coin, 218-5
 Limher, Nephite spy, 180-21
 Limhi, record of, 30; find plates of Ether, 34-33; 69-2; 80-11; 115
 Linen, 18-8; 76-24; 97-13; 254
 Lion, 28-24; 249-12
 Loans, see "Borrow"
 Lord, led Jaredites, 71-5
 Lord Jesus Christ, 336-33
 Lord's Prayer, BofM, 426-9
 Lost Tribes, 25-26; 480-1, 4; 509-12; 481-4
 Love, 104-7
 Love of God, 287; 353-17; see "Tree of Life"
 Lucre, see "Money"
 Luram, 175
 Lusts, see "Iniquity"

- Machinery**, 209-8; see "Tools"
Madmenah, place in Palestine, see BofM, 84-81
Magic, 469-19, 10
Mahah, 76-14
Maker, see "Creator"
Malachi, 511, Chart 26; Christ gave Nephites the words of Malachi
Mammon, 435-24
Man, 289; 240; see "Creation, Probation, Redemption, Salvation, Etc."
Manasseh, 89
Manifestations, see "Revelations"
Manna, 242-19
Manti, city of, 185-1
Manti, hill, 544-15
Manti, land of, 543-1, 27; 546-6, 7, 22, 25, 32; 547-42; 550-14; 551-22, 1, 28
Manti, Nephite spy, 180-21
Mantle, 255-22
Maps, 61, 68, 65, 564
Maranon River, 566
Marital Customs, see "Marriage"
Mark, curse on Lamanites, 103-15, 4; 255-4
Markets, 217; 272
Marriage, 201, 204
Mary, 300-10
Mathoni, 384-4
Mathonihah, 384-4
Measure, 218-7, 15
Meat, 103-20; 250-2
Medicine, 165-15; 238; 403-5
Mediterranean, 61
Meetings, 212
Melchizedek, 219-15
Melek, land of, 545-3, 4, 6, 6; 546-13, 18
Members of Church, 347
Memory, 280
Merchants, 98-11
Mercy, see "God"
Mesopotamia, 73
Message of Christ, 376; see "Word of God"
Messengers, 177-24; 214; 376
Messiah, see "Christ"
Messiah, false, 474-18
Metal Plates, see "Plates"
Metals, 76-23; 256; 80-10; 227; 228-8; see "Tools"
Middoni, land of, 542-2, 7, 18, 12, 1, 10
Midian, land of, 542-5
Migrations, Jaredites, 61; 65; Mulekites, 61; 65; People of Lehi, 62; Nephites, 65; all peoples, 72; 282-16
Milk, 251-50
Military Customs, 173
Mining, 256-23; see "Metal"
Ministers, 17-10
Ministry, 202-4
Minon, land of, 126-24; 544-24
Miracles, 113; 296-10; 873-12; 375; 400
Misery, see "Hell"
Missionaries, 495-70
Mockery, 508-23, 26
Mocum, place, 559-7
Money, 28-37; 169-33; 217; 256; 488-31; Month, 236
Monaster, 74-10; 435-10
Morality, 14-27; 204; 210
Moriancumr, 71-13
Morianton, a Jaredite, 70; 140
Morianton, a Nephite, 272-12
Morianton, people of, 72; 126; 368-9; 437, Chart 23
Morianton, land of, 547-25; 548-26, 28, 29
Mormon, compiler of records, 31; 41; 48; 82-20; 146; 175; 193-1; 375; 398; 52 33
Mormon, Book of, 21; 22; 27-3; 490-28; 493-51; 498; 499; 500
Mormon, land of, 118-4; 540-4, 5, 30
Mormon, Plates of, 48; 53; 54
Moron, a Jaredite, 141
Moron, land of Jaredites, 69; 138-6; 588; 553-6; 554-6, 11
Moroni, I, Commander of the Nephite army, 127-33; 32; 130-17; 168-12; 175; 179; 181-16; 182-19; 279-23; 375
Moroni, II, son of Mormon, record of, 31; 41; 50; 52; 69-1; 146; 175; 188-12; 279-23; 341-6; 375; 397
Moroni, land of, and city of, 547-13, 14; 548-32; 549-23, 24; 550-32, 34; 558-9
Moroni, plates of, 50
Moronihah, son of Moroni, the Nephite army commander, 175; 188-14
Moronihah, Nephite leader at Cumorah, 175
Moronihah, land of, 558-10
Morrow, 111-7
Mortality, 358-17
Mosaic Laws, 155; 156
Moses, 42-11; 105-5; 205-19; 242-29; 289-14; 339-11; 427-11; 487
Mosiah, king I, 88; 146; 230-4; 374; 396
Mosiah, King II, last king of Zarahemla, 35-13; 52; 146; 154-14; 158; 374; 460-1
Mounds, 132-11; 256-23
Mountains, tumble, 16-4; 303-5; 312-9; 362-1; see "Cataclysm"
Mount Zion, see "Zion"
Mourning, 100-11; 111-43; 203-31; 287-23; 359; 426-11
Mulek, 489-23; see "People of Mulek"
Mulek, city of, 181-17; 549-26, 2; 550-16, 22, 26; 552-15
Mulek, land northward of first landing, 93-10; 96-10, 11; 534; 552-10
Mulek, people of, see "people of Zarahemla"; 92; xxix
Mulekites, see "people of Zarahemla"; xxix
Muloki, 541; Migration, 8
Multitude, 17-12; 17-20
Murder, 15-23; 103-14; 369-11, 12
Music, 264-12; 345-25
Mythology, 277
Nahom, land of, 85-34
Nails, 267-14
Names, of God, 292; names of Satan, 435; names of important Book of Mormon peoples, 374; 436

(Also consult the index in *The Book of Mormon*)

- Narrow Neck (Pass) of land**, 530; 548-34; 549-9; 553-5; 557-6; 554-20
- Nations**, shall be brought, 10-11; shall be cursed, 10-14; record to judge, 42-4; 15-22; 15-25; 18-3; 21
- Nation**, great, on Western Hemisphere, 71-48; 499-8
- Nazareth**, place in Holy Land, 800-13
- Nazism**, 14-28
- Near**, 227; 250-9
- Nehor**, 437, Chart 23; 466
- Nehor**, place, 138-9
- Nehor**, Jaredite land, 558-4, 9
- Nehor**, religion, 125-11; 124-4
- Nephi**, I, son of Lehi, 16; 52; 90; 124-6; 144-18; 146; 163-16; 374; 396; 416-1; 417-1V
- Nephi**, II, 52; 146; 339-14; 375; 397; 406-22; 426-10
- Nephi**, III, 52; 146; 375; 398; 408-19
- Nephi**, IV, 52; 146
- Nephi**, V, 146
- Nephi**, land of, 73; 90-8; 115; 531; 538; 539-27; 541-35, 8, 1; 542-2; 543-27, 28; 544-32, 34, 24; 547-8, 11; 549-13, 1
- Nephi**, people of, see "Nephites"
- Nephi**, plates of, 30; 41; 44; 46; abridged 49-3
- Nephihah**, 146
- Nephihah**, city of, 64; 65; 547-14; 549-24, 25, 26; 550-18, 26, 30; 551-25
- Nephites**, 64; 67; 72; 88; 90-11, 13, 14; 91-36, 37; 94; 400; 161; 171; 176-17; 193; 203; 205; 217; 219; 222; 226; 230; 244; 247; 248; 249; 254; 257; 259; 291; 338; 346; 389; 500; Destruction of, 99-13, 14; Government of, 143
- Neum**, 511, Chart 26
- New Jerusalem**, see "Jerusalem, New"
- Nimrah**, 161-8
- Nimrod** of old, 61; 70-1
- Nimrod**, a Jaredite, 139-22
- Ninrod**, a valley in the Old World, 61; 70-1; 72; 535
- Noah**, patriarch of old, 74-7; 241-9
- Noah**, son of Zeniff, 115; 116-1; 437-Chart 23
- Noah**, a Jaredite, 138-15; 140; 436-Chart 23
- Noah**, land of, 546-2; 549-12
- Nobility**, 221; 223
- Northward**, land of, 31; 35-8; 48; 66; 72; 80-8; 95-3, 4, 5; 533; 548-29, 34, 23, 24, 12; 552-6; 555-3; 556-6, 11
- Number Four**, see "Four"
- Number Seven**, see "Seven"
- Number Three**, see "Three"
- Oath**, 113-14; 293-15
- Offerings**, 83-7; see "Sacrifices"
- Office**, 98-11, 5
- Ogath**, a Jaredite land, 554-10
- Old**, 203-26; 807-47
- Old Testament**, see a similar record kept on the Brass Plates
- Old World**, 18; 19; 61; 63; 490; 527
- Olive Tree**, 486, 487
- Omega**, see "God"
- Omer**, 70; 140; 160; 374
- Omner**, 549-26
- Omni**, 52; 146
- Omni**, Book of, 53
- Onidah**, hill, 228-5; 227; 546-4; 549-5
- Onihah**, city of, 559-7
- Only Begotten Son**, see "Christ"
- Onti**, 218-6
- Ordained**, 17-7; see "Ordination"
- Ordination**, 17-7; 360; 395-1; 438-5
- Order**, see "Creation" and "Priesthood"
- Ordinances**, see "Word of God"
- Ore**, 76-23; see "Metal"; see "Tools"
- Organization**, 344; 347
- Origins**, see "Creation"; see 240
- Orihah**, 70; 76; 140
- Ox**, see "Animals"
- Paanchi**, son of Pahoran, 14-8; 132-7; 437-Chart 23; 466
- Pachus**, 437-Chart 23; 466
- Pacific Ocean**, see Chart I, II, VI, and Appendix D
- Pacumeni**, son of Pahoran, 146
- Pagag**, see "Sons of Bro. of Jared"
- Pagan**, see "Idols," "Heathen"
- Pahoran**, son of Nephihah, 130-6, 3; 146; 162-2
- Pahoran**, son of Pahoran, 132-11; 146
- Palace**, 271-9
- Palestine**, see "Nazareth" and "Jerusalem"
- Panama**, see Chart VI
- Paradise**, see "Resurrection"
- Parallels**, see "Mythology"
- Pass**, secret, 117-7
- Patriarchs**, 143
- Peace**, 138-11; 408-47
- Pearls**, 254-24; 319-6
- Perdition**, see "devil"
- Perjury**, see "Liar"
- Peru**, 566
- Persecution**, 190-10; 280; 370; 460-1; 461-21; 463-13
- Pestilence**, 453-15; 454-31
- Pharaoh**, 242-27
- Phoenician**, 61
- Physics**, 236
- Pickets**, 269-4
- Pilgrims** at Plymouth, 19
- Pits**, 385-20
- Plains**, 16-4; 550-20; 554-28
- Planets**, 236-44
- Plants**, 249; 252
- Plates**, records, 29; 30; see Chap. II; 517; see "Records"
- Plates**, Brass, see "Brass Plates"
- Plates**, of Gold, see "Ether" and "People of Limhi"; 32
- Plates** of Nephi, 46
- Plow**, 77-25
- Plunder**, see "Gadianton Robbers"
- Poison**, 181; 433-30
- Political Customs**, 137; 160
- Polygamy**, 202

- Population**, 246
Power, of God, see "God"
Practices, religious, 335
Prayer, 28-22; 123-26; 176-18; 232-16; 338-4; 359-3; 360; 410; 426-37
Preaching, 98-23; 378; see "Teaching"
Precious, garments, 18-8
Preparedness, 13-11
President, 13-17
Pride, Gentiles, 28-36; 417-36; 449-11; 461-9; 492-48
Priestcraft, 199-10; 437
Priesthood, 394; see "Melchizedek"
Priests, 146; 169-26; 393; 460-1
Priests of Noah, 119-32; 119-9
Prison, 105-2; 209-7; 219-6; 385-19; see "Architecture"
Prisoners, 114-27; 189-40
Probation, 314-9, 8; 318
Proclamation, 145-10; 177-5; 215-22
Profanity, 293-15
Promised Land, 8; 19-14; Map, 65; 87-23; 278; 535-12; 537-23
Promises, see "Covenants"
Prophecies, 4; of Nephi, 16; of John, 24; to Lamanites, 106; 412; see Chap. I, Chap. XVII, and Chap. XII
Prophets, 374; 375; 388; 390; 391; 429-6
Prosperity, 11-1; 209-8; 279-7, 23; 414-5; 503
Protection, 10
Punishment, 452; 453
Pure in Heart, see BofM, 424-3
Purifying Ceremony, 351-23
Pursuit, 183-39; 195-7
Puritans, arrival in North America, 19
Pyramids, see "Towers"
Quaking, see "Cataclysm"
Queen, 111-4
Quiver, see "Weapons"
Rabbanah, 110-13; 227
Raca, 227; 228-18
Racial, 199-8; 244; 245
Rahab, 227
Raiment, see "Clothing"
Rain, 238-25
Raising from Dead, 408-19; 409-9
Ramah, Jaredite hill, 554-11; see Map III
Rameumptom, 227, 228-21
Ranks, 98-12
Reap, 77-25; 453-30
Rebellion, 116-6; 131-15; 205-15
Reckoning of time, see "Time"; see "Calendar"
Records, 29; 30; transmission of, 51; preservation of, 57; hidden, 57; metal, 57; destroyed, 58; genealogy, 211; sealed, 503; 280; 333
Redeemer, 289-12; see "Christ"
Redemption, 330; 432-2
Red Sea, 73; 83-5; 242-19; 427-11; 536-5, 8, 14
Reformed Egyptian, 230-32
Rejoice, 177-30
Remember - great Memory, 280, VIII
Remember the Lord, 11
Religion, 167, Chap. XII, XIII, and XIV
Remission of Sins, see "Baptism"
Remnant, of Jacob, 13-23
Remorse, see "Fear"
Rend, garments, 12-21; rocks, 16-4
Repentance, see "Probation"; 351-23; 353-19, 24; 363; 515-22
Restoration, 329; 502-8; see "Resurrection"
Resurrection, 284-2; 326; 434-8; see "Restoration"
Revelation, 174-19; 178-16; 379; 384; 509-15
Revolution, 171-5
Riches, 97-11; 22; 103-7; 198; 233-22; 438-16; 445-30; 447-14; loss of, 458-1
Righteous, 96-21; 105-1; 233-9; 508-28
Right Hand, of God, 289-9; 349-27
Riplah, hill, 546-31, 35
Riplakish, 70; 140; 436, Chart 23
Ripliancum, Jaredite waters, 226-8; 227; 554-8
River, see "Sidon"; "Laman"; 417-26
Rituals, 350
Roads, 216-8; 274
Rob, 102-16; 220-8
Robbers, 131; 133
Robber Captain, 284-28
Rocks, upon this rack, etc., 176-25; 288
Rocks, see "Stones"
Rod, 163-29
Rod of Iron, 287
Root of Jesse, see "Jesse"
Route, see "Strategy"
Ruins, 80-8
Rulers, see Charts 10, 12, 13; see "Kings," "Chief Judges," etc.
Sabbath, 156-5
Sack-cloth, 254-25; 255-24
Sacrament, 320-29; 366
Sacrifice, 83-7; 212-3; 367
Sacrifice, human, 191-14; 298-10; 368
Sail, 87-22; 96-6
Saints, blood of, 15-22; 18-9; 303-3; 409-9
Salem, see BofM, 229-17
Salt, 28-15; 251-13
Salutation, 215
Salvation, 318; 321; 515-9
Sam, 83-5
Samuel, of old, 299-24; see BofM 440-24
Samuel, the Lamanite, 375; 408-6; 430-2
Sanctuaries, see "Churches"
Sariah, 83-5
Satan, 77-19; 112-12; 122-9; 252-18; 450-15; see "Devil"; 457-15
Savior, see "Christ"
Scalp, 188-14
Scattering, 473-14, 6
Scholars, see "Language"
Science, 221; 235
Scourge, 473-16
Scriptures, ancient, 229-10

(Also consult the index in *The Book of Mormon*)

- Sea, 71-13; 164-48, 10; 238-5; 537-5; 537-16; 534; 535-4; 556-8
- Sealed, 4-15; 503-8; 509-17, 27
- Searching Eye, 288
- Seats, 255-11
- Seantum, 429-26
- Seashore, 71-13; 74-12; 86-6; 547-22, 15, 25; 549-26; 550-23
- Sebus, 109-26; 541-26; 550-25, 11
- Secret Organizations, 14; 131; 170; 443
- Secret Pass, 271-6, 7
- Seed of Jacob, 28-24; 247-1
- Seeds, 249-3, 11; 250-1, 24; 337-28
- Seers, 388; 505-11
- Seezoram, 150-23; 146
- Sell, 76-22
- Senine, 218-5, 8
- Senum, 218-6
- Seon, 218-5
- Sepulchre, 111-5; 256-1
- Sermons, 412; see "Christ"; 418-9
- Serpent, 249-10; 289-14; 434-3; 454-31
- Servant, 109-25
- Service, 418-12
- Seth, 69; 141
- Seven, see "Creation"
- Sex, 201
- Shame, see "Hell"
- Shared, fought Coriantumr - last Jaredite king, 141; see BofM, 505-30
- Shaven heads, 103-20
- Shazer, 536-13
- Sheaves, see "Grain"
- Sheep, 445-39; see "Animals"
- Shelem, 71-1; 116-6; 227
- Shelf, 267-1
- Shem, 173; 188-14; 194-20
- Shem, place, 556-20; 557-21
- Shemlon, place, 268-12; 539-7, 12, 9; 541-1; 542-12
- Shemnon, 384-4
- Shepherd, 234-21; 321-41; 345-21; 445-37
- Sherem, 341-13; 437, Chart 23; 462
- Service, 169-17
- Sheum, 227; 228-9; 250-9
- Shez, 70; 140; 272-4; 374
- Shiblom, 175; 188-14; 436, Chart 23
- Shiblon, a Jaredite, 141
- Shiblon, son of Alma, 52; 146
- Shiblon, a coin, 69, 218-15
- Shiblum, a coin, 218-16
- Shlom, land of, 73; 115-6; 268-12, 13; 271-13; 539-6, 21, 14, 8, 12, 13; 540-5, 16, 11; 541-1; 542-12
- Shields, see "Armor"
- Shim, hill, 531; 554-3; 557-23; 553-3
- Shimnliom, city of, 542-12
- Ship, 71-1, 2; 96-5, 7; 164-13; 216-10; 274
- Shiz, 77-18; 79-31; 436, Chart 23
- Shore, see "Seashore"
- Shule, 70; 76-23; 138-7; 140; 374
- Shum, 218-5
- Shurr, a Jaredite land, 77-28; 554-28
- Sickle, 252-5
- Sidom, place, 464-3; 545-1
- Sidon, river, 528; 543-29; 544-15, 27, 34, 35; 545-3, 4, 7, 3; 546-6, 7, 22, 27, 32, 35; 547-39, 40, 41, 53, 22, 11; 551-25
- Siege, see "Strategy"
- Signs, 25-1; 303-20; 340-16; 376; 401-24; 432-3; 462-13; 468-1
- Silks, 18-8; 76-24; 254
- Silver, see "Metal"
- Sin, 446-38; 446-10; see "Salvation"
- Sincere, 361-2
- Sing, 74-1; 164-9; 381-8
- Siron, land of, 546-3; 547-7
- Skeptics, 461; 507-21
- Skins, dark, see "Lamanites"
- Slain, 78-2
- Slavery, 117-3; 199
- Sleep, deep, 119-19
- Slings, 110-38; see "Weapons"
- Smith, Joseph, translated ancient records, 33; 503-6; 41; 46; 517
- Smote, 123-4
- Snares, 10; 207-2
- Social Customs, 197
- Socialism, 143; 187; 169
- Solomon, 203-15; 267-16; 33
- Sons of God, 289-15; see "Christ"
- Sons of people of Ammon, 114-56; 182-80; 405-25
- Sorceries, 469-19
- Souls, 326-14
- Sow, see "Agriculture"; 77-25
- Spanish Conquest, 19; 20; 489-21, etc.
- Spear, see "Weapons"
- Spies, 115-1; 180-21; 183-35
- Spin, 97-13; 201-5; 254
- Spirit of God, 97-21
- Spirits, see "Resurrection"; see "Angels"
- Spit, 425-13
- Standard, of liberty, 12-4; 130-20
- Star, 301-5
- Steer, guide a ship, 276-13
- Steel, 138-9; 208-18; 258-15; 262-8; see "Metal"
- Stone, of Coriantumr, 30; 36-20; 80-20
- Stone, Shining Stones of the Jaredites, 34-23; 35-13; 71-2; 265-23; 263; 401
- Stones, weapons, 105-2; 110-36; see "Weapons"
- Stone, rock of foundation, 238-16
- Stratagem, 181-17; 186-6
- Streets, see "Roads"
- Striplings, see sons of people of Ammon
- Stubble, see "Fire"
- Sumaria, 73
- Sun, 195-18
- Surrender, 188
- Swear, 293-15
- Swine, see "Animals"
- Sword, 80-11; 112-12; 177-9; see "Weapons"
- Symbols, 286; 369
- Synagogues, 105-2; 268-13, 4

(Also consult the index in *The Book of Mormon*)

- Tablet, Stone, see "Stone, Coriantumr"
 Taxes, 116-3; 219
 Teachers, 878; 393; 420-15
 Teachings, 218; 217-38
 Teancum, 129-33, 34, 36; 175; 180; 182-19
 Teancum, place, 557-3
 Tear or rip garments, 12-21
 Tempest, 164-14; 463-15
 Temple, 105-2; 267; see "Architecture"
 Temptation, 336-33
 Ten Commandments, 316
 Tents, 71-13; 85-9; 87-23; 90-7; 103-14; 115-4; 118-34; see "Architecture"
 Teomner, 175; 180; 185-20
 Testify, 110-1
 Testimony, 507-13; see "Witnesses"
 Textiles, see "Clothing"
 Thieves, 199-10; 440-32
 Thorns, 250-16
 Thrash, 77-25
 Three, 423-10; 432-20
 Three Nephites, 386; 410-30
 Throne, 255-6; 287
 Thunder, 304-6; see "Cataclysm"
 Till, 74-13
 Timber, 87-1; 270-2; see "Trees"
 Time, 139; 235; 281
 Timothy, 384-4
 Tithes, 219
 Title of Land, 12-20
 Title of Liberty, 12-4
 Tongues, 10-16; 10-17
 Tools, 77-25; 262
 Topography, 59
 Torches, 256-21
 Torment, 424-17
 Torture, 190-10
 Tower, great, (of Babel?) 80-22, 241
 Towers, 179-4; 268; see "Architecture"
 Towns, 195-22
 Trade, 216; 440-32
 Traditions, 101-12; 102-17
 Traffic, see "Trade"
 Traitors, 14-8; 170; 172-8
 Transfiguration, see "Three Nephites"; see "Christ"
 Transgression, 97-23
 Transportation, 216
 Translation, 35-12; 35-18
 Treasures, 319-19; 431-20; 445-30; Loss of, 458-1
 Treasury of Laban, 37-4
 Treaty, 101-29; 115-2; 177-6; 188-37; 555-29
 Tree of Life, 287; 337-40
 Trees, 266-9; 507-28; 555-5; 556-6, 9, 10
 Tremble, 440-28; see "Fear"
 Tribes, 143; 150
 Tribes of Israel, see "Lost Tribes"
 Tribute, 189-15; 220
 Trickery, 128-53; 160; 161; 170-2
 Triumph, 192
 Truth, 234; 313; 502-7
 Tubaloth, 153
 Unbelief, 474-14; see "Apostasy" and "Pro-bation"
 Unchangeable God, 353-18; 499-9
 Unclean, 485-36
 United Order, 143; 151
 United States, 21; 28-10
 Urim and Thummim, 518; see "Stones, Shining, of Jaredites"
 Valley, see "Lemuel" and "Cataclysms"
 Vengeance, see "Wrath"
 Vessels, 131-24
 Vessels, see "Ships"
 Victory, see "Triumph"
 Villages, 195-22; 279-6
 Vineyard, 414-12
 Virgin, 283-10
 Vision, 384; 412
 Vocabulary, 226
 Voice of the People, 14-27
 Voice of God, 312-9
 Vultures, 249-2
 Wages, 169-33; 217
 Waiting - period before resurrection, 325-6
 Walls, 179-8, 1; 213-7; 270; 418
 Wanderers, see "Migrations"
 Wars, wars on Western Hemisphere, 16; Lamanites, 18; last days, 22; 193; 180; 181
 Warfare, international ethics, 15
 Warfare, women in, 201
 Waters, 71-6; 535-6; 537-16; 555-4
 Waves, 74-6
 Waxed strong, 142-12; 210-48
 Wealth, 198; see "Riches"
 Weapons, 112-17; 188-38; 259
 Weeks, 236
 Weep, 109-28; see "Mourning"; God wept, 283
 Western Hemisphere, 8; 61; 63; 72; 303-20; 377; 383; 384; 460-1; 474-3; 489; 491; 527; 535; 536; 561
 Wheat, 250-9; 252-18, 5; see "Grain"
 Whale, 74-10
 Whirlwinds, see "Cataclysms"
 Whisper from dust, 4; 5
 Whore, see "Abominable Church"
 Wickedness, 27-15
 Wicked, 234; 435-35; 449-5; 454-18
 Wicked men, 14-9; 100-12; 460
 Wilderness between Nephi and Zarahemla, 528; near Jerusalem, 536-4
 Wilderness of Hermounts, 529; see "Her-mounts"
 Wind, 74-5; 164-9; 288; Wind God, 238
 Windows, 266-23; 267-12
 Wine, 178-11; 181-13; 251
 Wine-press, 251-15
 Wisdom, 129-9; 169-17; 232; 373-9; 420-9; 515-9
 Wise, see "Wisdom"
 Witchcrafts, 469-19, 10

(Also consult the index in *The Book of Mormon*)

- Witnesses**, 376; 380; 506-2; 520; 521
Wolves, 436-3
Women, 116-14; 120-4; 174-7; 190-9; 200; 374; 375
Wood, 256-21; 258-15; 258-8
Words, see "Vocabulary"
Word of God, 232-8; 264-44; 312; 376; 417-24; 493-51; 510-V
Word of Truth, 515-9
Work, fine, 209-7
Workmen, 97-11
World, 487-4
Worms, 77-22
Worship, 348-11
Wounds, 114-25; see "Medicine"
Wrath of God, punishment, 453; 454-13; 514-3
Writing, 5; 221; 229; 264-29; 499-12

Year, 236
Yoke, see "Bondage"
Younger Brother Myth, 278

Zarahemla, record of, 30; 41
Zarahemla, a people, record of, 30; 41; 47; 61; 65; 68; 72; 91-18, 14; 92
Zarahemla, a land and a city, 65; 73; 92; 94; 95; 532; 538-13; 538-28; 540-13, 11, 13; 541-25; 542-5, 15; 543-1, 27, 28; 544-32, 15, 15, 26; 545-7, 1, 13, 3; 546-14, 7; 547-7, 9, 11; 547-7, 23; 551-25, 57, 11, 18, 23, 29; 552-5, 16, 4; 555-3; 556-5, 6; 553-31; 558-8; 559-1
Zedekiah, of Jerusalem, king, 42-12; 83-4; 374
Zedekiah, a disciple, 384-4
Zeezrom, 403-3; 437-Chart 23; 464-21
Zeezrom, land of, or city of, 550-14; 551-11
Zemnarihah, 134-17, 28; 437, Chart 23
Zenephi, 175; 437, Chart 23
Zeniff, 30
Zeniff, people of, 72; 115
Zeniff, record of, 30; 41; 47
Zenock, 43-15; 392-10
Zenos, 43-13; 286-16; 304-10; 360-3
Zerahemnah, 124-6; 153; 177-5; 186-6
Zeram, spy sent out by Alma, 180-21
Zerin, 226-30; 227
Ziff, 227; 228-8; see "Metal"
Zion, 10-3; 11-16; 21-37; 485-36; 502-17
Zoology, 239; 240; 252
Zoram, servant of Laban, 39-20, 21; 72
Zoram, Nephite Captain, 175
Zoram, a dissenter, 437-Chart 23; 438-1; 465-1; see "Zoramites"
Zoramites, 72; 124; 193-8

UNIVERSAL
LIBRARY



135 547

UNIVERSAL
LIBRARY

